



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

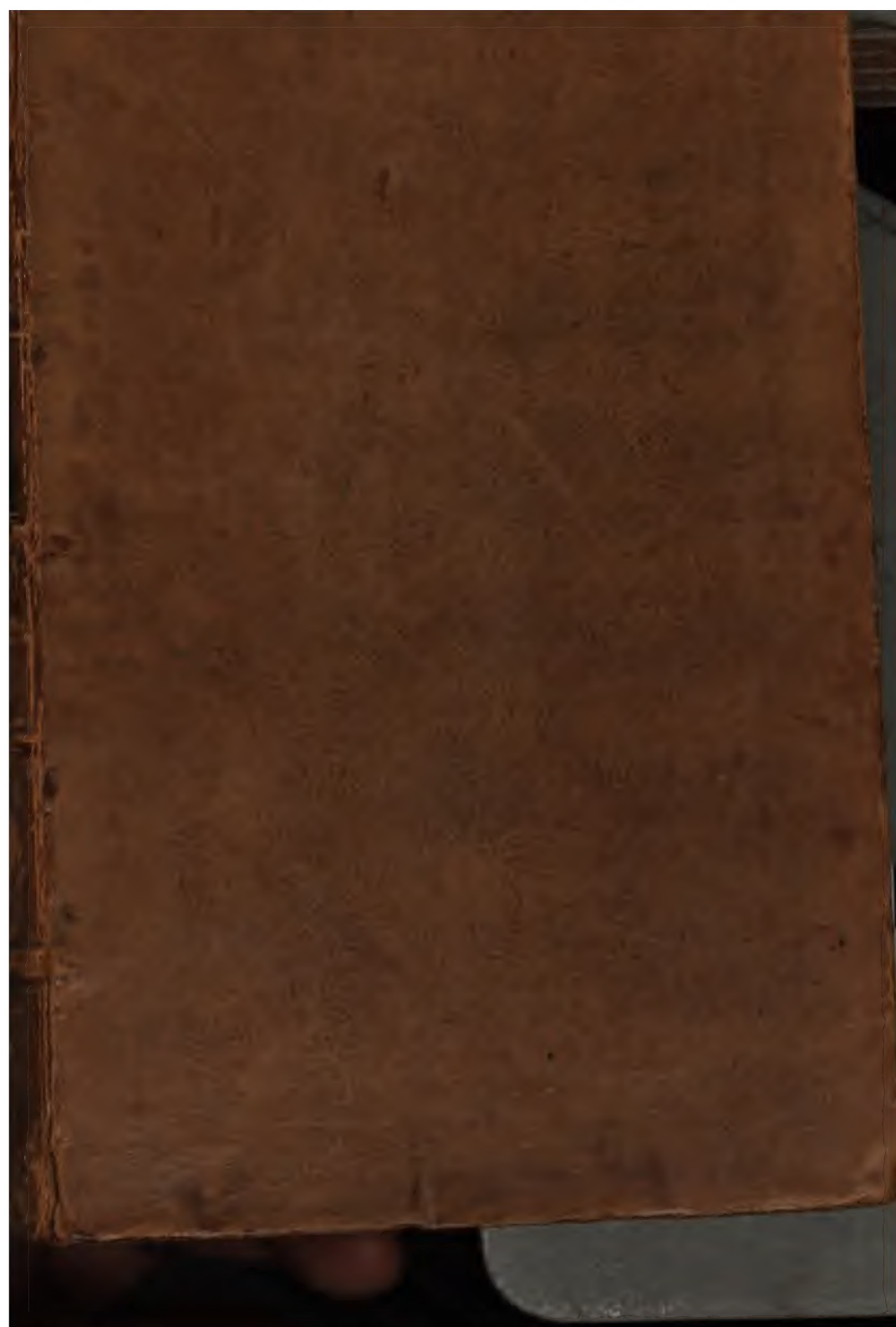
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

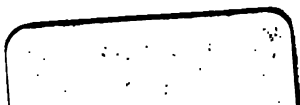
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

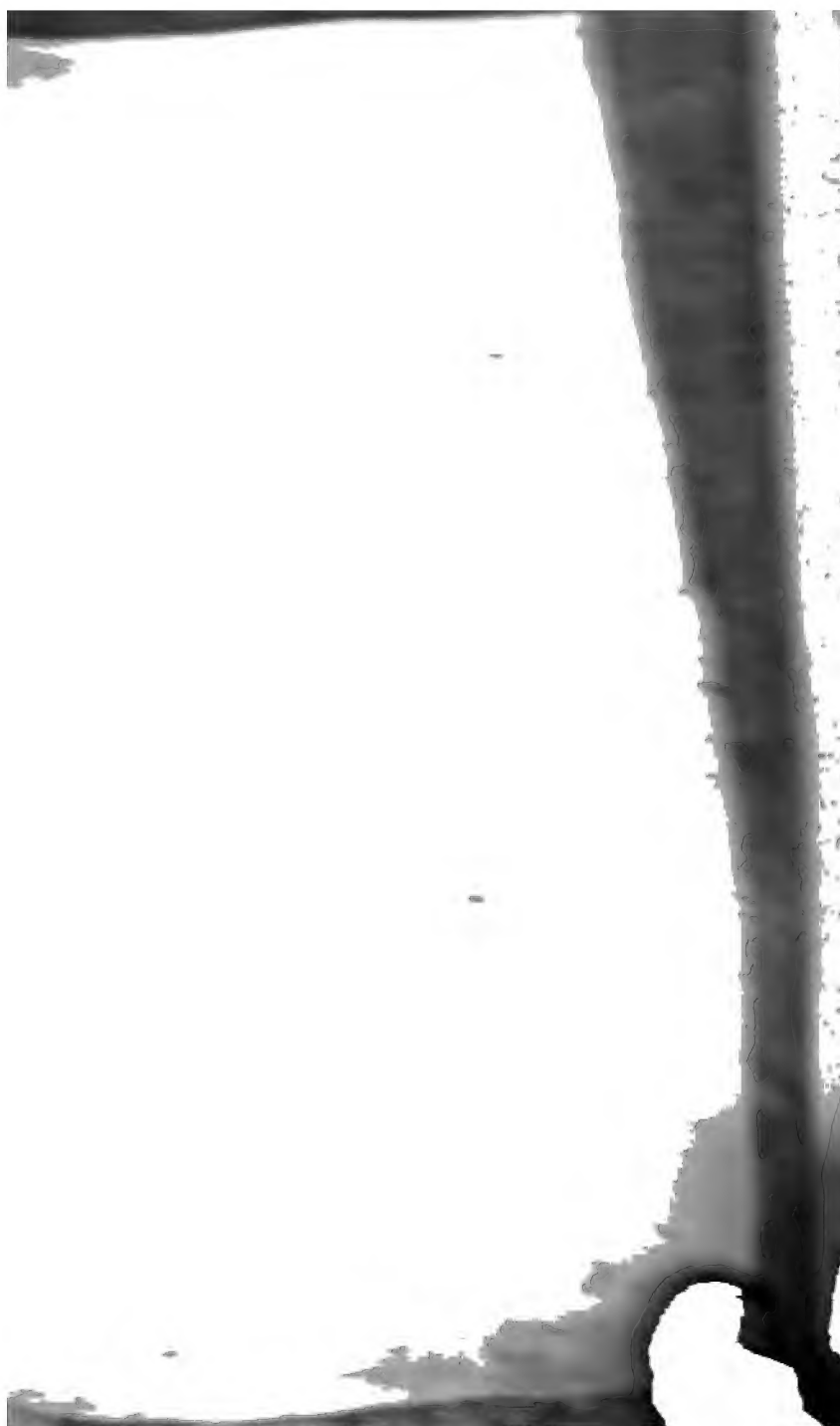




600017709U

Mus. B.M. III.









MODERN LIBRARY

Universal Library

THE MODERN LIBRARY

THE MODERN LIBRARY

THE
MODERN PART
OF AN
Universal History,
FROM THE
Earliest ACCOUNT of TIME.
VOL. XXXV.

100-443887-1

2000

1957-1958

257 110 25

11-10-1964

100-443087

THE
MODERN PART
OF AN
Universal History,

FROM THE
Earliest ACCOUNT of TIME,

Compiled from
ORIGINAL WRITERS.

By the AUTHORS of the ANTIENT PART.

VOL. XXXV.



L O N D O N :

Printed for T. OSBORNE, C. HITCH, A. MILLAR,
JOHN RIVINGTON, S. CROWDER, B. LAW and
Co. T. LONGMAN, and C. WARE.

M.DCC.LXII.

223. / 180

THE
LIBRARY OF
THE
BIBLIOTHECA
MUSEI HISTORICO-NATURALIS
ROMAE
FUNDATA PER
ALEXANDER DE' MEDICI
IN ANNO DOMINI
MDLXXV
ROMAE



Modern History:

BEING A

CONTINUATION

OF THE

Universal History.

THE HISTORY of RUSSIA.

CHAP. I.

General Description of RUSSIA.

THE empire of *Russia* extends in length from west to east, from the fortieth to the two hundred and fourth degree of longitude; and from north to south it is fifteen, twenty, and in some places twenty-five degrees in breadth: so that it is at least five thousand miles long, and from eight to sixteen hundred wide (A). It is bounded on the north by the frozen or northern ocean; on the east, by

(A) This is, pretty nearly, the computation given by the accurate *M. Busching*, in his excellent *System of Geography* (1) But *M. de Voltaire* (2) makes the greatest

length of the *Russian* empire, reckoning from the isle of *Dago* on the west of *Livonia*, to its most eastern boundaries, upwards of two thousand French

(1) *Vol. I. p. 379.*
Ann. I. p. 3.

(2) *Hist. de l'Emp. de Russie, sous Pierre le Grand,*

The History of Russia.

by Great or Chinese Tartary, and part of the eastern ocean which divides *Asia* from *America*; on the south, by *Calmuc* and *Cuban Tartary*, *Persia*, *Georgia*, the *Caspian* sea, the mountains of *Circassia*, the *Euxine* sea, and part of *Turky*; and on the west, by *Poland* and *Sweden* (B).

general *vision.* THIS vast empire, larger, says a celebrated modern writer^c, than all the rest of *Europe* put together, and far more extensive than ever was the *Roman* empire, or that of *Darius* conquered by *Alexander*, lies partly in *Europe*, and

^c VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de Russie sous Pierre le Grand*, tom. i. p. 4.

leagues, that is to say, above five thousand five hundred of our statute miles; and its greatest breadth from south to north, eight hundred and fifty French leagues, or near two thousand three hundred and fifty of our miles. He adds, and the observation is not only curious, but may be just enough, that the *Russian* empire contains upwards of eleven hundred thousand square French leagues; whereas the *Roman* empire, and that of *Alexander*, contained each of them only about five hundred and fifty thousand; and that no kingdom in *Europe* is the twelfth part so large as the *Roman* empire was.

(B) The limits of *Russia* towards the west and south, are settled with the several powers bordering upon it on those sides; namely, with *Sweden*, by the treaty of *Nystadt* in the year 1721, and that of *Abo* in 1743; with the *Poles*, by certain conventions agreed on in 1667, 1672, and 1717, though these were not ratified as to every article. With the *Turks*, the boundaries of *Russia* were agreed on by the treaty of *Carlowitz*, concluded in the year 1701; but some alterations were after-

wards made at the treaty of the *Pruth*, and ratified in the year 1714: and further changes also took place with regard to the limits between *Russia* and *Turky*, at the treaty of *Belgrade* in 1739. Pursuant to the late treaty of peace concluded with *Persia* in 1732, the river *Kur*, which runs into the *Caspian* sea, was made the boundary between the *Russian* and *Persian* dominions: but the *Russians* having, soon after, relinquished the provinces they had taken from the *Persians*, the river *Terk* is looked upon as the present limits. The wandering tribes of *Tartars* who live further south, such as the *Caracalpackians*, *Kasatshia-Horda*, *Calmucks*, and others, are confined by lines thrown up on the frontiers. The last treaty of peace with *China* and the *Mungalians* was concluded in the year 1727, on the banks of the river *Bura*; and in 1728, the several ratifications of it were exchanged at the river *Kiakta*. By virtue of that treaty, barriers have been set up on the south-side of the mountains of *Sayan*, and farther towards the east, quite to the river *Argun* (1).

(1) *Busching*, and *Strahlenberg's* account of *Siberia*, p. 188.

The History of Russia.

3

partly in *Asia*; reaching from *Poland* to the *Frozen Sea*, and from *Sweden* to *China*. The general division of its *European* part, is into *Great*, *Little*, and *White Russia* (C), which properly constitute ancient *Russia*; and to which have been added, in this century, the duchies of *Livonia* and *Esthonia*, with the provinces of *Ingria* and *Carelia*, conquered from the *Swedes*. The *Asiatic* provinces of the *Russian* empire make a considerable part of *Great Tartary*.

The *Russian* empire is divided into governments, each of which consists of certain provinces or circles, some of them immense. The number of these governments has varied at different times; but they are now the following sixteen, viz. 1. *Great Novogrod*: 2. *Archangel-gorod* (D): 3. *Moscow*: 4. *Nischni-gorod*, or *Nischni-Novogrod*: 5. *Smolensko*: 6. *Kievo*: 7. *Biologorod*: 8. *Worometz* and *Astow*. These are situated in what is generally called *Russia Proper*. 9. *Riga*: 10. *Reval*: 11. *Petersburg*: and, 12. *Wiburg*, have been formed out of the conquered provinces of *Livonia*, *Esthonia*, *Ingria* and *Carelia*. The four other governments, viz. 13. *Astracan*; 14. *Orenburg*; 15. *Casan*; and, 16. *Siberia*; are in *Asia*. We shall begin our account of these several districts with *Russia* in *Europe*.

(C) *White Russia*, in this empire, must not be confounded with the country of the same name in *Lithuania*. As for *Red Russia* it belongs to *Poland*. In order to understand the origin of these names, it may be proper to observe, that it is a custom among the eastern people to distinguish countries by the epithets *White* and *Black*; and that they give the former to the most extensive and fertile, and the latter to the least and poorest territories (1). In this sense all the *Tartars*, *Calmucks*, and *Chinese*, call the *Russian* monarch *Tzagan Zaar*, that is, the *White-Czar*; and, as *Marcus Paulus* observes (2), *White* was formerly the cham of *Tartary*'s favourite colour, as it

still is that of the *Chinese* emperor, when he appears in state as cham of *Tartary*; for as emperor of *China* he wears pale yellow. The *Tartars* commonly call all residences *White* cities; and in *Russia* itself they call the crown-lands, and those of the nobility that are free from taxes and contributions, *White Lands*; and on the contrary, they call all farms and grounds in cities that pay taxes, *Black* grounds. They also call the peasants and lower sort of people, *Cxorni Ludi*, *black* or mean people; because *black* is a colour not esteemed in *Russia*.

(D) *Gorod*, in the *Russian* language, signifies a city or town.

(1) *Bushing's Geography*.

(2) *Libi* 1. c. 66.

S E C T. I.

RUSSIA in EUROPE.

Its boundaries.

THE eastern boundaries of this part of the *Russian* empire are the same with the limits between *Europe* and *Asia*; but these are not easily ascertained. All that can be said with any certainty, is, that the river *Don* has always been considered as the southern boundary; that the kingdoms of *Asiracan* and *Kasan* are deemed a part of *Asia*; and that the *Wercoturian* mountains have been generally allowed to divide *Russia* from *Siberia*.

Rivers.

THE chief rivers that water *European Russia*, are the *Volga*, the *Don*, the *Dwina*, and the *Dnieper* or *Danapris*.

The Wolga.

THE *Wolga*, in *Latin* *Volga*, was formerly known by the name of *Rha*, and is at present termed by the *Tartars*, *Atel*, *Edel*, or *Idel*, which signifies the *Great River*. It rises in the forest of *Wokonski*, and is one of the largest rivers in the world; for it runs near two thousand miles, before it falls into the *Caspian* sea. The country bordering upon it is in general fertile, and though not sufficiently cultivated, by reason of the frequent incursions of the *Tartars*, yet the soil spontaneously produces esculent herbs of all sorts, particularly asparagus of an extraordinary size and goodness. Most of the *Russian* oaks grow in the parts watered by this river, which is navigable, even for large vessels, quite up to *Twer*, a town little more than eighty miles from its source. In the months of *May* and *June* this river is so swelled by the melting of the snow and ice, as to occasion great inundations. The masters of ships bound for *Asiracan*, through the river *Wolga*, take care to avail themselves of this season; as it affords them an opportunity not only of sailing safely over the shallows, but likewise over several flat islands, which then lie at a considerable depth under water. The trees upon its banks are often rooted up by the rapidity of the current, and the anchors of vessels are so often entangled with them, that it is necessary to cut away the cables. The beluga, a fish about eight or ten feet long, and preferable to the sturgeon, is found in great plenty in this river. The *Occa*, *Camia*, and several other rivers of note, run into it, and it discharges itself into the *Caspian* sea, through several channels, which form a great many islands.

The Don.

THE *Don*, in *Latin* *Tanais*, and by the *Tartars* called *Tuna* or *Duna*, was ranked by the ancients among the most famous rivers, and looked upon as the boundary between *Europe* and *Asia*. Its source is near *Tula*, in the *Iwano Osero*, or *St. John's*

John's Lake. Its course is at first from north to south, and after its junction with the *Sesna*, near *Nova Pawlowaskaia*, in the *Woronese* government, from west to east; and in several large windings it runs again from north to south. It divides at last into three channels, which separate from each other below *Czerkaskoi*, and fall into the *Palus Mæotis*, near *Lutik* and *Afow*. Its waters are not very wholesome, being thick and chalky. This river is very shallow in the summer, and full of sand-banks: but it affords plenty of fish. The *Don*, in its course, approaches so near to the *Wolga*, that, in one part, the distance between them is but 140 wersts, or about 80 *English* miles: and if the *Lawla* and *Camishinka*, the former of which runs into the *Don*, and the latter into the *Wolga*, were rendered navigable, the distance between the two rivers would be then scarcely four wersts; and they might easily be united by opening a canal from one to the other. It seems, however, that *Peter the Great* did not think this project practicable.

THE *Dwina*, in *Latin* *Duina*, is a very large river. The name implies double, it being formed by the conflux of the rivers *Sukona* and *Yug*, at *Ustiaga*. The two branches into which this river divides itself near *Archangel*, fall into the *White Sea*. It is the opinion of some, that an ancient temple stood upon its bank, in which was an idol called *Selataia Baba*, or the *Golden Matron*. This deity was worshipped under the name of *Yumala*, not only by the inhabitants of the country, but also by the *Greek* and *Scythian* merchants, who resided near the *Dnieper* and *Black Sea*, and used to travel hither to trade and pay their adorations to the idol. Others place that temple on the *Patsbora*, and others again on the river *Oby*: this last indeed seems the most likely; but the whole is very uncertain. Care must be taken not to confound this river with the *Duina* or *Duna*, a river of *Poland*, which rises likewise in *Russia*.

THE *Dnieper* or *Danapris*, in *Latin* *Borysphenes*, rises from a morass in the forest of *Woleonsk*, about ninety miles above *Smolensk*. After many windings through *Lithuania*, *Little Russia*, the country of the *Zaporo-Cossacks*, and a tract inhabited by the *Nagaian Tartars* of *Crimea*, it forms a *Liman*, or marshy lake, of sixty wersts in length, from two to ten in breadth; and then loses itself in the *Black Sea*, between *Oczacow* and *Kinkurn*. The banks on each side are generally high, and the soil exceeding rich: but in summer the water is unwholesome. Notwithstanding the *Dnieper* has thirteen water-falls, within the space of sixty wersts; yet in spring, during the land-floods, empty vessels may be hauled over

them, This river is so full of islands, till it arrives at the *Liman* near its mouth, that all the intervals do not amount to thirty *English* miles. It abounds with sturgeon, sterled, carp, pyke, *karauß*, and several other sorts of fish. The only bridge over the *Dnieper* is a float-bridge at *Kiew*, 1638 paces long. Towards the end of *September*, this bridge is taken down, in order to make a free passage for the cakes of ice; and in the spring it is put up again. Upon this river are numbers of mills erected in boats, every one being allowed the liberty of building such.

Lakes. THE principal lakes in this part of *Russia*, are the *Peipus*, *Ladoga*, and *Onega*.

*The Pei-
pus lake.* THE *Peipus* lake in *Livonia*, called by the *Russians* *Tshudskoe Osero*, is between forty and fifty miles in length, and about thirty in breadth. It abounds with fish, and runs into the gulph of *Finland* by the river *Narva*. This lake has a communication with that of *Pleskau*, which is called in the *Russian* tongue *Prowskoe Osero* (E).

*The lake
Ladoga,
and its
famous
canal.* The famous lake of *Ladoga*, between the gulph of *Finland* and the lake *Onega*, is near an hundred miles in length, and seventy in breadth. It is thought to be the largest in *Europe*, and is supposed to surpass any other for plenty of fish, among which are likewise seals or sea-dogs.

Ladoga is full of quick-sands, which being moved from one place to another by frequent storms, cause several shelves along its coasts, that often prove destructive to the flat-bottomed vessels of the *Russians*. This induced *Peter the Great* to cause a canal of 304 wersts in length (near 70 *English* miles) 70 feet in breadth, and 10 or 11 feet deep, to be dug, at a vast expence, from the south-west extremity of this lake in *Ingria* and *Novogrod*, and carried, with the necessary windings, from *Schlusselfburg*, at the mouth of the river *Neva*, which is the outlet of the lake of *Ladoga*, to *New Ladoga* on the river *Wolcow*. This work was begun in the year 1718, and though prosecuted with vigour, was not accomplished till 1732, in the reign of the empress *Anne*.

THIS canal at first reached no farther than the village of *Cabona*, upon a river of the same name, at the distance of 44 wersts from *Schlusselfburg*, and where the vessels sailed into the lake; for which purpose the sluice is still kept up there. The canal has twenty-five sluices: the rivers *Lipka*, *Nafsia*, *Izeldika*, *Latus*, and *Cabona*, run into it, and likewise two smaller streams, whose names we know not, and upon which

(E) *Osero*, in the *Russian* language, signifies a lake.

stand

and two villages. At the distance of every werst (F) along this canal, is a pillar, shewing the number of wersts, &c. A regiment of soldiers is constantly employed to keep the canal in repair, and to this end they are quartered at several places along its banks. It is covered, during the summer, with vessels and floats passing from the *Wolcow* to the *Neva*, which last issues from the lake *Ladoga*. These ships pay toll in proportion to their cargo; but several, to avoid the expence as well as the fatigue of drawing their vessels or floats along the canal, chuse rather to venture upon the lake. The islands *Sarcow*, *Selenicy*, *Kirwet*, and *Tinow*, which lie in the lake, and are inhabited by fishermen, are seen from this canal.

THE lake *Onega*, betwixt the lake *Ladoga* and the *White The lake Sea*, has a communication with the former, by means of the *Onega* river *Swir*. It extends about 180 wersts in length, and 80 in breadth. Seals are frequently seen in it, though it is a fresh-water lake. A plan was laid before *Peter the Great*, for opening a passage from the lake *Onega* to *Belozero*, or the *White Lake*, by uniting the rivers *Wytegra* and *Rousha*. But the death of the czar prevented the execution of this design.

WE shall now describe the eight governments, of which the several districts are looked upon as parts of *Russia Proper*, and then proceed to those acquired from the crown of *Sweden*.

I. The Government of NOVOGROD

INCLUDES the duchy of *Novogrod*, or island of *Great No-* *The go-*
vogrod, which the *Russians* conquered in the year 1478. In *vernment*
this country lies the *Ozero-Ilmen*, or *Ilmen lake*, out of which *of Novo-*
runs the river *Wolcow*; and in this province are the sources *grod.*
of the great rivers *Volga*, *Dnieper*, and the *Polish Duina*. *Its lakes*
Peter the Great caused a canal to be cut between the rivers *and rivers.*
Twerza and *Msta*, near the town of *Wischni-Wolotsbok*; by *Canal be-*
which means there is a communication between the *Caspian* *tween the*
sea (through the rivers *Volga*, *Twerza*, and *Msta*) and the *Twerza*
Ilmen lake; from thence is a passage for ships, through the *and Msta.*
river *Wolcow*, into the lake of *Ladoga*, and from the latter
down the *Neva* into the *Baltic*.

THE government of *Novogrod* is divided into five circles *Divisions,*
or districts, viz. the circle of *Novogrod*, called by the *Russians*
Novogorodskai Uiezd (G); the province of *Pleskow*; the pro-
vince of *Welikoluk*, called by the *Russians* *Welikoluzskaia Pro-*

(F) A *werst* is equal to 3500 *district, less than a province, and*
English feet; and 104 $\frac{1}{2}$ *wersts* *more extensive than a stan, a*
are equal to a degree of the e- *wolost, or a pogost, which are*
quator. *subdivisions of a uiezd.*

(G) A *Uiezd* is a circle or

vinciua; the province of *Twer*; and the province of *Belofero*, in the *Russian* language *Beloferstaia Provinciua*.

The most remarkable places in the circle of *NOVOGROD* are *Novograd Weliki* (A), or *Great Novograd*, a very ancient, large, and formerly famous city, situate upon the *Wolcow*, where that river runs out of the *Ilmen* lake. It is the capital of the government of *Novograd*, the seat of the governor, an archbishopric, and a place of some trade. It was first built by the *Slavonians*, in the ninth century, and improved by the *Waregerian* prince *Rurik*, for his place of residence. *Novograd* was a celebrated staple of the *Hanse Towns* till 1494, and grew so powerful as to give rise to this phrase, *Can any one withstand God and Novograd?* But by falling frequently into the hands of enemies, being plundered of its riches by the czar *Iwan Basilowitz*, and having undergone many dreadful conflagrations, it is now so greatly reduced, that it scarce retains the least vestige of its former grandeur. The churches and convents are the only objects in it that merit attention, the rest of the town consisting solely of small wooden houses. Its fortifications are old walls, and deep moats. The old *Russian* writers call this city *Holmgards*.

St. Antony's convent, on the river *Wolcow*, about two wersts from *Novograd*, is the principal monastery in the country. *St. Antony*, its founder, died and was buried there, in the year 1147. Besides his monument, his pious votaries devoutly shew a mill-stone, upon which, they gravely say, he sailed from *Rome* to this place.

Nowaia Ladoga, or *New Ladoga*, between the lake and the canal of that name, which last here joins the river *Wolcow*. This small town is the residence of a waiwode, and was for the most part peopled from *Old Ladoga*, which is now entirely ruined.

Wysni Wolosbok, a considerable village upon the *Twerza*, which is here united to the *Msta* by a canal. It was consumed by fire in 1748 and 1753; but has since been rebuilt, and is now inhabited by seafaring people.

Stolbowa, a village near the *Tikma*, remarkable for the peace concluded there between *Russia* and *Sweden* in 1617.

In the province of *PLESKOW* are,

Pskow, or *Plskow*, a strong provincial town on the river *Welika*, which, besides its being an episcopal see, is a

(A) *Węleko*, *węlekaia*, *walikajie*, in the *Russian* language, signifies great.

place of considerable trade, and consequently populous. It held out a siege against the *Poles* in 1581.

Pesterskoi, a convent, famous for having been besieged by the knights of *Livonia*. It derives its name from certain subterraneous passages in its neighbourhood, which are commonly reported to have a communication with those of *Kieva*.

THE provincial town of *Velikie Luki*, in the province of *WELIKOLUK* gives title to the archbishop of *Novogrod*.

IN the province of *TWER*, from which the emperors of *Russia* take one of their titles, stands the city of *Twer*, an archiepiscopal see, a place of considerable trade for corn, and formerly the residence of several great dukes and princes. It lies on both sides of the *Walga*, at the influx of the river *Twerza*.

Cholm, once the residence of the sovereign of the country, who was descended from the royal family of *Twer*, is now a very inconsiderable place.

The province of BELOZERO

Had formerly its own princes, being an appenage of the great ducal family.

THE only place of note in it, is *Belesero*, the provincial town, now situated on the west, but said to have stood formerly on the north-side of the lake of the same name, when, in 862, *Sineus*, a *Waregarian* prince, resided there.

II. The Government of ARCHANGEL

Is divided into the circles of *Cola*, *Dwina*, *Kewrol*, *Moson*, *Pustosersk*, *Tarensk*, *Solwytshegotsk*, *Usting*, *Wasbok*, *Totma*, *Wologda*, and *Galitsk*.

IN the circle of *Kola*, and near a town of the same name, stands the famous convent of *Peshenskoi*, of which we shall have occasion to speak hereafter.

Usting Weliki is an archbishop's see, in the circle of *Usting*, and a place of considerable trade, for which it lies very convenient, having a communication by water with *Archangel* and *Wologda*.

THE city of *Wologda*, in the circle, and upon a river of the same name, is an archiepiscopal see, and was once a place of great trade, which has been ruined by the rise of *Archangel*.

Archangel, the capital of this government, and an episcopal see, lies in 64 deg. 34 min. north latitude, on the river *Dwina*, about 75 wersts from the *White Sea*. Its buildings

The government
of Archangel.
Its divisions,
and principal places.

The History of Russia.

buildings are all of wood, after the *Russian* manner, except the *Gostinnai Dwor*, or merchants exchange, which is of stone. This city, before the great increase of *Petersburg*, was a place of very considerable trade, the foundation of which was laid by the *English*, so early as the reign of *Iwan Basilewitsz* (A).

THE other circles in this province contain no place worth noticing here.

Russian
Lapland.

THE western part of this government, bordering upon the *Icy Sea*, includes about a third part of *Lapland*; the other two-thirds of which belong to *Sweden* and *Denmark*. This country is very large; occupying near eight degrees of longitude, and extending from the *Polar Circle* to the *North Cape*. Its inhabitants were confusedly known to the ancients, under the name of *Troglodytes*, and northern pigmies; appellations well suited to their stature, which seldom exceeds, or even equals, four feet, and to their living in caves. They are, as they then were, swarthy; though the other northern nations are fair; almost all little, whilst their neighbours, and the inhabitants of *Iceland*, under the *Polar Circle*, are tall: they are nimble and robust; covered with a hard thick skin, which enables them the better to resist the cold; and have remarkably small hands and feet, as if intended for climbing over their rocky country, which they are so passionately fond of as not to be able to live elsewhere, and which none but themselves would inhabit. *Olaus*, and

(A) Captain *Chancellor*, being in search of the north-east passage, in 1533, discovered the port of *Archangel* (so called from a small convent and chapel, dedicated to St. *Michael* the archangel, the only buildings then on that desert spot) and sailed up the *Dwina*, till he came to *Wologda*, from whence he went over land to *Moscow*, where he delivered a letter from *Edward VI.* to the czar, who received it favourably, and granted the *English* licence to trade, upon their paying very easy duties: a method it were, perhaps, to be wished all nations would follow. The advantages they reaped from this commerce soon prompted other

nations, and particularly the *Dutch*, to put in for a share of it. However, the *English* still preserved their superiority, and their privileges were renewed by *Peter the Great*, with the limitation of their sending their goods only to *Moscow*. Though the port of *Archangel* is frozen up during seven months of the year, the *Russians*, after their acquaintance with the *English*, found their account better in sending their goods thither than to *Great Novogrod*, which used before to be their principal mart; and the trade of *Archangel* continued to flourish, till *Peter I.* opened a new channel to his subjects, by means of the *Baltic* sea.

others

others who have copied him, tell us, that these people were originally *Finns*, who retired into *Lapland*, where their stature degenerated. But why, as *M. de Voltaire* observes^b, when they were moving, did they not chuse a less northern land, where life would have been more comfortable to them? Why are their features, make, complexion, entirely different from their ancestors? It would, perhaps, be just as right to say, that the grass which grows in *Lapland* comes from the grass of *Denmark*, and that the fish peculiar to their lakes come from the fish of *Sweden*. It is highly probable that the *Laplanders* are original natives of the land they now dwell in, as their animals are also a production of that country, and that nature has made them for each other.

THOSE of them who live towards *Finland* have adopted some expressions of their neighbours, which happens to all people. But when two nations give absolutely different names to things which they constantly use, to objects which they always see; a strong presumption lies, that neither of those people is a colony of the other. The *Finns* call a bear *karu*, and the *Laplanders* call it *muriet*. The sun, in the *Finlandish* tongue, is called *auringa*, and the *Laplanders* name it *beve*. The inhabitants of *Finland* and of *Swedish Lapland* worshipped formerly an idol, to which they gave the appellation of *Jumulac*; and since the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, to whom they owe the name of *Lutherans*, they call *JESUS CHRIST* the son of *Jumulac*. The *Russian Laplanders* are now deemed members of the *Greek church*: but those of them that lie straggling towards the farther mountains of the *North Cape*, content themselves with worshipping a god under rude and uncouth representations.

THESE *Laplanders*, whose number is but small, have but very few ideas, and are happy in not having more, for then they would have new wants which they would not be able to satisfy. They are long-lived, little subject to illness, and drink scarce any thing but water in the coldest of climates. The custom which has been imputed to them, of desiring strangers to honour their wives and daughters with their embraces, proceeds probably from their opinion of the superior merit of those strangers, whom they think qualified to correct the defects of their breed. The virtuous *Lacedaemonians* did the same. Jealousy and the laws hinder other men from lending their wives; but the *Laplanders* were almost without laws, and probably were not jealous.

^b Hist. de l'emp. de Russie, tom. i. p. 16.

Samoy-
edes.

IN this country are also great numbers of *Samoyedes*, whose nation, indeed, extends very far along the coast of the *Frozen Ocean* and *Ice Sea*. But those that live in the government of *Archangel* are quite separated from the rest of their tribe, and, in a manner, excluded from any intercourse with them. They have also a different dialect, though they agree perfectly in their religion and customs. They are all very poor, simple, and undesigning: but their tawny complexion, longish eyes, and puffed cheeks, make them appear very disagreeable to strangers. In size and make they resemble the *Laplanders*; but they are not of the same race. Like them, they use rein-deer to draw their sledges, they know not what bread is, and they live in huts and caverns: but, in other respects, nature has distinguished this species of men very visibly from that of the *Laplanders*. The upper jaw of the *Samoyedes* is more prominent, advancing as far as their nose; and their ears are higher. Neither men nor women, among them, have any hair but upon the head, and their nipples are as black as jet. The *Laplanders* are not particularised by any of these signs. There are many more species of men than is generally thought^c. Those of the *Samoyedes* and that of the *Hottentots* seem to be the two extremes of the continent; and if we attend to the black breasts of the *Samoyede* women, and the apron which nature has given to the *Hottentots*, and which reaches half way down their thighs, we shall have some idea of the varieties of the human race; varieties unknown in our cities, where people are scarcely acquainted with any thing, but just what is about them.

THE *Samoyedes* have very little knowledge of a supreme being, but pay their adoration to mis-shapen wooden images of men, beasts, fishes, birds, &c. They also worship the heads of beasts of prey, particularly those of bears, which they put up in the woods, and fervently pray to; that being an animal of which they are extremely afraid. They acknowledge a good and a bad principle: and indeed the horrid climate in which they live seems, in some measure, to excuse that belief, so ancient among so many people, and so natural to the ignorant and unfortunate. Their priests, whom they call *shamanns* or *kodesniks*, are chosen from amongst such as are most advanced in years; and they imagine that these men can reveal to them the will of their gods, foretel future events, and perform all kinds of magi-

^c Id. *ibid.* p. 38.

cal operations. Neither theft nor murder is ever heard of among them : being almost without passions, they are without injustice. They have not even in their language any term to express vice and virtue. Their extreme simplicity has not yet allowed them to form abstruse notions. Instinct alone directs them : and this is, perhaps, an incontestable proof that men love justice by instinct, when their fatal passions do not overpower them.

THEIR marriages are attended with no other ceremony than merely an agreement between the parties. Most of them have but one wife ; though polygamy is not prohibited among them. Like the *Ostjaks*, they call their new-born children by the name of the first animal they meet ; or if they first happen to meet a relation, he generally names the child.

THE *Samoyedes*, male and female, are clothed alike ; and as they are equally disagreeable in their features, and the men, as we observed before, have no beards, it is somewhat difficult to distinguish one sex from the other. Their winter-dress is made of rein-deer skin, with the hairy side outwards ; and generally the cap, coat, gloves, breeches, and stockings are sewed together, so that the whole suit makes but one piece. In summer they dress themselves with fish-skins ; and, instead of thread, they use the nerves of wild beasts cut into long filaments.

THEY all subsist by hunting and fishing ; the flesh of rein-deer, bears, seals, or sea-dogs, fowls, dried fish, and turneps, being their usual food. They sometimes boil their flesh-meats, but more commonly eat them raw ; which has made some, unjustly, call them *Man-eaters*, and accuse them of devouring their deceased friends, and prisoners taken in war. They eat even the raw entrails of any beast, according to *Ysbrant Ides* and *Le Brun*. Their hunting-weapons are bows and arrows, and javelins pointed with bone ; though they have also some darts bearded with iron. When they find it difficult to subsist in one place, they immediately remove to another. Their summer-huts are made of nothing but the bark of birch-trees ; but in winter they are covered with skins of rein-deer. Their whole substance consists in tents, cloaths, and rein-deer.

TILL the reign of the czar *Iwan Basilowitz*, the only magistrate among them was the oldest man in the family or village, to whom the rest were subject. But in the reign of that prince, in the year 1563, one *Anika Stroganow*, a man of substance and of some consequence in his country, which was near *Archangel*, observing that these people came yearly down

down a river which falls into the *Dwina*, with exceeding fine furs, ordered his son and some of his servants to follow them to their homes, and bring him word who they were, and where they lived. They did so; and on their return *Anika* reported to the government what he had discovered. Some of these savages were afterwards carried to *Moscow*, where every thing filled them with admiration. They looked upon the czar as their god, and readily agreed that all their countrymen should pay him a yearly tribute of two fables apiece. Colonies were soon established, and forts erected, beyond the *Oby* and the *Irtis*: and in 1595, a *Cosak* was sent, with a party of soldiers and a few cannon, who conquered their country, as *Cortex* subdued *Mexico*. By degrees the habitable places were occupied by *Russian* governors, troops, and traders, and the *Russian* laws were introduced. The *Samoyedes* made two attempts to shake off the yoke, but were soon reduced. Their furs, which they dispose of to the *Russians* for trifles, are the finest in the whole empire.

The government of Moscow. Its division,

III. *The Government of Moscow,*

THE most populous and best-cultivated part of the whole empire, in the center of which it lies, is divided into eleven circles, viz. *Kostroma*, *Yaroslavl* (formerly a principality), *Uglitsk*, *Pereaslav-Salesk* (or the duchy of *Rostrow*), *Yuriew*, *Susdal*, *Wolodimer* (which is a duchy), *Pereaslav-Riasanskoi*, *Kaluga*, *Tula*, and *Moscow*.

and principal places.

THE principal places in this government are,

In the circle of *Yaroslavl*, a town of the same name, famous for having been the residence of the unfortunate *Ernest-John* duke of *Courland*. It is also remarkable for its manufactures of linen, flowered woollen stuffs, and *yachte*, or *Russian* leather.

In the circle of *Pereaslav-Salesk*, the city of *Rostrow*, an archiepiscopal see.

In the circle of *Susdal*, the city of *Susdal*, a bishop's see, and the place where *Peter I.* confined his first wife *Eudoxia Feodorowna*, in the convent of *St. Basil*, after he had divorced her.

In the circle of *Wolodimer*, from which the czar takes one of his titles, the provincial town of *Wolodimer*, formerly one of the seats of the great dukes: and

In the circle of *Moscow*, the city of *Moscow*, or, as the *Russians* write it, *Moskwa*, the ancient capital of the *Russian* empire, and residence of the czars. It derives its name from the river *Moskwa*, which runs on the south-side of it; and

and was founded in the year 1156; or at least it appears to have been a city in 1175^d (A). It lies in a fine fertile plain, in a round situation, formed by the winding of the river, and is about twenty-four *English* miles in circuit. The *Russians* say it was formerly twice as large. Some of its houses are well-built, but in general they are very mean. The streets are wide, and well laid out, but dirty, some of them not being paved. The number of churches in this city is computed at sixteen hundred, eleven of which are cathedrals, and two hundred and seventy one parish-churches. The rest belong to convents. This city is divided into four circles, which lie one within another.

THE interior circle is the *Kremlin*, which is both a palace and a fortress, built no longer ago than the fourteenth century^e, so little ancient are the cities in *Russia*, by *Italian* architects, in the *Gothic* taste, which was then in fashion. There are nine cathedrals in this part of the city; in one of which, St. *Michael's* church, the remains of the *Russian* sovereigns, and of their male descendants, are interred: those of their consorts, and the princesses, are deposited in the convent of *Tibudow*. The whole of this circle is surrounded with deep moats and ramparts, and with very high and thick walls, flanked with six towers, and planted with cannon.

In the second circle, called *Kitaigorod*, or the *Chinese* town, is, among many spacious buildings, the famous chief dispensary, from which the whole empire is served with medicines, and where all the gallipots and other vessels are of fine porcelaine, decorated with the imperial arms. Before the time of *Peter the Great* there was not a physician in the whole *Russian* empire, except the czar's, and not one apothecary. One side of this circle lies towards the *Kremlin*; another is surrounded by the river *Moskwa*; a third by the *Neglina*; and the fourth is inclosed by a wall which runs from the *Neglina* to the *Moskwa*.

In the third circle, which surrounds the former, and is called *Belgorod*, that is, the *White Town*, from a white wall with which it is encompassed, is, among several other markets, one in which are sold new wooden houses, which

* BUSCHING.

* VOLTAIRE.

(A) M. de Voltaire does not allow it to have existed, even in the thirteenth century, of any thing more than huts, peopled

by unhappy fugitives from the oppression of the race of *Gengis-Kan*.

may

may be taken to pieces, and put together again where the purchaser pleases.

IN the fourth circle, which is called *Simlanoigorod*, that is, a town surrounded with ramparts of earth, and which incloses the three preceding parts, is an university, founded by *M. de Showalow*, chamberlain to the present empress, in the year 1755, a mathematical school, and an observatory, a cloth-manufactory, a magazine for provisions and forage, a mint, and an artillery-arsenal.

THESE four circles are surrounded with vast suburbs, called *Slobodas*, near the western of which is the old castle of *Preobrazhenskoi*, from whence the first regiment of guards derives its name.

THE whole number of the inhabitants of this city is thought to be near five hundred thousand.

ABOUT sixty wersts from *Moscow* lies the famous convent of *Troitz*, or the *Trinity*, a quadrangular Gothic building, surrounded with walls, ramparts, and moats, and always garrisoned by a company of soldiers. This convent, the richest of any in all *Russia*, having no less than 120,000 peasants who are its vassals, was the place where *Peter I.* took shelter after narrowly escaping the hands of the *Strelitzes*, who had been spirited up against him by his half-sister *Sophia*. It has been an ancient custom for the sovereign of the *Russian* empire to go a pilgrimage to this place.

The government
of Nischnei-Novogrod.
Its divisions
and inhabitants.

IV. *The Government of NISCHNEI-NOVOGROD,*

Which includes the circles of *Nischnei-Novogrod*, *Balacna*, *Arsimas*, and *Kasimow*.

IN the circle of *Nischnei-Novogrod* lies the city of *Nischnei-Novogrod*, an archbishop's see, a place of great trade, and very rich; but extremely damaged by a fire in 1715, in which some thousands of its inhabitants perished. It was built by the great duke *Jurü* or *George Wsewoloditsh*, in the year 1222, and was the appenage and place of residence of several of the petty *Russian* princes.

THIS government is chiefly inhabited by the following tribes:

THE *Mordunians*, *Morduans*, or *Morduats*, whose language resembles the *Finlandish* dialect.

THE *Tsheremissians*, distinguished into the *Logowoi*, who inhabit the plain on the left-side of the *Wolga*, and the *Nagornoi*, who live among the mountains on the right-side of that river. The former belong to this government, but the latter chiefly to that of *Kasan*. They seem to have no religion but that of nature. Their chief sacrificing priest they call

call *Yagush*, and under him is another stiled *Mushan*. Their language is neither that of the *Tartars* nor that of the *Russians*. Many of these people have been baptized.

THE *Tshuwassians*, dispersed through this and the government of *Kasan*. In the district of *Tshebaxar* they exceed and *Tshuwassians*. eighteen thousand souls; in that of *Husmademianski* they are above ten thousand; in the territory of *Sirilsgorod* they amount at least to twelve thousand; and in that of *Suyask* to sixty thousand; but in the district of *Kokhsaisk* they do not exceed four hundred. They worship, as they say, one God, *Their* whom they call *Tora*; they also consider the sun as a kind *worship*. of divinity, and pay their adoration to that luminary. They have several other subordinate deities, which they say hold the same rank with the saints of the *Russians*. Every village has its own idol, which is erected in a square place, consecrated and inclosed with pallisades. Their devotions are performed near a fire, where they offer a sheep to the idol, and hang up the skin as a trophy in honour of it. The person who performs this sacrifice, and to whom they have recourse in every difficulty, is stiled *Yumasse*; and both sexes are capable of this religious office. Great numbers of these pagans have been baptized, and in all the *Russian* towns in the districts where they live, schools have been erected for the instruction of their youth in the principles of the christian religion, in order to qualify them to be missionaries among their own tribe.

V. The Government of SMOLENSK,

CONTAINING *White Russia*, properly so called, was ceded by *Poland* to *Russia*, as a duchy, by the treaty of *Andrussow*, concluded in 1667, and confirmed in 1686.

The government of Smolensk.

THE most remarkable places in this government are,

Smolensk, its capital, a large town, well defended with fortifications, on the river *Dnieper*. It is the governor's residence, a bishop's see, a place of considerable trade, and is recorded in history as the subject of many disputes between the *Poles* and *Russians*, during which it was frequently besieged, and taken by both parties.

Andrussow, a village between the towns of *Smolensk* and *Mstislaw*, close by the river *Harodna*, is famous for the treaty of peace concluded there betwixt *Russia* and *Poland* in 1667.

VI. The Government of KIEW.

THIS government is a part of *Little Russia*, and is inhabited by the *Cossaks*, which word implies irregular troops of horse.

The government of Kiew, inhabited by the

THE *Cossaks* are divided into *European* and *Asiatic*.

The *European Cossaks* consist of,

Their va-
rious
names.

1. THE *Zaporog-Cossaks*, who dwell below the cataract of the *Dnieper*, some on the side next to *Russia*, and others on the opposite side of that river. The latter are subdivided into *Sieibian* or *Lower Cossaks*, and *Upper Cossaks*. Most of these are subject to the *Russians*.

2. THE *Biegored-Cossaks*; and,

3. A part of the *Don-Cossaks*. Both these are under the *Russian* government.

The *Asiatic Cossaks* are,

1. THE rest of the *Don-Cossaks*.

2. THE *Grebir-Cossaks*.

3. THE *Yait-Cossaks*.

4. THE *Western Calmucks*, who, retiring from those that inhabited the south borders of *Siberia* under *Yaiuki-Can*, settled upon the *Volga*, and are dependent upon *Russia*.

Some ac-
count of
them.

THE *Cossaks*, as appears from *Constantine Porphyrogenetes*, were known by that name ever since the 948th year of Christ. They dwelt upon mount *Caucasus*, in the place now called *Cabarady*, and were reduced to the *Russian* dominion by prince *Mstislav*, in the year 1021. The *Polish* writers describe the *Cossaks* as a strange race of men; but this may be chiefly owing to national prejudice. They reproach them in particular with being a mixed rabble. It is true indeed, that many *Russians*, *Poles*, and others, who could not live at home, have, at different times, been admitted among the *Cossaks*; but the latter, abstracted from these fugitives, must have been an ancient and well-governed nation.

Zaporog-
Cossaks.

TOWARDS the beginning of the sixteenth century, the *Zaporog-Cossaks* fixed their habitations on the spacious plains that extend along the banks of the *Dnieper*. They had undergone considerable hardships from the incursions of the *Tartars*, for which they afterwards found means to avenge themselves in an ample manner. The *Poles*, being sensible how serviceable the *Cossaks* might be in defending them from the ravages of the *Tartars*, and even of the *Russians*, proposed to them terms of alliance. In 1562, they solemnly took them under their protection, and engaged to pay them an annual subsidy; in return for which, the *Cossaks* were to keep on foot a sufficient body of troops for the defence of the *Polish* dominions. With a view to bind them still more strongly by ties of interest, the *Poles* gave them the whole country between the rivers *Dnieper* and *Niester*, and the borders of *Tartary*. The *Cossaks* applied themselves with great industry to the cultivation of this fertile spot; so that
in

in a short time it was interspersed with large towns and handsome villages. Besides this, they continually harassed the *Turks*, and did them great damage by their incursions; and in order to prevent the latter from pursuing them, or making reprisals, they possessed themselves of several small islands in the *Dnieper*, where they kept their magazines, &c. The *Hettman*, or general of the *Cosaks*, was not in the least subordinate to the field-marshal of *Poland*; but acted in concert with him as an ally, and not as a subject of that republic. But this alliance, though of such manifest advantage to both parties, was not of long duration. The *Poles*, seeing the vast improvements made by the *Cosaks* in the country they had given up to them, became envious of them, and actually made an attempt to bring them into subjection. The *Cosaks*, fired with indignation at such an unexpected requital of their services, applied themselves for protection and redress both to *Russia* and the *Ottoman Porte*. The result of this was a long and bloody war, which, during the 16th and 17th centuries, was renewed from time to time, with the utmost animosity and fury. In the years 1587, 1596, 1630, 1637, and 1638, the *Poles* were generally victorious; but in 1648 the *Cosaks* gained great advantages over them, and the next year came to an accommodation, in which they not only preserved their old immunities, but obtained additional privileges. The result of all was, that these *Cosaks* remained under the protection of *Russia*; and, as their former country was entirely laid waste in the late wars, they settled in the *Russian Ukraine*, upon receiving formal assurances from the court of *Russia*, that no alteration should be made in their political constitution, and that no taxes whatever should be laid upon them. The *Cosaks*, on the other hand, were always to keep in readiness a good body of troops for the service of *Russia*: but, in the year 1708, *Mazeppa*, their *Hettman* or chief, went over from the *Russians* to the *Swedes*; upon which *Peter I.* resolved to prevent such revolts for the future. To this end, after the battle of *Pultawa*, he sent a strong detachment into the above-mentioned little islands in the *Dnieper*, whither the *Cosaks* had fled, with their wives and children, and all their effects; and ordered them all to be put to the sword without distinction, and the plunder to be divided among his soldiers. He likewise sent a great number of men into their country, and caused several thousands of the *Cosaks* to be carried to the coasts of the *Baltic*, where they were put to all sorts of hard labour; and by that means he, in a manner, extirpated them. On the death of their last *Hettman*, in 1722, that office was abolished; but it was restored

The History of Russia.

again in 1750, when they chose for their *Hettman* count *Kirila Grigoriewitsch Rasumowsky*, a *Russian* nobleman of great distinction, whose election was approved of by the empress *Elizabeth*.

WHAT distinguishes the *Zaporog-Cosaks* from all other people, is, that they never suffer any woman in their settlements, as the *Amazons* are said not to have suffered any men among them. The women of these *Cosaks* live in other islands of the *Dnieper*. They never marry, nor have any family: all their male children are inrolled as soldiers, and the females are left with their mothers. The brother often has children by his sister, and the father by his daughter. They know no laws but those which custom has introduced, founded on their natural wants; tho' they have among them some priests of the *Greek* persuasion. They serve in the armies as irregulars; and woe to those who fall into their hands^a.

THE country of these *Cosaks*, who are an assemblage of ancient *Roxelans*, *Sarmatians*, and *Tartars*, is called the *Ocraine* or *Ukraine*. It lies upon the borders of *Russia* and *Poland*, *Little Tartary*, and *Turky* (A), and was anciently a part of *Scythia*. By virtue of the last treaty settled between *Russia* and *Poland*, in 1693, the latter remains in possession of all that part of the *Ukraine* which is situated on the west-side of the *Dnieper*, and is now but poorly cultivated. That on the east-side, inhabited by the *Cosaks*, is in a much better condition, and extends about 260 miles in length, and as many in breadth. It is one continued fertile plain, watered by a great number of fine rivers, diversified with pleasant woods, and yields such plenty of all sorts of grain, pulse, tobacco, honey, and wax, as to supply a great part of the *Russian* empire with those commodities. Its pastures are exceeding rich, and its cattle very large; but the inhabitants are greatly plagued by locusts, which infest this fine country. The houses in the *Ukraine* are like those of the *Russians*, mostly built with timber.

THE *Cosaks* are tall and well made, generally hawk-nosed, and of a good mein. They are hardy, vigorous, brave, and extremely jealous of what is most valuable in life, their liberty; fickle and wavering, but sociable, chearful, and sprightly. They are a very powerful people, and their forces consist wholly of cavalry. Their dialect is a com-

^a VOLTAIRE.

(A) The word *Ocraine*, or *Ukraine*, properly signifies a frontier.

pound

pound of the *Polish* and *Russian* language ; but the latter is the most predominant. They were formerly pagans or mahometans ; but upon their entering into the *Polish* service, they were baptized christians of the *Romish* communion ; and now, that they belong to *Russia*, they profess themselves members of the *Greek* church.

EACH of their towns, with the district belonging to it, is governed by an officer called *Ottomann*, or *Aitamann*.

THE *Don-Cosaks*, so called from their residence upon the Don-banks of the river *Don*, greatly resemble those already described. In the year 1559, when the czar *Iwan Basilowitz* was emperor of *Russia*, they voluntarily put themselves under his protection, and are at this time on a pretty equal footing with the other *Russian* subjects. They have several towns and villages, upon the banks of the *Don* ; but are prevented from extending themselves farther up the country, by the scarcity of fresh water and wood in many places. Their chief support is grazing and agriculture, and occasionally robbing and plundering, for which they want neither capacity nor inclination. Every town is governed by a magistrate called *Tamann* ; and the *Tamanns*, with their towns, are under the jurisdiction of two *Ottomanns*, who reside at *Tsherkasky*. The troops of these *Cosaks* likewise consist entirely of cavalry. In this country, all the towns and villages are fortified and encompassed with palisades, to defend them against the incursions of the *Calmuks* and *Kuban-Tartars*, with whom they are continually at war. The *Cosaks*, in general, are of great service to garrison-towns by way of defence, or to pursue an enemy ; but are not so good at regular attacks.

THE *Sietsh-Cosaks*, who are also called *Haidamacks*, have their particular *Hettman*. They inhabit the *Russian*, *Polish*, and *Turkish* dominions, along the banks of the *Dnieper*. Sietsh-Cosaks.

THE *Yaik-Cosaks* dwell on the south-side of the river *Yaik*, and upon the success of the *Russian* arms in the kingdom of *Astracan*, voluntarily submitted to them. In stature they greatly resemble the other *Cosaks* ; though, by their boorish manner of living, and inter-marriages with the *Tartars*, they have not the shape and air peculiar to the rest of their countrymen. Their natural dispositions and customs are, however, nearly the same. Husbandry, fishing, and feeding of cattle, are their principal employments, and, like the other tribes, they let slip no opportunity of making depredations on their neighbours. Their continual wars with the *Karakalpacs*, and the *Kasatbaia-Horda*, oblige them to keep their towns and villages in a state of defence. They are indeed subject to *Russian Waiwodes*, to whom they pay an annual

nual tribute in corn, wax, honey,* and cattle : but they have also their particular chiefs, who govern them according to their ancient customs. Notwithstanding that the generality of the *Yaik-Cosaks* profess the *Greek* religion, yet a great many reliques of mahometanism and paganism are still found among them. Being naturally bold and hardy, they make excellent soldiers ; and they are not so turbulent as the other *Cosaks*. They live entirely at peace with the *Calmuks*, and their other neighbours, and even maintain a commercial intercourse with them.

*Division
of the go-
vernment
of Kiew.*

THE government of *KIEW* is divided into the circles of *Starodub*, *Severien* or *Nesbin*, (formerly a duchy, ceded by the *Poles* to the *Russians* by the treaty of *Andrussow* in 1667) *Tshernigow* (formerly a duchy, and ceded also by the *Poles* to the *Russians* by the same treaty) *Kiew*, *Persieslaw*, *Priluki*, *Lubni*, *Mirgorod*, *Gaditsch*, *Pultawa*, and *Samara*.

THE places of most note in these circles are,

Starodub, declared a royal free city by the kings of *Poland*, and one of the four guarantee towns yielded as a security to the *Russians* by the *Poles*.

Kiew, or *Kiow*, formerly *Kisovia*, the capital of this government, said to owe its origin to *Kius*, a *Slavonian* prince ; and, according to the *Polish* writers, to have been built in the year 430 : but this account is not to be depended on. It was, at first, the residence of *Skold* and *Dir*, two celebrated *Waregarian* chiefs : but in the year 1037, the great duke *Jaroslav* declared it the capital of all *Russia* ; and it continued to be the residence of the great dukes till the twelfth century. Afterwards it fell into the hands of the *Poles*, who, by the treaty of *Andrussow*, in 1667, gave it up to the *Russians* for a certain term of years, and in 1686 ceded it for ever. While *Kiew* was subject to the *Poles*, the papists had a bishop there ; but it is now the see of a *Greek* archbishop, who is the principal of its university. In this town, which is the only one in all *Russia* where there are any remains of antiquity, are some *Greek* inscriptions twelve hundred years old, but not such as can throw any light upon the history of the people.

Pultawa, famous for the siege laid to it by the *Swedes* in 1709, and for the defeat of *Charles XII.* after which it fell into the hands of the *Russians*. It stands on the river *Worskla*, and is not a place of any great strength.

*The go-
vernment
of Bielo-*

VII. *The Government of BIELOGOROD,*

A PART of little *Russia*, inhabited by *Cosaks*, is one of the most fruitful provinces in this whole empire, and supplies

plies *Poland* with prodigious quantities of black cattle, well known by the name of *Ukraine* oxen. This province, and that of *Kiew*, are defended from the incursions of the *Crim Tartars* by lines and forts, which reach from the *Dnieper* to the *Don*.

THE government of *Bielogorod* includes the districts of *Ist divizion*, *Carkow*, *Sumyn*, *Kursk*, the circles of *Bielogorod*, *Wasion*, &c. *lukit*, and *Siewsk*, and the province of *Orel*.

Its capital, formerly called *Sarkel*, now *Bielogorod*, stands on the river *Donex*, was built in the year 990 by the great duke *Wladimir*, and is an archbishop's see.

VIII. The Government of WORONESH and ASOW

INCLUDES the districts of *Woronesh*, *Idez*, *Shtatzk*, *Tam-* *berow*, *Korotziak*, and *Bachmut*. Its principal places are, *Woronesh*, a bishop's see, and the residence of the *Statthalter* or governor. It lies upon the narrow, but very deep river of the same name, and most of its streets are laid with beams of timber, instead of a stone-pavement. Here first large ships of war, in order to maintain his sovereignty over the *Black Sea*; and at the same time he made another dock-yard at *Tawrow*, a small town on the same river. The vessels built at this last were chiefly gallies and barks, which were employed in the war against the *Turks*.

Asow, a celebrated and important fortress, and once a town of considerable trade, but now demolished. Near this place, which lies in the district of *Bachmut*, the *Greeks*, many centuries ago, built the city of *Tanais*, which was very famous for its trade, and, from time to time, underwent many vicissitudes. The *Genoese*, who settled a trade with *Russia* soon after captain *Chancellor's* discovery of *Archangel*, became masters of this place in the beginning of the thirteenth century, and gave it the name of *Tana*, or *Catana* (A). From the *Genoese* it fell into the hands of the *Turks*, lost its trade, and became an inconsiderable town. In 1637, it was taken by the *Cosaks*; who defended it against the *Turks* in 1641, and the next year set fire to it, and blew it up. The *Turks* rebuilt it, with strong fortifications: the *Russians* laid claim to it in 1672, and took it in 1696; but by the treaty of the *Pruth* in 1711, it was restored to the *Turks*. In 1736, the *Russians* became masters of *Asow*; but by

(A) The *Tartars*, who were very powerful in these parts, seem to have been in possession of it long before; for there are *Asow* coins yet extant, on which is the name of the *Takiampsi-Kan*. *Busching*.

the treaty concluded at *Belgrade* in 1739, they were obliged to relinquish, and entirely destroy the place°. Such were the various turns of fortune which beset this important fortress.

THE *Don-Cosaks* are the most numerous part of the inhabitants of the government of *Woronesh* and *Asow*. Their *Ottomann*, or chief, resides chiefly at a town called *Tsherkassk*, built after the *Turkish* manner, on the river *Don*.

THESE eight governments include the country supposed always to have been ancient *Russia*.

The duchies of Livonia and Esthonia.

The Duchies of LIVONIA and ESTHONIA

WERE formerly possessed by three different nations, viz. the *Livonians*, *Lettonians*, and *Esthonians*; in consequence of which they were divided into *Liesland* or *Livonia*, *Letland* or *Lettonia*, and *Esland* or *Esthonia*; not to mention the duchies of *Courland* and *Semgallen*, which also made a part of this country, till the sixteenth century.

THE name of *Liesland* or *Livonia*, which properly belongs only to the district that lies along the *Duna*, has in time been applied also to *Lettonia*; and, generally speaking, the name *Livonia* comprehends the country properly so called, together with *Lettonia* and *Esthonia*: but, strictly, *Livonia* is only the south, and *Esthonia* is the north part of the country.

Their boundaries and extent. *Livonia*, including *Esthonia* and *Lettonia*, borders on *Courland*, the *Baltic*, the gulph of *Finland*, *Ingria*, *Russia Proper*, and *Poland*; and extends in length from north to south, from 150 to 200 miles, and in breadth from 130 to 160, exclusive of the islands belonging to it.

Air, soil, and produce. THIS country consists partly of woods and morasses, and partly in a very fruitful soil. The air is clear and healthy; and though the winter be severe and long, and the summer consequently short, yet the heat of the climate during this last season is such, that the grain sown immediately before or just after winter, ripens perfectly, and yields such plentiful crops, that *Livonia* is called the “Granary of the north (A).”

° BUSCHING Geog. & MULLER Sammlung Geschichte, vol. ii.

(A) In good years the *Livonians* export great quantities of rye and barley to *Holland*, *Spain*, and other parts. Before the corn is threshed, they dry and harden it in kilns, heated by stoves or ovens; a method which does not in the least hurt it for sowing afterwards, or for making bread or malt. We find this practice much recommended by the celebrated M. *Dubamel* in his *Traité de la Conservation des Grains*.

It likewise produces abundance of flax, hemp, and lin-seed, reckoned the best of any; and exports great quantities of hides and leather. Its horned cattle, horses, and goats, are very numerous, and much esteemed: but its sheep are not extraordinary, their wool being coarse.

THE rivers which water this country are the *Duna*, the *River* *Da*, the *Embek*, the *Pernaw*, and others of less note. It has *and lakes*, also several lakes, as the *Peipus* lake, the *Werczer* lake, which is twenty-three miles in length and nine in breadth, the *Lugan* lake, &c. These, as well as the rivers, afford plenty of fine salmon and other fish. Turbots are likewise caught in the gulph of *Riga*, and a great part of the inhabitants subsist by their fisheries. Upon these coasts are taken prodigious shoals of stromlings, a species of herrings, which, when salted, are the ordinary food of the lower sort of people. A *Suede* has of late set on foot a pearl-fishery, and there are between forty and fifty rivulets and lakes in *Esthonia* and *Livonia* where it is carried on: but the former yields more pearls than the latter, which almost equal the oriental in size and clearness.

THIS country was formerly over-run with vast forests of oak, fir, pine, and birch trees: but the great quantities of timber used in building houses and other structures, almost all of which are of wood, as well in the towns as villages, and the making of the harbour of *Roderwyck*, together with what the inhabitants have cut down in order to clear their lands for tillage, have thinned them considerably, and thereby helped to free this country from numbers of wild beasts, with which it used formerly to be exceedingly infested.

THE roads and highways in *Livonia* are kept in good repair, and at the end of every *Russian* werst, a red pillar is erected, on which is marked the number of wersts from one town to another. The country-inns are very mean; but the post-houses have every thing in good order. The usual way of travelling in winter, is in sledges.

THIS country was formerly interspersed with many towns *Some ac-* and villages; but they have been so destroyed by the wars *count of* and commotions, which *Livonia* has experienced, that *the coun-* scarcely any thing more than the ruins of them now remain. *tries.*

In many countries, a traveller passes through more towns in a journey of fifty or threescore miles, than in all this vast extent of land. To the same cause, among several others, may likewise be ascribed the indigence of the *Livonian* peasants, who are obliged to carry to their lords whatever corn they intend for sale, and to take of them in return,

iron,

iron, salt, tobacco, and such other things as they have occasion for, charged at an exorbitant rate. These lords afterwards distil spirits from it, which they vend; or send it to the sea-ports, where they dispose of it to the best advantage.

Their inhabitants,

A much greater number of people might doubtless be maintained in *Livonia* than it has at present; for it has been extremely depopulated by war, pestilence, and famine. Their number may be partly ascertained by the following method: The estates in *Livonia* are taxed according to the number of *Hakes*, that is, of men fit for labour, between the age of fifteen and fifty; five of these being reckoned to a *Hake*. Now the peasants of *Livonia* are said to consist of no more than 5000 *Hakes*, which amount to 25,000 labouring men: an inconsiderable number for so extensive a province.

BESIDES inhabitants who are descended from the *Germans*, *Livonia* contains great numbers of *Estonians* and *Lettonians*, people of a very different extraction and language; though their manners and customs are pretty much the same. The *Estonians*, from their similarity of speech, and other circumstances, seem to be derived from the same stock with the *Finlanders*. The *Lettonians*, both from their name and language, seem to have sprung from that of the *Lithuanians*, who were composed of a variety of *Sarmatian* tribes. The *Livonians* call both these *Undeutschen*, that is, people who are not *Germans*. Their stature seldom exceeds the middle size; but they are vigorous and hardy, enduring cold and heat, and undergoing the greatest fatigue and labour with alacrity. Their houses are very mean, and the rooms quite black with smoke, owing to their making their fires in the middle of them. They are all vassals, or rather slaves to their lords, who may treat them as they please, provided they do not kill them. They are chiefly employed in agriculture, grazing, and fishing; have a natural genius for mechanics, though there are few artificers among them; are much addicted to drunkenness, and indulge many superstitious practices in private. There are also many *Russians* in this country. The languages usually spoken here are the *German*, the *Russian*, the *Swedish*, the *Finlandish*, the *Lettonian* and *Estonian* tongues. Most of the inhabitants of *Livonia* are *Lutherans*; but the *Calvinists*, papists, and members of the *Greek* church, residing among them, are indulged with the free exercise of their religion. Their nobility, who are very numerous, and mostly of foreign extraction, being descended from such families as came anciently into *Livonia*, with the king of *Denmark*, or removed thither from different parts of *Germany*, particularly *Lower Saxony*, together with some *Swedes* and *Poles*,

Poles, have, in general, always chosen a military life. Those who are otherwise inclined, who chuse to reside upon their estates, and make improvements in agriculture, are commonly invested with civil and juridical employments; and of this class are governors, prefects, land-marshal provincial, and *Hake* judges, &c. They have no reason to complain of having fallen under the dominions of *Russia*; all their rights and privileges have been since confirmed to them, and the estates which the crown of *Sweden* had re-assumed having also been restored to the former feudatories.

A diet or provincial assembly is held for *Esthonia* once in three years, at *Reval*; in which one of the chief of the nobility, who is equal to a land-marshal, is elected by vote, and at the expiration of his office he is intitled, on the first vacancy, to the post of *land-rath*, or provincial counsellor. All matters relative to the public utility are discussed in this diet, and out of it a committee is appointed, in which the *land-raths* have a seat. The diet is convened by the chief of the nobility, on any important occasion: but it is never held at *Riga*, without leave from the court of *Russia*; which being obtained, a land-marshal is chosen, whose business is chiefly restricted to the affairs under the consideration of the diet.

ALL the parishes in *Esthonia*, which are only forty in number, from whence we may judge of their extent, are ^{and go-} subject to the nobility in point of ecclesiastical jurisdiction. ^{vernment.} They are divided into provostships, according to the circles in which they lie. The consistory of nobles is composed of a president, who is a land-rath, provosts, the preachers at the cathedral of *Reval*, and some other assessors. Here is also a supreme spiritual court of appeals, which consists of some of the clergy, land-raths and nobles.

Livonia, or the general government of *Riga*, contains upwards of an hundred and twenty parishes, which are likewise under the jurisdiction of a consistory of nobles, and a general superintendant, who resides at *Riga*, where the high consistory is held. Each circle has a governor in civil and ecclesiastical affairs, who must be a nobleman. The ministers of *Pernau*, *Dorpat*, and other little towns in *Livonia*, are subject to the general superintendant: but the cities of *Riga*, *Reval*, and *Narva*, have their consistories, which, as well as their magistracy, are independent of the nobility.

THE highest tribunal in *Esthonia* is called *The Government*, or *Supreme Provincial Court*, which assembles yearly for the administration of justice, about the middle of *January*, and continues sitting till *Easter*. It is composed of the governor, who

The History of Russia.

who is president, and twelve land-raths, who are all noble, and have the rank of major-general. The land-raths have power to fill up at their own discretion, the vacancies in their college, from among the nobility, without any licence or nomination from the crown; and the senior land-raths compose a government in the absence of the other governors. Subordinate to this tribunal are the *Mann-Gerichte* or inferior courts, and *Haken-Richter* or inferior judges. The *Haken-Richter* of every circle in *Esthonia* has two adjuncts or assistants. His post is to inspect the roads and bridges, to levy the money granted by the diet for the public service, and to hear and determine all debates concerning limits and other incidents. A *Mann-Gerichte*, of which there are three, is composed of a judge, two assessors, and a notary. These take cognizance of all criminal matters, and disputes of greater importance. An appeal lies from the *Haken-Richter* to the *Mann-Richter*. Both these are appointed by the college of land-raths, and must be of the rank of nobles, and continue in office for three years only. When they are changed, the adjuncts are generally made assessors, one of the assessors is appointed *Haken-Richter*, and the former *Haken-Richter* is preferred to the office of *Mann-Richter*. As these courts are held only at certain times, the plaintiffs are obliged to make application previously to the *General Government* or supreme council, where the governor, who is nominated by the crown, presides.

THE chief tribunal in the *General Government* of *Riga* or *Livonia*, is the *Hof Gericht*, or supreme court of judicature, which is appointed by the czarina. There are also twelve land-raths, or provincial counsellors; but only one of them has a seat in the *Hof-Gericht*. Each of these land-raths resides in his turn, at *Riga*, for a month, in order to preside in the college of the nobility, and takes cognizance of the same affairs, as the chief of the nobles does in *Esthonia*. The land-raths indeed elect the college; but their choice must be approved by the *Russian* court. The inferior courts are the *Land-Gericht*, and *Ordnungs-Gericht*, the members of which have their respective assessors; and they are on the same footing as the *Mann-Richter* and *Haken-Richter* in *Esthonia*. But from all these courts there lies an appeal to the college of judicature, established at *Petersburg* for the provinces of *Esthonia* and *Livonia*, and from that again to the senate, which is the supreme tribunal for the whole *Russian* empire.

Their ancient history

THE ancient history of these duchies is very dark and obscure. Paganism prevailed in them till the 12th century, when

when the christian religion was first introduced into *Livonia* by the following accident. In the year 1158, some *Bremen* merchants, bound to *Wisby* in *Gotbland*, being driven by stress of weather upon the coast of *Livonia*, landed at the mouth of the river *Duna*, near the *Baltic*. The inhabitants, who called themselves *Liven*, at first opposed their landing; but becoming more tractable by degrees, they at last traded with each other. After this the *Bremeners* came hither in greater numbers, to traffic with the natives, with whose consent they formed a little settlement about two leagues up the river. These new colonists soon increasing, brought with them from *Germany*, about the year 1186, one *Meinhard*, an *Augustine* monk, of the convent of *Segeberg* in *Wagria*, who having learned the language of the country, persuaded some of the *Livonians* to be baptized, and was soon after ordained bishop of *Kerkholm*, one of their towns, which was made an episcopal see. From this era a great many *German* families settled in *Livonia*; and about the same time, viz. in 1196, *Canute VI.* king of *Denmark*, made an expedition into *Esthonia*, and, after conquering that province, introduced christianity, built churches, and sent priests to officiate in them. With a view towards effecting the reduction of *Livonia*, bishop *Albert* instituted an order of knighthood, called the knights of Christ, and pope *Innocent III.* gave them the same statutes with the knights templars, and a cross and sword to be worn upon their coat by way of badge, at the same time enjoining them obedience to the bishop of *Riga*. In the year 1206, bishop *Albert* gave this order a grant of a third part of *Livonia*, with all the privileges of sovereignty; which was confirmed in 1210, by pope *Innocent III.* who exempted the knights from tythes, and other imposts. These knights were, by order of *Winno*, their first grand master, stiled *Fratres Ensisferi*, or sword-bearing knights. In 1231 they were united with the knights of the Teutonic order; and as their habit, when thus incorporated, was a white mantle with a black cross, they called themselves *Brothers of the Cross*; which humble title they, however, changed in 1382, into that of *Lords of the Cross*. In 1346, these knights purchased *Esthonia* of *Waldemar III.* king of *Denmark*, for 18,000 *Lothige* marks of silver (A). In 1521, the grand-master of the Teutonic order in *Prussia*, sold his chief jurisdiction in *Livonia*, to *Walter Plettenberg*, the general of the knights of the cross, who, together with

(A) A *Lothige* mark is nine ounces twelve penny-weights Troy weight.

The History of Russia:

the states of *Livonia*, were discharged from their oath of obedience to the Teutonic grand-master; and in a little time after the emperor *Charles V.* admitted them among the princes of the empire. By this privilege the *Livonians* had a right of appealing from their high court of judicature to the aulic council at *Spire*. About this time the reformation began to extend over the whole country.

TOWARDS the middle of the sixteenth century, the czar *Iwan Basilowitz* formed the design of subduing this country: upon which the city of *Reval*, and the duchy of *Estonia*, put themselves under the protection of *Sweden*: and upon these grounds was founded the claim of the crown of *Sweden* to *Livonia*, as well as the superior privileges which *Estonia* enjoyed beyond *Livonia*. *Gothard Ketlern*, grand-master of the order of the cross, surrendered *Livonia* to the king of *Poland*, as great duke of *Lithuania*; upon which it was annexed to the crown; solemnly resigned his command; and in 1561 was created the first duke of *Courland*, but was to hold this duchy as a fief of *Poland*. The *Poles* also got possession of *Riga* and *Lettonia*: immediately after which a dreadful war broke out betwixt *Russia*, *Sweden*, and *Poland*, and laid waste this country in particular, for a whole century, till, by the famous treaty of *Oliva*, in 1660, *Livonia* was given up by *Poland* to *Sweden*, and the *Duna* was agreed on as the boundary betwixt the *Swedish* and *Polish* dominions. This country was again miserably ravaged in the great northern war, which broke out in the beginning of the present century; till at last, by the treaty of *Nystadt*, concluded in the year 1721, *Sweden* agreed to cede *Livonia* for ever to *Russia*. Notwithstanding this, the *Swedes* attempted to recover it in 1741; but instead of succeeding, lost part of *Finland*, which they were obliged to give up to *Russia* by the treaty of *Abo*, concluded in 1743.

Their present division and principal places.

SINCE this country has been under the dominion of *Russia*, it has been divided into

1. The general government of *Riga*;
2. The general government of *Reval*; and,
3. The government of the city of *Narva*.

IX. The general Government of R I G A

CONTAINS *Lettonia*, to which the name of *Livonia* is also given in a restricted sense, and consists of the circles of *Riga*, *Wenden*, *Pernau*, *Dorpat*, and the province of *Oesel*.

THE principal places in this government are,

Riga, the capital not only of this circle and government, but also of the whole province. It stands upon the river

river *Duna*, and is said to have taken its name from a rivulet formerly called *Rige*, now *Rising*, which is almost dried up. This city, though populous, well fortified, and famed for its opulence and commerce, is not large. *Charles XII.* king of *Sweden*, in 1660, not only declared it the capital of the country, but ranked it next in degree to *Stockholm*, and honoured all the members of its council, and their successors, with the title of noble, whilst they sit in the council. The streets are narrow, but the houses are handsome, and built chiefly with stone, much in the same manner as those of the *Hanse* towns upon the *Baltic*. Its cathedral and churches, particularly those of the *Lutherans*, and its *gymnasium* or academy, are magnificent structures, and well endowed. Here are an ancient castle, a strong citadel, and two well-furnished arsenals, one stored with arms at the expence of the crown, the other at that of the city. Its fortifications have been much improved by its present possessors; and those next the sea have been enlarged with additional works. This city has an excellent harbour, carries on a good trade with *England*, *Holland*, and the *Hanse* towns, in summer; and in the winter-season it trafficks with the *Russian* provinces by means of sledges. Its privileges, which are very considerable, were confirmed by the empress *Anne*. The supreme court of judicature for *Livonia*, and the high consistory, are held in this city, which is also the residence of the governor and general superintendant. *Riga* was built in the year 1200, and shortly after encompassed with a wall. It has suffered greatly both by fires and sieges. Of the latter, the most considerable are those it sustained from the *Russians* in 1656; from the *Saxons* and *Poles* in 1700; and a second time from the *Russians* in 1710, when it was obliged to submit to *Peter the Great*.

Dunamünde, formerly a convent of *Cistercian* monks, founded by *Albert*, bishop of *Livonia*, in the year 1201, is now a noble fortification, at the mouth of the *Duna*, where the ships which sail out of the *Baltic* into that river, pay toll or custom. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1609 and 1618; and in 1700 by the *Saxons*, who gave it the name of *Augustsburg*. In 1701 it surrendered a third time to the *Swedes*, who by that means became masters of a fine train of artillery belonging to the *Saxons*; and in 1710 it was taken by the *Russians*.

Wenden, in the circle of that name, though once the seat of the grand-master of the Teutonic order, and a place of great importance, having had several diets held in it, is now reduced to a small mean town. When it was besieged

The History of Russia.

besieged and taken by the *Russians* in 1577, many of the inhabitants, dreading the savage cruelty of the *Russians*, blew themselves up with the castle.

Dorpat, or *Dorpt*, a town upon the river *Emba*, which is called by the *Esthonians*, *Emma Bögg*, or the *Mother-river*, stands in the circle of the same name, and is also called *Odempe*. It was built in the year 1030, by *Juri Järoslaw* *Wladimirwitz*, great duke of *Russia*, who gave it the name of *Juriew*; but the *Russians* continued in possession of it only to the year 1191. *Volgum*, great master of the knights of the cross, took *Dorpat* by storm in 1210; after which it was rebuilt by those knights, and made an episcopal see. It was formerly a member of the *Hanseatic* confederacy, a place of considerable trade, and a rich and beautiful town; but its wealth and beauty have, from time to time, fallen a prey to the frequent ravages of war. The last siege it sustained was in 1704, when it was taken by the *Russians*, and treated with great inhumanity. But its ruin was completed in 1708, when these savage conquerors carried away all its inhabitants as prisoners of war, and blew up its castle and fortifications. Those unhappy captives being afterwards allowed to return to their native place, rebuilt it, with wooden houses, as well as their wretched circumstances would permit; and since the peace of *Nystadt*, the number of its inhabitants has been so much increased, that it is rather more populous now than it was under the *Swedish* dominion; though it still makes a very melancholy appearance, almost all its ancient buildings still lying in ruins. *Gustavus Adolphus*, king of *Sweden*, founded an university at *Dorpat*, in the year 1632; but it was removed in 1699 to *Pernau*, where it soon decayed; and the building originally intended for it is now converted into a magazine.

THE province of *Oesel* includes the islands of *Oesel*, *Moen*, and *Runoe*. *Oesel* lies at the entrance of the gulf of *Riga*, is about sixty miles long, and from nine to twelve broad, and formerly belonged to the *Teutonic* order, who resigned it to the *Danes*. The *Danes*, at the peace of *Bremesebro*, ceded it to the *Swedes*; and these last, by the treaty of *Nystadt*, gave it up to *Russia*. *Moen* and *Runoe* are little islands of no sort of consequence.

X. *The general Government of REVAL*

INCLUDES the province of *Esthonia*. Its chief places are, *Reval*, which lies upon the *Baltic*, and once made no inconsiderable figure among the *Hanse* towns. Though not large, it is opulent, well fortified, and still has a flourishing trade.

trade. Both the town and castle were founded by *Waldemar II.* king of *Denmark*, in the year 1218; and received, as well as the whole duchy of *Esstbonia*, most of its privileges from the *Danish* monarch. The houses of this city, which are of brick, are, in general, well built; but the streets are narrow and irregular. Its harbour is convenient and spacious, and a part of the *Russian* fleet usually lies in it. *Reval* has its own arsenal, and maintains a number of matrosses and soldiers. Its tolls or customs, which are considerable, are divided between the magistracy and the crown. It was totally destroyed by fire in the year 1433; and in 1710 surrendered to *Peter the Great*, who not only confirmed its antient privileges, but restored several others which the crown of *Sweden* had taken away.

NEAR *Reval* lie the remains of the rich convent of *Marienhof*, which was demolished at the reformation. The building of this convent, which was begun in 1400, or 1407, took up twenty-nine years.

ABOUT thirty miles further, upon the same coast, lies *Rogerswick*, where *Peter I.* purposed to have made an excellent harbour; but it was not finished in his time. In 1746, the empress *Elizabeth* took a view of this place, and ordered the work begun by her father to be continued.

THE little triangular island of *Dagbo*, in the *Baltic*, is tolerably fertile. Each side of it is about twelve miles long.

THE city of *Narva*, upon the banks of a rapid river of the same name, which runs from the *Peipus* lake into the gulf of *Finland*, was built in the year 1224, in the reign of *Waldemar II.* king of *Denmark*. It is not large, but its houses are handsome; and its trade, particularly in flax, is very considerable. *Narva* has frequently felt the calamities of war. When closely pressed by the *Russians* in 1700, it was relieved by *Charles XII.* of *Sweden*; who, with an army greatly inferior to that of the *Russians*, entirely defeated the latter, and raised the siege. In 1704, it was again besieged by the *Russians*, and carried by assault; and since that time it has been a part of the *Russian* dominions, but with the full enjoyment of all its former rights and privileges; the *Russians* only reserving the right of appeal to the senate at *Petersburg*.

XI. INGRIA, which now constitutes the Government of PETERSBURG,

LIES between the gulf of *Finland*, *Carelia*, and *Russia*, properly so called; and is watered by the *Luga*, the *Sista*, the *Cowassa*, and the *Neva*, or *Neva*: which last is a broad river, rapid

rapid river, has its source in the lake *Ladoga*, and runs through the city of *Petersburg*, where it divides into several channels, and after a course of about forty miles, discharges itself into the gulf of *Finland*. This country is fertile, both in corn and pasture, and abounds in all kinds of game, particularly elks. The *Russians* had been in possession of this province so early as the thirteenth century; but were afterwards obliged to give it up to *Sweden*. They recovered it again in 1702; and it was confirmed to them, with their other conquests, by the treaty of *Nyßadt* in 1721, and that of *Abo* in 1743.

and principal
places.

THE most remarkable places in this government are, *Iwangorod*, or *John's-castle*, a strong fort, built by the great duke *Iwan Basilowitz*, in the year 1492, on the river *Narva*, close by the city of the same name.

Kronstadt, a good town, and admirable fortification, upon the island of *Retusari*, which is about four miles long, and one mile broad, and is called by the *Russians*, on account of its form, *Kotlinnoi-Ostrow*, or the *Kettle-island*. *Kronstadt* lies in the gulf of *Finland*, about eight leagues, by water, from *Petersburg*, and near two leagues from the coast of *Ingria*. It was built by *Peter I.* who also erected near it the strong fort of *Kronschloß*, in 1703, in the winter-season. That great prince embellished *Kronstadt* with a fine palace of stone; but it is now uninhabited, and, with several other handsome stone edifices, which make a grand appearance on the *Ingria* side, is falling to decay. The inhabitants of *Kronstadt* are a mixture of all nations, consisting of soldiers, sailors, and burghers; and amount to about twenty thousand souls. The town is defended by its own wall, on which several great guns are planted, and also by the citadel and fort of *Kronschloß*, which are at a very small distance from it, on the *Ingrian* shore. *Kronstadt* has three harbours, which are all large, safe, and commodious; but the fresh water in them is very prejudicial to ships. The harbour for merchantmen lies westward, and is very convenient; but that for ships of war, in which the greatest part of the *Russian* fleet is laid up, lies towards the east. The powder-magazine is built in the water in this harbour. The middle harbour is for other ships and yachts belonging to the crown. *Peter the Great* intended to fit up this place for the convenience of repairing his large men of war, by making a stone canal, of an extraordinary breadth and depth, with several docks in it. But this great work was not completed till the present reign. The canal alone is two wersts and fifty fathoms long; and from the outward sluice of the dock to the sea, is three

three hundred and fifty-eight *Russian*, or four hundred and seventeen *English* fathoms. The water in it is raised to the depth of twenty-four feet, by means of two large sluices. On the surface of the water, the canal, when full, is one hundred feet; and at the bottom from fifty-four to sixty-seven feet in breadth. The outward and inward walls of the canal, and the mole, are hewn out of a rock. At the end of the canal is a deep basin, lined with stone, which intersects the former at right angles, and is intended for a reservoir of the water of the canal, when the docks are to be cleared of it. This great and useful work is not to be paralleled: When the canal was first opened in 1752, it received the appellation of *Peter the First and the Great*; and at the mouth of it were erected two pyramids. On the north-side of the island of *Retusari*, the water is so shallow, as to be navigable only for small boats.

Kronschloß is a strong castle, built on a sand-bank in the sea, at the distance of a cannon-shot from the harbour of *Kronstadt*, towards *Ingria*. It was erected, as we have already observed, by *Peter I.* for the security of his conquests; and such improvements have been added to it since, that, like *Kronstadt*, it is justly called the bulwark of *Petersburg*. It is built in the form of a round tower, with three galleries, one above another, and is well provided with cannon on every side. All ships that sail to *Petersburg* are obliged to pass between this castle and *Kronstadt*, within reach of the cannon from both sides.

Oranienbaum, a fine palace on the continent, near the gulf of *Finland*, and directly facing *Kronstadt*, was built by prince *Menshikow*, and afterwards converted into an hospital for seamen: but it is now the summer-residence of the great duke. Nothing can be more delightful than the garden belonging to this seat.

Peterhof is an imperial palace on the coast of *Ingria*, where the present empress usually resides in summer. From the time of *Peter I.* no expence has been spared in adding to the natural beauties of this place, all the embellishments of art. The building itself cannot, indeed, boast of any great regularity; but its charming situation, the elegance of its gardens, adorned with fountains which eject prodigious columns of water to an amazing height, its grottos, double cascades, delightful groves, and many other beauties too numerous to recite, render it little inferior to the celebrated *Versailles*. The palace stands on a hill, about sixty feet high, and commands a most extensive prospect, diversified with noble views of the city of *Petersburg*, *Kronstadt*, and the sea. Among

the summer-houses belonging to this palace, is a very fine one, famed for its curious paintings, and distinguished by the name of *Mon Plaisir*, My Delight.

Strelin-Hof, or *Strelna-Musa*, is an imperial seat, built in the water, by Peter I. who intended to make it a superb palace, with a garden, a labyrinth, and other embellishments; but his plan has not yet been completed.

Elizabeth-Hoff, *Annen-Hoff*, and *Catharine-Hoff*, are also imperial residences on the river *Neva*. The last, which was the favourite seat of the empress *Catharine*, consists, properly, of two edifices, and stands in a wood, in one of the finest spots near *Petersburg*; but its low situation exposes it to frequent inundations.

St. Petersburg, situate in 59 degrees 57 minutes north latitude, is one of the capitals of the *Russian* empire, and an imperial residence. It lies partly on the continent in *Ingeria* and *Finland*, among thick woods, and partly on several islands, formed by the channels of the *Neva*, which divides itself into two main branches, called the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and many smaller streams, and by the rivers *Fontanka* and *Mojka*, besides several canals. The low and swampy soil in which it stands, has been considerably raised with trunks of trees, earth, and stone: its situation is nevertheless pleasant, and the air wholesome. The city is about six *English* miles in length, and nearly the same in breadth, and has neither wall nor gates. The number of its houses is computed at eight thousand, about six hundred of which are of stone; but the rest are built with timber, and, for the most part, in an irregular manner, after the *Russian* taste. There are about twenty *Russian* churches in *Petersburg*; and, which we may justly look upon as so many temples erected to toleration, and so many noble examples set to other nations, four *Lutheran* churches for the *Germans*, several *Calvinistical* for the *Swedes*, *Finlanders*, and *French* protestants, and others for the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Roman* catholics. The beginning and increase of this now flourishing metropolis were very extraordinary; for till the year 1703. the only buildings on the spot, where it now stands, were two small fishing huts; and *Peter the Great* having in that year taken *Nyenschanze* upon the river *Neva*, and made himself master of this country, its convenient situation for the *Baltic* trade determined him to build a town and fortress here; a design which he immediately began to put in execution, calling the town by his own name. It was at first intended only for a place of arms, to which all kinds of military stores might be conveniently brought from the interior parts
of

of the empire, in order to facilitate the carrying on of the war with *Sweden*. Both the public edifices and private houses were then built only with wood; the dock and the town had no other fortifications than a rampart of earth, nor were the streets paved; so that if the czar had been deprived of the place at that time, his loss would not have been great. But, shortly after, the victory at *Pultawa*, and the reduction of *Livonia*, inspiring him with hopes that he should be able to keep his conquests; influenced also by his fondness for maritime affairs, by a desire of perpetuating his name, an aversion to *Moscow*, where he had received much ill treatment in his youth, and, some add, the pleasure of mortifying the *Russians*, who were extremely attached to the city of *Moscow*, he began to think seriously of rendering *Petersburg* the capital of his empire; and accordingly ordered the castle to be built with stone, the admiralty to be walled-in with the same materials, all the buildings to be erected in a handsomer and more durable manner than before, and gardens to be laid out.

IN 1714 he removed the council to *Petersburg*, and handsome edifices were erected in a strait line, for the public offices, which were also translated thither in 1718. The principal families were likewise ordered to make this their place of residence, and to build houses here according to their abilities. This occasioned an irregularity in the buildings; for the situation of the town was not precisely fixed till the year 1721. The nobility and burghers had been directed to build their houses on the island of *Petersburg*; and not a few buildings, both public and private, were accordingly erected there. But afterwards the emperor resolved to have the whole town stand upon the island of *Wassili-Ostrow*. The streets were marked out, canals were dug, the island was to be defended by fifty-seven bastions, and the nobility had their houses to begin again; when the death of the czar put a stop to the execution of this design; and the new buildings then erected, have since been suffered to go to ruin.

THE *Russian* nobility expressed great reluctance to settle at *Petersburg*; nor is it to be wondered at, as they can neither live so cheap, nor so commodiously there, as they did at *Moscow*. The soil about *Petersburg* is not very fertile, so that provisions are brought to that city from a great distance, and must be paid for in ready money; which was no small inconvenience to the nobility, who were accustomed to subsist chiefly on the produce of their estates, and seldom abounded in money. Besides, *Moscow* seemed to them much fitter

for the imperial seat; being in the center of the empire, from whence justice might be more easily administered, and the national revenues be received and disbursed with greater conveniency and dispatch. They likewise thought that *Petersburg* stood too near the frontiers of *Sweden*. However, notwithstanding all these disadvantages, this city became large and splendid in the time of its founder, and has been so improved since, by his successors, that it is now ranked among the most elegant places in *Europe*.

THE river *Neva* is about 800 paces broad near *Petersburg*, but not every where proportionably deep; so that large merchant-ships are cleared at *Kronstadt*; but the men of war built at *Petersburg* are conveyed to *Kronstadt* by means of certain machines called *camels*. There is but one bridge over the *Neva*, which is built with large flat-bottomed boats, and joins the dock-yard to *Basili-Ostrow*. The *praams*, or lighters, which support the bridge, are laid across the river in spring, so as to make a safe and convenient passage. But they are taken away in autumn before the frost begins. The only communication between the other islands, even in summer, is either in boats or barks, which cross the water at stated times: but there are bridges over the *Moika*, the *Fontanka*, and the canals.

Petersburg-Island, called, by way of distinction, the island of *Old Petersburg*, is formed by the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and the *Newka*, and is upwards of two leagues in circuit. It is well peopled, but most of the houses upon it are very indifferent. Here is still to be seen the little wooden house built by order of *Peter the Great*, for his residence at the time that he arrived upon the spot where the city now stands: and, in order to perpetuate the remembrance of this remarkable circumstance, it is enclosed within a stone-wall, and has been covered with a new roof. On this island is likewise a horn-work belonging to the fort, which stands upon a little island in the middle of the *Neva*, and of the city, and is included under the general denomination of *Petersburg-island*. This fort, which is of an hexagonal form, and built with stone, according to the modern improvements in fortification, is planted with a great number of cannon. Under it are vaults or dungeons, commonly used as prisons. In the midst of it is an elegant church, where the remains of *Peter the Great*, his consort *Catherine*, and many others of that illustrious family, are deposited, in stately mausoleums. In the fine lofty tower belonging to this church, the spire of which is covered with gilt copper, is a fine set of bells with chimes, made in *Holland*, which play

play every twelve hours. Upon one of the bastions of this fort, opposite to the imperial palace, a flag is always hung out, according to the custom in *Holland*; which, on state-holidays, is exchanged for a finer, with the *Russian* eagle upon it: and on such festivals the bastions and curtains of the fort are finely illuminated with lamps. On the same bastion also, when the *Neva* is not frozen, a great gun is fired at the rising and setting of the sun, as a signal for the sailors. As this fort stands in the center of the town, it is not only a defence, but a great ornament to it. It serves likewise for a secure prison, and on an emergency may prove a convenient asylum to the sovereign.

Petersburg-Island is separated by the *Carrovvka* from another, called the *Apothecaries-Island*, which is about five or six miles in circumference, and contains about two hundred houses, besides the large physic-garden, where all kinds of *European* and *Asiatic* plants, roots, and trees, are cultivated in green-houses and other proper places. The other part of this island consists of a pleasant wood.

FROM the island of *Old Petersburg* you cross the *Little Neva* to that of *Wassli-Ostrow*, or *Basil's Island*, which is the largest of all these islands. It is surrounded by the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and lies towards *Kronstadt*. The greatest part of it is covered with woods, and the rest with buildings. It has twelve streets, very long and broad, running in a direct line; upon which account they are called *the lines*, and distinguished by numbers. These are, intersected at right angles by six cross streets, but are not paved. The vistas through these streets are very broad and beautiful at both extremities. The largest extends the whole length of the island, as far as the galley-harbour; but the smallest is not so long. Several large canals are cut through this island, particularly at the places where the buildings stand: but most of them being now gone to decay, those parts are little better than morasses. Adjoining to the hemp-warehouse, and opposite to *Petersburg-Island*, are the exchange, the custom-house, the pack-house, and the merchants' key. Contiguous to these are several large stone-buildings, belonging to the imperial academy of sciences, which *Peter I.* founded in 1724, and endowed with an annual revenue of 24,912 rubels. That monarch also designed to erect an academy of the polite arts: but as an estimate of the expences attending such an institution has not yet been made, the present empress *Elizabeth* has, in the mean time, augmented the former endowment to 53,298 rubels.

The History of Russia.

The academy is divided into two classes, viz. the academy properly so called, and the university. The members of the former are employed solely in finding out new inventions, or in improving the discoveries of others. They are properly styled *Academicians*; but are commonly called *Professors*. They are under no obligation to instruct youth, unless particular pupils are recommended to them, or they do it voluntarily for their own advantage. This academy is again subdivided into four classes; namely, 1. The astronomical and geographical class, 2. The physical class, whose province is to make improvements in botany, anatomy, and chemistry. 3. The physico-mathematical class, who study mechanics, civil and military architecture, and experimental philosophy. 4. The higher mathematical class, who solve questions and problems proposed by the other classes, and likewise such as are received from foreign countries. Besides the ten Ordinary, the academy has ten Extraordinary members, who are allowed a pension, which is not to exceed 200 rubels, for the trouble they are sometimes put to in elucidating difficult and important questions sent them by the academy. Every academician has an adjunct or assistant, who is under his care, and succeeds him in his place. The academy is governed by a president, but in such manner, that every thing is transacted under the auspices and direction of her imperial majesty. The president at this time is count *Kirila Grigorievitch Rasumovski*, hettman of the *Cosaks*. By the statutes of the academy three solemn meetings are to be held every year, and at each of these public assemblies a *Latin* and a *Russian* dissertation are to be read.

The university has its particular professors, who read lectures in the sciences, both in the *Russian* and *Latin* languages. No person is disqualified for being a professor on account of his religion; but he must not inculcate in his pupils any thing contrary to the doctrine of the *Greek* church. The students are instructed in poetry, *Greek* and *Latin*, arithmetic, drawing, geometry, and other branches of the mathematics, civil and ecclesiastical history, genealogy and heraldry, philosophy, and antiquity; but every pupil is not instructed in all these sciences, nor are youth of mean circumstances admitted into the university. In the year 1750 the number of students amounted to thirty, who were sent from different convents, and lived in one house, under the inspection of a professor. The college designed for the academy, which stands somewhat lower, was consumed by

fire in 1747, and has not yet been rebuilt. In the buildings belonging to the academy are, 1. The imperial library, which, as appears by the catalogue published in the year 1742, in three volumes *folios*, contains 2699 *folios*, 3410 *quartos*, and 2078 *folios* and *duodecimos*, amounting in all to 84987 volumes; besides 182 *Russian* manuscripts. 2. The *Museum*, containing natural and artificial curiosities, with a collection of physical, mathematical, and other instruments. 3. The printing-house. 4. The bookseller's shop. 5. The apartment for book-binding. 6. Another for letter-founding. 7. The engraving apartment. 8. The academy for painting. 9. The room where mathematical instruments are made. The famous copper-globe of *Gottorp*, which stood upon the tower of the academy, was almost consumed by fire, along with the tower, in 1747; but it has since been very skilfully repaired and beautified, at a vast expence, and rendered more accurate than before. After ascending a few steps, one enters this globe through a little door. Within it is a table with benches round it, on which a dozen persons may sit conveniently, and be turned round with the celestial globe, the outside of which is the terrestrial. Its diameter is eleven feet. It was brought hither from *Gottorp* in the year 1714, and now stands by itself in a stone-edifice. The *gymnasium* and *seminarium* belong also to the university.

The next remarkable place, in order, is the *theatrum pyrotechnicum*, or fire-work theatre, built on piles in the river *Neva*, opposite to the imperial winter-palace. Here is a long stone-building, appropriated to the state-colleges and offices.

Just beyond these stands the magnificent and spacious edifice, which was formerly prince *Menshikow's* palace, but is now the academy of the corps of cadets of noble families, and has received considerable additions, though it still wants a left wing. In 1731 the empress *Anna*, by advice of the field-marshal count *Munich*, issued a proclamation, by virtue of which all the young nobility, and officers sons, of *Russia* and *Lithuania*, were invited to *Petersburg*, where they were to be educated *gratis*, according to their rank, &c. In consequence of this ordinance, in the beginning of the year 1732, they made their appearance at *Petersburg*, and the above-mentioned palace was assigned for their dwelling. At that time the number of *Russian* cadets on this foundation was to be 240, and that of the *Germans* 120; which number was then indeed complete, besides some supernumeraries:

The History of Russia.

but it is now no longer so, particularly with respect to the *German* cadets, as, of late years, they have been obliged to engage, that they will never quit the *Russian* dominions, nor enter into foreign service. The *Germans* and *Russians*, intermixed together, lodge, three, four, five, seven, eight, or ten, in one apartment, under the inspection of a monitor, who is either a subaltern, or one of the senior cadets. At dinner they have three, and at supper two dishes served up; a captain and a lieutenant being always present. They form three companies, each of which ought to consist of 120 persons. Their present director, or governor in chief, is prince *Jussapow*: next to him is the *commandour*, who is a lieutenant-colonel, and under him is the major. Every company has a captain, a lieutenant-captain, a first and second lieutenant, ensign, serjeant-major, two serjeants, a capitaine d'armée, a quarter-master, a vice-ensign, four corporals, and eight exempts. The subaltern officers, and sometimes even the field-officers, are selected from among the cadets. They were formerly employed, during the whole summer, in the exercise of arms; but at present they are exercised only in *June*, and part of *July*; and that not after the *Prussian* manner, as heretofore, but according to the *Russian* discipline on foot. They are divided into grenadiers and musqueteers, though there are not many of the former. Every four hours, twelve men and three grenadiers, with a serjeant, corporal, and exempt, mount guard. Every two years they have two suits of cloaths; one for every day, the other to wear when they are on duty. Their uniform is green, with straw-coloured waistcoats; and the coats they wear upon duty are bordered with a narrow gold lace. They are also allowed two laced hats; the one for duty, the other for every day; three half upper shirts, trimmed with lawn at the bosoms, three pair of ruffled sleeves, three cravats, three under-shirts, two pair of spatterdashies once in two years; and three pair of shoes every year. Their hours for instruction are from seven to eleven in the morning, and from two to six in the afternoon: they are divided into classes, and are taught the *Russian*, *German*, *French* and *Latin* languages, with the following sciences, viz. mathematics, history, geography, ethics, politics, logic, civil law, and likewise dancing, fencing, riding, drawing, and other genteel exercises. According to the original plan, their education was to be entrusted to three professors of law, mathematics, history, and the *Russian* language; four adjuncts or assistants, and twenty-four masters; but some of these places are now vacant. There are also a riding-master and his assistant,

sistant, an equerry, and four grooms, with a stud of seventy or eighty horses, maintained on this foundation. The *Russian* cadets have their particular church, with two priests, two lecturers, one deacon, and two sextons; and the *German*s have a preacher, a chanter, and a sexton, with a church set apart for them, which is also frequented by many other *Lutherans* from the city. Divine service is performed in both churches morning and evening, and the *Russian* popes or priests generally preach a sermon. None are admitted into this corps under twelve years of age, and every cadet, according to the statutes, is to continue there five or six years. But several of them do not stay so long, and others continue longer in the academy. Some of these youths, who are intended for civil employments, are termed students, and are not instructed in any military exercises. The others, at their dismissal, are distributed among the regiments; the cadets as ensigns, the corporals as second lieutenants, the serjeants as serjeants-major, and the ensigns as first lieutenants. The corps is under the controul of the council of state, and the senate; and the annual expence of this foundation amounts to 65,000 rubels. The salary of the governor in chief is 1000 rubels, that of the colonel 1500, that of the major 700 rubels, and the rest in proportion. The professors and masters have apartments *gratis* in the house, to which belongs a very fine garden.

NEAR this academy is the bridge of boats over the *Neva*; and not far from thence is an academy for 360 sea-cadets. The galley-harbour lies a little lower down, towards *Kronstadt*. In sailing up the *Neva* from *Kronstadt*, one sees on the *Wafli-Ofrow*, which lies to the left, a very long row of near fifty elegant stone palaces, built by the *Russian* nobility, in the *Italian* taste, extending along the bank of the river, almost as far as the cadet-academy; but most of them are now empty, and falling to decay.

On the right-hand is the *Admiralty-side*, or *Admiralty-island*, which is surrounded by the rivers *Neva* and *Fontanka*; and from this island the bridge of boats is laid in the summer to *Wafli-Ofrow*, or *Basil's-island*. There is also a watch-tower at the mouth of the *Neva*, between these two islands. This is the most magnificent part of the city. A parchment-manufactory, the admiralty-victualling-office, the galley-dock where all the galleys are built, and the vast storehouses of timber for ship-building, lie on this island. Here are also a great number of handsome stone-houses, and elegant palaces along the river-side, reaching almost to the bridge of boats. The *English* factory have their place of worship

worship in this part, and behind it is *New Holland*, with the rope-walk. The admiralty, or dock-yard, is fortified with a wall and five bastions, planted with several guns; and all ships salute it upon their entrance into the harbour. There are always some men of war upon the stocks in this yard. The admiralty-tower, as well as that of the great church in the castle, is gilt at the top.

Not far from this is the imperial winter-palace, a large square building of three stories high; but the architecture is not extraordinary. Behind it is a spacious area, in which stands a noble equestrian statue of gilt brass, erected in honour of *Peter I.* Contiguous to this, upon the banks of the *Neva*, are several other palaces, among which is the old imperial winter-palace, many elegant stone-buildings, the new playhouse which is built with timber, and the delightful imperial summer-palace, which is also of wood, but one story high, and looks only like a pleasure-house. Behind this palace are several stone-buildings, for the officers, &c. belonging to the court. It has a very fine orangery, and a beautiful large garden, adorned with an admirable grotto, fountains, and other water-works, as well as a great number of valuable marble and alabaster statues brought from *Italy*; but not all equally well executed. Two of these statues, which stand near the grotto, and represent Faith and Religion, are greatly admired by the connoisseurs, for the appearance of the faces through thin transparent veils, which seem to cover them. This garden is also famous for a pleasant grove of oaks, which is not to be paralleled in all the *Russian* empire. The dock affords a double vista, one to the *Russian* church of the *Ascension*; the other is terminated by the convent of *St. Alexander Newski*. The magnificent buildings on both sides of the river *Fontanka* make also a very fine appearance from thence. The streets behind the admiralty, and through the fields behind the imperial summer-palace, are very grand and magnificent; but these are equalled, if not excelled, by the *Great* and *Little Morskoï*, and the *Million-street*, which are embellished with the most superb buildings. At the end of the *Million-street*, near the garden of the summer-palace, the emperor has a curious dispensary. In this part are likewise the imperial stables, and the dwellings of the officers belonging to them; the church of the *Swedish Finns*; the *German Lutheran* church, dedicated to *St. Peter*, which is an elegant structure, and the chief of the protestant ecclesiastical buildings; the church of the *German* and *French Calvinists*; the shops which, to the number of one hundred, lie in a strait line, and form a vista,

vista, where all sorts of goods are sold, no merchants being permitted to have shops in their houses; and lastly, two market-places full of shops, near which are the menagerie, the park, and the elephant-yard, where several of these animals are kept.

THE *Muscovite* side, which is properly the city, lies on the continent; and a part of it is very well built. In this quarter are the following remarkable places: the private dock; the court-victualling-office; the foundery on the *Neva*, in which great numbers of cannon and mortars are cast; the fire-work elaboratory; the aqueduct which supplies the fountains in the emperor's garden; the *German Lutheran* church, dedicated to St. *Anne*; three *Russian* churches, the pheasant-house; the *Italian* garden; the *Muscovite Femskoi*; the barracks for the horse-guards, together with the stables for their horses; and the convent of St. *Alexander Nevski*, which lies about five wersts from the castle, on the river *Neva*; and was built, in honour of that pious prince, in the form of an eagle, but is not yet completed. It contains above two hundred apartments. In the middle of the building stands a very large and beautiful church, which represents the eagle's body; the two towers form its neck and head; the spire, the imperial crown; and a small church on each side, the two wings. In this convent are deposited the pretended remains of that saint, for which the present empress *Elizabeth* ordered a silver shrine to be made, which lies on a superb monument, covered with silver plates of a considerable thickness.

LASTLY, on the *Wiburg* side, as it is called, are the following places of note, viz. St. *Samson's* church, with the *Russian* and *German* burial-places, the fugar-house, the land and sea-hospital, the hospital-church, the beer-brewers quarter, the *Dutch* beer-brewhouse, a rope-walk, the suburb called *Slaboda* (A) *Kofatschia*, a nursery of young oaks,

called

(A) Several *slobodes* contain handsome buildings, and are larger than many towns; but they are not fortified. Their inhabitants of them are traders, and have a particular magistrate, and a toll-place, or custom-house. — *Tamskii sloboda* are places where carriers generally live. — The *slobodes* in *Siberia* are inhabited by peasants, and may be accounted part of a circle, or *sloboda uiez*, as they include several parishes and villages; and in some of them there are *ostrogi*. *Sloboda*, in the province of *Tobolsk*, signifies a town surrounded with wooden walls, and there are few other fortifications in *Siberia*, except those of the city of *Tobolsk*. Indeed the only enemies the *Siberians* have to deal with are the *Bashkirians*, the *Kalmuks*, and the

Great and Little Ockla, a *Russian* church, and the ruins of the fort called *Nienfchanz*, which was taken and destroyed by *Peter I.* in 1703.

In this city are four dispensaries (B); and several manufactures for looking-glasses, gold and silver works, tapestry, &c. Its extensive commerce likewise renders *Petersburg* a place of great importance, for a vast number of ships from different maritime countries frequent this port; where they purchase the various commodities of *Russia*, and find a vent for all the goods they import, and for which there is a demand in this empire.

THE inhabitants of this large city, besides *Russians*, consist of all nations; so that a person hears a great variety of languages, and sees a great diversity of fashions and customs at *Petersburg*. The burghers or citizens, properly so called, do not exceed two hundred; but the place contains upwards of an hundred thousand souls. The splendor of the court is copied by the inhabitants in general; though all kinds of furniture and apparel, especially if made by foreign artificers, are very dear, and houses in a good situation sometimes bear a very high price in this city. Provisions, however, excepting wine, lemons, and oranges, and some other foreign articles, are very cheap here, though frequently brought, especially in winter, from the distance of several

the *Kasatshia-Horda*; and their wars may be looked upon as robberies rather than military expeditions, for they attack the villages on horseback, for the conveniency of carrying away the plunder immediately; so that the main point is to prevent them from breaking in. But little is to be feared from their weapons, which, for the most part, are only bows and arrows.

(B) All of which, as well as that at *Moscow*, belong to her imperial majesty, at whose expense they are supplied with drugs, which are distributed gratis to her fleet and army. A doctor of physic, styled the *Archiatre*, or physician in chief,

has the direction of them, with a considerable salary from the crown; and all the apothecaries are employed under him, and have pay proportionable. All other physicians (except the body-physician) and surgeons in the service, are under his jurisdiction, and, at all distances in the empire, are accountable to him. One of these dispensaries is for the household, another for the admiralty, a third for the castle, whence the army is supplied, and the fourth for the hospitals, where the sick and invalids are taken very good care of. Persons not in the service pay for medicines as they receive them, the profit of which accrues to her majesty (1).

(1) *Constitution, State and Regulation of the Church of Russia.*

hundred miles. The morals of the people, as is generally the case in all large cities, are very corrupt and depraved. The suspicious vigilance of the *Russian* government renders it necessary for a stranger to be very circumspect in his behaviour and words; though all possible liberty of conscience is granted to foreigners in religious matters, provided they do not say any thing against the *Greek* religion. The police of this city is good, and strictly executed.

IN summer, those who do not chuse to go about this extensive city on foot, either use their own carriages, which are almost absolutely necessary here, or else hire curricles or boats. As soon as the winter-season commences, near three thousand *Russians* repair to *Petersburg* with sledges, with which they stand in every street, and are so very cheap and convenient, that few people are observed to walk even about the town. A sledge and a horse may be hired for ten copeiks (C) (about five pence sterling) an hour, and in that space of time this carriage will go about seven or eight miles, the horse galloping all the way. The driver, who is called *Ishvosbik*, is distinguished by a number upon his back. Most housekeepers have their own sledges and horses, and persons of rank have likewise their postillion. When a person sets out from hence, in order to leave the country, he must be furnished with a pass, and advertise his name and intention of travelling in the public papers.

A SOUTH-WEST wind in autumn frequently lays great part of *Petersburg* under water.

AT about thirty wersts from *Petersburg* stands *Sarskoe-Salo*, an imperial palace, pleasantly situated, and embellished with a fine garden and park: and near *Pesad*, a mean little town at the entrance of the *Ladoga* canal, is another imperial palace, situated upon a small island in the *Neva*.

UPON another small island in the middle of the *Neva*, just where it runs out of the lake *Ladoga*, is the strong fortress of *Schlusfelburg*, which commands the shores on either side. It was formerly called *Oresbek*, or *Oreckowitz*; and in the *Swedish* language *Notteburg*, from the form of the island whereon it stands, which resembles a nut. But *Peter I.* having subdued it in the year 1702, changed the name of this fort to *Schlusfelburg*; that monarch esteeming it the key (*schlusfel*) of his conquests. Its walls are two fathoms and a half thick, and built in the old manner. In one angle of this fort is a small, but very strong castle. The *Russians* have improved

(C) The *copeik*, of which one hundred make a *rubel*, is equal to $\frac{1}{16}$ of a penny sterling.

The History of Russia.

this fort both within and without, and added to it several new works. It has undergone many sieges. When *Peter the Great* took it in 1702, he ordered two medals to be struck in commemoration of his success. On one of them is the following inscription :

Netteburgum, nunc Schlüsselburgum, post annos XC ab hoste recuperatum. Aërum d. 12 Octob. f. v. MDCCII.

“ *Netteburg*, now *Schlüsselburg*, recovered from the enemy “ after ninety years possession, on the 12th of *October* “ 1702.”

The late acquisitions of the *Russians* in *CARELIA*, which form the present

XII. Government of WIBURG,

*The go-
vernment
of Wi-
burg.
Its divi-
sions,*

INCLUDE a considerable portion of the great duchy of *Finland*, and consist of, 1. Part of *Finlandish Carelia*; 2. Part of *Kexholm*; and, 3. Part of *Sawolax*.

Carelia has often been a bone of contention between *Sweden* and *Russia*. In the year 1293 it fell under the *Swedish* dominion; but in 1338 part of it was given up to *Russia*. By the peace of *Nystadt*, concluded in 1721, a still greater part of this country was resigned to the *Russians*; the western part only being left in possession of the *Swedes*. After this, *Sweden* was obliged, by the treaty of *Abo*, to relinquish the fort of *Frederickshamn* and *Wilmannstrand*, with part of the parish of *Pythis*, which lies on the other side of the eastern branch of the river *Kymmene*.

Kexholm anciently belonged to the *Russians*, and was wrested from them by the *Swedes* in 1293 and 1580; but soon after recovered. The czar *Wassili Iwanowitz Shuiski* promised it to king *Charles IX.* of *Sweden*, in consideration of the assistance he gave him; but did not keep his word. *Gustavus Adolphus* revenged this affront, and compelled the czar *Michael Feoderowitz* to resign this country to him, at the peace of *Stolbow*. In 1721, the southern, and best part of it, together with the fortrefs of *Kexholm*, was restored to *Russia* by the treaty of *Nystadt*.

THE portion of *Sawolax*, which *Russia* now holds, consisting of the town of *Nyftot*, and a district of two miles round it, was ceded by the treaty of *Abo* in 1743.

*and prin-
cipal
places.*

THE principal places in those parts of these districts, which are possessed by the *Russians*, are *Wiburg*, *Wilmannstrand*, and *Frederickshamn*, in *Carelia*; *Kexholm*, or *Carlerogorod*,

fort, i. e. the fortress of *Carelia*, a strong place, built upon two small islands (the town on one, and the church on the other) at the influx of the river *Waxen* into the lake *Ladoga*, in the country of *Kexholm*; and in that of *Sawolax*, the town of *Nyssot*, called, in the *Finnish* language, *Sawotinna*, situate on the lake *Saima*. Its castle, which stands on a rock in a river near the town, and from which the latter derives its name, is extremely well fortified both by art and nature. In the year 1495, it baffled the attempts of *Russia*; but in 1714 was obliged to submit. It was restored to the *Swedes* at the peace of *Nyssadt*; but was receded to the *Russians* by the treaty of *Abo*.

Wiburg, by the *Finlanders* called *Somerlinde*, was formerly the capital of all *Carelia*, a bishop's see, and the bulwark of *Sweden* against *Russia*. It is situated on the gulph of *Finland*, and carries on a considerable trade. *Peter the Great* having taken this town by capitulation in the year 1710, improved its fortifications; which have been ever since kept in such good condition, that *Wiburg* may now be looked upon as the bulwark of *Russia* against *Sweden*.

Wilmannstrand stands on the lake *Saima*, and is called in the *Finnish* language *Lappi Wessii*, i. e. *Lapp* water. It had formerly the name of *Lap-strand*, was a considerable mart for tar, and the residence of a *Swedish* governor. On the 23d of *August* 1741, an obstinate battle was fought about a mile from this town, between 3000 *Swedes* and 16,000 *Russians*; but at last the former were obliged to yield to the superiority of numbers. After the victory, the *Russians* burnt *Wilmannstrand*, then fortified with a moat and wall, which have since been rebuilt.

Frederickshamn lies also on the gulph of *Finland*, on the spot where the town of *Wekelax*, which was burnt by the *Russians* in 1712, formerly stood. This place had a considerable trade, and was fortified by a castle built in 1722. But in the last war between the *Swedes* and *Russians*, it was burnt to the ground, and ceded to the latter. The limits betwixt the *Swedish* and *Russian* *Carelia*, were fixed near this place by the treaty of *Nyssadt*.

S E C T. II.

Description of ASIATIC RUSSIA.

THE *Russian* dominions in *Asia* make a considerable part of Great or *Asiatic* *Tartary*, and may be properly divided, in general, into the west and south parts of *Russian* *Tartary*, which *Russia* Mod. Hist. Vol. XXXV. E

which contain the governments of *Astracan*, *Orenburg*, and *Casjan*; and the northern and eastern parts of *Great Tartary*, in which is the government of *Siberia* (A).

Rivers. THE principal rivers in the *Asiatic* part of the *Russian* empire, are,

First, THOSE which run into the *Caspian* sea. These are,

The Wolga. 1. The *WOLGA*, which has been already described in our account of *European Russia*.

The Yaik. 2. The *YAIK*, formerly called *Rhymnus*, rises among the *Uralian* mountains, in latitude 54° , and longitude 87° , and after running a course of about 1000 wersts, empties itself by two channels into the *Caspian* sea, in latitude 47° , $30'$. and longitude 74° . It abounds with excellent fish, and has an extremely rapid current, but is very shallow in some places. The chief rivers which run into it, are the *Upper* and *Lower Kysyl*, and the *Sacmara*. Its banks, near the influx of this last river, are rocky; and near that of *Kysyl*, they are very high and mountainous. Opposite to the *Upper Kysyl* is a high mountain, from which loadstones are dug. But the farther one goes from this river, the more extensive are the plains; and the country is more level near the mouth of it, than about its source: though it is, for the most part, barren and sandy.

The Yem. 3. The *YEM*; or *Jemba*, as the *Russians* call it, is rapid, but very shallow, being hardly five feet deep at its mouth. Its waters are clear, and its banks fertile; but there are neither towns or villages upon the borders of it. The *Tartars* of the *Kasatsha Horda* dwell in tents and little huts on the west-side of this river, which empties itself into the *Caspian* sea.

(A) Under the name of *Tartary*, a part only of this vast tract is properly included; but custom has extended it to the whole country. This extensive region has, no less improperly, been called *Mungalia*; for it is uncertain whether the people who live more northerly or easterly, had ever any connections with these *Tartars* and *Mungaliens*. The *Yakuthians*, and the more remote nations, differ extremely from the *Tartars*, properly so called, in their customs

and manner of living. The country of the *Siberians* and *Ostiahs* came to be looked upon as a part of *Tartary*, because those nations had been conquered by the *Tartars*, or rather by the *Mungaliens*, who sent several colonies among them; or because it formerly belonged to the kingdom of *Great Tartary*, which was founded by *Jenghis* or *Zingir-Kan* (1). This distinction should be particularly observed with regard to *Russian Tartary*.

(1) *Besching. Geog. vol. I. p. 469.*

4. The GIHUN, which is also called by the several names *The Gi-*
of Amu, Amol, Amu-Daria, Midergius, Sheherbas, Nabar (A) *hun.*
 or simply *Roud Kanern*, that is, the great stream, was the
Oxus and *Baftrus* of the ancients, and formerly discharged it-
 self by two channels or mouths into the *Caspian* sea: but
 these are now become dry, and the stream has been diverted
 by art into the sea or lake of *Aral*. In the reign of *Cyrus*
 it was the boundary of the *Persian* monarchy, and is by some
 authors supposed to be the *Araxes* of the ancients. Its source
 is in the mountains of *Paropamisus*.

5. The SIHUN, which has always emptied itself into the *The Sihun.*
 lake of *Aral*, was formerly called *Alshash, Saert, Acsaert,*
Sir, Daria, Sirdergias, Faxartes, and Siris. The *Macedo-*
nians mistook it for the *Tanais*.

Secondly, THOSE which discharge themselves into the
Ice-Sea, which are,

1. THE large and famous river OB or OBY, which issues *The Oby.*
 from the *Altin* lake (called by the *Russians* *Teleskoi-Osero*) in la-
 titude 52°, and longitude 103°, 30'. Its name signifies *Great*;
 and accordingly in *Russia* it is often stiled the *Great River*.
 The *Calmuks* and *Tartars* call it *Umar*. Its stream is very
 large and smooth, its current being usually slow; and it is,
 in general, between 2 and 300 fathoms broad; though in
 some places it is much wider. It affords plenty of fish, and
 is navigable almost to the lake in which it springs. After a
 long winding course through a vast tract of land, in which it
 forms several islands, it empties itself in latitude 67°, and
 longitude 86°, into a bay, which, extending near 400 miles
 further, joins the *Ice Sea* in latitude 73, 30, and longitude
 90. The springs from which this river rises, are not very
 copious: but it receives in its course, the waters of a great
 number of considerable streams, conveyed to it by the
 large rivers *Catuna* (B), *Tsharish* and *Alai*, *Tshumysb*, *Tsheus*
 and *Sagarca*, *Tom* and *Tshulim* (C), *Ket*, *Tym* and *Wak* (D),
Jugan and *Irtis*, *Kafim* and *Sofwa*, besides several others of
 less note. Of those now mentioned, the *Tom* and the
Irtis are the most considerable.

(A) נַחַר or *Nabar*, in the
Hebrew tongue signifies a river.

(B) From the influx of this
 river, down to its mouth, it is
 called the *Oby*: but from the
Catma, up to its head, it is
 called the *Bi*.

(C) Which last is also called

Jiusi, and is formed by the con-
 flux of two streams called the
White and *Black Rivers*.

(D) Famous for the passage
 of ships, which sail through
 these rivers, and the *Yelagui*,
 into the *Jenisea*.

THE *Tom* is navigable as far as the town of *Kutnesk*. Its source is near the river *Abaken*, in latitude 53° , and its influx into the *Oby*, is in latitude 58° . It receives several rivulets in its course; but the *Condoma*, which runs into it, opposite to the town of *Kutnesk*, is a large river.

THE *Irtis*, or *Irtish*, rises in the country of the *Calmuks*, in latitude 46° , $30'$. and 103° . longitude, runs through the lake of *Saissan*, and after a long course, falls into the *Oby*, in 61° . of latitude, and 86° . of longitude. This river is full of islands, which are more visible in summer, when the water is low, than during the floods in spring. Some of these islands disappear from time to time, and new ones seem to supply their place. The depth of the *Irtis* is so remarkably variable, that ships can no longer pass where they formerly used to do; and on the other hand, those parts which were once shallow, have now a sufficient depth of water for vessels of burthen. Its water is light and clear, and abounds with fine fish, particularly sturgeon, the fat of which is reckoned a great delicacy by the inhabitants of this country. The *Irtis* receives, on each side, several rivers; the principal of which, after it has passed the fortress of *Ustkamenogorsk*, are, the *Ulba*, *Skulba*, *Uba*, *Zarguban*, *Tshernuia*, *Shelesenca*, *Tawgutshei*, *Om*, *Camysblowia*, *Tara*, *Shish*, *Tui*, *Ishim*, *Tobol*, and *Kondo*. Of these, the three last are the largest. The *Tobol*, in particular, which rises from several springs in latitude 52° . $30'$. and longitude 81° ; and falls into the *Irtis* in 58° . of latitude, and 86° . of longitude, is increased by the additional waters of the smaller, but by no means inconsiderable rivers *Ui*, *Ifet*, *Tura*, and *Tawda* (A); which also, in their turns, receive several lesser streams. The banks of the *Tobol* are so low, that the neighbouring country is subject to frequent inundations.

The Je-
nisei.

2. The *JENISEI*, or *JENISEA*, is little inferior to the *Oby*. The *Tartars* and *Moguls* call it *Keen*; but the

(A) The *Ifet* has its source in a lake, runs through the territory of *Catbrinenburg*, and after receiving the rivers *Sisert*, *Sinara*, *Tetsba*, *Mias*, and several small streams, discharges itself into the *Tobol* in latitude 57° . The *Tura* rises in the mountains of *Wercoturia*, in latitude 59° ; and, after receiving the waters of the *Salda*, *Tagil*, *Niza* (which is formed by the

Nieva and *Resb*, and enlarged by the *Irbis*) and the *Pyssma*, falls into the *Tobol*, in latitude 57° , $30'$. The *Tawda* rises about the latitude of 63° , and longitude 80° , and is formed by the conflux of the *Sofwa* and the *Lofwa*, and somewhat beyond the 59^{th} degree of latitude, and about the same degree of longitude, runs into the *Tobol*.

Ostiak

*Ostia*s give it the name of *Guck* or *Keses*, that is, the *Great River*. It is formed by the conflux of the two rivers *Ulu-Kem* and *Bri-Kem*, in latitude $51^{\circ} 30'$. and 111° . of longitude. From thence it runs almost due north; and in latitude 70° . and $103^{\circ} 30'$. longitude, forms a kind of bay, which contains several islands. This bay runs about $3^{\circ} 30'$. in length northward, in which latitude (that is to say, in seventy three degrees and a half) and the 100th degree of longitude, it at last joins the *Ice-Sea*. At the town of *Jeniseisk*; in autumn, when this river is lowest, the breadth of it at the surface of the water is 570; and in the spring, when it is highest, about 795 fathoms. The bottom of the *Jenisei* is stony and sandy, and the banks, especially on the east-side, are very mountainous and rocky. The fish in this river are good, and its stream for the most part is rapid; but this rapidity lessens gradually towards the mouth, so that at last it has hardly the appearance of a current. In that part of its course where it approaches the rivers *Dubtsches* and *Turukan*, it forms several islands between the towns of *Jeniseisk* and *Krasnoiarstk*; and, below the *Dubtsches*, it has some cataraacts; but is navigable from its mouth as far as the *Abakan*, and even higher up. Within a small distance from its source, the *Jenisei* receives the rivers *Kemtschuk*, *Abakan*, *Tuba*, *Mana*, *Kan*, *Kasi*, *Syn*, *Dubtsches*, *Baïta*, *Yelogui*, *Turuca*, and three rivers of the name of *Tungusca* (A), besides others that fall into it near its mouth.

3. THE great river *LENA* waters the eastern part of *Siberia*, and runs on the north-side of the lake of *Baikal*, in latitude $52^{\circ} 30'$. and longitude $124^{\circ} 30'$. After traversing a large tract of land, in latitude 73° . it divides itself into five branches; three of which run westward, and two eastward; and by these channels it discharges itself into the *Ice-Sea*. Its three western mouths lie in 153 degrees of longitude: but the eastern extends no farther than 143° . The current is every where very flow, and its bed is entirely free from

(A) The northernmost of these is called simply *Tungusca*, and acquires this name after it is joined by the river *Ilien*: it is called *Agara* from the influx of that river to its source, which lies in the lake of *Baikal*. Its bottom is stony, and full of rocks, which cause four waterfalls in this river: notwithstanding

ing which it is navigated during the summer both with and against the stream; but with no small difficulty and hazard. The middle *Tungusca* is distinguished by the appellation of *Podeamenia*, from its rising beyond the mountains; and the third is called the *Lower*.

The History of Russia.

rocks. The bottom is sandy, and the banks are in some places rocky and mountainous.

THE chief rivers that fall into the *Lena*, are, the *Manfurca*, *Culenga*, *Orlenga*, *Ilga*, *Kirmga*, *Iskebsui*, *Tshaia*, *Isphora*, *Witim*, *Olecma*, *Aldan*, *Wilui*, the two *Potamas*, and the two *Tabas* (A).

Thirdly, The rivers which discharge themselves into the eastern ocean. These are,

The Amur. 1. THE AMUR, a great and famous river, formerly called *Karan-muran*; but now, by the *Chinese* and *Manchurians*, *Sagalin-Ula*. It is also called *Yamur*, *Onon*, *Holong-Kiang*, and *Skilka*. The *Amur* is formed by the conflux of the rivers *Skilk* and *Argun*, abounds with fish, and is navigable a great way from its mouth. The length of its course is near two thousand *English* miles.

The Uda. 2. THE UD, or UDA, is the only considerable river that runs into the sea of *Kamtschatka*.

The Penschina. 3. THE PENSCHINA, from which the gulph of *Penschinska* takes its name.

The Anadir. 4. THE ANADIR, a considerable river, which runs into the eastern ocean.

Lakes. THE principal lakes in this part of *Russia* are, the *Aral*, the *Baikal*, and the *Altin* lakes.

Aral. 1. THE Lake, or as it is often called, the *Sea of Aral*, is one of the largest lakes in all *Asia*, and lies within a little distance from the *Caspian* sea. Its length from north to south is said to be near 150 miles, and its breadth from east to west about 70. Its water, which is very salt, is for that reason conveyed by the neighbouring *Karacalpacks*, the *Kasaisba-Horda*, and the *Turkomanians*, by small narrow canals, into sandy pits, where the heat of the sun, by exhaling the water, leaves them a sufficient quantity of salt for their ne-

(A) Of all these rivers, *Witim*, *Olecma*, *Aldan*, and *Wilui*, have the longest course. The *Witim* is said to derive its source from a great number of lakes, which have a communication with each other by natural channels. Among other rivers, it receives two streams called *Mama*, famed for a transparent fossil called *Marienglas* or *Muscovy-Glass*, dug along its banks. The course of the *Wilui*, before it joins the *Lena*, is in 16°, 30'.

The river *Aldan* receives, on the right or east-side, the *Uisum* and *Maia*, and on the opposite side the *Judoma*. There is a passage for vessels from the *Lena* and *Aldan*, through the *Maia* and *Judoma*, almost to the source of the latter; from which, after a journey of about ninety miles by land, a traveller may go by water down the *Urack*, into the sea of *Kamtschatka*, a great bay in the eastern ocean.

cessary

cessary uses. The same kinds of fish are found in this lake as in the *Caspian* sea, and, like that, the *Aral* has no visible outlet.

2. THE *Baikal* lake, by the neighbouring people called *Baikal*. *Sviatsie-More*, or the *Holy Lake*, is from west to east 500 wersts in length, but from north to south it is but 20 or 30 in a direct line, and in some places only 15. It is environed on all sides by high mountains. In that part of it which lies near the river *Bargusim*, it throws up an inflammable sulphureous liquid, called *Maltha*, which the people of the adjacent country burn in their lamps. There are likewise several sulphureous springs near this lake. Its water, at a distance, appears of a green sea-colour: it is very fresh, and so clear that one may see objects several fathoms deep in it. It does not begin to freeze till near the latter end of *December*, and thaws again about the beginning of *May*, from which time till *September* a ship is seldom known to be wrecked upon it: but by the high winds which blow in the last of these months, many vessels are lost on this lake. The inhabitants who live near the *Baikal*, imagine, when such storms happen, that by complimenting the lake with the name of a *Sea*, they render it propitious, and are preserved from all the dangers it seems to threaten. This lake affords great plenty of large sturgeon and pike, with several black seals, but none of the spotted kind. It contains several islands; and the borders of it are frequented by black fables and civet cats.

3. THE *Altin* lake, which the *Russians* call *Telekoi-Osero*, *Altin*. from the *Telepsi*, a *Tartarian* nation who inhabit the borders of it, and who give it the name of *Altin-Kul*, as the *Calmuks* do that of *Altinnor*, is near ninety miles long, and 50 broad. The bottom of this lake is steep and rocky. The north part of it is sometimes frozen so hard, as to be passable on foot; but the south part is never covered with ice. The water in the *Altin* lake, as well as that in the rivers which run through the adjacent parts, contrary to what happens in other lakes, &c. rises only in the middle of summer, when the great heats melt the snow on the mountains, which had remained indissoluble during the spring.

The west and south part of *Russian Tartary*,

WHICH, from time immemorial, has made a part of the *Russian* dominions, and belongs to *Tartary* (A), properly so called, is inhabited by the following various nations.

(A) The right way of spelling which is undoubtedly *Tartary*; and the inhabitants

The west and south part of Russian Tartary, inhabited by

Circas-
sians,

1. THE *Circassians*, who inhabit the country lying to the north-west of the *Caspian* sea, between *Georgia* and the entrance of the river *Volga*. *Circassia* is near 300 miles in length, and about the same in breadth. It is partly subject to *Russia*, and partly to the *Crim Kan*; though some of its inhabitants still preserve their independency. The *Circassians*, and especially the women, are reputed the most beautiful of all the oriental nations. Prince *Cantemir*, in his history of the *Ottoman* empire, observes, that they may be justly termed the *French Tartars*; because they continually invent new fashions both as to their dress and arms; and that the other *Tartars* never fail to imitate these modes, and generally send their children among them for education. In point of religion they seem to be half mahometans, for they use circumcision, and other mahometan rites; but have no *Mulhas* (priests) or *Mosques*, nor express any veneration for the *Koran*. They are chiefly employed in hunting, feeding of cattle, and agriculture. That part of their country which borders on the *Caspian* sea, is very barren; but towards *Daghestan* and *Georgia* the soil is extremely fertile. The *Circassian* horses are far from being handsome; but as they are hardy and spirited, they fetch a good price.

Grebinian
and Yaik
Cofaks.

2. THE *Grebinian* and *Yaik Cofaks*, the latter of which dwell near the river *Yaik*. These tribes have been already mentioned in our account of the government of *Kiew*.

GreatNo-
gayans.

3. THE *Great Nogayans*. These are mahometan *Tartars*, and live near the *Caspian* sea, between the rivers *Volga* and *Yaik*. They subsist by hunting and feeding of cattle, and some of them are employed in agriculture. Great numbers of the *Nogayans* have been converted to the *Greek* religion.

Torgau-
tians.

4. THE *Torgautians*, or rather the *Torgut-Calmuks*, who inhabit the country between the *Volga* and the *Yaik*, are *Calmuks* and *Pagans*. *Torgut* signifies the illustrious tribe, or the great, noble, celebrated *Horde*; and the *Torgutes* are supposed by the learned to be the *Thyssagetes* or *Thyrsgages* mentioned by *Herodotus*, above 2000 years ago.

Tthere-
missians
and Tshu-
walhi-
ans,
Wotia-
kians,

5. THE *Tshberemissians* and *Tshuwashians*, of whom we have spoken in our account of the government of *Nischni-Novogorod*.

6. THE *Wotiakians*, who belong to the government of *Casan*, live in a very savage and sordid manner. They believe indeed in a Supreme Being, whom they call *Yumar*, and think that he resides in the sun; but they neither worship, nor pay him any regard. Upon any emergency, they apply

apply for counsel and assistance, to a person whom they call *Dna*. They speak both the *Russian* and *Tartarian* languages, and subsist chiefly by hunting.

7. THE *Tartars* of the government of *Casan* (A) profess *Casan* the mahometan religion, and are more civilized than the *Tartars*. *Tsheremisians* and *Wotiakians*.

8. THE *Bashkirian* and *Ufian Tartars*, who likewise inhabit the government of *Casan*. The former live in the country towards the east, between the river *Kama*, the mountains of *Ural* and the *Volga*; but the latter inhabit the north part of that government. They live together and intermarry, without mixing with other nations. These *Tartars* are strong and well-made. Their faces are broad, their complexion brown, their hair black, and their beards long. Their dress is somewhat like that of the *Russians*. They are exceeding good horsemen, and remarkable for their courage and dexterity in managing their bows and arrows. With respect to religion, they are rather heathens than mahometans; circumcision, and some few other ceremonies, being all that they practise of the latter. Some of them indeed have embraced the *Greek* religion. Their habitations are in towns or villages, and their occupations hunting, feeding of cattle, and agriculture. They generally thresh their corn in the field before they bring it home. They pay their tribute in the produce of the country, which is corn, wax, honey, cattle, and furs. Though they have a great number of hogs, they never eat pork. They make use of horses and dromedaries for travelling, carrying burdens, and other such purposes. They take as many wives as they can maintain, and give horses in exchange for them; sometimes six or seven horses for a wife. Both the *Bashkirian* and *Ufian Tartars* have often, and particularly towards the latter end of the year 1735, endeavoured to shake off the *Russian* yoke; but they were soon reduced to obedience. Since that, upon their requesting a new form of government, a *Russian barshine* or judge, and a *soznik* or prefect have been set over each district, and a kind of overseer is appointed in every village; so that all opportunities of future revolt seem to be taken from them, especially as several fortresses have been built in their country by way of check

(A) The word *Casan*, in the *Turkish* and *Tartarian* languages, signifies a cauldron large enough to contain victuals for many persons: and this name the *Crim*

and *Budziak Murfes*, give to the families of their subjects or vassals; about ten men being reckoned to a *Casan*.

upon

upon them. This part of the *Russian* dominions in *Asia* is, as we observed before, divided into

XIII. The Government of ASTRACAN.

The government
of Astracan.

THIS province, which is a part of the ancient *Kapjak*, conquered by *Jingis-Kan*, and afterwards by *Tamerlane*, and the country of those *Tartars*, who, in the thirteenth century, took *Moscow*, and laid its sovereigns under a most humiliating tribute, contains what was formerly the *Tartarian* kingdom of *Astracan*, and was subdued by the czar *Iwan Basilowitz*, in the year 1554. It includes the country on the north, and partly on the west side of the *Caspian* sea, from whence it extends along mount *Caucasus*, to the 50th degree of latitude. The summer-heat here is so intense, that, according to the observations made by *M. Lerch* at *Astracan*, the thermometer sometimes rises to upwards of an hundred, and even to an hundred and three degrees and a half, according to *Fahrenheit's* scale: though *Boerhaave* says *, that a heat above the 90th degree of *Fahrenheit's* thermometer would be more than human creatures could bear; and that all animals, of which he had any knowledge, soon expired in such a degree of heat. The *Steppe*, or wide desert plain of *Astracan*, according to the accounts of travellers, is a dreary waste, without water or verdure; and towards the coast of the *Caspian* sea it is said to be very sandy. In the neighbourhood of *Astracan* are small lakes and ponds, so impregnated with salt, that sometimes it incrusts the surface of the water like ice. This saline incrustation is so thick, that one may walk upon it with safety; and salt is likewise found at the bottom of these pools, in the form of chryстал salts. Captain *Perry* (who was employed by *Peter I.* to cut a canal from the *Volga* to the *Don*, which was one of that prince's great designs, in order to open a communication between *Astracan* and the *Black* sea, and so on to the *Mediterranean*, but which dropt with him, and has never been compleated) found in this country vast tracts of land, on the west-side of the *Volga*, which the *Cuban Tartars* infest, quite uninhabited, though naturally so fertile as to produce grass of a great height, many sorts of leguminous plants, cherry, almond, and other fruit-trees, the best *arbutuses*, or *water-melons*, in the whole *Russian* empire, and great numbers of wild sheep, whose flesh is delicate. The vines also, which have been planted about *Astracan*, produce grapes of so fine a flavour, that nothing is wanting but

* In his *Elemen. Chym.* p. 192.

skillful persons to make excellent wine. *Peter the Great* endeavoured to procure such, particularly from *Spain* and *Portugal*; but the rebellion which happened in *Astracan*, in the year 1703, and in which all strangers then in that city were murdered, deterred foreigners from going thither^b.

THE places of greatest note in this government are, *Astracan*, which is the capital, the residence of the governor, and a bishop's see, situate near the *Caspian* sea, on an island formed by the *Volga*. It is about four miles in circumference, encompassed with a good stone-wall, and opposite to it is a fort. The cathedral is the latest built, and the most elegant of all the *Russian* churches in this city. The *Lutherans* have a church here, as have also the *Armenians*, who, to the number of forty families, live here for the conveniency of trade, for which *Astracan* has been always famous; and above thirty different nations resort hither for the same purpose. One of its suburbs is intirely inhabited by *Indians*. A garrison of three thousand men is always kept in this city. *Its principal places.*

Tjbernouar, a small town in the *Steppe* or desert, on the bank of the *Volga*. It is defended by eight wooden towers and strong barricadoes, against the incursions of the *Cosaks*. As these fortifications were built in the reign of the great duke *Michael*, the town is likewise called *Michailo-Novogrod*.

THIS, with the town of *Krasnouar*, a small place upon the *Volga*, inclosed with a kind of wooden wall, keeps a watchful eye upon the roving *Calmuks*, who often bring their cattle to graze near these places.

Zarizin, a small town upon the *Volga*, surrounded with wooden redoubts and towers. Its garrison watches the motions of the *Tartars* and *Cosaks*, against whose incursions a strong line, called the *Zarizin-line*, has been drawn from the *Volga* to the *Don*. Along this line are built the forts of *Metsbonaia*, *Gratsbi*, *Ozokor*, and *Donskaia*.

Taik, or *Taitzskoi-Gorodok*, a large town upon the river *Taik*. It has a considerable trade, an excellent fishery, and is famous for its *Caviere*.

Kisharskaia, a fortress near the river *Terek*, on the west side of the *Caspian* sea. On the same river are likewise *Shedren*, *Tjherwlenoi*, and some other places of no great importance.

THE *Russians* have extended their conquests on this side of the *Caspian* sea a great way southward, both under the emperor *Peter I.* in 1722, and still farther in the reign of the empress *Anne*. For the *Persians*, by the treaty of peace con-

^b PERRY, p. 95.

cluded in 1732, at *Ratsha*, in the province of *Ghilan*, ceded for ever to *Russia* a tract of land along the coast of the *Caspian* sea, of above three hundred miles in length, including the provinces of *Daghestan* and *Shirwan*. But as multitudes of the *Russian* soldiers died in this warm climate, so different from their own, and as the revenues of the provinces did not answer the expence of keeping up the troops; *Russia* evacuated these acquisitions, in exchange for an unlimited commerce throughout all the *Persian* dominions; and the river *Terek* is now the boundary betwixt *Russia* and *Persia*.

The government of Orenburg. Its principal places.

XIV. *The Government of ORENBURG.*

THIS government, which has been but lately erected, lies in the province of *Ufa*, and derives its name from the town and fortress of *Orenburg*, built at the junction of the rivers *Or* and *Yaik*, by order of the empress *Anne*, in the year 1738. But that situation being found inconvenient, the inhabitants were removed, and the town built lower down on the *Yaik* in 1740. This place was intended to protect the new subjects, who, from time to time, put themselves under the protection of the *Russians*, and to promote the trade with the people that live more to the south. Since the establishment of a considerable commerce here, all the *Russian* and *Asiatic* merchants are permitted, on paying a certain duty, to sell their goods by wholesale or retail; and all *European* foreign merchants are allowed to bring their goods from the harbour and frontier towns to *Orenburg*.

THE other places of note in this government are, *Ozernoi*, *Bordinskoi*, and *Ilek*, forts upon the river *Yaik*; *Sakmark*, a town upon the river *Sakmara*; *Ufa*, a fortified provincial town, on a river of its own name; *Kandara*, a fortress upon a lake of the same name; *Menzelish*, a fortress situated on the river *Menzelia*; *Kungua*, a town famed for its chalk cavern (A); and the forts of *Atshitekaia* and *Bisfert*, so called from the rivers on which they stand, in the *Steppe* or desert.

The government of Casan.

XV. *The Government of CASAN.*

THIS government, which reaches from that part of *Astracan* to *Siberia*, is much more extensive than the ancient

(A) The inside of this cavern is so curiously formed by nature, that every traveller who passes this way takes an opportunity of seeing it. It is reported to have been formerly the habitation of some *Russians*, who took shelter here from the incursions of the *Bashkirians*; and to this it is owing that a wooden cross is still to be seen in the cave.

kingdom of *Casan*, conquered by the czar *Iwan Basilowitz*, the greatest of all the *Russian* conquerors, in the year 1552.

It is divided into the circles of *Casan*, *Sinbirsk*, *Perfisk*, *Its divi-Alatyrsk*, *Swuask*, *Zywilsk*, *Thebaksar*, *Kufmodemiantk*, *Kork-fions*, *haisk*, *Carewo-Kokshaiskoi*, *Carewo-Sontshurskoi*, *Yaransk*, *Urum*, *Klynaw*, *Kaigorodok*, *Tsherdyn*, *Solikamskoi* (B), and the barony of *Straganow*; in all eighteen circles, the principal places in which are,

Casan, the capital of this government, situate on the *and prim-river Kasanka*, which, at the distance of about five miles, *capital falls into the Wolga*. This city is large, defended by a *places* strong fort, and is an archbishop's see. At one end of the town is a manufactory of cloth; all of which is bought up by the crown, at a set price, for clothing the troops. In a convent called *Siliandowo*, about two miles off, is a school, where the children of the *Tkushian*, *Tsheremissian*, and *Mordunian* *Malmuks* and *Tartars* are taught the *Russian* and *Latin* languages, the principles of the christian religion, and the elements of philosophy, in order to qualify them as preachers for the

(B) Called also formerly *Bi-sono*, and now frequently *Great Permian*. This province, in particular, was once a famous mart for the various merchandise of *Persia*, and the furs of *Tartary*. A great quantity of gold-coins, stamped by the first *Tartar Khans*, and some golden idols of the old *Tartars*, have been found of late years in places that are now deserts in this country: and *J. N. Strelow* says (1), that many *Syrian*, *Arabian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, and *Cimbrian* coins, have also been found in these parts, in the burial-places of their ancient inhabitants, who, it is plain from thence, traded with those nations. This, as *Strahlenberg* justly observes (2), corroborates what *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* relate of a king of the *Suevi*, who, in the time of *Augustus*, made *Metel-*

lus Celer a present of some *Indians*, who had been shipwrecked near the *Elbe*. Our moderns, especially since the discovery of the passage round the *Cape of Good Hope*, have looked upon this account as fabulous: but, adds *M. de Voltaire*, whose *Memoirs*, received from the court of *Russia*, confirm what the *Swedish* baron says, it was not more extraordinary for an *Indian* to go into the northern countries of the western world to trade, than for a *Roman* to go to *India* through *Arabia*. The *Indians* travelled by land to *Persia*, embarked upon the *Hyrcanian* sea, sailed up the *Rba*, now the *Wolga*, passed through the *Kama* into *Great Permian*, and could there take shipping on the north or *Baltic* sea. The *Tyrians* performed much more surprising voyages.

(1) In *Præfat. Guttiland. Chronic.*

(2) In his description of the North and East parts of Europe and Asia, p. 3.

conversion of the nations to which they belong. The *Russians* first made themselves masters of this important place on the third of *October* 1552.

ABOUT seventy wersts from *Cazan*, and not far from the river *Kama*, are the ruins of the ancient city of *Bulgar*, formerly the capital of *Bulgaria*, which still makes a part of the czar's titles.

Simbirsk and *Tshebaksar*, provincial towns on the river *Volga*. *Solikamskaia*, on the river *Uffolka*, noted for its salt, which, like all the rest that is boiled in *Permia*, is reckoned the best in *Russia*. *Pyshkora*, on the little river *Pyshkora*, which falls into the *Kama*, remarkable for its copper-works, as the country round it is for its mines of that metal; and the villages of *Leniva* and *Novo-Uffolie*, in the barony of *Straganow*, famous for their salt-works, which are sixty-seven in number, and very considerable.

XVI. SIBERIA, or the northern and eastern parts of Great Tartary, which were lately added to the Russian dominions.

Siberia. THE name *Sibiria*, or *Siberia*, was originally applied, and still properly belongs, only to the south part of the province of *Tobolsk*; but, in a more extensive sense, it now includes all the northern part of *Asia*, which borders on *Russia* to the west, on the *Ice-sea* to the north, on the eastern ocean towards the east, and on *Great Tartary* to the south.

Its extent. Its length from east to west is near four thousand miles, and its breadth from north to south upwards of twelve hundred, which is the smallest width of the *Russian* empire.

Name. *Siberia* seems to derive its name from an old city called *Sibir*; which, according to a received tradition, stood on the right-side of the river *Irtis*, about eighteen wersts from *Tobolsk*, and was the residence of the ancient sovereigns of *Siberia* (C).

Ancient inhabitants. THIS very country was formerly the abode of those *Huns* who ravaged the western world, and sacked even *Rome*, under their commander *Attila*; and they themselves came originally from the north of *China*. Such have been the vast migrations of the human race! The *Usbek Tartars* succeeded the *Huns*, and the *Russians* succeeded those *Tartars*. Men have butchered one another for the worst of countries, with the same fury as they have contended for the best.

(C) There are still some ruins spot, but no other remains of a city.

THE air of *Siberia* is, in general, extremely piercing; *Climate.* the cold there being, as we learn from authentic observations, more severe than in any other part of the *Russian* dominions. The *Siberian* rivers are frozen very early, and it is late in the spring before the ice is thawed. The snow often falls in *September*, and is frequently seen on the ground in *May*. If the corn does not ripen in *August*, there is little hopes of a harvest in this country; and in the province of *Yeniseisk* it is sometimes covered with snow before the peasants can reap it. The earth is never thawed to any considerable depth in *Siberia* (A). To defend the inhabitants against this extreme severity of the climate, providence seems the more liberally to have dealt out to them, wood for fuel, and furs for cloathing. Even ice itself is, in some measure, converted by them into a fence against the cold; for in the northern parts, particularly at *Yakutsk*, it is usual to hew a transparent piece of ice, of the size of the hole which serves the peasants for a window; and having fixed it on the out-side, they sprinkle a little water at the edges, which immediately freezes and cements the ice in the hole. This ice window keeps out the wind and cold, without much diminishing the light. Those who have glass-windows besides, place them on the inside, that the room may not be chilled by the moist effluvia of the ice (B); but the common people do not mind this inconvenience. As the winter-days in the north parts of *Siberia* last but a few hours, and the storms and flakes of snow darken the air so much, that the inhabitants, even at noon, cannot see to do any thing without artificial lights, they sleep away the greatest part of that season (C).

THESE

(A) M. *Gmelin*, having, on the 18th of *June* O. S. caused the earth to be dug near *Yakutsk*, where the ground was high, found the depth thawed to be scarce four feet from the surface; and in low places it did not exceed three feet. Near fort *Argunsk*, which is but little beyond the 50th degree of north latitude, the inhabitants acquainted him, that in several places the soil was not thawed to above the depth of an ell and a half, and that this internal frost made it very difficult to

come at any springs. He likewise observed, that the quicksilver sunk to an hundred and twenty degrees of *Fahrenheit's* scale at *Yeniseisk*, which is a degree of cold never felt hitherto in any other country on the globe.

(B) Beer is seldom known to freeze in the cellars of those houses whose windows, or holes for admitting light, are thus stopped with a piece of ice.

(C) In those parts where the river *Yenisei* falls into the *Ice-sea*, the northern lights appear from

THESE severe winters are rapidly succeeded by mers, in which the heat is so intense, that the *Tu-
sians*, who live in the province of *Jakutsk*, go almost n
Here is scarcely any night during that season; and to
the *Frozen-ocean*, the sun appears continually above the
zon. The vegetables and fruits of the earth are he-
tremely quick in their growth. Thunder is seldom
near the *Ice-sea*, on the coast of which the thunder
are said to be so faint, as hardly to strike the ear; b-
lightning is very visible in that climate. On the con-
the south part of *Siberia* is subject to very dreadful tem-

Soil and
produce.

THE whole tract of land beyond the 60th degree of
latitude, is a barren waste; for the north part of
yields neither corn nor fruits; tho' barley is known fre-
ly to come to perfection in *Jakutsk*. For this reason, t-
habitants of the northern parts are obliged to live on
and flesh; but the *Russians* are supplied with corn fro-
southern parts of *Siberia*, where the soil is surprisngl-
tile. The countries beyond the lake of *Baikal*, espe-
towards the east, as far as the river *Argun*, are remai-
fruitful and pleasant; but such is the indolence of the
bitants, that several fine tracts of land, which would
ample returns to the peasant for cultivating them, lie
lected. The pastures are excellent in this country,
abounds in fine horned-cattle, horses, goats, &c. on
the *Tartars* chiefly depend for subsistence. However,
are several *Steppes*, or barren wastes, and unimprovable
in these parts; and not a single fruit tree is to be
There is great variety of vegetables, and in several p-
particularly near *Krasnaia Sloboda*, the ground is in a
ner over-run with asparagus of an extraordinary heigl-
delicious flavour. The bulbs of the *Turkish bundes*
other sorts of lillies, are much used by the *Tartars* inst
bread. This want of fruit and corn is richly compensa-
the great quantities of wild and tame beasts and fowls
the infinite variety of fine fish which the country affor-
mong which are the sturgeon and sterled. Provisions
cheap, that, in many places, a *Pud*, or thirty-six pou-
meal, may be had for five or eight, and a pud of the
beef for twenty or thirty *copeiks*.

from the beginning of *October*
till *Christmas*; and the corrup-
tions of one kind of them are
said to be very terrifying. M.

Gmelin thinks this the
where the *Aurora Boreali*
be seen in its greatest perf

In that part of *Siberia* which lies near the *Ice-Sea*, as well as in several other places, no trees, but shrubs and bushes grow; but the greater part of this country produces large woods of pine, larch, and other trees: besides which, a considerable quantity of wood is thrown ashore by the waves of the *Ice-Sea*; but from whence it comes is not yet quite clear.

BESIDES the wild fowl, such as moor-hens, partridges, *Wild* woodcocks, and snipes, with which *Siberia* abounds, there is a prodigious number of wild quadrupeds, some of which are eatable, and others valuable for their skins or furs. The *Argati*, which are also called *Stepnie Baranni*, or wild sheep, the *Dsholactshan*, the *Gandinadatsh*, the *Kytap* and *Kulem*, resemble roe-bucks, more than sheep, and are a particular species of animals between these two. They are found near the *Irtis*, and from thence eastward as far as *Kamsbatka*. In the province of *Irkutsk*, and beyond the lake *Baikal*, is a sort of deer called the *Isubr*; but the people who live near the *Irtis* call this creature *Maral*, and the *Tartars* about the *Jenissai* give it the name of *Syn*. This species is also distinguished by the several appellations of *Maimie*, *Meyimie*, *Búba*, *Kúmaka*, and *Kumaká*. There are also two kinds of wild goats, one in the province of *Irkutsk*, which are called *Dshers*, and perfectly resemble the roe-buck, except that they have horns like the shamois, which they never shed; the other, called *Saiga*, frequents the source of the *Irtis*, and is found in no other part of *Siberia*. The *Saiga* is not unlike the shamois, except that its horns are quite straight, and have no branches. These horns are almost transparent, and much used to make handles for knives, daggers, &c. The animal called *Saiga* beyond *Krasnoiarsk*, and throughout the whole province of *Irkutsk*, and the government of *Jakutzk*, is the musk or civet-cat. The *Kosi* or roebuck, the *Socaty* or elk, rein-deer, hares, the *Kabari* or wild boars, and bears, are common over all *Siberia*. The *Tshigitai* or wild mules, in the province of *Irkutsk*, are like a bay horse, but their tail resembles that of a cow, and their ears are of an enormous length. They are, however, remarkably swift.

THE animals most valued for their skins are the black fox, the sable, the hyæna, the ermine, the squirrel, the beaver, and the lynx. The skin of a real black fox is more esteemed than even that of a sable. In the country near the *Frozen Ocean* are also blue and white foxes. The finest fables come from *Nertschinsk* and *Jakutzk*, the inhabitants of which places catch them in the mountains of *Stannowai*.

Krebet. It is usual in those parts for ten or twelve men to join in a society, and share the fables they take. One of the members is chosen as chief, to whom all the rest must pay obedience, on pain of being well beaten or expelled from the society. Before they set out, they never fail to make a vow of giving part of their capture to the church. Several *Tartars* likewise apply themselves to the hunting of fables, and pursue them very dexterously through all their shifts: for when the fable finds no means of escaping its pursuers, it climbs up the highest tree within sight; but the hunters immediately set fire to the tree, and, spreading out a net, catch the fable as it leaps down to avoid the flames. By the great value set on fables, the breed of those animals is very much lessened; and, what is no small detriment to the crown, great numbers have been caught and sold clandestinely, notwithstanding the severest prohibitions. The tributary nations were formerly obliged to pay their taxes in the skins of foxes and fables only. But now the skins of squirrels, bears, rein-deer, &c. and sometimes money, are received by way of tribute; and this not only from those who live near the *Lena*, but also in the governments of *Ilink*, *Irkutsk*, *Selenginsk*, and *Nertsinks*. When the *Tartars* first became tributary to the *Russians*, they brought their furs indiscriminately as they caught them, and among them were often fables of extraordinary value; and formerly, if any trader brought with him an iron-kettle, they gave him, in exchange for it, as many fables as it would hold. But they are now better acquainted with their value. They sell their fables to smugglers at a very high price, and pay only a rubel instead of a skin to the revenue-office, which now receives more ready money than fables, by way of tribute. The subjects plead the scarcity of furs, and, as we have already observed, not without some appearance of truth.

The hyæna is a very subtle animal, watching other creatures with singular address, in order to execute by craft, what it could not do by force; and is equally artful in avoiding the snares and contrivances of men. It keeps a sharp eye upon fawns, young elks, rein-deer, civet-cats, roe-bucks, hares, squirrels, foxes, and young partridges; and either watches them on a tree, from whence it springs upon them, and fastens on their neck with its teeth, or surprises them in their lares or dens. The hyæna is of great detriment to the hunters, by frequently devouring the animals caught in their toils. This creature is extremely voracious, and runs from

from south to north, and from north to south in quest of its prey: but the opinion that it squeezes itself between two trees, to force out its excrements, and make room for more food, wants confirmation. It is called in *Siberia* *Rossomak*. The *Germans* call it *Vielfras*, which signifies a glutton.

WITH regard to squirrels, the blackest, which are indeed the smallest, are caught in the mountains of *Stannowoi Kriebet*. Those of *Berejow* are larger; but their furr is of an ash-colour. The silver-coloured squirrels of *Tselut* are remarkable throughout all *Siberia*, for their bigness; and indeed some prefer them to the black sort. The flying squirrels bear scarce any resemblance to the common species, except in their manner of climbing up trees. They look more like a rat; and have a strong tegument, from the hind to the fore-leg, on both sides, which is above an inch broad, and can be contracted or dilated as the animal pleases. This mechanism enables it to fly a little way. The tail, which is of a dark yellow, is not so long as that of a squirrel.

THE whitish beavers are tame and familiar; but so many of them have been destroyed in *Siberia*, that they are now very scarce. The greatest number of them is now found near the source of the river *Jenisei*, and on the banks of the *Oby*; but the largest are those of *Kamishatka*.

Siberia has still other, and more valuable treasures than *Minerals*; those we have yet mentioned. The silver mines of *Argun* are extremely rich; the silver they produce yields some gold, and both of these are found among the copper-ore of *Koliwan*. This country is also particularly rich in copper and iron ore. The former lies even upon the surface of the earth; and considerable mines of it are found in the mountains of *Piétow*, *Koliwan*, *Ploskaï*, *Woskerezensk*, *Kuswi*, *Alpak*, and several others, and in the government of *Krasnoïarsk*. Iron is still more plentiful in all these places, and very good: but that of *Kamenski* is reckoned the best. Several hundred thousand puds of these metals are annually exported from the smelting-houses, which belong partly to the crown, and partly to private persons. Most of them lie in the government of *Catharinenburg*. The *Tartars* also extract a great quantity of iron from the ore.

THE topazes of *Siberia* have so fine a lustre, that none *Precious* but good judges can distinguish them from the oriental ones. *stones.* In open sandy places, near the river *Argun*, as well as on the banks of other rivers and lakes, are found single small pieces of agate. Here are also cornelians and green jasper with

with red veins; the latter is chiefly met with in the del of *Gobiskoi*.

Marienglas.

THE famous *marienglas*, or *lapis specularis*, great quant of which are dug up in *Siberia*, is by some called *Muscor Russian-glass*; and by others, though with less propri *ismglass*. It is a particular species of transparent stone, b in *strata*, like so many sheets of paper. The *matrix* stone in which it is found, is partly a light yellow *quartz marcaffia*, and partly a brown indurated fluid; and this f contains in it all the species of the *marienglas*. The cle and most transparent is accounted the best, and that greenish tinge is looked upon as the worst sort. Ne: the colour, its size is most regarded. Some pieces been found near two ells square: but these are not common. Hence it is that they bear an extraordinary lue, a rubel or two a pound being readily paid for a pie an ell square. As for the more common sort, a pud of of a quarter of an ell square is sold for nine or ten rub and the worst sort of all, which is stitched together, is for a rubel and a half or two rubels a pud. To render marienglas fit for use, it is split with a thin two-e knife; but care is taken that the *laminæ* be not too thir is used for windows and lanterns all over *Siberia*, and in in every part of the *Russian* empire, and looks very b tiful; its lustre and clearness surpassing that of the l glass, to which it is particularly preferable for win and lanterns of ships, as it will stand the explosio cannon. It is found in the greatest plenty near the *Witim*.

Magnets.

Siberia affords magnets of an extraordinary size, and whole mountains of loadstones. Pit-coal is also dug i the northern parts of this country. The *Kammenoie A* a yellowish kind of alum, unctuous and smooth to the t like *tophus*, is found in the mountains of *Krasnoiarstk*, *Altaiisk*, *Jenisea*, *Baikal*, *Bargusik*, *Lena*, and several o in *Siberia*.

Salt lakes and springs.

IN this country are not only a great number of f water lakes, but likewise several whose waters are and what is very singular in both of these is, the : ations to which they are liable; a fresh-water lake ing sometimes changed into a saline, and a saline i fresh one. Some lakes also dry up, and others aj where none were ever seen before. The salt-lake of *mussha* in the province of *Tobolsk* is the most remarkab all; for it contains a salt as white as snow, consisting

tirely of cubic-chryftals. One alfo finds in *Siberia* faline fountains, falt-water brooks, and a hill of falt. The falt-fountains in the province of *Irkutzk*, which lie about two hundred werfts from *Oleminskoi Oſtrog*, near the banks of the *Lepitenda*, are fo ſtrongly impregnated with faline particles, that a pure white falt is gradually accumulated to the height of ſeveral feet above the fpring. In the ſame province is the falt-hill, which is thirty fathoms high, and two hundred and ten in length from eaſt to weſt. This hill, as far as two thirds of its height from the baſe, is a congeries of a very hard transparent falt, which conſiſts of large cubic-cryftals, without the leaſt apparent mixture of any heterogeneous ſubſtance. From what has been ſaid, it may be concluded that there are a great many falt-works in this country.

Siberia affords many other things which deſerve notice. *Natural* That uſeful root called *rhubarb* grows in vaſt quantities near *curioſities*. the city of *Seleginſk*. The curious *mamont's* bones and horns, as they are called, which are found along the banks of the *Oby*, *Jeneſei*, *Lena*, and *Irtis*, are unqueſtionably the teeth and bones of elephants, and are made into combs and other utenſils like ivory. Some of theſe teeth, or horns, as they are called in *Siberia*, are four *arſhines* (A), or *Ruſſian* ells in length, and fix inches in diameter; and the largeſt fort weigh fix or ſeven *puds* (B). Their colour is like that of ivory, excepting ſome few of them which are yellowiſh, brown, or of a blueiſh black, owing probably to their long continuance in the earth. Thoſe that are found near the mouths of the rivers which run into the *Frozen Ocean*, or on the banks of the freſh-water lakes, which lie at no very great diſtance from the *Ice Sea*, where the ground is perpetually frozen, are generally very freſh: whereas thoſe that are dug up in the ſouthern parts of *Siberia* are often ſoft and decayed. But whether theſe elephants teeth and bones were conveyed to theſe northern regions by the general deluge, or by any other inundation, and were by degrees covered with earth, is a point which might lead us into long and very fruitleſs diſquiſitions. We ſhall therefore only obſerve, that ſuch bones have likewiſe been found in *Ruſſia*, and even in ſeveral parts of *Germany*. A kind of bones of a ſtill larger ſize than theſe have alſo been dug up in *Siberia*, and ſeem

(A) The *arſhine*, or *Ruſſian* ell, is equal to 28 inches and 1.10th *Engliſh* measure. tains forty *Ruſſian* pounds, which are equal to thirty-fix *Engliſh* pounds of ſixteen

(B) The *pud*, or *pood*, con- ounces.

to have belonged to an animal of the ox-kind. The tusk of the whale, called *narwhal*, has been found in the neighbourhood of the rivers *Indigirka* and *Anadir*, and the teeth of other species of whales, called *walrofs*, about *Anadir*. The latter are larger than the common sort, which is brought from *Greenland*, *Archangel*, and *Kola*.

WE must not here forget the *Siberian* volcano near *Kamchatka*, where violent earthquakes are not uncommon. Shocks of them, though smaller, have likewise been felt in other parts of this country, particularly in *Irkutsk*, and about the lake *Baikal*.

Mount-
ains.

THE chain of *Siberian* mountains reaches from the *Werchoturie* towards the south, as far as the neighbourhood of the city of *Oriemburg*, in a continued ridge, under the name of the *Uralian* mountains; but from thence it alters its direction westward. These mountains are a kind of boundary between *Russia Proper* and *Siberia*. Another chain of hills divides *Siberia* from the country of the *Calmuks* and *Mongolians*. These mountains, between the rivers *Irtis* and *Oby*, are called the *Altai* or *Golden Mountains*, which name they afterwards lose, particularly between the river *Jenisei* and the *Baikal* lake, where they are called *Sayanian Mountains*. From this chain some branches advance towards the south, into the country of the *Calmuks* and *Mongolians*; and some towards the north, which partly encompass the rivers *Oby* and *Tom*, and especially the *Jenisei*. The whole country, which extends to the north and east, towards the *Frozen* and the *Eastern Oceans*, begins here to grow mountainous and rocky: but the longest chain of mountains in *Siberia*, is that which lies between the rivers that run into the *Eastern Ocean* and the *Ice Sea*. This ridge begins in the country of the *Mongolians*, and extends to the north-east extremity of *Siberia*. Another ridge of hills called *Wercoianskoi*, in which are the sources of those rivers which empty themselves into the *Ice Sea*, lies on the south side of the river *Aldan*. Other less remarkable mountains are those between the *Jenisei* and the *Lena*, from which the river *Tungusta*, that runs beyond them, derives its name.

Inhabi-
tants.

THE inhabitants of *Siberia* consist of three sorts of people; namely, the *Aborigines* or ancient inhabitants, the *Tartars*, and *Russians*.

Of the two first, some have no other religion but that of nature; others are pagans or mahometans; and some of them have been converted to christianity, or rather o
bapti

baptised by the *Russian* missionaries. The *Aborigines*, or *First inhabitants*, consist of,

First inhabitants of Siberia. The Wogulitzians.

I. THE *Wogulitzians*, or *Wogulians*, who live in the province of *Tobolsk*, and may more properly be classed here, than among the *Tartars*. These, by living among the *Russians* in a constant intercourse of trade, before the latter had conquered this country, are more civilised than the other *Siberian* nations. They have some notion of a God, the creator and preserver of all things. They also believe a resurrection of the dead, and a future state of rewards and punishments; which important truths they probably received from the *Russians*: but they absolutely deny the existence of the devil, saying, that if there was such a being, he could do them no hurt, and that they never knew any instance of it. Their whole religious worship consists in the following ceremony. Once a year, towards the end of summer, every father or head of a family in all their villages meet, and in some adjacent wood offer the head of every species of animals they are acquainted with, and hang the skins upon the trees; after which they make several reverential bows before them, but without uttering a word by way of prayer. This done, they regale themselves with great festivity, on the flesh of the animals whose heads have been thus offered. The only reason they assign for performing this ceremony is, the practice of their ancestors. When they bury their dead, they throw money into the grave with the deceased. They generally take as many wives as they can maintain. Their dress and method of building are, for the most part, copied from the *Russians*; though they furnish the inside of their houses rather in the *Tartarian* manner. As they have not a sufficient quantity of arable land, they chiefly subsist by grazing and hunting. They are entirely subject to the *Russian* government; and many of them have embraced the christian religion, as professed by the *Greek* or *Russian* church.

II. THE *Samoyedes*, who live in the province of *Jeniseiskoi*, *Samoyedes*, and of whom we have already spoken in our account of the government of *Archangel*.

III. THE *Yuraki*, a numerous tribe of *Samoyedes*, who inhabit the sea-coast, and farther up the continent between the rivers *Jenisei* and *Oby*. Most of these still live without any form of government: and though some of them pay tribute to the *Russian* empress, the generality have not yet submitted to the yoke.

Yuraki.

Ostiaks.

IV. THE *Ostiaks*, or *Ashaks*, who call themselves *Conti*, or *Konni-yung*, and whom the *Tartars* call *Yshuk*, are divided into the *Ostiaks* of *Narim*, *Jenisei*, *Oby*, *Surgut*, *Irtis*, &c. The ancestors of this people are supposed to have emigrated hither from *Veliki Permian*, when christianity was first introduced into *Russia*, to enjoy their idolatrous worship without molestation; at least their language is said to have a great analogy with the *Permian*, which is very different from that of the neighbouring *Samoyedes* and *Wogulitskians*. They are of a middling stature, and generally well-shaped, but excessively filthy in their way of living. They give their children the name of the first animal they meet, and as they grow up instruct them in hunting and fishing. They never leave off fishing in summer, till they have caught enough to last them the whole winter, during which they go out with their dogs to hunt hyænas, lynxes, fables, ermines, and bears; which enables them to pay their tribute, and to carry on a trade with strangers. In these excursions they also catch a great number of birds and rein-deer for food. They are excessively fond of *shaar*, or *Chinese* tobacco. Their dwellings are little low huts made with shrubs and bushes, and covered with the bark of birch-trees; and in the middle is the hearth for fire. They neither mind grazing nor agriculture, nor keep any animals but dogs, for hunting and drawing their sledges. They worship three deities called *Stariks*, besides a great number of frightful idols, several of which were destroyed in the years 1712, 1713, and 1714, when many of these heathens were converted to christianity. They call the devil *Shaitan*; and bury with their deceased friends, arms and household furniture. When they take an oath of fidelity to the *Russian* government, they use the following ceremony: Having laid down a bear-skin and an axe, they hold over it a piece of bread on a knife, and express themselves in these words: "In case I do not, to my life's end, prove true and faithful to the supreme government of the country; or if I knowingly and willingly break through my allegiance, or be wanting in the duty I owe to the said supreme government; may the bear tear me to pieces in the wood! may the bread I eat stick in my throat and choke me! may the knife stab me, and the axe cut off my head!" The like ceremony is used among them in the deposition of a witness.

Barabinsians.

V. THE *Barabinsians*, who inhabit the country on both sides of the river *Irtis*, and seem to derive their name from the *Barabain* desert, whose lakes supply them abundantly with

with fish; on which and on feeding of cattle they chiefly subsist. They have plenty of game and wild fowl of every kind, particularly ducks and puffins. Most of them are heathens: but mahometanism gains ground daily among them. Some of them pay tribute to the empress of *Russia*, and others to the *Kan Taisha*.

VI. THE *Tungusians*, or rather *Tingisians*, a populous nation dispersed throughout the provinces of *Jeniseisk* and *Ir-kutsk*. The *Chinese* call them *Solun*, and the *Ostiaks* give them the name of *Kellem* or *Vellem*, that is, *The party-colored*: but they term themselves *Oerwonki*. The *Tungusians* must not be confounded either with the *Tangutes*, or with the eastern *Mongolians*, whom the *Calmuks* call by the nickname of *Tungus*, *Swine*. As some of the *Tungusians*, when they became subject to the *Russian* empire, were observed to travel in sledges, drawn by horses, others by rein-deer, and others again by dogs, they were divided accordingly into the following tribes.

1. THE *Konnie-Tungusi*, who live in *Dauria*, and near the town of *Nertschinsk*, and are so called from the horses they use in travelling with their sledges. Grazing and feeding of cattle are the chief support of this tribe, who, in dress and several other respects, greatly resemble the *Mongolians*. They wear their hair like the *Calmuks* and *Mongolians*, and are armed after the same manner, excepting that they have no sabres. They pay no attention to agriculture; but content themselves with a kind of meal made of the roots of yellow lilies, which they use instead of flour. They are good horsemen, strong made, and behave with great courage in war.

2. THE *Olenie-Tungusi*, who are so called from their rein-deer, and live about the rivers *Lena*, *Nischnaia*, and *Tunguska*. They subsist by hunting and fishing, and also breed some cattle. They make their cloaths of the skins of rein-deer, and wear caps of fox-skin. Their usual oath is *olinni*, which signifies, that they call God to witness the truth of what they say. When they are accused; they clear themselves by an oath of purgation in this manner: Having first killed and burnt a dog, the defendant, after drinking some of its blood, wishes with an imprecation, that he may shrivel up and be burnt like that animal, if the charge against him be true.

3. THE *Sabatshie Tungusi*, who live chiefly in the province of *Irkutsk*, and are so called, not only because they use dogs to draw their sledges, but also because they eat the flesh of those animals. They are likewise termed *Lamuts*, from

from the country about *Ocotzk*, which is also called *Lama*. The skins of rein-deer are their winter-cloathing.

4. THE *Podkamenie-Tungusi*, who inhabit the country that lies between the rivers *Jenisei* and *Lena*, or about *Ilinisk*. These people are poor, and live much in the same manner as their neighbours the *Ostiahs* and *Samoyedes*.

THESE several nations resemble one another so strongly in their manners and customs, as well as in their figures, that no doubt can be made of their being descended from the same stock. Their complexion is not so yellow as that of the *Calmuks*, nor have they such large eyes and flat noses. Their stature is generally low, and, from a custom of plucking off the hair, very few of them have any beard. They mark the cheeks, forehead, and chin of their children, when young, with black or blue figures, by mixing the colour with their spittle, and dipping in it a needle and thread, with which they stitch the child's face; continually drawing the thread thus coloured, under the skin, notwithstanding the incessant cries of the tortured infant. If the face swells, they smear it over with fat, by way of remedy. Anciently, conquerors in war, or in single combat, were honoured with this distinction; but then the figures were not confined to the face only, but were made all over the body. Such marks, in those days, commanded universal respect; which probably first brought them into vogue, and induced this people to look upon them as highly ornamental. The religion of these nations is pretty much alike; and they stile their idols *Shewuki*. They obstinately adhere to their superstitions, and render all attempts to convert them fruitless. They allow polygamy, but seldom have more than two wives. Most of them live in small tents or huts, which they remove from place to place. They are active and sprightly, naturally inclined to justice and equity, and are even inspired with a desire of fame. They are all under the protection of the *Russian* government, excepting some few that belong to *China*. They are divided into tribes or families, over a certain number of which presides a *saissan*, or chief, who has a deputy stiled *taisha*. Both these officers are appointed by, and receive a pension from the empress of *Russia*. The furs of the *Tungusians* are reckoned the very best.

Buradians. VII. THE *Buratts*, or *Buradians*, whom the *Russians* call *Bratski*, differ from the *Tungusians* only in their language, which resembles that of the *Mongolians*. They formerly lived on the south-side of the lake *Baikal*; but removed gradually to the north of the province of *Irkutsk*, towards the close of the last century. About the year 1644, a handful
of

of *Cosaks*, sent from *Krasnoiarsk*, prevailed with them, by fair words, to become subjects of *Russia*. They were formerly one people with the *Jakutians*. They are of a good shape and stature, and subsist by feeding cattle and sheep, and hunting. A *Buratt* has been, more than once, known to possess a thousand sheep, besides a great number of bullocks and horses. The men cut off their hair close to the head; but their dress differs little from that of the common people in *Russia*. The greatest ornament of the females consists in their hair, which the young ones plait into three or four locks, but the elderly women only into two. They live in hexangular huts, built with logs of wood laid one upon another to the height of three or four feet; and upon these poles are fixed, which terminate almost in a point, leaving only an opening at the top for the smoke. The entrance of these cottages always faces the east; and on each side of them stands a birch-tree. From one of these trees to the other a pole is laid, on which hang narrow slips of furs, the skins of ermines and weasels, and the fleeces of sheep; and every night and morning the *Buratt* makes several bows and prostrations before these trophies, touching his forehead with two of his fingers, according to the oriental custom. They have a sort of priests, or soothsayers, whom they call *Bo*, and who dress themselves in a frightful manner. Several of the poorer *Buratts* have been persuaded to be baptised, especially those who live near *Balaganskoi Ostrog*; and these, contrary to the custom of the rest of their nation, apply themselves to husbandry and trades, so that many of them are very expert mechanics, particularly at inlaying iron with pewter or silver. They ride either on horses, oxen, or cows, taking the first that comes in their way; and seldom continue above a month or two in the same place: for as soon as they find that their herds and flocks have eat up the pasture, they immediately remove to another spot.

VIII. THE *Jakutians*, who, in their features, are very *Jakutians*. like the *Calmuks*, and in their way of living resemble the other pagan nations we have been speaking of, excepting that they wear long hair and short garments. They give themselves little trouble about bread, living on several sorts of roots, garlic, onions, milk, the flesh of horses and cows, and of all kinds of wild beasts that they chance to meet with: but mice, mountain-rats, and wild fowl, are their favourite dishes. They have both summer and winter-cottages; and the cattle lie under the same roof with their owners. They use mortars of frozen cow or ox dung, in which they bruise not only dried fish, roots, and berries, but

but the more wealthy among them pound pepper and f. They have a great number of idols, which look like many puppets, and are all made of rags; for they have wooden images in great contempt. They rub the mouth of these wretched figures with the fat or blood of animals. It is said, that the *Yukutians* formerly either burnt their dead or exposed them to the air on trees, or left them unburied in the huts where they expired. But at present they generally bury their deceased friends; which custom they have probably learnt from the *Russians*. Several of these people are now baptised.

**Yukagiri-
rians.**

IX. THE *Yukagiriens*, a tribe of the *Yakutians*, who live mostly among the mountains, and near the *Ice Sea*.

**Tshuk-
shians and
Olutsh-
skians.**

X. THE *Tshukshians*, who live in the north-west part of *Siberia*, wear the tooth of a walrus in each cheek, which are inserted in the flesh during their infancy; and the *Chukchians*, a savage, fierce nation, who, according to accounts, are so far from submitting to the *Russians*, that they commit all possible hostilities against them. This obliges the *Russian* traders to go from *Ootsk* to *Kamtschatka* by water.

**Shelati-
ans, &c.
Kamtscha-
dians.**

XI. THE *Shelations*, *Kurilians*, and *Coriekians*, who live in these parts, are but little known.

XII. THE *Kamtschadians*, or inhabitants of the peninsula of *Kamtschatka*, supposed to have been originally a *Japan* colony, are more tractable and civilised than their northern neighbours. They pay the *Russians* a tribute in furs.

**Siberian
Tartars.**

THE second principal class of the inhabitants of this country are the *Tartars*, who are the most civilised of all foreign nations in *Siberia*; and those *Tartars* who are *Moscovites* are still more so than the pagan *Tartars*. They have their *kamen*, or priests and sorcerers, who impose upon the people by their juggling tricks. They affect to seem as if they were possessed; and have their magic drum by which their deluded followers believe they can procure lost things, heal the sick, and foretell future events. Their common dress is a leather coat, with several pieces of iron hanging to it, leather stockings, with a variety of ornaments, and a cap well adapted for terrifying the ignorant. The houses and huts of the *Tartars* are distinguished by a broad low seat, and a hearth with a chimney.

**Their se-
veral
tribes, viz.**

THE *Siberian Tartars* consist of several populous nations and less numerous tribes, and live under the protection of *Russia*. They derive their names from the countries, towns and rivers, near which they dwell.

TH

THOSE in the province of *Tobolsk* are divided into the following tribes.

1. SUCH as inhabit the city of *Tobolsk*, of whom we shall speak farther in our account of that place; only observing here, that they are more cleanly than the *Tartars* of *Casun*, but so poor that they seldom have more than one wife, nor drink any other liquor than water.

2. THE *Tartars* who live about *Tibyk-Aul*, or *Siniarskoi Prud*, as the *Russians* call it, near the river *Siniar*. These *Tibyk* pay no tribute whatever to the crown; but are obliged to perform *Cosak* service, and are called *Moshtshiaraki*. They have fixed habitations, and reside always in the same place.

3. THE *Tartars* in the government of *Turinsk* are more savage than any of the others. They were baptised in the year 1720, by *Philophei*, archbishop of *Tobolsk*; and great numbers of them, who refused to comply, were driven by force into the river, which the *Russians* concluded would answer the purpose very well.

4. THE *Mirow Tartars*. These, in general, are independent, exempt from tribute, and live decently.

5. THE *Tartars* who dwell near *Ishmisk*, a town upon the river *Irtis*. These have commonly one village for the summer, and another for the winter: a custom which, however, is not peculiar to them.

6. THOSE who live near the city of *Tara* are called *Yefashnie Tatari*, that is, *Tartars* who pay a tribute to the crown.

7. THE *Theleuti Tartars* live about the river *Tshumush*. These were formerly much more numerous, great multitudes of them having removed farther up into *Siberia*, to avoid the ravages of the *Calmuks*; but they now begin to return to their old habitations.

8. THE *Tartars* who live in the province of *Jenisea*, with several of the *Theleuti* and *Kashtim Tartars*, who inhabit the parts about the river *Kaltirak* in the neighbourhood of *Ilunskoi Pogost* (A), were baptised by the above-mentioned prelate, but they are far from being christians. They do not even wear the cross that is given them at baptism, which is here accounted the essential part of christianity; but publicly declare that they were compelled to be baptised against

(A) *Pogost* signifies properly a church with the buildings belonging to it: but, in a more extensive sense, it denotes the whole territory of a parish belonging to a church. The villages dependent on the church have also the same name.

their

are built and fortified with timber. Most of the villages take their names from the peasants who first built them, and but few from the rivulets on which they stand. The *Siberian* dialect in the villages, is very different from the common language of *Russia*, and is intermixed with many barbarous words never used in that country. Idleness, drunkenness, and debauchery, are so universal throughout all *Siberia*, that in many parts of it one meets with few persons who are free from the venereal disease.

General
mistake
in regard
to state
prisoners
sent thither.

THE notion believed and propagated by foreigners, that the criminals exiled by the *Russian* court to *Siberia*, whose number is very considerable, are obliged daily or weekly to catch and deliver in a certain number of fables, is a vulgar error; for that is an employment to which they are little accustomed. Of the unhappy exiles, who are sent thither as state-prisoners, some are strongly guarded in fortified houses, and maintained at the expence of the crown; others enjoy their liberty, but under certain restrictions; and others again are sent thither into slavery, to work in the mines, fortifications, &c. Several decayed merchants who are banished to *Siberia*, as debtors to the crown, meet with more favourable opportunities of getting money, and gradually retrieving their affairs, than if they had continued in *Russia*; and these opportunities they are suffered to embrace as often as they occur. To such industrious persons, *Siberia* must be looked upon rather as a desirable and advantageous country, than as a wretched place of banishment.

Trade of
Siberia.

THE many navigable rivers that water *Siberia* greatly facilitate its commerce, which is very considerable. By means of its trade with *China*, foreign *European* commodities are often sold in the towns of *Siberia*, nearly as cheap as at *Petersburg* and *Moscow*: nor is there a city in *Russia* from which merchants do not travel to *Siberia*, with foreign goods. These traders vend their merchandise partly among the inhabitants of the *Siberian* towns, but chiefly to the *Chinese* merchants, who frequent the great yearly fairs in *Siberia*; and purchase some of their commodities in return. Such a trader performs a long and tedious journey before he sees his

perpendicularly into the ground, or with wooden breast-works, like ramparts, made of logs and beams of timber laid upon each other. These *ostrogs* have only the principal buildings inclosed within them, as the *voivode*

or governor's house, the public offices, a magazine of provisions, an armory, a furr-warehouse, a church, &c. But most of the *ostrogs* stand near a town or village.

home again : for he sets out, we will suppose, from *Moscow*, in the spring ; arrives at *Makar*, where a fair is held in the summer ; and is at *Irbitz*, by the annual fair, in the beginning of the ensuing year. In the former place he barter some of his goods for such as will turn to better account in the latter ; which he does chiefly with a view to the *Chinese* trade. If any goods remain upon his hands, which he thinks he cannot dispose of to advantage in *Irkutsk*, he endeavours to procure a market for them at *Tobolsk*, where he arrives by winter. He leaves this place in the spring, and trading through all *Siberia*, comes about the end of the summer to *Irkutsk* : or if he be hindered by the ice, he fails not to be there by the beginning of winter, and then trades with the *Chinese*. After this, he bends his course to *Kiakta* ; and the following spring reaches *Jakutsk*. From thence he goes by water six or seven hundred wersts farther, and then proceeds in sledges directly to *Kiakta*, in order to dispose of his *Jakutskian* commodities. In the spring following he sets out for *Irkutsk*, and in autumn arrives at *Tobolsk*. After that, he takes care to be present at the *Irbitz* fair in winter, and in the ensuing summer at that of *Makar*. After thus travelling from place to place for four years and a half, he at last returns to *Moscow* ; and in that time, if he understands his business, and things have turned out well, he will have gained at least three hundred *per cent*. The *Russian* is the only coin used in *Siberia* : but most of the traffick is carried on by bartering goods for goods.

ALL *Siberia* is at present subject to the *Russian* govern-
ment, under which it was reduced towards the latter end of ^{subjected} the sixteenth century, in the following manner : in the reign of the czar *Iwan Basilowitz II.* and his successor the ^{to the} *Fæder Iwanowitz*, one *Jermak Timiofevitz*, a *Don Cofak*, at the ^{Russian} head of some thousands of his countrymen, committed dread-
ful ravages in the districts about the rivers *Oka* and *Wolga*, sack-
ing and plundering the towns, and destroying all be-
fore him ; till being at last driven to the greatest extremities
by the troops sent against him, and his retreat to the country
of the *Cofaks* effectually cut off ; after losing the greatest
part of his army, he crossed the rivers *Kama* and *Tshusowaia*,
and by the assistance of a certain *Strobinow*, or *Stroganow*, who
was sovereign of a vast tract of land near the *Tshusowaia*, em-
barked with eight hundred *Cofaks*, who still remained under
him, and other auxiliaries, on the river *Tura*, laid siege to the
town of *Onzigidin*, now called *Tiumen*, and took it, as he
afterwards did the city of *Tobolsk*, out of which he drove the
Kuzium-Kan. *Jermak* being thus master of the only two
towns

towns then in *Siberia*, and sensible he should not be able to keep in awe the prodigious numbers of mahometan *Tartars* who inhabited this country ; sent to *Moscow*, *Altanaï Sultan*, son of the *Kusumi-Kan*, whom he had taken prisoner, with a tender of his conquest to the *Russian* court, on condition of his obtaining a free pardon. His request was readily granted ; and a good body of troops were sent to take possession of the country. From that time, the *Russians* have been continually extending their dominions in *Siberia*. Soon after *Fermak*, being on an expedition with some ships on the river *Irtis*, was surprised in the night by the *Tartars*, and killed with most of his people. His memory is still held in great veneration in *Siberia* : and as an acknowledgment for the service performed by the *Cosaks* in this conquest, all the troops kept by the *Russians* in *Siberia*, are ordered always to be incorporated with them, and to bear their name. Hence the *Siberian* militia, to this day, are called *Cosaks*.

Its present government, and division into

Siberia now constitutes a very extensive government, consisting of three large provinces, each of which includes several subdivisions and towns, with their respective districts. Every town has its *Woiwode*, whose jurisdiction extends to the district belonging to it, without any *Uprawitel* or deputy under him. The *Statthalter*, or general governor of *Siberia*, resides at *Tobolsk* ; and the deputy statthalter, whose seat is in *Irkutsk*, and all the woiwodes are subordinate to him : but he has not the power of appointing a woiwode, they being always nominated by the chancery or office for the *Siberian* affairs at *Moscow*. In the government chancery at *Tobolsk*, are two secretaries, who are not changed, like the governor, but continue in office during life, if they behave well. For this reason they are more respected than even the general governor ; and the *Siberians*, of all ranks, pay their court chiefly to them. They likewise preside over the principal officers of the garrison, and have an almost unlimited power over the city of *Tobolsk*. All ecclesiastical persons and affairs in *Siberia* are under the jurisdiction of the metropolitan of *Tobolsk*.

THE three provinces into which *Siberia* is now divided, are,

I. *The province of TOBOLSK.*

The province of Tobolsk,

THE south part of which includes *Siberia Proper*, formerly called *Tura* : but the whole province strictly belongs to *Tartary*, properly so called ; as it once made a part of the kingdom of *Great Tartary*, and is peopled with *Tartarian* colonies.

THIS province is subdivided into the circles or districts of *Wercoturie, Catbrinenburg, Turinsk, Tiumen, Isetsk, Tobolsk, Surgut, Pelym, and Berezow.* *which is subdivided into the circles of Wercoturie,*

THE principal places in the circle of WERCOTURIE, the first one enters in going the usual road from *Russia*, from which it is separated by the *Wercoturian, Uralian, or Riphæan* mountains, are

THE town of *Wercoturie*, the first that the *Russians* built in *Siberia*, and the first one comes to in travelling the common road from *Solkamsk*. It lies on the river *Tura*, has a stone-castle, some pretty good buildings, four churches, two or three chapels, a convent of monks, a nunnery, and about two hundred and fifty dwelling houses, most of which are of wood. Its situation is pleasant : but the country round it produces little corn, the inhabitants finding their account more in gathering pine-nuts, of which vast quantities grow in these parts, than in agriculture, which is of course neglected. All goods brought to or carried out of *Siberia* are strictly examined here.

Neiwianskoi, a town on the river *Neiwa*, consisting of a wooden fort and about eight hundred houses, built in the year 1701, at the expence of the crown, on account of some considerable iron works which are there. It is plentifully supplied with all the necessaries of life ; and among its inhabitants are great numbers of *Starowerzi*, or old believers, as they stile themselves : but the *Greek* church calls them *Schismatics*. Very curious and serviceable utensils of brass and copper are made here ; and likewise at *Bynkowskoi*, another iron work and brass manufacture a little farther up on the same river.

Kushwinskoi, or *Blagodatskoi*, is also an iron and a copper-work, on the small river *Kushwa*. The mountain called *Blagodatskoi*, which yields the iron ore, yields likewise good magnets.

NEAR *Libianskoi Pogost*, on the river *Liala*, is a copper mine ; but of so poor an ore, that a quintal of it does not yield above two pounds of pure metal.

Wuiskoi Sawod, where are copper and iron works, with about two hundred houses, is famous for a writing sand of a gold colour, which is made of *gold-talc*, as it is called : and on the east-side of the river *Tagil*, near *Werkno-Tagilskoi Sawod*, and *Sburalsinskoi Sawod*, other iron works, is a rock of *asbestos* ; but very few of the veins are an inch thick. On

(A) A *Sawod* is a smelting-house, or place where ores and metals are melted down and wrought.

Cathri-
nenburg.

being scraped, the filaments are almost as soft as the finest silk. IN the circle of CATHRINENBURG, called in *Russia*, *Ekaterinburgskoi Viedz*, are very rich mines, and several considerable iron and copper-works. At *Kamenskje Sawod*, one of these works, is made the best *Siberian* iron.

THE forts, or *krepests*, as the *Russians* call them, *Miaskaï* and *Tsbiliabinskaia*, on the river *Mias*; *Iskulskaia*, on the lake *Iskul*; *Tshebarkulskaia*, on the lake *Shebat*, near which fine black beavers are caught; *Viskai*, on the river *Vi*, in the midst of a fertile country; *Ukly-Karagaiaskaia*, near a lake of the same name; and *Werkiaitzkaia*, on the river *Yaik*; were built of late years on the south-side of this circle, as a defence against the incursions of the *Bashkirians* and the *Kasathia-Horda*.

ABOUT fifty wersts from the last mentioned of these forts, which was erected in the year 1735, is a whole mountain of load-stone, near the river *Yaik*, about three wersts in length from north to south; and on the west-side it is divided into eight slopes of different depths, resembling so many terrasses. The seventh, which is the highest terrace, contains the best magnets. None are found at the summit of the hill: but about eight fathoms below it, there is a heap of sixty or seventy *puds* of ponderous stones, which at a distance look like large pebbles. These stones are found to have a magnetic virtue, for they attract a knife at the distance of an inch or more. One of these large magnets consists of a congeries of smaller stones, which operate in different directions. That part of the mountain where the load-stones are found, consists chiefly of a fine steel ore, which lies in *strata* between the magnetic rocks. The principal place in this circle is

Cathrinenburg or *Ekaterinburg*, a regular town upon the river *Iffet*, which runs through the middle of it. It is built in the *German* manner, and was begun by *Peter I.* in the year 1723, and finished in 1726, by his consort the czarina *Catherine*, after whom it is named. *Cathrinenburg* consists of about 450 houses within its walls, all built at the expence of the government, and most of its inhabitants are officers belonging to the crown: the rest are artificers, and head miners who have the care of the works. The suburbs, which are without the walls, are inhabited partly by exiled criminals, or others who work voluntarily at the fortifications and mines for daily pay. The public buildings of the town are a wooden church, a stone edifice for the public offices; an exchange with shops, an arsenal, and a toll or custom-house. This last is dependent on the government of

of *Tobolsk*; and the merchandize brought to the annual fair at *Irbitz*, which is the only time it is suffered to pass through this town, is searched here. As this place lies in the neighbourhood of the *Bashkirians*, it is well fortified and garrisoned with two companies of soldiers, besides a party of engineers and matrosses for the artillery. *Cathrinenburg* may be accounted the centre of all the *Siberian* mine-works belonging to the crown; and on this account it is the residence of the director of the *Siberian* mines, who issues out his instructions to the sub-directors, and passes their accounts. The water of the river *Iffet* is raised by a dam ninety-eight fathoms long, three high, and twenty broad, in order to supply a great number of mills and other engines belonging to the mines. All the forges and works about this town are kept in good condition, and the miners and artificers work with a diligence and spirit far beyond what is seen in other countries. Their wages are paid them regularly every four months, and all sorts of provisions are here very cheap. When any of the workmen fall sick, they are taken great care of in the hospital; to which patients are also brought from the neighbouring works. Adjoining to this hospital is a physic-garden for the use of the patients. This town, though belonging to the government of *Tobolsk*, is not subject to the *Siberian* government chancery, but has its particular jurisdiction; and the director general, when he sits in the chief mine court, has two mine-officers for assistants. There is, besides, a court of justice in this district, and a police peculiar to itself. A *German* school has been founded in this town.

In the circle of *TURINSK* lies the town of *Turinsk*, formerly called *Yepantshin*, which name it likewise still retains. It is situate upon the river *Tura*, and contains a wooden fort, a mother-church, with six subordinate ones, and about three hundred and fifty houses. Provisions are very good here; and so cheap, that a *pud* of excellent beef, equal to thirty-six pounds of our weight, may be bought for twenty or thirty *copeiks*, that is to say, for about a shilling or fifteen pence.

In the circle of *TIUMEN* are, *Tiumen*, anciently called *On-Zigibin*, a town, consisting of about five hundred houses, on the south-side of the *Tura*, at its junction with the little river *Tiumsenka*, which runs through it. Over the *Tura* is a bridge eighty-three fathoms long, which leads to a suburb on the north-side of the river, inhabited by *Russians*, mahometan *Tartars*, and *Bukarians*.

Tiumen is defended by a stone fort, has several churches, six of which are of wood, and a convent of nuns with a church. In the suburb are a church, and a *metshed* or *mosque*.

Krasnaia Sloboda, or *Krasnoslobodskoi Ostrog*, upon the river *Nisa*. The governor of this place is of equal dignity with the *woiwodes* of the smaller towns in *Siberia*. Great plenty of asparagus, above two feet high, grows wild in these parts.

Irbitskaia Sloboda, on the river *Irbis*, is famous for its annual fair, which is kept in the month of *January*. On this occasion, traders resort to this place from almost every town in the *Russian* dominions; and among the foreign merchants who frequent this fair, are *Greeks*, some of every *Tartarian* nation, and *Bukarians*. All goods brought here for sale, except gold, silver, and bullion, pay a duty of ten *per cent*.

Isetzk,

THE place of most note in the district of *ISETSK*, which was erected into a province in the year 1737, is

Dalmatow, a stately convent, upon the river *Iset*, in a level, fertile, and pleasant country.

Okunevskoi Ostrog, situated on the river *Mias*; *Isetskoi Ostrog*, on the river *Iset*; *Butkinskaia Sloboda*, and *Tetshinskaiia Sloboda*, on the river *Tetsha*, are little better than poor villages; though each of the two last is defended by a wooden fort.

Tobolsk.

IN the circle of *TOROLSK* lies the city of *Tobolsk*, the capital of all *Siberia*, and the residence of the governor-general. It is situate in latitude 58°. 12'. on the *Irtis*, near the influx of the *Tobol* into that river. This city is divided into the *Upper* and *Lower Town*, the former of which stands upon an eminence, on the east-side of the river *Irtis*, and the latter in a plain between that eminence and the river. Both towns taken together are of a very large circumference; but the houses are all built with wood. In the upper town, which is properly called the city, stands the fort, which was built with stone by the late governor *Gagarin*. In this fort are the government-court, the governor's house, the archbishop's palace, the exchange, and two of the principal churches, which are all stone-buildings. The *Upper-Town*, which stands on the east of the fort, and is surrounded with a rampart of earth, affords nothing remarkable but a market for provisions, and all kinds of small ware, three wooden churches, and the convent of *Roshdestvenskoi*. This part of the city is out of the reach of inundations from the river, by its high situation, which, in return, is attended with this inconveniency, that the inhabitants are obliged to go down the hill for water. Besides, large masses of earth fall from the side of the hill, on which the

the town stands, towards the river almost every year, which frequently obliges the inhabitants to pull down and rebuild the houses near the declivity. The *Lower-Town* contains a market-place for all sorts of provisions, with several shops, seven churches, and a stone convent called *Snamenskoi*; and several small brooks run through it into the *Irtis*. This part of the city has consequently water at command, but it is exposed to inundations when the river overflows its banks, which indeed does not happen very often. *Tobolsk* is very populous; and almost the fourth part of its inhabitants are *Tartars*, partly descended from those that were settled there before the conquest of *Siberia*, and partly from the *Bukarians*. These *Tartars*, in general, behave very quietly, and carry on some commerce; but practise no mechanic trades. The rest of the inhabitants are *Russian* exiles, or people whose ancestors were such. As every thing is sold so extremely cheap at *Tobolsk*, that a common man may live there very well for ten rubels (A) a year; indolence and sloth prevail to such a degree, that it is difficult to get the least utensil made, though the town abounds with artificers, who want neither tools nor materials to carry on their respective trades. The inhabitants of *Tobolsk* are nicknamed *Jassowiki*, either from a fish called *Jassi*, that is, "red eyes," of which there is great plenty here, or for some other reason which we know not. Several of the *Swedish* officers, who were taken prisoners at the battle of *Pultawa*, and sent to *Tobolsk*, set up schools there in the year 1714, for teaching the children of *Swedes*, *Russians*, *Cosaks*, *Tartars*, &c. the *German*, *Latin*, and *French* languages, with geography, geometry, and drawing. Many of them also took in boarders; and these schools acquired such reputation, that children were sent to them from great distances, to be educated. Such was the exemplary behaviour of these military pedagogues, that their undertaking met with uncommon success. But when the peace of *Nystadt* was concluded, the *Swedish* officers returned to their own country, and these beneficial seminaries of learning dropped. Some time after, the empress of *Russia* founded a *German* school at *Tobolsk*. The trade of this city is in a flourishing condition; and the traffic carried on by the *Calmuck* and *Bukarian* merchants, in *Indian* goods, with which they supply all *Siberia* and part of *Russia*, is very considerable. All the *Chinese* caravans are

(A) The commercial value par of which makes the *Rubel* of the *Rubel* varies according worth just four shillings and six-
to the course of exchange; the pence sterling.

obliged to pass through this town; and all the furs furnished by *Siberia*, are brought into a warehouse in this city, from whence they are sent to the *Siberian* chancery at *Moscow*.

Abalak, a small town about twenty wersts from *Tobolsk*, is famous for a picture of the virgin *Mary*, to which great numbers of pilgrims resort at all times of the year; and several masses are said before it. This picture is carried annually to *Tobolsk*, in a procession of the clergy, and is kept there about a fortnight.

Sempalatia Krepost (A), or *Sempalat* fort, was built in the year 1714, on the bank of the *Irtis*, in a pleasant, fertile, but uncultivated country, the soil of which is so good, that it produces a very fine species of melons. This fort has its name from *Sempalat*, a ruinous town lying about sixteen wersts from it, on the same river, where some remains of old stone-buildings are still to be seen. The first *Russian* settlers here found seven of these houses, as the name of the place imports. The learned are of opinion, that some old inscriptions, which were found among these ruins, relate to the mythology of the *Calmuks*; and that this place was deserted by that nation in consequence of a maxim of their religion, that when any consecrated place is once profaned by war, it must be relinquished for ever.

The famous salt-lake *Jamusha*.

ABOUT six wersts from *Yamushewa Krepost*, a fort on the river *Irtis*, lies the famous salt-lake called *Jamusha*, which gives name to the fort, and may be looked upon as a prodigy in nature. It is of a round form, and about nine wersts in circumference. Its banks are so full of salt, that the ground is in a manner crystalized with it. The water is saline to the highest degree; and the salt that it yields is excellent, surpassing all other salt in whiteness, and consisting entirely of cubic crystals. It is found here in such quantities, that several ships might be soon loaded with it; and the places where the salt has been taken away, are filled up with it again in five or six days. The provinces of *Tobolsk* and *Yenisei* are supplied with salt from this lake; which yields a sufficient quantity for fifty such provinces. This salt-trade has been monopolized by the crown. A pud of salt is sold on the spot for twelve copeiks; but at *Tobolsk*, *Tomsk*, and *Yeniseisk*, it costs about twenty.

Desart of Barraba.

THE tract of land called the *Desart of Barraba*, which is in this circle, lies between the rivers *Irtis* and *Oby*, and extends from the town of *Tara* to *Tshawskoi-Ostrog*. This place yields but little wood; but has an excellent soil for

(A) *Krepost* signifies a fort or fortified town.

tillage,

and part of it might also be laid out in meadows and
However, it is as yet uninhabited. *Barraba* is
rised with a great number of lakes, which yield plenty
ruschen, a species of carp; and abounds with elks,
foxes, ermines, and squirrels.

WEEN the *Irtis* and the *Oby* are some rich copper-
and from the *Ploskaia-Gora*, or flat mountains, fine
carried to the copper-works at *Kolivan*. The copper-
in the mountain *Pistowa* (so called from the *Pista*, or
irs, that grow on it) yield a vast produce: and there
ed of digging deep to come at the ore, as it lies near
face of the ground. Every hundred weight of this
ds twelve pounds of pure copper. Not far from *Pistowa*
o other hills, near the surface of which ore is also

The *Woskresenskian* mountains likewise abound with
at it lies mostly in *strata* or veins at a considerable
Most of these ores, besides being very rich in copper,
great deal of silver, which affords so much gold as
rich returns for the trouble and expence of extracting
is thought that the whole country between the *Irtis*
: *Oby* abounds in rich ore of various metals; and that
generally lies near the surface of the earth.

circle of *SURGUT* has its name from *Surgut*, a pretty *Surgut*,
wn on the river *Oby*, surrounded with pallisadoes and
The *Ostiaks* who live in this country pay annual
to the *Woiwode* of *Surgut*. The adjacent country a-
with fables; black, white, and red foxes, and fine
rs; and has plenty of excellent fish, but produces no
The inhabitants of this town have the nick-name of
; because most of them squint.

circle of *PELYM*, to which the famous field-mar- *Pelym*,
nt *Munich* was banished, is large, but contains no re-
le place. The small town of *Pelym*, from which it is
stands on a river of the same name. There are several
in this district, and some of a considerable extent.

circle of *BERESOW* is bounded on the north by the *Beresow*,
s of *Waigatz*, and on the east by a large bay of the
Arcean, which runs into the land towards the south;
the sixty-fifth degree of latitude separates into two
one of which is called the *Obakaia-Guba* or *Oby-bay*,
rother *Tazowskaia-Guba*, or the bay of *Tazow*. The
by empties itself into the former, and the *Taz* into the

This district was under the *Russian* dominion long
the other parts of *Siberia* were conquered; for it was
to the empire by the czar *Gabriel*, so early as the
130.

THE most remarkable places in it are,
Liapinskoi, from which the *Ostiaks*, who live in those parts, are called *Liapinians*.

Kuiskoi, on the river *Kuiskoi*, which gives name to the *Ostiaks* and *Samoyedes* who inhabit the adjacent country.

Obdorskoi-Ostrog, which lies near the mouth of the *Oby*, and to which the *Samoyedes* bring in their tribute; and

Berezw, a town on the river *Oby*, fortified with pallisades, where the court-favourite, prince *Menshikoff*, died in exile.

NEAR *Nadymkoi-Ostrog*, which stood by the mouth of the river *Nadym*, where it falls into the bay of *Oby*, till it was destroyed by the *Furaki*, is a deep and spacious cavern in a mountain, where the *Nadymian-Ostiaks* shelter themselves. They make use of ladders to get into and out of this cave.

Novaia
Semlia.

THE island and streights of *Waigatz*, and *Novaia-Semlia* or *New-land*, which lies beyond them, and is erroneously written *Nova-Zembla*, are but little known. This country was first discovered in the year 1566, by *Stephen Barrow*, an Englishman. In 1596, *William Barentz* and *Jacob Heemskirk*, two *Hollanders*, wintered there with their crew. The sun disappeared on the third of *November*, and they never saw it again till the twenty-fourth of *January* following. The *Russians* have not yet ventured to sail round the coast of *Novaia-Semlia*; but as they go in small vessels between that country and the coast of *Asia*, and the *Dutch* navigators have discovered the northern coast of it, we may conclude that it is an island; and it is represented as such in the *Russian Atlas*. The *Samoyedes*, who live in this neighbourhood, on the coast of the *Ice-sea*, sometimes cross over to *Novaia-Semlia*, to hunt rein-deer, elks, and white bears. It is yet uncertain, whether this island be inhabited or not; for granting that men have been seen on it, that does not absolutely prove that they always dwell there.

II. The Province of YENISEI.

The province of
Yenisei.

Divided
into the
circles of
Mangasea,

THE south part of this province must have been included in the ancient kingdom of *Great Tartary*; but whether the north part ever belonged to it is doubtful. We have already spoken of the *Tungusians*, *Ostiaks*, and other *Tartarian* nations, who inhabit this province, which is now divided into the districts or circles of *Mangasea*, *Narym*, *Tomsk*, *Kustnetsk*, *Krasnoiark*, and *Yenisei*.

IN the circle of *MANGASEA*, which the *Russians* call *Mangaiskoi Vieux*, are four bays, into one of which the
Yenisei

Yenisei discharges itself; besides the large gulf of the *Frozen-sea*, of which that of *Tazow* is only a bay. Though the climate of the country near the mouth of the *Yenisei* be most excessively cold, yet it is well peopled; the all-bounteous Creator having liberally bestowed many advantages on this country, which is generally represented in very dismal colours. The white and blue foxes, and the white wolves and bears which are caught here, surpass those of all other parts in size. Their hair is also finer, and grows closer than ordinary; on which account these skins always bear a higher price than those that are brought from the *Oby* and the *Lena*. These profitable captures induce more *Russians* to settle on the banks of the *Yenisei*, than near any other river in *Siberia*. From *Mangascea* to the sea, and along the coast to the river *Piasiga*, and from the *Piasiga* to the *Cantanga*, on which is situate *Catanaskoi*, which lies also in this circle, in latitude 70 degrees 30 minutes, and along the banks of this last river, the country is full of *Russian* habitations. Some of the inhabitants remove to end their days in other places; and some chuse to live and die here. People who want employment flock to these parts in great numbers; and a young fellow, tho' he be ever so poor at his first setting out, soon makes his fortune in this country, if he is active, industrious, and frugal, by catching those animals, whose skins are so valuable, and with which it abounds. In summer, when only rein-deer are to be caught, the people of these parts employ themselves in fishing, in order to lay up provision for the winter. The *Russian* parish of *Kataskoi-Pogost*, which lies in the sixty-eighth degree and a half of north latitude, on the banks of the *Yenisei*, is much frequented by the hunters who live in the neighbouring houses, of which there are numbers in the adjacent country.

THE principal place in this circle is *Mangascea*, or *Mangascea*, the most northern town in *Siberia*, upon the parallel of sixty-six degrees of north latitude. The time when *Mangascea* was first discovered and peopled by *Russian* colonies, cannot be well ascertained. According to an ancient tradition of the country, the old *Ostrog* of *Mangascea* was built by a colony from *Archangel*, before there was a *Russian* town known in *Siberia*. It takes its name from a tribe of *Samoyedes*, called *Mangascea*, who inhabited these parts, and, by promising to pay tribute to the *Russians*, gave occasion to the building of this town. Old *Mangascea*, which stood on the river *Taz*, fell gradually to decay; and in the year 1600 the present town was built, and the inhabitants of the old *Ostrog* were removed to this, which stands on the north bank

bank of the *Nikolskoi-Shar*, about a werst from the place where the river *Turukan* falls into that branch of the *Yenisei*. The houses in this place, which is inclosed within a small wooden fortification, with four pieces of cannon, are not contiguous, nor do they exceed one hundred. Most of the inhabitants of *Mangasea* have always been *Cosaks*; placed there in order to subdue, or at least check, the pagan nations of this country, particularly the *Tungusians* and *Samoyedes*. The *Mangaseans* are nick-named *Swietlobi*, from their shining foreheads; and *Parfowiki*, because they eat dried and putrified fish instead of bread. This town carries on a good trade in furs. In summer-time the sun is seen here continually above the horizon; and during that season, prodigious flights of birds, particularly water-fowls, and several kinds of wild geese, ducks, plovers, snipes, &c. frequent the neighbouring country. Since the year 1721, this town and its district have been annexed to the province of *Yenisei*; whereas, before that time, it depended immediately on *Tobolsk*, and prior to that was in the jurisdiction of *Tomsk*.

Narym, IN the circle of **NARYM**, the chief place, and that a very inconsiderable one, is the town of *Narym*, which stands on an island in the river *Oby*, and is fortified with palisades and wooden towers. The neighbouring *Ostiaks* pay their tribute there.

Tomsk, THE principal places in the circle of **TOMSK** are, the town of *Tomsk*, situated on the river *Tom*, at the place where it is joined by a rivulet called *Ushanka*, which runs through the town. The foundation of *Tomsk* was laid in the reign of the czar *Pecodor Iwanowicz*, who built an *Ostrog* upon this spot, about twenty years before the building of *Kutznetsk*. Several nations of these parts having been reduced by force of arms, and others submitting voluntarily to the *Russians*, the *Ostrog* was by degrees converted into a fort; and the fort in time increased to a town, which now consists of above two thousand houses. It was once the second city in *Siberia*, being next in degree to *Tobolsk*, and continued such for years; but has since been included in the province of *Yenisei* (A). In the highest part of the town stands a small wooden castle, defended by fourteen pieces of cannon; and in it are a cathedral built with wood, the woiwode's house, the government-chancery, and an arsenal. The lower part of the town, which is the most populous, contains a mona-

(A) Some are of opinion, that the circle of *Tomsk* still belongs to the province of *Tobolsk*; but the *Russian Atlas*, which we follow, places it in that of *Yenisei*.

tery, a nunnery, four parish-churches, an exchange for merchants, and a Tartarian slobode. This place is well situated for trade, and carries on a considerable one. It lies in the great road from *Yeniseisk*, and all the towns in the northern and eastern parts of *Siberia*; so that all caravans going to or from *China*, besides one or two from the country of the *Calmuks*, pass through it every year. Here are indeed tradesmen and artificers of all kinds; but they are extremely indolent and slothful; owing to the extraordinary cheapness of provisions in this town, and their brutal propensity to drunkenness and venery, there being scarcely a family in the place that is entirely free from the foul disease. The adjacent country is very fertile, and produces all sorts of grain.

Bogorodskoi, a town upon the *Oby*, is famous for its iron-works; but more for a picture of the virgin *Mary*, which is distinguished by the appellation of *Oedictria*, and is carried in solemn procession to *Tomsk* every year, on the twenty-first of *May*.

In 1713, a fortification called *Tshauskoi-Ostrog*, defended by five pieces of cannon, was built upon the river *Tshaus*, in order to check the incursions of the *Kasatshai-Horda*, who have never made their appearance since in those parts. Most of the inhabitants possess great herds of cattle.

In the desert of *Barraba*, and on the borders of it, are three forts, called *Ubinskoi-Pass*, *Kainskoi-Pass*, and *Tartaskoi-Pass*. The first of these, lying near the lake *Ueba*, has a garrison of fifty men, is dependent on *Kainskoi-Pass*, stands on the river *Om*, and is defended by brass-guns, and a garrison of an hundred and fifty men. *Tartaskoi-Pass*, which likewise stands upon the river *Om*, is but a mean place, though its situation is good, and the country round it very fertile.

THE chief place in the circle of *KUTSNETSK* is *Kutnesk*, *Kut-*
a large town on the river *Tom*, formerly inhabited by the *Kirghiz Tartars*, who retreated by degrees to the borders of the country of the *Calmuks*, when the *Russians* settled in this place. This town has been built above an hundred years, and was peopled with colonies from the districts of *Tomsk*, *Wimourie*, and *Veliki-Novogrod*. Before that time the *Tatars*, who dwelt in the place where the city now stands, used to smelt iron from the ore, and subsisted partly by that employment, and partly by the iron which they wrought. Hence the town had its name; *Kutnetz*, in the *Russian* language, signifying a forge. In 1689, *Kutnesk* was declared a city. The upper and middle parts of it stand upon a high

a high bank, and the lower part on a plain, between that eminence and the river *Tom*. In the upper part stands a small wooden citadel; in the middle is an *Ostrog*, inclosing the woiwode's house and the government-chancery; and in the lower part are most of the houses, which amount to about five hundred, and a church. No sort of trade is carried on in this place.

Bieloiaskaia and *Bikatunskaja*, are two frontier forts erected in this district, to check the incursions of the *Calmuks*.

Krasnoi-
arsk,

THE circle of *KRASNOIARSK* contains, among other less remarkable places, the town of *Krasnoiarsk*, situate at the junction of the river *Katsha* with the *Jenisei*. It was first built in the year 1728, as an *ostrog* or fort, to check the incursions of the neighbouring tribes; and afterwards, gradually, became a town. Its name is derived from the dark-red colour of the north-west bank of the *Katsha*. The original *ostrog* stands on the north-side of the town, and contains the great church, the government-chancery, the woiwode's house, the arsenal, &c. In the town itself, which is surrounded with palisadoes and towers, are a church, the town-house, and about three hundred and fifty dwelling-houses. The inhabitants are called *Buntowshike*, by way of contempt, on account of their frequent revolts. Most of them are *Slushiwie*, or a sort of irregular infantry; though some of them are not without such wealth as the country affords, which consists in horses and cattle, that feed all the year round on the steppe or heaths. The adjacent country is so fertile, that provided it be only superficially plowed, without any manure, it will bear crops of corn five or six years running; and when the land is impoverished, there is plenty of other waste-ground, which may soon be rendered fit for sowing. Many antiquities were formerly found in these parts; particularly in the town of *Krasnoiarsk*. These remains of ancient times, several of which are still to be seen near *Abelansk* and *Sagansk*, were taken out of old graves and monuments. Even considerable quantities of gold and silver have formerly been found in them; and copper is now frequently dug up in such places. The great road from *Tomsk* to *Irkutsk* goes through *Krasnoiarsk*.

Wekrneikaraulnoi-Ostrog, *Sanianskoi-Ostrog*, and *Abakanskoi-Ostrog*, are forts built on the river *Jenisei*, in the years 1707, 1709, and 1725, to awe the *Kirgizians*, which end they have fully answered.

THE surprising dexterity of the *Tartars* in catching fables near *Kanskoi-Ostrog*, which stands on the bank of the river *Kan*, renders that place one of the best in *Siberia* for the fur-trade;

trade; on which account the merchants, who travel to the frontiers of *China*, generally make some stay there. It is also one of the most lucrative places in the department of the woiwode of *Krasnoiarsk*; and the *Kanskoi*, or receiver of the tribute, pays a round sum for his office.

THE principal place in the circle of *YENISEI* is the city and *Yeni-yei* of *Yeniseisk*, the capital of this province, situate on the river *Yenisei*, which is there about a werst and a half in breadth. This city, which is built along the bank of the river, is about six wersts in circumference. An ostrog was erected in this place in 1618, which at first depended on *Tobolsk*, and then was under the jurisdiction of *Tomsk*; but it was afterwards raised to a town, and in 1719 made the capital of the province. The old ostrog contains the great church, the woiwode's house, the chancery or state-offices, and an arsenal. In the city are three churches, a monastery, a nunnery, an exchange for merchants, a powder-magazine, a magazine for provisions (the two last inclosed with pallisadoes); and seven hundred private houses. The *Archimandrite*, who superintends the convent of *Troitz-Mangaséa*, which stands near the mouth of the river *Nishne Tunguska*, as well as the whole body of the *Yenisean* clergy, resides in the monastery at *Yeniseisk*. A considerable trade is carried on at this place, in which most of its inhabitants are more or less concerned. Here is great plenty of corn, flesh, and fowl; but the only fruit this country produces are two or three sorts of berries. Drunkenness, sloth, and debauchery, with all their concomitant diseases, prevail here as in the other towns of *Siberia*. The inhabitants of this place are looked upon as a crafty, deceitful people, which has procured them the nick-name of *Skowfniki*, which signifies sharp-sighted.

Markowo Gorodishche, *Ust-Tunguskoi*, and *Jesaulowo Sielo*, are handsome villages, or rather small towns, on the river *Yenisei*.

The forts called *Maskowskoi-Ostrog*, situated on the river *Ket*, and *Rubinskoi-Ostrog*, are very poor fortifications. *Tassinskoi-Ostrog*, another fort, which stands on the river *Ussilka*, is in somewhat better condition, having been rebuilt and improved in the year 1723. But the *Tartars* and *Tungusians* of the country it was intended to awe, are become so peaceable and submissive, that it has no longer occasion to use the few guns with which it is provided.

Udinskoi-Ostrog, a small place, was built in the year 1644 on the river *Uda*, and brings a considerable income to the *Yenisean* woiwode; all the neighbouring *Buradians* paying their tribute of furs at this place.

The province of Irkutsk.

Its government, and division into the circles of Ilimsk,

III. The Province of IRKUTSK,

WHICH also belongs to *Tartary*, properly so called, at least as far as the circle of *Yakutsk*, which indeed cannot rightly be included in it. This province is governed by a deputy *Statthalter*, under whose jurisdiction are the woiwodes of *Ilimsk*, *Selengensk*, *Nerisbinsk*, *Yakutsk*, and the officers who preside over *Obotsk* and *Kamtschatka*; though he is himself subject to the governor of *Tobolsk*, notwithstanding he has a large appointment: for his perquisites, exclusive of his salary, amount to 30,000 rubels a-year. The *Buratiens*, *Yakutians*, and other inhabitants of this province, having been already spoken of, we have now only to mention its seven circles, and their principal places.

THE circle of *ILIMSK* contains the town of the same name, situate upon the river *Ilim*, which, though a poor mean place, consisting of only eighty houses, and a pallisadoed fort, is nevertheless the residence of a woiwode. But it is remarkable for the quantities of fine black fables that are caught in its neighbourhood. Great numbers of *Tungusians* live near *Bratskoi-Ostrog*; which stands on the river *Angara*, and consists of about fifty dwelling-houses. About five wersts from it is a monastery called *Spaskoi*; and at the distance of about four wersts is a great distillery for spirits.

Endinkoi-Ostrog, on the bank of the *Angarâ*; *Lenskoi-Ostrog*, on the river *Lena*; and *Ust-Kutskoi-Ostrog*, also on the *Lena*, are very mean pallisadoed places. Not far from this last, and near the river *Kuta*, are several saline springs, which furnish the whole circle of *Ilimsk* with salt.

Kirenskoi-Ostrog, which was built on the bank of the *Lena* in 1665, is now in a mean condition. The country round it is very fertile, and, considering its latitude, which is in 57 deg. 47 min. has a surprising verdure, and produces various sorts of vegetables, which are remarkably large in their kind. The sturgeons and streleds caught in the rivers near this ostrog are reckoned the finest in all *Siberia*. Even in this frozen climate, near the influx of the river *Kirenga* into the *Lena*, is a convent famed for its opulence and endowments. Many of the inhabitants of these parts bordering on the *Lena*, are disfigured with wens of an uncommon bigness, and even their cows and oxen are subject to the same disagreeable excrescences.

Irkutsk,

In the circle of *IRKUTSK* are, *Irkutsk* the capital of this province, and the residence of its deputy *Statthalter*, situate near the river *Angara*, in a fine plain not far from the lake *Baikal*. This city, one of the most considerable and populous

lous in all *Siberia*, takes its name from the river *Irkutsk*, which runs into the *Angara* near the place where it stands. It contains near a thousand good dwelling-houses, and is inclosed with palisadoes, within which are fourteen small forts, a moat, and some *chevaux-de-frize*. It is also defended by a fort, without the town, near the *Angara*, and by sixteen pieces of cannon. There are two churches built with stone, and four with wood, within the city; and two other churches, one of which belongs to a nunnery, stand without it. The bishop of *Irkutsk* has a jurisdiction over all the clergy of the province. The inhabitants, who are chiefly traders, live in the *Siberian* manner, that is, in drunkenness, indolence, and debauchery; the consequences of which are very common among them. The neighbouring country is pleasant, and diversified with hills and vales; but as it lies uncultivated, great quantities of corn are brought hither from other places. Here is plenty of game, as elks, stags, wild-boars, and roebucks; with partridges, wood-cocks, moor-hens, and snipes. The lake of *Baikal* is an inexhaustible magazine of fish. Foreign goods are sold here almost as cheap as at *Moscow* and *Petersburg*; for merchants resort hither from every town of any note in *Russia*, and barter their commodities for *Chinese* goods.

ABOUT six wersts from *Irkutsk* is a distillery for spirits, consisting of thirty-seven alembecs; a little farther is another of fifty-three; and beyond that is a third with sixty. All these belong to the empress, and supply the circles of *Irkutsk*, *Ilimsk*, and *Selengensk*, with distilled liquors.

Nikolskaia Sastawa, or *St. Nicholas's* custom-house, stands at the mouth of the river *Angara*. The duties payable on *Chinese* goods are received there, and the collector of those duties has so profitable a post, that he generally makes his fortune in one year. This country is frequented with prodigious flights of all kinds of wild-ducks.

ON an island formed by the river *Angara* are two salt-works, which supply the whole district of *Irkutsk* on this side of the lake *Baikal*, and part of that of *Ilimsk*, with salt.

THE country about *Olonki*, a slobode consisting of two large villages, very pleasantly situated, yields plenty of corn.

Balaganskoi-ostrog, upon the river *Angara*, was built before that of *Irkutsk*, and is a place of some note. It is defended only by two pieces of brass cannon. Near this ostrog are about sixty good houses, which are inhabited partly by *Slush-*
zui or irregular troops, and partly by traders, who are all in very good circumstances.

Urisk, a village on a rivulet of the same name, consists of several houses so well built, as not easily to be matched by those of most towns in *Siberia*.

Selen-
ginsk.

THE places of most note in the circle of SELENGENSK are, *Senlenginsk*, a town upon the river *Selenga*, made an ostrog in the year 1666, about twenty years before the fort which now defends it, and to which the place chiefly owes its prosperity, was built. Its extent is small, containing only about an hundred and fifty houses and two churches, inclosed within a fortification, which is defended by five pieces of brass cannon, and as many iron-guns, with a regiment for its garrison. All the neighbouring country is very mountainous and barren; but at the distance of fifteen wersts lower, there is good arable land. The district about *Senlenginsk* yields great plenty of rhubarb; and indeed all the rhubarb that is exported from *Russia* is the produce of these parts.

Strielki, a square fort erected upon a point of land between the rivers *Thioki* and *Selenga*, in a fertile and pleasant country; but not sufficiently garrisoned, considering its being a frontier place; nor is it fortified otherwise than with palisades. The *Chinese* caravans pass through this place.

Troitzkaia-Krepost, a fort lately built on the little river *Kiakta*, on the frontiers of *Siberia*, consists of an ostrog with four bastions. All traders and merchants, who pass through this place, are obliged to pay duty for their goods, unless they quit the road, and go another way to avoid the fort.

Kiakta, or *Kiaktinskoi-Krepost*, and *Kiaktinskaia-Torgowais-Sloboda*, are the limits between *Russia* and *China* towards the south, as they were settled by a treaty concluded in 1727. Before that time the river *Bura*, which lies about eight wersts farther towards the south, was looked upon as the boundary between the *Russian* and *Chinese* empires; and this was more agreeable to the natural divisions of the countries, as well as more advantageous to *Russia*, than the present limits, which are arbitrarily laid out across deserts, and over mountains, and ascertained by pillars set up along the frontiers. By this alteration, the *Russians* have also lost the fine iron-ore, which the mountains near the river *Bura*, and no other place in those parts, afforded. Two slobodes were also built on the banks of the little river *Kiakta* in 1727; one on the north-side of that river, inhabited by *Russians*, and the other on the south-side, occupied by *Chinese*. They lie about 120 fathoms asunder, and are surrounded with an ostrog; besides which, the *Russian* slobode is defended by six bastions, and a moat. Between these

these two slobodes a barrier is erected, and a guard placed, who, on both sides, are very careful that no encroachments be made on the frontiers. As these slobodes lie in a barren waste, all sorts of provisions are very dear there. The Chinese traders are more numerous than the Russian merchants in these frontier towns.

Funkinskoi-Ostrog lies to the west of *Kiakta*, in latitude 50°. 15'. In the neighbourhood of this ostrog live the roving *Soietians*, who are pagan *Tartars*.

On the other side of *Selenginsk*, near the lake of *Baikal*, lies *Udinsk*, a small town upon the river *Uda*, which is navigable, and runs into the *Selenga*, near this place, which is surrounded with fine fields and meadows, and great plenty of wood, and consists of somewhat above an hundred houses, defended by a fort and five brass cannon. The road to the south and east frontiers of *China* passes through this town, in which there is plenty of provisions, particularly garden-fruit and fish.

Ilunskoi Ostrog, or *Bolsbaia Saimka*, on the river *Selenga*; *Kakanskoi Ostrog*, on the brook *Kakana*, which runs into a branch of the *Selenga*, and is situated in a good arable land, with excellent pastures; *Hanzinskoi Ostrog*; and *Bargazinskoi Ostrog*, on the little river *Barguzin*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*, are places of less note in this circle; in which are also the monasteries of *Posolk* and *Troits*; the former situated on the south-side of the lake of *Baikal*; and the latter an ancient and stately building, richly endowed.

The circle of NERTSHINSK contains

Nertshinsk, a frontier town towards *China*, built upon the river *Nertzka*, in the year 1658, in a country which is very mountainous, but yields excellent pasture for cattle. It has some public edifices, and one hundred and fifty houses, most of which are very indifferent. The fort, which first gave rise to the town, mounts thirty-two brass and one iron cannon. The inhabitants of this place are indolent, debauched, and drunkards. The Chinese caravans used formerly to pass through *Nertshinsk*; but they now take another road. However, the Russian envoys are well received and handsomely entertained by the Chinese, and the like compliments is paid to those of *China* by the Russians, in this town. A treaty of peace was concluded between the two empires, at this place, in 1689.

Argunsk, the farthest fort of the Russians, towards the east on the *Mongolian* frontiers, was first built in the year

1682, on the east bank of the *Argun*, for the conveniency of levying the tribute payable by the *Tungusians*, who inhabit these parts; but was rebuilt in 1689 on the west-side of that river. It is well garrisoned, and carries on a considerable trade with the *Mongals*. The country round it is very fertile, and the air healthy; but so cold, that even in summer, the earth, in many places, is not thawed above two or three feet below the surface. The territory of *Argunsk* is frequently visited with slight shocks of an earthquake in the spring, and about the beginning of winter; and its inhabitants, besides the venereal disease, with which both young and old of both sexes are miserably afflicted, are very subject to epilepsies. The *Chinese* erect new pillars every year on the eastern bank of the *Argun*, to mark the limits of their frontiers.

Silver
mines.

Not far from *Argunsk*, are the *Argunskian*, or as they are sometimes called the *Nertschinskian* silver mines. The smelting houses belonging to them, stand on the little river *Tusatki*. The ore does not lie deep; though it is found in masses or *strata*: nor does any great profit arise from these mines, which, however, answer the expence of working them. One pound of fine silver extracted from this ore, contains the value of two ducats and a half of fine gold, which has a beautiful colour, and is exceeding malleable. Twenty-six *puds* and some odd pounds of pure silver, and twenty-seven pounds of fine gold, both which were the produce of this mine, were delivered in at *Petersburg* for the use of the crown in 1740 and 1741. About six miles south-east of this place, is a mountain of beautiful green jasper; but so mixed with common stone, that it is rare to find any large piece, quite transparent and without flaws. In the neighbouring waste are several salt lakes, one of which is upwards of three wersts in circumference, and produces great quantities of good common salt, which floats on the surface of its water.

A mountain of
green
jasper.

In the circle of *JAKUTZK* are

The circle
of *Jakutzk*.

The town of *Jakutzk*, consisting of between five and six hundred poor houses, and a wooden fort, situate near the river *Lena*. It is supplied with plenty of various kinds of fish; and the adjacent country is very fit for tillage: but the inhabitants prefer hunting.

Oleminskoi Ostrog, which also stands on the *Lena*, is one of the most ancient *ostrogs* in these parts; but consists only of a few mean houses, and has no more than forty-six families of peasants

peasants in its territory. The country between this place and *Witimk* is a fertile plain, capable of supporting a great number of people, if they were industrious: but very little care is taken to cultivate it. The rye, barley, oats, and hemp, which grow here, are very good in their kind.

Witimskaia Sloboda, which consists of a few houses, a church, and a custom-house, is one of the oldest Russian settlements on the banks of the *Lena*, and almost as ancient as the town of *Yakutzk*. Though it lies in $59^{\circ} 28'$ north latitude, yet the harvest, when the weather proves favourable, is seldom later than the middle of *August* old stile.

FARTHER north, towards the *Ice-Sea*, is the river *Karaulac*, which runs into a bay of the *Frozen Ocean*. Near this river lieutenant *Lassenius*, who was sent upon discoveries by the late czarina *Ann Iwanowna*, wintered with his party in the year 1735, and never saw the sun above the horizon from the sixth of *November* to the eighteenth of *January*.

THE territory of *Ocotzk* lies on the coast of the sea of *The Kamtsbatka*, and takes its name from the *Ocotzkoi Ostrog*, *tory* of which stands on the little river *Ocota*, and is the residence of a *Ocotzk* governor, under whose jurisdiction are the *ostrogs* of *Taviskoi*, *Udskoi*, and *Anadyskoi*, situated in the same district. From the harbour of *Ocotzk*, which is three wersts from the *Ostrog*, the Russians cross over into the peninsula of *Kamtsbatka*. The soil about the *Ocotzkoi Ostrog* produces little or no grass; and provisions are brought thither from *Yakutzk*, both by land and water. This last conveyance is very tedious, and attended with some danger: nor is the land-carriage free from difficulties; for the distance is nine hundred and nineteen wersts, and the road lies over mountains, and through morasses and thick woods, of larch and birch trees, so that the journey takes up near six weeks. Besides, every thing must be carried this way on horses or rein-deer; which last are furnished by the neighbouring *Tungusians*.

THE north-east extremity of *Siberia* is still but very little known. The cape at the farthest north point of this country, called *Tshuketzkoi* (in the Russian maps *Sbalaginskoi Nofs*) is in *Siberia*, and consequently belongs to *Russia*. Near the promontory, or north-east point of the continent, is an island called *Diomedes*; and near the east-point lies the island of *St. Laurence*.

THE peninsula of *KAMTSBATKA*, which the Chinese call *The peninsula of Jesso*, and the Germans *Jesso* or *Jedso*, joins to the extreme north-east part of *Siberia*, and runs upwards of seven hundred miles inhabitants, &c.

miles in a south-east direction, between the latitudes of 60 and 52 degrees, and from about the 172d to the 177th degree of longitude. On the north of it lies the continent; to the west and south, the bay of *Penshinsk* and the sea of *Kamtschatka*; and towards the east it is bounded by the eastern ocean. From the south-east point of this peninsula a chain of islands extends as far as *Japan*. This country was not at all known to the *Russians*, till about the middle of the last century, when some *Jakutskian* fishermen were driven by a storm to its south-east promontory; and towards the same time, viz. in 1643, the *Dutch* discovered part of its eastern coasts by sea. The next information of it was given to the office of trade at *Moscow*, in the year 1701, by *Wolodimir Atlassow**, a *Cosak* officer, who travelled all the way by land, from *Jakutsk* to *Kamtschatka*. According to his account, there is a double promontory, called by some *Nos-Tschalatskoi* and *Anadirskoi*, between the *Kolym* and *Anadyr*, two of the principal rivers in this country, which no vessel can pass; because the west-side of this cape is choaked up with large floats of ice in summer, and quite frozen in winter; whilst the sea on the east-side of *Nos-Anadyrskoi*, where the *Hollanders* navigated, is open and clear. The whole country is extremely barren and quite uncultivated; and yet its inhabitants, who consist of *Kurili*, *Lutorzi*, *Korwaki*, *Trushki*, *Stugagiri*, and other savages, besides the *Kamtschada* themselves, are at continual war with one another, as if they had things of value to contend for. Their usual arms are poles, clubs, slings, and bows and arrows, in the use of which they are tolerably dexterous; but they are excessively afraid of fire-arms. In winter, they go to war in snow-skates, which, like those of all the people along the coast of the frozen sea, are upwards of four feet long; or in sledges drawn by rein-deer; and in summer they march to battle on foot, some clothed, and others naked. *Atlassow* says, they had several settlements and forts, particularly on the river *Jelowka*, when the *Russians* entered their country; and that they endeavoured to resist their invaders: but that these last terrifying them with their fire-arms, drove them into their huts, then surrounded and set fire to them, and killed them one by one as they ran out to escape the flames, till at last they were forced to submit. The conquerors have since settled colonies among them, the principal of which are *Nischnei-Kamtschatzkoi-Ostrog*, near the mouth of the river *Kam-*

* STRAHLENBERG'S Appendix.

hatka, *Werknei-Kamtshatzkoi-Ostrog*, *Bolsheretzskoi-Ostrog*, and *St. Peter* and *St. Paul's* harbour; and have built several forts, to secure their trade; and a tribute they have laid on them, both of which consist chiefly in furs. The *Russians* barter with them knives, blue-glass-beads, and other such trifles, for sable, fox, beaver, otter, bears, and wolves skins, of which there are great numbers in *Kamtshatka*. Some of the *Kurili* informed *Alassow*, that the people of the neighbouring islands, meaning the northern islands of *Japan*, came frequently over to their coast, and brought them china and lacquered ware, stripped and coloured silks, cotton-stuffs, and garments of thin silk: and that others, in larger ships, which they called *Bussi*, went farther on, towards the beaver-rivers, from whence they fetched away train-oil, and blubber of seals and whales, of which very large ones often came near the shore at high-water, and being left behind, by the ebb, were killed by the inhabitants of those parts.

THE *Kamtshadali* had no sort of government or magistracy before the *Russians* came among them; but the poor were subject to the rich: which we may suppose to be nearly the case now. They keep no cattle, or other beast, but dogs; which are generally very large, and have hair seven or eight inches long. Their huts are made of reeds or hides, sometimes big enough to contain 150 or 200 men; but they live mostly under ground. Their cloaths are made of skins, with the fur-side outwards, and their shoes or boots are soled with seal-skin. Polygamy is allowed among them, and they have no idea of any religious ceremonies; but place great confidence in their *Schamans*, who, like those of the *Ostiaks*, wear a frightful garb, beat a drum, make a hideous noise, and pretend to foretel future events. All the plants in *Kamtshatka* are of the dwarf-kind, except the pine, birch, and larch-trees, which are very common, and said to grow as high as in other countries. The inhabitants of these regions, especially towards the sea, live chiefly on fish; which they generally eat either raw, or frost-dried. In winter, they dig holes in the ground, and fill them with raw fish, covering them with the bark of birch, and over that with earth. When this food is thoroughly putrified, they take some of it out of the hole, put it into a wooden-trough, with water, throw in red hot pebbles, and keep stirring it till it boils; which raises such an abominable stench, as even a *Russian* can hardly bear. The *Kurili* inhabit the south part of this country, the *Lutorzi* the east, and the *Kraiiki* the north. Another tribe called *Czucktschi* live near the mouth of the river *Anadir*.

TRAVELLERS say there are several *volcanos* in the northern islands of *Japan*. There are also two in the northern parts of *Kamisbatka*, not far from the river of the same name, in the neighbourhood of which violent shocks of an earthquake are frequently felt, and a hideous roaring noise is almost continually heard. One of these, near the river *Fenisei*, towards the ice-sea, throws out a sort of ashes, which some take to be the *Flores salis ammoniaci*, or *Flores sulphuris nativi* (A).

Kamisbatka has, of late, been rendered famous by the attempts made from thence to discover whether *Siberia* be joined to *America* towards the north; or whether there be a north-east passage by sea between these two continents.

Peter the Great, ever desirous of knowledge, and of extending as well as civilizing his vast empire, gave orders that captain *Beering* and lieutenant *Spangenberg*, two *Danes*, and *M. Tshirikow*, a *Russian*, should sail from hence upon this expedition; but, unfortunately, died before they could go. His successor, the czarina *Catharine*, actually sent them out in the year 1725, and after spending near five years in the voyage, they returned, without success, in the spring of 1730.

In 1732, the same officers were sent out a second time. *Spangenberg* steered his course to the south-east, arrived at the northern coast of *Japan*, and from thence sailed back to *Ocotzk*. They went as far as the sixty-seventh degree of north latitude, and found that the land extended no farther towards the north.

CAPTAIN *Beering*, accompanied by one *M. Steller*, sailed from the harbour of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, and steered towards the south-east; but not meeting with any land after he had sailed about 250 leagues, he directed his course to the north-east, and, at last, discovered land towards the north-west. On the 20th of *July* 1741, he anchored near an

(A) The same is said of some of the ashes of *Vesuvius* and *Ætna* (1): and this is, perhaps, what *Abulfeda* means when he says, *In montibus Albotom* (near *Samarcand*) *Spelunca est, cujus spiraculis occlusis vapor in ea densus exoritur, noctu ignem, interdum fumum referens: in hoc est Almu-*

terit cavernam ingredi, nisi vestimentis crassis, corporique ostridis co-operiatur; et confestim inde Almu-
shader auferat. Vapor de loco in locum movetur, quem quod apparuerit, fodiendo consequuntur, si nullus fuerit fornix, qui dilatori vaporis impedimento sit: accedentem non lædit.

(1) *Jeb. Rosenstengel, Instit. Pharmacæuticae, p. 195.*

island in $59^{\circ}.40'$ north latitude, to which he gave the name of *Elias island*. From thence he sailed betwixt the south and west points, nearer to the continent of *America*, of which he had sight. After this, he landed on an island, to which he gave the name of *Skumagin*, in the fifty-third degree of north latitude; and had some little traffic with the *Americans*, who lived upon it. In the fifty-first degree and some few minutes of north latitude, he discovered an island to the north-west-and-by-north, which he called *St. Martian*. Two days after, he saw several other islands to the north-north-west, to which he gave the name of *St. Stephen's islands*; and the next day he discovered another island to the west, which he called *St. Abraham's island*. In his return, he was ship-wrecked on an island near the coast of *Kamtshatka*, where he ended his days.

M. *Tshirikow*, who was accompanied by professor *de l'Isle de la Croycere*, set sail from *Kamtshatka*, continued his course till he came within fourteen degrees west of *California*, and sailed twelve degrees and a half to the north of that country, where no navigator had been before. On his return, he saw land for several days together to the north of his course; and when he sailed near the coast, he could distinguish the inhabitants, several of whom rowed towards him in small boats, like those used by the *Greenlanders* and *Esquimaux*. M. *Busching*^b conjectures, that this land is, perhaps, a continuation of that near the north pole, which joins to *America*; and thinks it highly probable, from these discoveries of the *Russians*, that *Asia* and *America*, about the sixty-sixth degree of north latitude, are separated from each other only by a very narrow channel.

† Geograph.

C H A P.

C H A P. II.

Of the Climate, Soil, and Produce; Population; Government, Laws, Religion, Manners, and Customs; Language, Learning, Arts, Manufactures, and Commerce of RUSSIA; and of the Titles, Coronation, Court, Revenues, Forces, & of the CZAR.

S E C T. I.

Of the Climate, Soil, and Produce of Russia.

Climate,
Soil,

IN a country of such vast extent as the *Russian* empire, at one extremity of which it is noon, when it is also midnight at the other (A), the climate and soil cannot but differ greatly.

IN the parts which lie beyond the 60th degree of latitude the cold is excessively intense, the winter nine months long, the days extremely short during that season, the country full of mountains, rocks, and morasses, and very thinly inhabited. Corn never ripens in those regions, unless it be a little barley sowed near *Archangel*, and about *Jakutskoi*; there are any garden-fruits, or even trees produced there: strawberries, raspberries, blackberries, juniperberries, black and red currants, and several sorts of shrubs, grow natural game, wild-fowl, and fish abound, and horned cattle bred in the neighbourhood of *Archangel*^b. With these inhabitants not only subsist, but are clothed, and enabled pay their tribute.

^b BUSCHING and STRAHLENBERG.

(A) At the winter-solstice, when the day is at the shortest, the sun rises and sets on the horizon of the principal cities in the Russian empire, according to the following table.				Sun rises.		Sun sets.
				h. m.		h.
				At <i>Moscow</i>	8 37	3
				At <i>Riga</i>	8 47	3
				At <i>Tobolsk</i>	8 56	3
				At <i>Petersburg</i>	9 15	2
				At <i>Archangel</i>	10 24	1
				Sun rises.	Sun sets.	
				h. m.	h. m.	
At <i>Afracan</i>	7 48	4 12				
At <i>Kiou</i>	8 7	3 53				

At the summer solstice, when the day is at the greatest length this order is reversed.

FR

FROM the 60th to the 57th degree of latitude, the air is somewhat milder and better, the country is less thinly inhabited, and yields, besides various kinds of wild fruits, horned-cattle, goats, sheep, horses, plenty of fish, and some corn, and garden-productions.

THE countries between the 57th and 54th degrees of latitude, where the air is wholesome and less inclement, produce all sorts of fruits, plenty of corn, and abound in venison, wild-fowl, cattle, and honey^c; in short, the inhabitants, who are much more numerous here than farther north, want nothing but wine; for which they make up with mead and brandy.

FROM the 54th degree of latitude to the most southern boundaries of the empire, the climate varies from temperate to very hot; the whole extent of the country is flat and even; it has few morasses; is watered by several rivers, which abound with fish; and has sufficient plenty of game, though it be not over-run with woods. In the deserts, or steppes as the *Russians* call them, in these parts, very little snow lies in winter; it being so exposed to the wind, that it cannot settle much; which is the reason why great quantities of wild fowl, and all sorts of game resort hither in that season, in quest of food. The provinces in these parts are the most inhabited of any in the *Russian* empire, and naturally so fertile, that very little culture would render them extremely rich and flourishing; but that the natives are deterred from, partly by the overflowings of the *Volga*, which lays the country on both sides of it under water in the spring, for many miles together, towards *Astracan*; and still more by the ravages and inroads of the neighbouring *Tartars*. Tobacco, wine, and silk, might be produced in most of these parts, as the two former are near *Astracan* and in the *Ukraine*. It is true, indeed, that the wine made at *Astracan*, though pressed from fine well-flavoured grapes, is not pleasing to the palate, nor will it keep; but *Strahlenberg* assures us, that the vines which grow farther southward, near the city *Terek*, and those on the rivers *Don* and *Dnieper*, near *Czerkaskoy*, *Belgorod*, and *Kiaw*, yield a better wine than that which is produced in *Saxony*. We have already observed, that one of the plans of that great prince, *Peter I.* for improving his country, was to bring from other nations people skilled in the management of vines, and the making of wine.

THE common observation that eastern countries are much colder than the western, which lie in the same latitude, is

^c Idem.

greatly

greatly confirmed in *Russia*: for since the year 1700, the river *Neva* has frequently been covered with ice a fortnight, so early as the twenty-fourth of *October*; but it usually thaws by the 26th of *April*, old stile, which has hardly ever been known to exceed ^c. In the more northern parts of the *Russian* empire the days are very short in winter, which lasts there near three-quarters of a year, and the cold is so excessively severe, that it has been known to freeze before it reached the ground, as it dropped ^d; birds have fallen down dead in the midst of their flight; travellers have been frozen upon their horses ^e, and come into inns, sitting upright in their bridles and whips in their hands, as if alive; and have lost their nose, ears, feet, or hands, which have suddenly dropped off through the intense rigour of the weather, though their bodies have been well covered with furs. Summer succeeds the winter very suddenly, and is equal, with as great a degree of heat, as the other season is of cold: so that the *Russian* peasant sows his grain in the spring, and reaps his crop, even though it be well less than three months. The nights are very short, twilight is remarkably luminous in this season; during the infinite swarms of gnats, flies, and other insects, and the lakes and fens, and are excessively troublesome.

and produce; viz. corn, fruits, and trees.

THE middle provinces of *Russia* produce much wheat, rye, barley, oats, peas, buck-wheat, and called *psnytha*, which tastes like rice, than is common ^f, and they accordingly supply therewith most other provinces, in exchange for their native commodities besides which, great quantities of barley and rye have frequently been exported to *Holland*. Apples, pears, cherries, strawberries, raspberries, gooseberries, and other kinds of fruit, with all manner of pulse, pease, asparagus, onions, garlick, roots, cucumbers, melons grow in plenty, and come to perfection in different parts of the *Russian* dominions, even so far north as *Moscow*.

^c BUSEHING. ^d OLEARIUS, lib. iii. ^e REUTER de Reb. Moscovit. lib. iv. c. ii. ^f OLEARIUS FLETCHER, of the Russian Commonwealth, c. iii.

(B) To approach a fire, or go suddenly into a warm room, would occasion almost immediate mortification of the part thus violently struck with cold. Instead of that, the *Russians* run in the snow, and chase it with their hands, till it begins to melt, after which, the danger is over.

18, the baron *Herberstein* and *Guagninus* are wrong in saying, that no sort of fruit is produced near this city that is worth sending up to table; unless they mean to speak of the soil quite adjacent to *Moscow*, which is indeed a shallow, sandy gravel, unfit for vegetation. *Olearius* ² assures us, that he saw there apples of uncommon beauty, so transparent, that if they were held against the sun, one might see through them, and count almost all the kernels; and this is confirmed by baron *Strahlenberg* ³, who adds, not only that they have a sweetish tart, and very pleasant taste, and an agreeable smell, but that frequent trials to raise this fruit in other places have shewn, that it will not grow any where else so well as near *Moscow*. The *Russians* call it *Naliv*, which signifies poured full; because when these apples are ripe, all the pulp turns to juice. Bitter almonds grow near the rivers *Don* and *Dnieper*, on small shrubs, about eighteen or twenty inches high. Helebore and hops grow wild, and in great plenty, in many parts of *Siberia*; as do also leeks, in such abundance, that every master of a family among the *Ostiaks*, near the river *Oby*, fetches every morning, during the summer-season, a good boat's load, which is generally consumed by night ¹. The *Russians*, especially the lower class, are not less fond of garlick, which is the sole traffic of *Dmitrow*, *Roslow*, and several other large towns, where it is cultivated for sale. About *Casan*, *Astracan*, and in other warm provinces, it grows spontaneously and plentifully in the open fields ². The south part of *Kamtshatka* is remarkable for a plant about two feet and a half high, and of the thickness of one's finger. The inhabitants call it *Ahabatka*. When cleaned, peeled, and dried in the sun, it becomes as white as snow; and, when pounded small, tastes like sugar ¹. The *Tribulus Aquaticus*, or *Water-nut*, which the *Russians* call *A-rabnick*, grows in several parts of *Siberia*; where are also great quantities of madder, as good, says *Strahlenberg*, as that which is cultivated in gardens in *Germany*.

THE cedar grows naturally in many parts of *Siberia*, but much smaller than on mount *Libanus* and in other parts of *South Asia*. In *Kamtshatka*, it seldom rises higher than a large juniper. Trials have been made to transplant these trees when young, as well as to raise them from seeds in the western parts of *Russia*; but they will not thrive

² Ubi supra. ³ Historico-Ceogr. Descript. of the north and east parts of Europe and Asia, c. xiii. ¹ Idem ibid. ² Idem ibid. ¹ Idem ibid.

there (C). The larch-tree, which is very common in *Siberia*; and is an ever-green in other parts, sheds its leaves and prickles there in winter, and buds again sooner than any other tree: Its wood, by being laid about half a year in a moist dunghill, and afterwards put into water for some time, becomes absolutely petrified^m. On the bark of the birch-tree, which is black in the province of *Dauria* in *Siberia*, grows an excrescence, which the people of that country call *Reptzuna*; and of which they make all manner of turned ware. It is a sort of speckled wood, of a fine grain, and has white veins. The vessels made of it are so very thin, that they are transparent, will bend, and are generally covered with a yellowish varnish: The *Siberians* are dexterous enough to turn one vessel within another when they use this wood, which is very dear. There are no oaks in *Siberia*, nor on the east-side of the *Volga*; but they are found in great plenty on the west-side of that river, and in the kingdom of *Casan*. It is remarkable that *Kamtshatka* produces some of the same species of plants that grow in *Lapland*, and others which have been thought peculiar to *Canada* in *North-America*ⁿ.

Olearius declares^o, that several *Muscovites* assured him in the strongest manner, that the famous vegetable *Lamb*, or *Boranetz*, as it is called in the *Russian* language, does really grow near *Samara*, between the *Volga* and the *Don*; that it is of the gourd kind, shaped exactly like a lamb, and fastened to the ground by a stalk which proceeds as it were from its navel: that as it grows, it changes its place, and, as it turns, makes the grass around it wither. The *Russians* call this browsing or feeding; and add, that when it is ripe, the stalk withers, and the fruit is covered with a hairy skin, which may be dressed and used instead of fur. Some of these skins were shewn to our author by persons who vowed they came from this fruit; but he owns he could hardly believe it. They were covered with a soft frizzling wool, not unlike that of a lamb newly weaned, or taken out of the sheep's belly. *Julius Scaliger*^p speaks of this fruit, and says it grows till the grass fails it, and then dies for want of that

^m STRAHL. ubi supra. ⁿ BUSCHING. ^o Lib. iii. ^p Exercit. 181.

(C) Botanists call the *Siberian* cedar, *Pinus foliis quinis, cono erecto, nucleo edili*. It bears great plenty of fruit, or cones, shaped like those of the fir-tree, but much bigger. In each of these cones are forty or fifty white

kernels, covered with a thin blackish shell. Their taste is very agreeable; and the *Russians* extract from them an oil, which is used by their gentry instead of butter for pastry, in frying of fish in lent, and other falls.

nourishment:

nourishment: to which he adds, as *Olearius* was likewise told, that no beast will feed on it except the wolf, and that it is used as a bait to catch that ravenous animal. *Strahlenberg*, who was at some pains to enquire after this extraordinary production, both among *Tartars* and *Russians*, during his captivity, could get no account of any such thing; and is therefore of opinion, that those who have believed it have been led into a mistake by the *Mortuschka-Outschinka*, or *African* lambskins, of which there are three sorts, all of them the skins of stinks, or unborn lambs, are imported into *Russia*, from *Bucharia*, *Persia*, and the country of the *Calmucks*. The wool of these skins lies flat, and is undulated, almost like the hair of some dogs.

We have already spoken of several of the animals with *Quadrupeds*, which this country abounds; but a few further particulars *peds*, respecting some of them may, perhaps, not be foreign to *tiles*, and our present subject, or displeasing to our readers. We shall *insects* collect them chiefly from *Strahlenberg* and *Olearius*.

THE *Argali*, a sort of wild goats in *Siberia*, of which mention was made before, cannot feed on flat ground, like other goats and sheep; but with their heads erect, at the bottom of mountains, by reason of the size and weight of their horns^a. It is doubtful, whether the *Siberian* be the true sort of beaver, though it has a tail like that of this last, and lives chiefly in water. The *Russians* tell the same stories of the industry of this creature, as are related of the beavers of other countries. The *Russians* call the civet-cat of *Siberia*, and its musk, *Cabardyn*, in order to distinguish it from the true musk of *Thibet* and *China*, which has a three-times stronger smell, and is, in proportion, dearer. The *Siberian* musk is of a whitish grey; the other is yellow. These animals, of which there are great numbers between *Crasnoiar/sk* and *Abakan*, live chiefly upon a white moss, in the thickest woods, in summer; and never appear but in winter, when they are so very wild, that it is extremely difficult to catch them. They do not run like other beasts, but skip and jump continually. When close pursued by hunters, or by a fox or wolf, they fly to the highest and strongest rocks, and from thence leap down upon any part that happens to project, though it be but two hands broad, and twenty feet deep, or more. The *Cabardyn* is shaped like our deer; is full as long, but not so high; and has much such hair, but harsher, and of a light grey. The females of these animals have no musk; nor is their flesh, which the *Tartars* and *Russians* in *Siberia* eat, as they do venison, so rank as that of the males, whose

^a STRAHLENBERG, C. xlii.

musk is not lodged in the testicles, as some have supposed, but under the belly, between the flesh and skin, just where the yard pierces. Neither the musk of the cabardyn, nor that of the true civet-cat, is always of the same strength, either in hot countries or in cold; for it is always best in summer, in rutting-time, and in the full of the moon.¹ *Olearius* says² there are no deer in *Muscovy*; meaning, we suppose, the country properly so called; for *Strahlenberg*³ enumerates nine different species of this animal in *Siberia*. It has been remarked of the hares in *Russia* and *Livonia*, that they change their colour in winter, and become white. *Olearius* imputes this to external cold, and says, he has known the same thing happen to hares, even in summer, when they have been kept some time in a cave. The sable hides itself, so as not easily to be discovered, at a certain time of the winter, when it rolls itself up like a ball, and sleeps for a while so sound, as to bear pulling about, without waking. These creatures live chiefly upon mice, cedar-kernels, red-berries, and fish; and it is observed of them, that their fur is most beautiful when they are put to the greatest exercise for subsistence; and that the finest sable skins have generally the worst tails, and the worst skins, on the contrary, the finest tails. There are sables as white as snow, but they are very seldom met with. Upon the islands in the north-east sea, beyond *Kamishatka*, the skins of the sables are very indifferent; but they have tails seven or eight inches long, streaked red and black. The wool of the *Russian* and *Siberian* sheep is generally very harsh, and therefore used only for making common stuffs. Bears and wolves are not only very numerous, but do prodigious mischief in most parts of these countries.

SNAKES are deemed sacred among the *Calmuks*, who never kill any, but make them so familiar, that they will creep into bed to them; nor has it ever been heard among them, that they have done any hurt to man or beast. The reason why they have such a regard for this animal is, that they imagine the *God of the water* sometimes puts on the form of a snake, and comes ashore; and that if they should hurt or kill any of these creatures, that deity would be offended, if not killed.⁴

In *Lithuania* and *Russia*, bees are not kept in hives near houses, but in the woods, upon the highest and straitest fir, the branches of which are cut off almost up to the bees' nests near the top of the tree; and a scaffold, like the round-top of a mast, is made round the tree, that neither men nor

¹ Idem ibid.
LENBERG, ibid.

² Lib. iii.

³ Ubi supra.

⁴ STRA-

can easily climb up^d. Formerly the peasants of *Dorpat* an agreement with the people of *Plescow*, to have their in the woods, under the jurisdiction of these last, for every peasant was to pay yearly six *whites* (a *Livv-* coin); and when these woods were afterwards de-
d, *John Basflowitz* still insisted on payment of the sum ated, as a right due to him.

HERE are three sorts of eagles in *Siberia*; the largest of *Fowls*.

1, about the size of our turkey-cock, is quite black, ex- the skin round the nostrils and legs, which is of a pale

v. They live chiefly on high mountains, and in thick s. The smallest sort, which the *Tartars* use, as they

lcons, for hawking, a diversion they are extremely of, is the *Aquila Mævia*. In the province of *Dauria*,

ear the river *Amur*, there are great numbers of milk- falcons, many of which are sent yearly to *China*. Par-

s are found only in the southern parts of *Siberia*, about *ryabr* and *Abakan*; but almost all *Russia* abounds in

i, and various kinds of wild-fowl, as we have already ved. There is a species of owls in *Siberia*, as white as

and as large as hen-turkeys^e. The *Russians* call *Lun* and *Ukun*, and the *Calmuks* hold them sacred.

t *Strahlenberg* describes as the *Siberian* stork, seems to be a bird of a different species.

IE beluja, of which frequent mention has been already *Fish*.

, is perhaps the largest eatable fish in the world. It ght chiefly in the rivers that flow into the *Caspian* and

seas. *Strahlenberg* says, he saw one of them fifty-six ong, and near eighteen feet thick. It is shaped like a

con, but has a shorter and thicker snout; its flesh is white, tender, and well-tasted; it has few or no bones,

ut little gristle, except in the head. The largest ones are 1 pieces, salted, and sent to *Moscow*, and other places.

smaller, that is to say, those which do not weigh above ids, are sent whole, if caught in winter. The best

-glass is made of the inner-skin of the gut of this fish, caviar of its roe. The beluja-rybiza, of which there

at plenty in the river *Volga*, is a white salmon, and if the most delicate fishes in *Russia*. Its roe is red, and

rains of it are as big as small peas. The *Russian* stur- is sometimes seven feet long; its flesh is white, inter-

d with yellow fat; and caviar, carluk, and weliga, are out of this fish; but greatly inferior to what is pre-

l from the beluja. Considerable quantities of pickled

^d Idem ibid.

^e Idem ibid.

sturgeon are exported every year. The *Russians* themselves eat it when dried in the sun, in which state they call it *Provensnye-spinki*; and sometimes even raw, which they think a great delicacy. Another favourite dish of theirs, called *Vesiga*, is made of the finewy substance which incloses the spinal marrow of the beluja and sturgeon. The *sevrjuga* is of the sturgeon kind, and as large, but not near so good as the sturgeon. Its flesh is white, and the roe black. The *schipp* is another species of the same fish, caught only in the rivers *Yaik* and *Volga*. Its flesh is yellow, and reckoned very nice eating. Great quantities of snetocks, a small flat fish, much esteemed, are taken in the *Bielo-Osero*, and near *Plis-cow*, where they are dried in ovens, both salted and unsalted, and from thence sent to all parts of *Russia*. *Craw-fish* are not to be found in any of the rivers or brooks of *Siberia*; but there are some in the river *Argun*. It is confidently affirmed, that not an eel is to be seen in all the numerous waters of *Siberia*; and the same is said of the *Danube*, and all the rivers that run into it: nor are there, according to *Olearius*, any carps in *Muscovy* (A) or *Livonia*; though they abound at *Asiracan*; where, however, they are not esteemed, their flesh being very coarse. The twisted horn of the sword-fish, such as we often see in the shops of druggists, are sometimes found near the mouth of the river *Lena*, and along the coast of *Kamtshatka*.

Mines,
minerals,
precious
stones, &c.

WE have spoken, in general, of the mines and minerals of *Russia*; some of which, particularly a silver-mine near the city of *Argun*, and the river *Serebrinka*, in *Siberia*, and another of copper, in the *Uralian* mountains, near the new city of *Catharinenberg*, would seem, by the accounts of travellers, to deserve more labour than has been yet bestowed upon them, if a greater number of carriages and hands could be spared. The iron-mines of *Russia*, and especially those in *Ugoria* and *Siberia*, the metal of which is best and toughest, have afforded constant employment to many artificers, ever since the beginning of this century, when they were first opened, and quantities of their wrought works are exported to various parts of *Europe*. *Strahlenberg* says, that

(A) *Olearius* means, we suppose, only the province of *Moscow*, and not the whole *Russian* empire; because, as has been already observed, there are great numbers of *karawtschen*, a species of carp, in the lakes of the desert of *Barraba* in *Siberia*; and *Fletcher* (1) speaks of carps, pikes, perch, tench, roach, &c. as fish very common in *Russia*, and very good.

(1) Of the *Russische Commonwealth*, c. iii.

,000 muskets and 10,000 pair of pistols are made annually in the city of *Tula*; and 12,000 muskets and 6000 pair of pistols, in the same space of time, at the *Sawods* or fabrics of *Yekaterinburg*, *Ustrowka*, and *Alexei* in *Carelia*, besides anchors and other iron works, for the use of the admiralty, to which they belong; and that one cannon a-day is cast at *Petrovka*. The iron-works in *Siberia* are still more numerous than those in *Russia*.

EMETHISTS, and the brown-red sort of the hæmatites, load-stone, are found in the mountains of *Catharinenberg*, in places near the river *Isset*, in *Siberia*; and near the city of *Argunskoi*, in the province of *Dauria* in the same country, there is a considerable mountain, which affords jasper, partly of a deep, and partly of a pale green colour, so hard, that no steel-tool will touch it; but it bears as high a polish as looking-glass^f. *Peter I.* once thought of having some medals made of this stone. An ordinary sort of lapis lazuli is common enough at *Kongur*; but a very fine kind of it is said to be in *Dauria*. Very large cornelians, and of a high colour, are likewise found in *Siberia*; and abundance of white, and black agate, particularly near the rivers *Ural* and *Agun*. Near the *Isset* and *Tomber*, not far from the city of *Tomskoi*, are quantities of crystal, naturally formed into perfect hexangular cylinders, somewhat more than an inch long, and superior in lustre to any yet produced in *Asia*. We have already spoken of the load-stones of *Siberia*, which are mixed with so much iron, that their magnetic virtue is not great. There is a kind of black pumice-stone in *Siberia*, between the cities of *Krasnoyarsk* and *Abakumovsk*. The amiantus or asbestos is of a light-grey, when it is first dug out; but becomes as white and soft as cotton, when wrought. There are natural grottos, or subterraneous passages, which the *Russians* call *Pitschorets*, in the alabaster mountains near *Todt*, and *Kongur* in *Ugoria*, are much talked of by travellers; and *Strahlenberg* gives us a drawing of these last. This alabaster is so soft and like chalk, that they who call them alk-caverns, are, perhaps, not much mistaken.

IN the kingdom of *Casan*, a pure solid sulphur is dug out from the rocks of *Talc* or *Marienglas*, in which it is enveloped. It is as clear as amber; and some lumps of it weigh upwards of fifty pounds. The finest parts of it are put to physical uses, and the others serve in the composition of gun-powder. A LAKE near the river *Isset* in *Siberia* yields, like several other lakes in the *Russian* empire, great quantities of salt;

^f STRAHLENBERG, c. xiii.

one-third of which, in this, is saltpetre; but for want of wood near enough at hand, the expence of boiling and separating the saltpetre from the salt, is greater than the price of that commodity will bear. Thirty thousand puds of saltpetre are delivered annually into the imperial store-houses from *Astracan*. Between *Tula* and *Kaluga*, near a place called *Revolfski*, in *Russia*, there is an alum mine; and a lake in *Siberia*, though its water is clear and fresh, leaves an alummy salt on its shores, especially in summer. *Asphalt*, a bituminous inflammable matter, which we take to be what some *Russian* writers call *earth-oil*, is found in several parts of *Siberia*, and particularly near the river *Irtisch*.

THE author of the *Verändertes Rusland* is wrong in saying^f, that the *kamina masla*, or *stone-butter*, as we should translate it, exudes from rocks in the same condition as it is sold; for it is in fact a vitriolic water, which forces its way through mountains of slate and clay, and others which contain a ferruginous sandy ore, and is boiled, or rather evaporated in an oven, in well luted earthen pots, till its subsiding particles are brought to the consistence of a jelly, which is afterwards taken out, and dried in the air. The *Russians* make use of this drug to dye leather black; but it is too corrosive for linen^g.

SOME pieces of amber have been found between the rivers *Chatanga* and *Yenisei*, towards the frozen ocean; and others in the sandy desert, between *Mungalia* and *China*.

Russia has its mineral waters in several places. The emperor *Peter I.* in the latter part of his life, used to go every year to those called *Honsefskertskie Wody*, about 165 wersts from *Olomets*, and 50 from the *Petrowian Sawods*, and thought he received benefit from them. They are a strong chalybeate, and said to have no virtue at all in spring and autumn, but to be of great efficacy in summer and winter (A). Towards the frozen sea, there are baths naturally hot, as we observed before.

MANNA is found upon a certain grass, and in particular places of the large deserts in the country of the *Calmuks* and *Bukarians*, who call it *sherkeft*, and bring great quantities of it to *Tebolsk*. It must be gathered before the sun shines upon it; for otherwise it melts away^h.

^f Page 181. ^g STRAHLENBERG, c. xiii.

^h OLEARIUS.

TAVERNIER, & STRAHLENBERG.

(A) The author of the *Verändertes Rusland* gives a particular account of these waters, p. 239.

S E C T. II.

ion, Government, Laws, Religion, Manners,
and Customs.

OUGH *Russia* contains as great a number of sub-*Popula-*
jects as any one christian state, it is far from being *tion*,
in proportion to its extent. Lord *Whitworth*, in his
of *Russia*^d, as it was in the year 1710, when he was
takes the highest number of its inhabitants no more
millions five hundred and forty thousand, including
colonies of the *Muscovites*, from *Kiow* to *China* and
sea; in which he was certainly misinformed. M.
* makes them amount to ten millions, exclusive of
ple of the conquered provinces. But M. *de Voltaire*^e,
culcation founded on an actual register of the males
id the poll-tax in 1747 (A), proves clearly, that there
be less than twenty-four millions of souls in *Russia*,
the inhabitants of the conquered provinces of *Livonia*,
Ingria, *Carelia*, and part of *Finland*; the *Ukraine*,
Cossaks, the *Calmuks* and other *Tartars*, the *Samojedes*,
landers, the *Ostiaks*, and all the idolatrous nations of
a country larger than *China*. These twenty-four
continues he, make after the rate of eight persons
square mile; so that *Russia* is, in proportion, ex-
times less peopled than *Spain*, though it contains
times as many inhabitants; and thirty times less
than *France* or *Germany*.

ge 27. * Geogr. vol. i. p. 382.
re le Grand, tom. i. p. 52. & seq.

f Hist. de Russie

Neither women, nor the
or clergy throughout
ire (which last amount
two hundred thousand)
igners of any country or
n, are liable to the poll-
ut of near six millions,
red and forty thousand
ho paid the poll-tax in
ording to M. *de Vol-*
out nine hundred thou-

sand, that is to say a seventh
part, belonged to the ecclesiastics
of *Russia* only, exclusive of the
clergy of the conquered pro-
vinces, of the *Ukraine*, and of
Siberia. But we must not from
thence infer, that the clergy of
this empire enjoy a seventh part
of the revenues of the state, as
they do, at least, in many other
countries.

The History of Russia.

THAT some of the now most desolate parts of the empire, particularly the deserts of the *Calmuks* on e of the river *Irtis*, and others farther on towards *China*, once much more inhabited than they are at present, : by people who had some knowledge of the fine arts. the small-pox, brought from *Arabia* by *Mahomet*, other from *America* by *Christopher Columbus*, two f which have depopulated the world even more than wa to ravage those northern climates, where they are n deeply rooted, is unquestionable (B) ; but when, a

(B) The author of the *Vorländer des Russlands* (1), *Hubner* in his *Lexicon* (2), the writer of *Das eröffnete Ritter platz* (3), and others, but more particularly baron *Strahlenberg* (4), give the strongest proof of this fact from numbers of medals, statues, monuments, and other remains of antiquity found even of late years, in *Siberia*, and the deserts bordering on that government. In the tombs, which are very many, discovered in those parts, says the last mentioned of our authors, are found all sorts of vessels, urns, wearing apparel, ornaments, and trinkets, scimitars, daggers, horse-trappings, knives, all sorts of little idols (images), medals of gold and silver, chess-boards and chess-men of gold, and large plates of gold, on which the dead bodies were laid, not unlike the *Braſſei aurei* of some others, of the ancients, with cloaths folded up, of the same sort as those the corps were dressed in. The sepulchres of the poorer sort have likewise the same kind of things in them, of copper and brass; arrows of copper, and iron, stirrups, large

and small polished pieces of metal, or mirrors, with cut upon them; earthen vessels of different sizes, some all feet high; and, in short many other curiosities, he gives a more particular account, with drawings of them. Before the *Russians* were acquainted with the matter, the governors of the cities of *Tara*, *Tomsk*, *Irsk*, *Baisamki*, *Isetzko*, &c. were used to give the people leave to go in caravans into the tombs, to ransack them, in expectation of having an accession generally about once in ten years, of whatsoever things of value they might find there. To this that most of these articles are of which might otherwise be very valuable, and which perhaps have afforded great additions into the history of the country, they were found in, were broken to pieces, that each might have his share by weight. In the tombs themselves, they are of different structures: some are only of earth, raised up as houses, and placed together, and in such numbers on spacious plains, th

(1) Page 124 and 225. (2) Second edition, p. 2081. (3) Chap. xiii.

ft their ancient inhabitants, by whatfoever name they illed, whether by their own voluntary emigrations in f other regions, or whether driven away by invaders owerful than themfelves, is one of thofe points of , which in all likelihood will never be cleared up. he far greateft part of the lands in *Russia* lie untilled *Classes of* it of hands to cultivate them; and as the improvement *the people;*

I 4 of

, they appear like a ridge Others are fet round ough hewn ftones, and rith fquare-ftones, and er of an oblong, or a lar form. We find them in the ancient maps of *ariary*, ‘ the pyramidal res of the *Tartarian* though, in fact, they ftrictly pyramids. Co-*anifer*, likewise a *Swe- ifoner* in *Siberia*, who or feveral years of his y in the city of *Jenifei*, r author, that the am- s of the *Chinefe Tar-*, in their return from xpedition to the *Calmuk Khan*, paffing through y, defired leave of the Governor, to vifit the of their anceftors; but it afed : probably, becaufe them had been opened, and demolished. *Strab-*, on this occafion, refers ancient writers, who f the war between *Cyrus e Scythians*, which laft, afked why they did not heir ground, but always rd, answered, that they hing by giving way; but f they fhould come near ulebres of their fathers, aemies might then chance

to fee whether they could fight or not. *Arunkiel* proves clearly (2), that the *Cimbri* did not take the cuftom of burning their dead from the *Greeks*, but from *Otilinus*; and *Torfeus* likewise fhews (3), that he firft introduced into the northern regions the ufe of urns, the cuftom of burning the dead, of putting the moft valuable effects of the deceased into the grave with their afhes, and of erecting monuments to the moft eminent perfons, and laying ftones over their fepulchres. This is alfo confirmed by the author of the *Remarks on the Cimbrian Antiquities in Holftain* (4). Some ancient records in *Tanqutbian*, *Mungalian*, and *Calmukian* characters, found in the time of *Peter I.* not near *Samarcand*, or the *Caspian* fea, as the author of the *Veraendertes Rufiland* (5), and others, who have copied him, pretend, but brought from the upper parts of the defarts of the *Calmuks*, on the river *Irtis*, from pagan tombs and temples there, and fent by that inquisitive emperor to the academy of fciences at *Paris*, where nobody could make any thing of them, were upon a thick paper, made of cotton or filk, done over with black and blue varnifh,

Mentioned in the *Veraendertes Rufiland*, p. 9. (2) In his funeral rites of
ibrian pagans, part ii. p. 35. (3) *Ser. Dynaft. Reg. Dan. c. vi. p. 130*
, 3vo. edit. (4) Page 154 & 155. (5) Page 124 & 225.

of every gentleman's revenue is the number of his peasants, or subjects¹; it has long been the maxim of the officers of this nation, in all their successful wars, to carry off as many prisoners as possible, and plant them on their own estates. Several towns on the *Volga*, are the fruits of their former expeditions in *Poland* and *Lithuania*; and they have drained above one-third of the inhabitants from *Ingria* and *Livonia*, and settled whole villages of them in the southern parts towards *Woronesh* (C), where their descendants are now become, in a manner, natives of the soil; an irreparable loss to *Sweden*, if ever those provinces should return to that crown. *Ingria*, indeed, has in some measure been repopled by colonies of *Russians*. Many, or perhaps most of the great families now in *Russia*, are of foreign extraction; as the *Galitzyns*, *Apraxins*, *Nareskins*, &c. from *Poland*; the *Czerkaskis* from *Tartary* (D); the *Miletinskis* from *Min-grelia* and *Georgia*; with numbers of others: and even the czars have prided themselves in a *Prussian* original (E).

¹ Lord WHITWORTH's account of *Russia*, p. 29.

and rolled up, according to the custom of the ancients. The characters or letters upon them, which were partly of a yellow or gold colour, and partly of a white, like silver, were not written, but printed, as we print linen or callico. A proof that that great Prince was very right in saying, that the sciences have made the tour of the world. Should we, without such demonstrations as these, have dreamed that the art of printing was known to the once inhabitants of what is now one of the most savage parts of the whole universe, probably before we had any idea of it? Besides these characters, which have been published by the learned M. Mencke, in the *Acta Eruditorum Lips.* Others of a different kind, unintelligible to several *Russians*, *Tartars*, and *Calmuks*, to whom baron Strahlenberg shewed them, but which M. Kobr, professor of the oriental languages at *Lepzig*, has explained, were found to-

wards the source of the river *Jenisei*, near the spot where the little river *Kemitschyk* falls into it, and where there was formerly a temple. These last were impressed on fine white linen.

(C) Lord Whitworth, M. de Voltaire, and several other writers call it *Veronis* and *Veronitz*; but the *Russian* name is *Woronesh*.

(D) Prince Sunfalei Jacobowitz Zercaskoi, from the *Circassian* *Cabarda*, came to the czar Feodor Iwanowitz, and assisted him in conquering the country of *Circassia*, and the city of *Turki*. It is the chief *Circassian* family, and almost the richest in *Russia*, having near 70,000 peasants. Strahlenberg.

(E) Fletcher, ch. v. mentions particularly of the czar Iwan Wasilicwitz, or, as we commonly call him John Basilowitz of the house of *Reala*, that he declared he was no *Russian*, but of *Hungarian* extraction.

THE

THE *Russians*, in point of rank, are divided into three general classes; the nobility, called *Kneas*; the gentry, called *Duornins*; and the peasants.

THE *kneas*, or dukes were anciently heads of the little governments into which this country was divided; but they were all subdued in time by the princes of *Wolodimer*, who translated their residence to *Moscow*, and took the title of *Wliski Kneas*, or *Great Dukes*. The descendants of these families still retain their ancient title; and several *Poles*, transplanted thither, as they became considerable, assumed the same marks of distinction, on pretence of being descended from their waiwodes, or palatines. This title is differently respected, according to the revenue or employment of the person; for those dukes who submitted on condition, and received estates in exchange for their petty sovereignties, still continue in some splendour; and others again have raised themselves by their civil or military service, while the rest are reduced to the lowest poverty and contempt. In the year 1708, there were near three hundred *kneas** common soldiers in prince *Menzikoff's* regiment of dragoons. To remedy the confusion of this title, *Peter the First*, after his return from his travels, introduced into *Russia*, as an additional distinction, the dignities of count and baron. His prime minister and great chancellor *Golowin*, and general *Gordon*, were made counts by the emperor of *Germany*, and his favourite *Alexander Menzikoff* was created prince of the empire. But the czar's ambition increasing with his success, he resolved to bestow his own honours, and soon after created prince *Menzikoff* duke of *Ingria*, and *Golowin*, his high-admiral *Apraxin*, and his lord privy-seal *Sotoff*, counts, without having recourse to the imperial court. After this, he introduced the title of baron, instituted an order of knighthood in honour of St. *Andrew*, distinguished by a blue ribbon and star, in imitation of the garter; and, in 1714, ordered that the estates of the nobility should not be divided, and that the proprietors of them should be at full liberty to leave them to whatever child or heir they should think most worthy of the inheritance. But this law was repealed in 1731. *Bojar* is not a title of nobility, but anciently denoted a post or office in the state: nor indeed does any birth or title give a person rank, according to *Peter's* wise regulation, unless he likewise merits it by his service and abilities; by which means many foreigners, of mean extraction, have risen to very great honours in *Russia*. In regard to unli-

* Lord WHITWORTH.

mitted subjection to their sovereign, the nobility are on a level with the rest of the people. Even the greatest of them used to glory in styling themselves the czar's *golu* or *slave*, when they either spoke or wrote to him ; but *Peter I.* abolished that harsh expression, and ordered them to use, instead of it, the word *raab*, subject.

THE *Duornins* are country gentlemen, most of whom, and particularly the *Sunbojarskoys*, or sons of *Bojars*, who are ranked in this class, hold their lands by knights service, to appear in war on horseback. Formerly it was sufficient to send a man well armed and mounted : but *Peter I.* made them, or their sons, serve in person, unless they found ways to make interest enough with his ministers to be excused. When they appear in the field, they are not allowed a servant, though they be masters of ever so many peasants, and are obliged to do all the duties of common soldiers : but their greatest mortification is, that such of their peasants as will lift volunteers, are immediately declared freemen, and in equal consideration with their masters. The point of honour has, indeed, not yet prevailed so far as to give many instances of this nature. Such of the *duornins* as live on their estates, and are far from the capital, give themselves great airs ; though they are, on the other hand, as humble and submissive to their chief nobility and officers : for in this country, as lord *Whitworth* observes, every one has his share of slavery and worship ; except

THE peasants, who are perfect slaves, absolutely subject to the arbitrary power of their lords, who may treat them as they please, provided they do not kill them, and liable to be transferred, with goods and chattels, from one master to another. They can call nothing their own ; which makes them so lazy, that when their master's task is done, and a little bread and firing provided for the year, they think the great business of their life over, and idle or sleep away the rest of their time ; and yet they live content. A couple of earthen pots, a wooden platter, a spoon, and a knife, are all their household goods ; their drink is water ; their food oatmeal, bread, salt, mushrooms, and roots ; on great days, a little fish, or milk, if it be not a fast ; but flesh very rarely. Thus mere custom in them, shames the pretended austerities of philosophy and false devotion, and fits them admirably for the fatigues of war ; which, if once rendered familiar by use and discipline, will certainly advance far in a people, who go as unconcerned to death or torments, and have as much passive valour, as any nation in the world. Professor *Busching* says,

that the *Russian* peasants are so far from being dull or as many have thought them, that they are remarkable, and do not want for natural parts.

government of *Russia* is absolute in the last degree; Govern-
 ment. restricted by any law or custom, but depending solely on

of the sovereign, by which the lives and fortunes of subjects of that country are decided; the common command, even of the greatest of the nobility, to him, being, *slave, take my head*; and every class of *Russians* freely saying, even in common discourse, that *all they have* God and the czar. When puzzled about any thing, a loss to find it out, nothing is more usual with them, say, *Only God and the czar knows it*: and when banished or in disgrace at court, their greatest complaint is, they are deprived of *the honour of seeing the brightness of his czarish majesty*. John Basilowitz first reduced this extreme submission; and his successors have not continued them in it, but effectually riveted their shackles and deprived them of the means of forming any idea of liberty which other nations enjoy, by absolutely forcing their subjects, on pain of death, ever to go out of dominions; nor are the nobility allowed to retire from without the czar's express permission. However, they are employed in the state have their share of arbitrary power, their proceedings being without appeal, all in the czar's name, which they often abuse to satisfy their revenge, or other guilty passions. For right between men, they have precedents and written laws, particularly a code called *Subornoe Ulozhenie*, 'an uniform and universal law,' drawn up by order of *Alexis Michaelowitz*, enlarged by new edicts of the succeeding czars (A).

The

ograph. vol. I. p. 383. " OLEARIUS, lib. iii.

Heretofore, in disputes between private persons, where the parties were not agreed as to the matter of fact, and had each taken an oath on either side, the judge asked the plaintiff, whether he would take his oath, that what he said was as he alledged, or that it was to the defendant's advantage. He who offered to take the oath, was, once a week, for several weeks running, brought before the judge, who, every time he was represented to him the

importance of an oath, and the sin he would be guilty of if he swore falsely. If, after this, he still persisted in his readiness to take his oath, though he swore nothing but the truth, the people looked upon him as an infamous person, would spit in his face, and turn him out of church, into which he was never received afterwards, and much less admitted to the communion, unless it were at the point of death. Now, they do not pro-

ceed

The process, especially in criminal matters, is short enough, when their justice is proof against the temptation of a bribe; but that it seldom is: and their punishments are very severe; though not quite so rigorous as formerly. The *Battogen*, *Katze*, and *Knute*, are now deemed infamous (B).

TILL

ceed with so much rigour, but only bring him who is to take his oath before a picture of one of their saints, where he is asked whether he will swear upon the salvation of his soul? If he persists, they give him a little crucifix to kiss, and afterwards the picture of the saint, which is taken down from the wall for that purpose. Though the oath be indisputably true, the person who took it, is not admitted to the communion for three years; and though he be not treated as an infamous person, yet those of any rank will not easily suffer him in their company. A perjured person is most severely whipped, and then banished. The *Russians* therefore endeavour, as much as possible, to avoid taking an oath; though upon any trivial occasion, especially in their dealings, they make no scruple of swearing at every word, and have incessantly in their mouths their *Po Chrestum*, 'by Christ,' making the sign of the cross at the same time. They permit strangers to take their oaths, according to the rules of their several religions. *Olearius*, lib. iii. and *Fletcher*, c. 14.

(B) They were not so formerly, according to *Olearius* (1); for not only those who had passed through the executioner's hands were admitted into the best companies, but likewise the executioner himself, whose profession

(1) *Lib. III.*

was accounted so honourable, that sometimes even merchants quitted theirs, to serve the magistrate at executions, and would buy that employment as a lucrative post, the profits of which arose partly from their stipend, partly from what was extorted from the criminal under pretence of gentle treatment, but most of all from a clandestine sale of brandy and spirits to the prisoners. The *Russians* have now learnt another way of thinking from their more civilized neighbours: the executioner is looked upon as infamous, and is no longer permitted to sell his office; but it must continue in his family: on failure of which the butchers are obliged to chuse one out of their body.

The ordinary punishments in *Russia* are slitting the nostrils, whipping, and the *Battogen*, which is inflicted thus. He who is to receive this chastisement, is stripped to his shirt, and laid upon the ground on his belly; when two men, sitting crosswise upon him, one upon his neck, and the other upon his feet, beat him on the back with little wands or switches, during the time ordered by the judge. Slitting the nostrils used to be inflicted on those who had taken tobacco in snuff, contrary to an old idle prohibition.

Whipping, or the *Knute*, as it is given in *Russia*, is one of the most barbarous punishments

very

Peter the Great set about taming his savages, and Ancient giving their barbarous customs, a work which will justly adminis- is memory immortal, the vast dominions of Russia tration of divided into four parts, called *Chetfirds*, each of which justice by ned from its particular office or department. The *Chetfirds*, hem was called the *Polsky-Chetfird*, or jurisdiction- embassies, and foreign affairs. The second was ie *Rosheradny-Chetfird*, because it belonged to the Ro- high-constable. The third was the *Pomesleny-Chet-* which a register was kept of all the lands given by ce for service, to his nobles, bojars, and others. The fourth

rd of. *Olearius* relates the manner of its being , in his presence, on n and one woman, for randy and tobacco with- ence. The executioner's ter stripping them down raist, took them up one ther, upon his back, with et tied together with a hich passed between his id was held by another of the executioner, so it they were not able to e executioner stood three ff, with a bull's pizzle, fastened to the end of it aps or thongs of an elk's ot tanned, and conse- exceeding sharp, with springing forward when- struck, he laid on their with all his strength, so e blood gushed out at low. The men had 25 ushes each, till an officer, d in writing what num- stripes they were to re- cried *Polno*, 'enough.' man had only 16, but away. After their backs us shockingly mangled, re all tied together by is, two and two together, ho had sold tobacco hav- tle horn full of it, and

those who had sold brandy, a little bottle about their necks, and whipped through the city, for about half a league, after which they were brought back to the place of their first punish- ment, and there dismissed. This is so cruel a punishment, that many die of it. Some, after having undergone this dreadful scourging, wrap themselves up in the skin of a sheep newly kill- ed. But even this horrid flagel- lation is, according to *M. de la Motraye*, only what is called the moderate *Knute*. When the sen- tence orders it between the mo- derate and the severe, pieces of flesh are taken off at every stroke of the executioner; and when it is ordered to be given with the utmost severity, the executioner, striking the flank, under the ribs, cuts the flesh to the very bowels.

Another kind of chastisement is sometimes given to a most un- merciful degree, on the soles of the offender's feet, with a stick about the thickness of a man's finger.

Even the *holy* inquisition can- not exceed the horrid refine- ments of cruelty formerly prac- tised by these barbarians, and we fear, too often used even

(1) *Ibid.*

fourth was called the *Cossansky-Dowertz*, and had the jurisdiction of the kingdoms of *Astracan* and *Casan*, with the cities and towns on the *Volga*. A few places only, not exceeding thirty-six towns, with their territories, which were the czar's inheritance, or *Vochin*, as it is termed, were exempted from the jurisdiction of these *Chebfirds*, the heads of

now, to force people to confess by torture. One of the most terrible of these excruciating torments, called the *Strapado*, is executed thus (1). The malefactor, having his hands tied behind him with a rope, is hoisted up into the air by that cord, with a great beam fastened to his feet, upon which the executioner jumps up from time to time, to augment the pain, and farther the dislocation of the members, whilst a smoke and fire which are made under his feet, burn and stifle him. Sometimes they cause the malefactor's head to be shaven, and, as he is hanging, pour cold water, drop by drop, upon his crown; which occasions such anguish as is not to be equalled even by whipping, and then clapping a red hot iron upon the stripes, as is often done; or by tying to a spit, and roasting at a fire.

Thieves are tortured to make them discover their accomplices, and confess their other crimes. If it be the first offence, they are whipped from the prison to the market-place, where the offender hath an ear cut off, and is sent back to prison for two years. If he offends a second time, he is punished as before, and kept in prison, till there be a number of them to banish into *Siberia*. Theft is never punished with death in *Russia*: but the receivers and concealers of stolen

goods are punished equally with the thief. Murder, committed without any necessity of defence, is punished with death. The criminal is kept six weeks in a very close prison, upon bread and water only; after which he receives the communion, and is beheaded.

But even all these cruelties fall short of those which are inflicted on such as cannot satisfy their creditors. He who does not pay at the time agreed on, is put into the house of an officer appointed for that purpose, and has a certain farther time allowed him to make satisfaction. If he fails therein, he is carried to prison, from whence he is brought every day to a place before the chancery, where the common executioner beats him upon the shin-bones with a wand about the bigness of a man's little finger, for an hour together. That done, he is returned to prison, unless he can find security for his appearing again the next day at the same hour, to be treated in the same manner, till he has made satisfaction. This is executed rigorously upon all sorts of persons, of whatever condition or quality they be, subjects or foreigners, men or women, priests or laymen: and if, at last, the debtor cannot find wherewith to pay, he, his wife and children, are sentenced to be bond-slaves to the creditor.

(1) *Id. ibid.*

which

which resided commonly at court, and carried their offices with them wherever they went. They were generally lords of the greatest families in *Russia*, who were favourites of the czar, and acted as sovereigns under him, in all the provinces they were to govern. An appeal lay to them from all the districts in their department; but there was no appeal from their decision. They had liberty to use the czar's name for their authority in issuing out their orders, and had absolute power over the lives and fortunes of those within their department. Under them, a bench of *diacks*, or secretaries, sat as judges in each of these principal offices or courts at *Moscow*, who were to hear and determine matters relating to the treasury, as well as all civil and military affairs, and to report their proceedings to the principal lords under whom they acted, who seldom went themselves to hear any cause.

THESE lords had also the sole power of appointing and sending governors to each province, which was sub-divided into smaller districts; and every governor had under him a diack, or secretary, who was a kind of petty-chancellor, and an office or court of justice, called a *Pricase*, where they sat as commissioners for the czar's revenues, and likewise as judges, with an absolute power to determine all causes, without even counsel to plead for the unhappy persons brought before them. Only in cases of life, they were obliged to make a representation by letter to the lord of the province in *Moscow*, before any man could be executed; but that was done in such a manner, that the decision was always such as they desired.

and Pri-
cases;
under the
direction
of the go-
vernors of
provinces.

THE governors of provinces were, generally, appointed for three years, in which time, if their enormous rapine suffered them to continue so long in place, they made great fortunes; by which we may judge of their equity; especially as they had no sort of salaries allowed them, but only a present of three or four thousand rubles, according to the abilities of the people in their department, when they first entered on their government. But besides the great article of bribery in all causes that came before them, they had other opportunities of enriching themselves; one of which was, their power of assessing the taxes, nominating their own collectors, or *challavolniks*, to receive the czar's revenues, and return the sums collected into the grand *Pricase*, or proper office of each bojar at *Moscow*; where what account they thought fit was made out of the money received, and the expences attending it, and the remainder was paid into the czar's treasury. The same abuses still subsist in a great measure:

sure : besides which, these governors have the disposal of all employments, civil and military, in their departments : but they have no power over the regular troops, who are never to be under their direction, nor paid by them, though quartered in their jurisdiction ; but are to receive their orders immediately from the czar and his generals.

The czars used formerly to keep up the veneration of their subjects, by appearing very rarely, except in public acts of ceremony and devotion, and then with a solemnity suitable to the occasion ; while the *Bojars*, or privy counsellors, disposed of the empire at their pleasure : but *Peter the Great* missed no opportunity of exposing them and their abuses. Till his time, these *Bojars* had the chief direction of all the *Pricases* or offices, for their superiors never minded business, and were assisted by the *Ocolnitzen*, a lower sort of privy counsellors, who were admitted only on extraordinary occasions. The *Dumnoi* are the judges of all processes, and the *Diaks*, the secretaries. Every *Pricase* was composed of these officers, and had, as we have just observed, a sovereign jurisdiction of life and death, independant of each other ; which often caused no small confusion. They were above thirty in number, for the several provinces of the empire ; and though they are still kept up, yet their once acting officers, such as *Bojars* and *Ocolnitzen*, have been dropped by degrees, only the *Diaks*, or secretaries being retained ; and in consequence of the regulations of *Peter I.* the affairs of the *Russian* empire, in general, are now managed by the following colleges, or chanceries, as they are called.

Present administration of the affairs of the Russian empire, by the senate. THE senate, or directing council, is the supreme court of judicature, to which all processes are brought by appeal, in the last resort. The senate takes care of all domestic affairs, receives accounts from all the colleges, excepting the holy synod, and issues out orders to them all accordingly. In the reign of the empress *Catharine*, the privy-council used to send orders to the senate ; but in the reign of the empress *Anne* such orders were issued only by the cabinet-council, which consisted of two ministers of state. The present empress has entirely abolished the cabinet-council, and, by an edict of the 12th of *December* 1741, restored to the senate the same power which it had in the time of *Peter the Great*.

the synod. The holy-synod, or ecclesiastical-council, instituted by *Peter I.* when he suppressed the patriarchate, regulates all affairs relating to the church.

the war-office. THE war-college has the care of recruiting and exercising the whole *Russian* army, except the guards, who are under the immediate direction of the sovereign. This office likewise

ceives the taxes appointed for the maintenance of the and nominates the officers as high as the rank of lieutenant-colonels. Under the war-college are, the office of general-commissary at war, the office of ordnance, the under commissary at war, the military-chest, the office for cloathing the army, the victualling-office, and the important's-office.

The admiralty-college manages all naval concerns with- the admi-
tion; and such forests as lie near navigable rivers, rally col-
the inspection of this college; subordinate to which lege,
the office of the general-marine-commissary, which pays
1, has the care of victualling the fleet, and keeps
ships assigned for those services; the store-office,
as the direction of the magazines, and every thing
ig to the equipment of ships of war; the office
irects the construction of ships, provides the neces-
saries for that purpose, and has also the inspection of
its; and the artillery-office.

The college for foreign affairs pays the salaries of the the college
ministers at foreign courts, pensions, and the ex- for foreign
f foreign envoys, which are always defrayed. This affairs,
also makes out passports, and decides all difficulties
relating to foreign ministers. The members of
the college are the chancellor of the empire and the vice-
-r, who, upon any momentous affairs, are assisted
of the counsellors of state.

The college of justice at Moscow. Under this is the Sud- the college
se, some of the members of which constitute a col- of justice,
office at Petersburg, which determines suits brought
by appeal from the conquered provinces, and has
a consistorial jurisdiction over the protestants and
that city; but on this occasion the minister of the
to which the plaintiff belongs, is summoned to

The wostshnoi-college, or feudal-chancery, is held at the feudal
and has the care of every thing relating to the chancery,
private persons, and their boundaries or limits.

The college of the treasury has the direction of levying the college
public revenues, except the poll-tax and the produce of the trea-
sury-works. The office which has the care of the jury,
rising from the conquered provinces is now held at
1; but all the other departments belonging to the
are at Moscow.

The state-office issues out the public money, and gives the the state-
directions to the chamber of accompts. The re- office

venue-chambers at *Petersburg* and *Moscow* are accordingly dependent on this office.

the revision-college, THE revision-college is a sort of check on the colleges, and receives their accounts in order to examine them.

the colleges for trade, mines, and manufactures, THE colleges for trade, mines, and manufactures distinct offices; and besides the departments from which they take their names, they have also the management of naval customs or tolls, and decide all commercial disputes between merchants and traders.

the confiscation-chancery, THE confiscation-chancery directs the sale of all forfeited estates, and the levying of all fines imposed by the colleges.

the salt-office, THE salt-office has the direction of the revenues arising from the salt-works, which are appropriated for the reign's privy-purse.

the college of the magistracy, and the privy-chancery. BESIDES these, there is a college of the magistracy, which is called, to which all the magistrates in the empire are accountable for their conduct; and a privy-chancery, which takes cognizance of all hospitals, dispensaries, medicines.

Religion of the Russians. THE *Russians* profess the religion of the *Greek church*, which is said to have been first embraced by the great duke *Olga*, or *Olga*, in the year of Christ 955, and afterwards by her grandson the great duke *Wolodimir* in 988; whose example was followed by his subjects: but their ignorance and superstition have greatly corrupted even that. They receive the three sacraments, baptism, the Lord's supper, and excommunication; which last they look upon as extremely necessary, but not absolutely necessary to salvation. With respect to baptism, administered according to the rites of their communion, they think none can possibly be saved; and therefore they re-baptize all profelytes from other churches, just as they do converts from paganism. They hold transubstantiation, and receive the eucharist in both kinds (A), observe four lents, and have service daily in church.

(A) The consecrated bread is put into the wine, and a little of both is taken out of the chalice with a spoon, and given to the communicants. The wine is red, and mixed with warm water, the better to imitate the blood and water which issued from our Saviour's side. The communion bread, or *wafers*, as the Romanists call it, is twice as big as a crown, and somewhat thicker; but the priest breaks it into as many pieces as there are communicants. It must be leavened, and have been kneaded and blessed by the widow of a priest.

ies. They use auricular confession, and think they answered by it from as many sins as they confess by name, and

think so essential to the fact, that one of the principal causes of the schism between the *Greek* and *Latin* church, is that the latter makes use of leavened bread, contrary to the express institution of Christ, who, to abolish the law of the *Jews*, who used of unleavened bread, bled to take common

In the middle of this is the figure of a crucifix, the priest, after he has blessed it, takes off with an instrument like a lancet, and to a *pyx*, or wooden-box, led over the altar. When communion is to be admitted to a sick person; a little consecrated bread is taken from the *pyx*, mixed with three drops of wine and a drop or two of oil, and given in a spoon: if through weakness, or illness, he be not able to swallow the bread, only a little of the wine is given. At the ministring of the sacrament the priest says, "This is the true body and the true blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, which he hath given for thee, for many more, for the remission of thy sins; which thou shalt take in remembrance of him. God bless thee." The more devout sort fast before they have received communion, that they may be ready that day. What remains of the bread after consecration, is for holy-bread, which is called *Kutja*: and on the following day, the priest gives a

mouthful of it to each of those who had communicated the week before. Formerly the consecrated bread used not only to be sent into the country, to places where there was no priest, but also to be given to travellers, of persons going to the wars, who made their confession before they set out, and were to communicate themselves if they were in any danger of death. The custom of receiving the consecrated wine in the church, and carrying away the bread, to be taken at home; as also that of the anchorites, who carried away both to the places of their retirement, is so ancient, that St. *Cyprian*, and even *Tertullian*, speak of it, as a thing commonly done in their times. But this kind of communicating is now absolutely abolished in *Russia*, as well as elsewhere. There is scarce a *Russian* but communicates at *Easter*, after an extraordinary mortification for eight days together; during which they eat nothing but a hard kind of bread, and drink only water, or *quar*, which is so sour, that it sometimes brings them almost to death's door. They generally receive the communion upon *Easter-eve*, and hold that it must at least be upon a fasting day; a circumstance which they observe so strictly, that if any one communicates on a *Sunday*, he is not to eat any flesh that day. They give the communion to infants, when sick, be they ever so young, but only in one kind, till they are seven years

and in particular to the priest (B). The *Athanasians* their rule of faith. They believe in God the Creator of all the world ; in God the Son, as Redeemer of all mankind ; and in the Holy Ghost, as Comforter of all the faithful : but they maintain, that the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Father only. Their Bishops they will not suffer the books of *Exodus*, *Levitic* and *Deuteronomy*, to be so much as carried to the place of worship by some of the most sacred passages ; they say, the Levitical law is translated into the version of the *Septuagint* into the *Slavonic* which very few, if any of the congregation, when the priest reads any part of it to them ; if they read it. They are, however, permitted to have the *Bible* in their houses ; but they set little value upon it, except the *New Testament*, the prophet Isaiah, and verses out of the *Psalms* ; nor have they yet the their own language (C). They hold tradition t

years of age ; after which they are communicated like grown persons, because, says the *Greek* church, one begins to sin mortally at about that age. Agreeable to this was the practice of the third century, when, as we learn from St. *Cyprian*, children were communicated immediately after baptism ; a custom which continued till St. *Augustine's* time. The *Russians* also give the communion to distracted persons ; but they only touch their lips with the bread, after it hath lain a while in the wine.

(B) Those who are come to years of discretion are obliged to go to confession before they communicate. They make their confession standing, in the middle of the church, and before the picture of some saint, on which they kept their eyes fixed, as long as the confession lasts, making a very particular recital of all their sins, and at every

sin expressing their promising amen. The priest, with the deacon, joins them a psalm, and generally consists of several times the *Lord's Prayer*, or *Prayer of the Cross*, the pictures of the *Passion* of Christ, and of the *Resurrection*, standing a door ; or, if the priest is heinous, he orders a holy-water, which is sprinkled on the *Altar*, by the priests all for this purpose, had of them for to think that water to purify them of their sins, and restore them to a state of grace.

(C) In the *Eastern* *Bible*, they pay great respect to St. *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, who lived towards the fourth century, and to St. *Gregory* of *Nazianzen*.

city with the written word of God ; and think to satisfy the second commandment by allowing no carved images : their churches are filled with miserable paintings, without shade or perspective ; and even some of those drawings, as the finer strokes of the *Italian* pencils, are said to be the work of angels ; particularly a celebrated piece of the *Mary* with three hands, which is preserved in the city of *Jerusalem*, about thirty miles from *Moscow*.

Chrysothem, and *Eusebius* of the church of *Syria*; of which last, as does also *Gerard* have translated his works, that an angel having shown him a book written in characters, which no man could open, he immediately from it those illustrations which are at this time in his writings. Their great doctors is *Armenian*, their own language, and author of several treatises. Their for his memory is not long ago, waxed lighted up before for which a particular was built in the great *Moscow*, leading to fire. A *Slavonic* formerly to cost between fifty and thirty but a new edition of was published in 1751, *Moscow* edition of 1663, annotations, and may be five rubels. The *New* and *Psalter*, in the main language, in quarto, at a moderate price in a.

) The *Russians* relate very much, and deem those atheists doubt the truth of their

account, that the painter who drew this picture of the virgin *Mary*, with our Saviour in her arms, having sketched out his piece so as to make both her hands appear, was surprised to find, when he went next to look at it, three hands regularly disposed about the child : upon which, thinking that some other person of the trade had slipped privately into his room, and done this to put a trick upon him, he took his pencil, and in a kind of passion, rubbed out the third hand, finished the picture, locked the door, and put the key in his pocket. The next morning, he found a third hand painted again as before. Astonished and amazed, he crossed and blessed himself : but still concluding, upon reflection, that some way had found means to get into his apartment, he again effaced the supernumerary hand, and then locked and sealed his doors, and secured his windows, with the utmost care. The next morning, he found the third hand painted a third time, and was going to alter it again, when the virgin *Mary* appeared in person, and bid him forbear ; for that it was her pleasure to be so drawn.

THE respect paid to these pictures is the grossest kind of idolatry. To them they bow and cross themselves; and all the religious instruction they give their children, especially those of the lower sort, is to reverence and say their prayers before those vile representations of their saints; to whom, and to the apostles, and the virgin *Mary*, the ignorant among them apply, not only as to intercessors, but as to immediate causes and co-operators of their salvation. Every room has its guardian picture of this kind in a corner, the *Russian* place of honour, to which strangers pay their reverence on coming in, before they begin their business, or take any notice of the company; or if the visitor does not immediately see the saint, he turns round and asks, *Jessi le Bog?* "Where is the God?" the name they give to these wretched paintings; before which it is another great part of their devotion to light up wax-candles, at the hazard of setting fire to their houses, as they often do, and to repeat frequently the words, *Ghospodi Pomilui*, "Lord have mercy upon me;" without any farther attention. They refrain scrupulously from certain meats, and think it particularly a great crime to eat a pigeon, because the Holy Ghost is painted in the shape of a dove. That the gospel was first preached to the *Russians* by St. *Andrew*, as some of their chronicles pretend, is, at best, a very improbable story. But, as it is not our business here to write an ecclesiastical history, we shall content ourselves with noticing such particular religious ceremonies and customs of the people we are speaking of, as may help to throw a light upon their character and manners.

Fasts.

THEIR private devotion consists in fasting and prayer; in the former of which they greatly exceed the papists. *Wednesdays* and *Fridays* are stated fasts all the year round. In *Lent* they neither eat flesh, milk, eggs, or butter; but confine themselves wholly to vegetables, bread, and fish fried in oil. The butter-week, as it is called, when eating of flesh is forbidden, and butter is allowed, is the week immediately preceding the great fast of *Lent*, which is regulated by the moveable feast of *Easter*, and lasts till that festival. St. *Peter's* fast, as they term it, always begins on the first *Monday* after *Whitsuntide*, and lasts sometimes six weeks, and sometimes but eight days, as *Easter* happens to fall early or late. The fast of the blessed virgin begins annually on the first of *August*, and continues to the fifteenth of that month. St. *Philip's* fast, which is likewise immoveable, begins on the fifteenth of *November*, and lasts till the twenty-fifth of *December*.

THEY

THEY are indeed less rigid in their fasts now than they used to be, the more frequent travels of their young gentry having helped to enlighten them : and the czar *Peter* himself set them an example, by eating flesh on all their fast-days, in private houses, tho' he refrained from it in public.

The eighth week before *Easter*, which, as we observed *Carnival* before, is called the *Butter-week*, may be looked upon as the *Russian* carnival, and is spent in all kinds of entertainments and licentiousness. Among the diversions exhibited during this time, one of the most singular is that of riding in sledges down a steep declivity of twenty ells in height, which is made with boards, and covered with ice, by throwing water to freeze on it. At this time of public diversions they make up for the scantiness of their diet, by a copious use of spirits or brandy ; and on *Easter-day*, most of them eat to such excess, as to throw themselves into a fit of sickness by over-loading their stomachs. On that joyful festival, they kiss one another in the most friendly manner, presenting an egg coloured over, or sometimes curiously painted, with the salutation used by the primitive christians on the same occasion, " Christ is risen ;" to which the answer is, " He is risen indeed."

In their private devotions they kneel before a picture, for *Private* they will by no means allow of images, of our Saviour, the *devotions*, virgin *Mary*, St. *Nicolas*, who is their great patron, or some other saint, to which they bow several times, making the sign of the cross with their thumb, fore-finger, and third finger, on the breast, forehead, and shoulders, at the same time repeating in a low voice, the Lord's prayer, and some other short ejaculations, particularly the words *Gospodi Pomilui*, " Lord be merciful unto me." They seldom pass by a church but they utter these words, bowing and crossing themselves, without paying regard to any persons who may happen to be present : they also look towards a church when they are at a distance from it, and practise the same bowing and crossing. Many, and sometimes even persons of distinction, by way of penance, or from other motives of humiliation, prostrate themselves on their faces at the entrance of the churches ; and those who are conscious of having contracted any impurity, forbear going into the church, but stand at the door. Their churches, as has been observed, are very numerous ; some of stones, but most of wood, and all built in the form of a cross, with five little cupolas. Every nobleman's seat has one ; to build a church being thought a meritorious act, and laying a sort of obligation on heaven.

It is remarkable, that all the old churches in *Russia* have a crescent, or half-moon, under the cross erected on the top of the steeples. The church-bells are often rung; and as ringing is accounted a branch of devotion, every town is provided with a great number of bells, which make an almost perpetual jingling.

*Public
worship.*

THEIR church-service, which is recited in the *Slavonian* tongue, unintelligible at least to the common people, consists of abundance of trifling ceremonies, long masses, singing, and prayers; all which are performed by the priests, the congregation in the mean time saying *Ghospodî Pomilui*. A lecture from one of the ancient fathers is sometimes added. Sermons are preached but in few churches; and even there but very seldom (A). There are no seats whatever in the *Russian* churches; but the whole congregation perform their devotions standing. On festival days, the people go thrice to church; first in the morning, before day, to *mattens*, which they call *Sasterim*; at noon, to the *Obedny*; and in the evening, to the *Wadschemi*, or *Vespers*; and the clergy are then dressed in very rich vestments, not unlike those of the *Levitical* priests described in the *Old Testament*. The word of God is but little known among the *Russians*; for it is not yet translated into their language; nor have proper measures yet been taken for the instruction of young people, especially among the vulgar, in the principles of religion. The *Russians* never sing hymns, nor keep any hymn-books in their houses; and none but the choristers sing psalms in the churches; that office being looked upon as their peculiar province, for which they are held in some esteem. As for instrumental music, it is not allowed in the *Russian* churches. The czar *Feodor*, brother to *Peter the Great*, was the first who introduced chanting among them.

(A) Towards the beginning of the last century, the protopope, or parish priest of *Morum*, taking upon him to preach, and making use of the word of God to exhort the people to piety, the patriarch deposed him, together with all the other priests who would have followed his example, excommunicated them, and banished them into *Siberia*. Only the bare text of the *Bible* was then allowed to be read,

with certain homilies: and the reason given for it was, that the Holy Spirit having grounded the church upon the pure word of God, without any explication, they were not to trouble themselves about any, as the different interpretations of the scriptures are, in a great measure, the cause of the errors and heresies which divide the church.

BESIDES

IDES the festivals ordained by the *Russian* church, re also, every year, some holy days appointed by the il power, when all public business and trades are suspended with greater strictness than even during the former. re the anniversary of the birth, inauguration, and tion of the present empress, and of the saint's day name she bears ; and likewise the festival of the birth me day of the great duke, and his consort the great s ; that of saint *Alexander Newski*, and the anniversary of the battle of *Pultawa*.

R *Russians*, like other people, have had their sectaries *Sectaries*. nce the institution of christianity among them ; for re often the fruit of ignorance, as well as of pretended edge. But *Russia* is the only great christian state in religion has not occasioned civil wars ; though it has, , produced some tumults there. The oldest of these ists, established in the twelfth century by a set of zealous were just able to read the *New Testament*, are termed way of contempt, *Raskolniki* or *Raskolschtschen*, herebut they call themselves *Starowierzi*, or old believers. chief peculiarities are founded on the interpretation ive their own books ; the most essential of which was 1, say they, by *Cyril of Jerusalem* (A). According to it is a great sin to say *halleluia* three times : it should eated but twice ; nor should the sign of the cross ever de, or the benediction given, but with the fore and : fingers (B) ; whereas the clergy of the established : in *Russia* use the thumb as well as those two fingers. let their beards grow to their full length, and pay a ux for that privilege, besides double taxes for all other . They totally abstain from spirituous liquors, and it other *Russian* priests unworthy of administering the ents, because they drink brandy : neither will they drink out of a vessel that has been used by a *Russian*

Which is most manifestious, and was, in all ality, written by some r monk in the 15th cenfor in this book, among ther inconsistent passages, as he is called, is made te several absurd stories ing *Luther* and *Calvin*, d not live till ages after l *Cyril of Jerusalem*.

(B) The end of the ring-finger should be joined, say they, to the end of the thumb, and the first and middle finger held strait : the signification of which, according to their opinion, is, that the first three represent the Holy-Trinity, and the other two Christ in both natures, as God and Man.

of the national church, or have any sort of intercourse or society with them. They are strictly regular in their lives, and say, with Jesus Christ, that there is neither first nor last among the faithful. They hold civil government to be no christian institution; for that all men ought to be upon an equality, and to live as brethren; and they maintain, that a man may, not only lawfully, kill himself for Christ's sake; but that therein consists a high degree of spiritual happiness. The other *Russians* charge them with the same abominations as the pagans did the first *Galileans*; these, the gnostics; and the papists, some years ago, the protestants: that after putting out the fire and lights, they intermix without distinction of kindred, age, or even sex: that if, through such chance-medleys, a maiden proves with child, and brings forth a girl, they let it live; but if a boy, they kill it, and drink its blood. Some attempts were formerly made to bring them over by persecution; but they then shut themselves up in their houses and barns, set fire to them, and burnt themselves alive. *Peter I.* took the only prudent method with them, that of letting them live unmolested. Their number now scarcely exceeds two thousand males^d in *Russia* proper: but their opinions have spread greatly in *Siberia*, and prevail much among the inhabitants of *Tomsk* and *Tara*^e.

THE inhabitants of the provinces conquered from *Sweden* profess *Lutheranism*: and the protestants, of whom there are great numbers among the *Russians*, as also the papists, enjoy a full liberty of conscience, and the public exercise of their religion; so that they have churches and priests or ministers at *Petersburg*, *Cronstadt*, *Moscow*, *Archangel*, and *Astracan*: but the papists have no longer the privilege of hanging up bells in their churches. *Feodor*, and more particularly *Peter the Great*, admitted indifferently into their armies and councils, those of the *Greek*, *Latin*, *Lutheran*, and *Calvinistical* persuasions, and allowed them to serve God after their own way, provided the state was well served. There was not indeed, in the beginning of the reign of *Peter*, one *Latin* church in all his vast empire. Only when that prince established new manufactories at *Astracan*, about sixty *Roman* catholic families settled there, under the spiritual direction of a few capuchins: but when the jesuits attempted afterwards to glide into his dominions, he banished all these by a pub-

^d VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de Russie sous Pierre le Grand*, tom. i. p. 70.
^e Büsching, *Geogr.* vol. i. p. 386.

lic edict in 1718. The capuchins were suffered to stay, as monks of no consequence; but the jesuits were looked upon as dangerous politicians.

THE *Jews* never had any settlement in *Russia*, as they have in so many other states of *Europe*, from *Constantinople* to *Rome*. The *Russians* have always carried on their trade themselves, with the assistance of the nations settled among them. Of all the *Greek* churches, theirs is the only one that does not see synagogues erected near its temples.

A CONSIDERABLE number of the *Russian* subjects profess the *Mahometan* religion; and still greater numbers are yet pagans. In order to promote their conversion, the synod has instituted a society for the propagation of christian knowledge; and some accounts say, that many thousands of them have been converted to christianity. But it appears too plainly from *M. Gmelin's* journey through *Siberia*^f, that great constraint and violence have been used to bring them over; and that the people, most of whom are baptized against their will, have but a very imperfect, and even a contemptible idea of the christian religion.

THE *Russian* bishops and archbishops are called *Archbishops*. *Hierarchy*. The metropolitans, of which there are but two, one at *Kiow* and *clergy*. and the other at *Tobolsk*, differ from the bishops only in their title. The first *Russian* metropolitan, whose name was *Michael Cyrus*, was ordained by the celebrated *Photius*, patriarch of *Constantinople*, who deputed a prelate to baptize *Wolodimer*. Formerly, the primate or supreme bishop of the *Russian* church was a suffragan to the patriarch of *Constantinople*: but the czar *Feodor Iwanowitz* made the *Constantinopolitan* patriarch, *Jeremias*, (A) install *Hiob*, or *Joh*.

^f Vol. i. p. 257, 334, 335, &c.

(A) *Strahlenberg* (1) says the *Jeremias* came to *Russia*, in order to collect money, to spend at the *Turkish* court, to have the patriarch *Mitripban*, who was a *Unitarian*, deposed; and that, the better to succeed in this, he the more readily consented to the installation of *Hiob*, as patriarch of *Russia*. Perhaps,

adds he, this is the same *Jeremias* who corresponded with the *Lutheran* divines, particularly those of *Tubingen*, concerning the *Greek* and *Lutheran* religions, and whose letters, in *Greek* and *Latin*, have been printed at *Wittemberg*. *Fletcher* (2), who was minister from the court of *England* at *Moscow*, in the year

(1) *Chap.* ix.

(2) *Chap.* xxi.

Job, patriarch of all *Russia*, in the year 1588. These prelates assuming by degrees an exorbitant power, which at last became dangerous even to the czars themselves (B), *Peter I.* on the death of the patriarch *Adrian* in 1701, suppressed the patriarchate, and declared himself head of the church of *Russia*: but it is not true that he ever officiated in that character. He committed the spiritual administration to the archbishop of *Rezan*, and the management of temporal affairs to a lay-commission, with the disposal of the abbey lands and revenues, which he found a fine opportunity to sequester; for the abbots, on his enquiring into their circumstances, pretending great poverty, and alledging that they were scarce able to maintain their monks, though they confined themselves to the poor pittance of fifteen rubles a-year for each of them; *Peter*, in a seeming compassion, told them, he would take care of their revenues, and double that allowance; which in fact he did, and thereby added to his revenues the value of an hundred and fifty thousand pounds sterling a-year; besides breaking the formidable power of the clergy, who have now no more

1588, when this *Jeremias*, or *Hieronomo* as he calls him, arrived there, says, he had been either banished by the *Turks*, or deposed by the *Greek* clergy; and that, after visiting *Rome*, as was thought, he applied to *Feodor Iwanowitz*, a very superstitious and devout prince, with political projects, chiefly of making war against the *Turks*, which, however, weak as the czar was, did not succeed.

(B) Not satisfied with the most public demonstration of the highest respect paid them by their sovereigns, which was such that the czar, once every year, on *Palm-Sunday*, walked bare-headed before the patriarch, leading his horse by the bridle; *Nicon*, whom the monks look upon as a saint, and who was patriarch of *Russia* in the time of *Alexis*, father of *Peter the*

Great, endeavoured to set his chair even above the throne; and not only usurped the right of sitting in the senate next to the czar, but pretended that neither peace nor war could be made without his consent. His authority, backed by his riches and intrigues, by the clergy and the people, kept his master in a kind of subjection. He even dared to excommunicate some senators who opposed his ambitious projects; and at last *Alexis*, finding that he was not powerful enough to depose him by his own authority alone, was obliged to convene a synod of all the bishops. *Nicon* was accused of having received money from the *Poles*; and, in consequence thereof, deposed, and confined in a cloister for the rest of his days, and the prelates elected another patriarch. *Voltaire*.

freehold

freehold left ; and their peasants, or subjects, depend immediately upon the officers of the crown. In the year 1719, the same prince instituted a council, which now has the direction of ecclesiastical affairs, and is stiled *the most holy synod*. The archbishop of *Moscow* has been president of this synod ever since the year 1750. Subordinate to it are, the *Oeconomie*, as it is called, which has the management of all the ecclesiastical lands and revenues ; and the *Roskolniki-Prisafe*, which has power to execute the regulations made concerning the separatists called *Roskolniki*, and levies the tax imposed on them for leave to let their beards grow. Under the present government, the holy synod is held in great veneration. All the ecclesiastics are permitted to wear their beards and their own lank hair. Their dress is a sort of long cloak ; and on their head they wear a high stiffened black cap, from which a piece of the same stuff hangs down on their backs, and a large flapped hat. Secular priests, when they are out of the church, generally wear a blue or brown long coat. The protopopes, or parish priests, and chaplains, are of the meanest people, *husbands of one wife*, in a literal explication of the scripture ; being obliged to marry, but to a maiden only ; and when she died, the priest was formerly excluded from all farther service, and obliged to turn monk, or be degraded, and take up some sorry trade for a livelihood ; in which last case he was allowed to marry again : but, in consequence of the regulations of *Peter I.* they are now permitted to be continued in the under offices of the church. Hence it is observed, that, in *Russia*, no wives are better treated than those of the ecclesiastics. From the lowness of their origin, it is no wonder they are very ignorant, their utmost education being to repeat the service with a musical accent, and read a chapter in the *Bible*, which, being in the *Sclavonian* language, is understood by very few of them. Their regular monks, and dignified clergy, though almost equally ignorant, except some few educated at *Kiow*, are in much greater esteem : their habit and fasts, for they never eat flesh, together with their gravity, and continual devotion, draw upon them the veneration of the people.

In the thirteenth century several popes laboured hard to put the great dukes of *Russia* out of conceit with the *Greek* religion, by recommending to them that of *Rome*, but without success. The doctors of the *Sorbonne* at *Paris* made the same attempt of late years ; endeavouring, at the suppression of the patriarchate by *Peter I.* to bring about an union of the *Russian* church with that of *Rome* ; but they were not
able

able to carry their point. The members of the *Greek* church, whose tenets are embraced in an empire of near six thousand miles, whilst the *Roman* has not half that extent in *Europe*, have always been bent upon maintaining at least an equality with those of the *Latin* communion; and have ever feared the zeal, or, as they not improperly call it, the ambition of the church of *Rome*, which, limited as it is in our hemisphere, styles herself universal, and has tried but too much to realise that great title.

VAST as the *Russian* empire is, there are but twenty-eight episcopal sees in it; and in the time of *Peter I.* there were only twenty-two. *Voltaire* shrewdly observes, that the *Russian* church may possibly owe the peace she has enjoyed, in some measure, to her not having more prelates.

Convents.

IDLENESS, ignorance, indigence, age, infirmities, domestic discontent, violence, and, sometimes, the overflowings of a misguided devotion, fill the numerous convents of *Russia*, as they do those of other countries; notwithstanding the care of *Peter I.* to stop this evil, by wisely ordering that no man should be permitted to embrace the monastic life before the age of thirty, or any woman to take the veil under fifty^a; nor even then, without the express approbation and licence of the holy synod: a care well worthy the legislator of a vast empire, one of whose greatest wants is an increase of population. Still the number of religious, of both sexes, cloistered up in *Russia*, and lost to society and the state, amounts to 13,000, according to the calculation of an accurate observer (A); and these 13,000 useless people have no less than 72,000 vassals, or slaves, to cultivate their lands: so difficult is it to root out old abuses. Formerly the more superstitious sort of those who thus retired from the world, as it is called, used to make over all they had to the convent that received them; and this extravagance was carried to such a height, that the monks would soon have been masters of the best part of *Russia*, if their incroachments had not been wisely checked in time. Those who now become monks or nuns, are allowed to take with them, into the monastery, only a small part of their fortunes, by way of making their lives somewhat more comfortable; but are obliged to leave the remainder to their heirs. Almost all the religious of this em-

^a CONSETT.

(A) M. de *Voltaire*, who reckons 7400 monks, and 5600 nuns in *Russia*. *Hist. de Russie*, &c. tom. i. p. 59.

pire follow the rule of *St. Basil*, with such austerity, that they never so much as taste any kind of flesh, but live entirely upon salt-fish, honey, milk, cheese, herbs and pulse, especially cucumbers, both fresh and pickled, which they mince very small, and eat with a spoon in some of their *guas*. They have this in common with most of their countrymen, that they can hardly write or read. Not one of them in ten can say the Lord's prayer, and much fewer are acquainted with the creed and the ten commandments^b. They have set hours for their service, and say their prayers by beads. These monks, however, do not lead so retired a life, but that they are seen in great numbers, both in cities and all over the country, where their employment, if they have any, is the same with the peasants, from whom they are distinguished only by their habit. Till the time of the czar *Peter*, there used also to be in *Russia* numbers of *Ancherets*, who built themselves chapels near the high-ways, and lived in woods, like hermits, subsisting only by the charity of travellers; but there are now much fewer of them. The *Russians*, indeed, if they have not many other shining virtues to boast of, are very ready to give alms; because they look upon that as an atonement for almost every sin.

THE *Troitzkoi-monastir*, or monastery of the Trinity, distant from *Moscow* sixty wersts, and about fifty-six from *Petriflaw-Saleski*, is the largest and richest in the whole *Russian* empire; having twenty thousand peasants under its jurisdiction^c. There were formerly seven hundred monks in it; but that number has been considerably lessened in consequence of the emperor *Peter's* ecclesiastical regulation, and the surplus of the revenues is appropriated for the maintenance of schools, and the support of disabled soldiers.

THE abbot, or head of a monastery, is called *Archimandrite*, and the prior of a convent *Ingumen*. An abbess, or head of a nunnery, is stiled *Ingumenia*. Deacons, popes, or *papas* as they are sometimes called, and protopopes, who are priests that belong to the cathedral and principal churches, are exceeding numerous in *Russia*. Every large village there has a church, and a priest to officiate in it; and in the towns, almost every street has its church or chapel, and frequently both.

THE *Russians* baptize their children as soon as they are born. If the child be very weak, or in danger of death, this ceremony is performed immediately, at home, though

Baptism.

^b OLEARIUS, b. iii. ^c STRAHLENBERG, c. xiii.

never in the room where the mother lies-in : but if well, it is carried to church by the Godfather and Godmother *. The priest receives the infant at the church-door, and there exorcises it, by laying his hands upon it, saying, " Get out " of this child thou unclean-spirit, and make way for the " Holy-Ghost ;" and by blowing three times, cross-wise, upon the child, to drive away the devil, by whom the *Russians* believe children are really possessed before baptism, and who, they think, would profane the church, were he to be ejected in it. This done, the child is carried into the church, where the sponsors present to the priest nine wax-candles, which he lights, and sets up round the font. He then incenses the sponsors, makes a procession with them three times round the font, all having lighted candles in their hands, and being preceded by the clerk, who carries a picture of St. *John*. The water is then consecrated with great ceremony : and when the sponsors, after they have given in writing the intended name of the infant, are asked, among the other usual questions, whether the child forsakes the devil, whether he forsakes his angels, and whether he forsakes his works ? they immediately turn their backs to the font, answer to each question, yes, and spit each time upon the ground, to shew their detestation of the infernal spirit. The priest then cuts off a little of the child's hair, which he puts into a book, and, after asking the sponsors whether they bring that child to be baptized, takes the infant, quite naked, into his arms, and dips him three times in the water, pronouncing the ordinary words of the sacrament, " I baptise thee in the name of the Father, and " of the Son, and of the Holy-Ghost." After the baptism, he puts a grain of salt into the child's mouth, makes the sign of the cross on its forehead, hands, breast, and back, with an oil consecrated for that purpose ; and putting a clean shirt about it, says, " Thou art as as clean and as clear from " thy original sin, as this shirt." The ceremony is concluded with a small cross of gold, silver, or lead, according to the abilities of the parents, which the priest hangs about the child's neck, with so strict an injunction to wear it all his life, that if it be not found about him at his death, the *Russians* would not bury the carcase, but drag it to a dung-hill. The priest likewise assigns the child a particular saint, whose picture he delivers to the sponsors, charging them to oblige the new made christian, when he comes to years of

* OLEARIUS, lib. iii. and FLETCHER, c. xxiii.

tion, to have a particular devotion for that his patron; enjoining them to love one another, but to take especially not to intermarry after the spiritual alliance they contracted. If more than one child is to be baptised the same time, the font is emptied after each christening, the new water is consecrated; the former being defiled, they, with the impurity of the original sin of the child was baptised before, and therefore not fit to cleanse a d. They will not, by any means, heat the water used for christening, with fire; but, when it is very cold they put it into a warm place till the chill is taken off. Those, who are baptised, whether pagans, mahometans, schismatics of another communion, who embrace the religion of the Greek church, receive their baptism in a brook or river, where they are plunged over head and ears, be the weather never so cold: nay, sometimes, the ice is broken about them into the water (A). The latter of these customs, in particular, are obliged to go, for six weeks, into a monastery, where the monks instruct them in the Russian manner of honouring the saints, of doing reverence to their relics, and of making the sign of the cross. They are afterwards brought to the place of baptism, where they are obliged to abjure their former religion, to detest it as heretical and to spit as often as it is named.

In this manner are treated in particular whom the Russians call *Chaldeans*; a set of Jews, who used to get the leave of the patriarch, while he was one, to put on vizards, and to go up and down the streets, till the 18th of December till Twelfth-day, with combustibles, which they set fire to the beards of all they met, especially the peasants, whom they forced to give them a coffee before they would let them pass. *Olearius* says he saw them do this with such insolence, that they only burn the beards of the poor country people; but even to set fire to the hay, if they made any difficulty to give it them. The Russians are indeed treated as vile persons, by the more

sober part of the Russians; and deemed to be in such a state of inevitable damnation, as to render it necessary for them to be reconciled to God, and enter into the church, by baptism; to which end they generally pitch upon Twelfth-day, as that on which the great vocation of the Gentiles happened; and afterwards, they think themselves as clean and holy as the best of Christians, who are generally baptised but once; whereas many of these have been baptised ten or a dozen times. The Russians used to say, that these men represented those who heated the fiery furnace, into which *Shedrach, Meshak, and Abednego* were cast by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar*.

Marriages

TILL the time of *Peter I.* who rectified many strange customs and abuses among the *Russians*, the young men and maids of that nation were not permitted to see, or have any discourse with each other before marriage; and much less to make one another any promise to that effect, by word or writing. When those who had children marriageable, especially daughters, had found out a match they liked, they used to speak to the young man's parents, and declare their desire of making an alliance with them. If the girl was handsome, or rather if she was not deformed, the mother of the intended husband, or some other woman related to him, was allowed to visit her, and the friends on both sides afterwards settled the match. When all things were agreed on, the young man went from his own house, on horse-back, though the way was ever so short, preceded by the priest who was to marry him. At the bride's door, he was met by all her friends, who received him and his retinue, and desired them to sit down at a table, on which three dishes of meat were served up; but no-body ate of them. Upon the bridegroom's seating himself, in a place left purposely for him, at the upper-end of the table, the bride was brought in, richly dressed, if she belonged to people of any fashion, in a robe embroidered with gold and pearls, and seated by him; but with a veil over her face; and still more effectually to prevent his seeing her, a piece of crimson silk was held up between them. The bride's *suacha*, or chamber-maid, then came in, painted her, tied up her hair in two knots, and placed on her head a crown of silk, gilded with leaf-gold or silver, and adorned with five or six rows of pearls, which hung down on her breast. In the mean time, another *suacha* painted the bridegroom; and while this was doing, the women that was present got upon the benches in the room, and sung songs. After this came in two young lads, richly clad, carrying between them a large cheese and some loaves, upon a kind of bier, upon which hung several martins skins. The same was brought in on the bride's part: and a bason was then set on the table, filled with little bits of silk, about big enough to make pin-cushions of, small square pieces of silver, hops, barley, and oats, all mixed together. The *suacha*, having now finished painting the bride, and covered her face again, took out of this bason a certain number of handfuls of the mixture, and threw it among the company, who, renewing their singing, picked up what they found on the ground. This done, the priest led the young couple to church, where the spot on which the bride and bridegroom

bridegroom were to stand was covered with a piece of crimson taffeta ; another piece of the same kind of silk being held over them. The priest then, taking the man by the right hand and the woman by the left, asked them three times, whether they came thither to be married with their own free consent, and whether they could love one another as they ought ? When both had answered in the affirmative, all the company joined hands, and sung, in alternate verses with the priest, the 128th psalm, dancing all the while. The psalm ended, the priest put upon the heads, or over the shoulders of the bride and bridegroom, a garland of rue, saying, " Increase and multiply ;" and then concluded the ceremony with the wedding-ring, as among us, and the words, " Whom God hath joined together, let no man put asunder." While the priest pronounced these words, those who were invited to the wedding lighted their candles, and presented him a glass of red wine, in which the married couple pledged him three times ; after which the bridegroom threw the glass upon the ground, and he and the bride trod it to pieces, saying, " May they thus fall at our feet, and " be trod to pieces, who shall endeavour to sow division " or discontent between us." Then the women strewed flax and hemp seed over the young couple, and made a shew of attempting to pull away the bride, who thereupon clung close to her new husband. The ceremony being thus ended, the bride was put into her sledge, surrounded with six torches, and the bridegroom returned on horseback to his own house, where the wedding was kept.

As soon as they were arrived there, the bridegroom, with his kindred and friends, sat down at a table plentifully furnished with meat ; but the women carried the bride to her apartment, where they undressed her, and put her to bed. The bridegroom was then fetched away from table, and six or eight young men, with lights in their hands, conducted him to the chamber, where they sat down their candles, in barrels of wheat and barley, placed round the room for that purpose ; and, after receiving a present of two martins skins a-piece, immediately retired. In the mean time the bride, perceiving the bridegroom coming, got out of bed, slipped on a loose gown lined with fur, and received him with a submissive inclination of the head ; and this was the first time of his seeing her face. They sat down together and supped, after which they went to bed ; all withdrawing except one of the old servants of the house, who, while the relations and friends of the new married-couple were busied,

partly in practising charms and incantations, which they thought might be advantageous to them, and partly in feasting and regaling themselves, walked before the chamber-door, and asked, from time to time, whether they were ready. As soon as the bridegroom answered that they were, the trumpets and trimbrels, which only expected the word, began to play, and continued till the baths were prepared, into which the new married couple were put, but a-part. They were then washed with water, mead, and wine; and the bride sent the bridegroom a shirt, embroidered with gold and pearls at the collar and extremities, and a rich habit. The nuptial-bed (for persons of quality) was made by the direction of the two *suachas*, attended by an hundred men servants, upon forty sheaves of rye, ranged in proper order, and encompassed with barrels of wheat, barley, and oats.

PERSONS of meaner condition were married with less ceremony. The night before the wedding, the young man used to send his intended bride some cloaths, a furred cap, a pair of buskins, a cabinet with certain trinkets, a bag for night-cloaths, a comb, and a looking-glass. The next day, the priest was sent for, and came with a little silver cross, with which, on entering the house, he gave the benediction, first to the messengers who brought him, and afterwards to the guests that were invited. The young couple were then set at table, but with a piece of silk between them, till the *suacha* had dressed the bride's head; when a looking glass was brought, and the intended bride and bridegroom were permitted to lay their cheeks together, and see each other in it; the two *suachas*, in the mean time, casting hope upon them. This done, they were led to church, where the ceremonies were the same as for persons of higher rank^b.

THIS way of marrying, without the man's ever seeing the person he is contracted to till it is too late to recede, may do, as *M. de Voltaire* observes, in *Turky* or *Persia*, where polygamy is established, and the women are locked up: but it is bad for countries where only one wife is allowed, and where divorces are rare. The remedying of this abuse was therefore a care well worthy of *Peter the Great*.

THE sovereigns of *Russia* have declined matching with foreigners ever since the year 1490. Since their possessing *Casan* and *Astracan*, the customs of the *Asiatics* seem greatly

^b OLEARIUS, lib. iii. and FLETCHER, c. xxiv.

to prevail among them, and particularly in their marrying none but their own subjects. The manner too in which the four last czars chose their wives, resembles still more strongly that of ancient *Asia*. The finest maidens in the empire were sent for to court, when the monarch thought of marrying. The great mistress of the court received them in her house, and lodged them separately, but made them all dine together. The czar saw them, either under a borrowed name, or without disguise. The day of marriage was fixed, and the sovereign's choice not yet declared; when a wedding-garment was presented to the lady in whose favour he had secretly determined. The rest were sent back, with handsome presents. Thus it was that the czar *Michael Romanow* married *Eudoxia*, the daughter of a poor gentleman called *Streshnev*, who was tilling his land with his own domestics, when the chamberlains sent to him by the emperor, with presents, informed him that his daughter was on the throne. The name of that princess is still dear to *Russia*ⁱ.

If the custom of raising subjects to the throne was favourable to the fair sex; a very hard one prevailed, at the same time, in *Russia*. The daughters of the czars seldom married then: most of them passed their lives in a convent.

Olearius^k gives the following account of the ceremonies used by the *Russians*, in his time, at their funerals. As soon as a person expired, notice was sent to his relations and friends, who thereupon repaired to his house, stood round his corpse, excited one another to bemoan him, as if they intended purposely to heighten the lamentations of the women, and asked the deceased, why he would die? Whether his circumstances were not good? Whether he wanted meat and drink? Whether his wife were not handsome and young enough? Whether she had been inconstant to him? and many other such questions. A present of beer, brandy, and mead, was then sent to the priest, that he might pray for the soul of the deceased, who, after being well washed, was laid in a coffin scooped out of the trunk of a tree, with his arms across over his breast, a clean shirt or a shroud about him, and a pair of new shoes, of very thin *Russian* leather, on his feet. The coffin was covered with a cloth, or sometimes with a coat which the defunct had worn, and carried to church; preceded by a priest bearing a picture of the saint assigned to the deceased for his patron, at his baptism,

Burials.

ⁱ VOLTAIRE. ^k Lib. iii.

and by the four nearest unmarried female relations, as chief mourners, who filled the air with howling cries, measured in such exact time, that they all ceased, and all began again together. Other priests walked round the coffin during this procession, and incensed it all the way. If the deceased was a rich man, and the season of the year permitted it, he was kept above ground eight or ten days, during which the priest incensed the corpse, and sprinkled it with holy water every day. When the ground was frozen so hard that a spade could not enter it, the bodies of the poorer sort were laid up in dead-houses, which they call God's houses, till graves could be dug for them. At the grave, the coffin was opened, and a picture of the deceased's saint held over him, while the priest recited the funeral service; after which the kindred and friends took leave of the dead person, by kissing either him or the coffin; and then the priest put between his fingers a piece of paper, signed by the bishop or other principal ecclesiastic of the place, and the confessor, certifying that the deceased died in the true faith, and recommending him to suitable treatment in the other world (A). The coffin was then put into the grave, with the face of the deceased turned towards the east; and the mourners returned home together, to drown their sorrow in mead and brandy. Their mourning used to last forty days; and it was customary for the next of kin to build over the grave a hut lined with matting, where the priest prayed for the soul of their departed friend, morning and evening, for six weeks together: for though the *Russians* do not believe in purga-

(A) The form of this passport run thus: "We whose names are hereunto subscribed, the patriarch, or metropolitan, and priest of the city of *N.* do make known and certify, by these presents, that the bearer of these our letters, hath always lived among us like a good christian, professing the *Greek* religion; and though he hath committed some sins, yet that he hath confessed the same, and thereupon received absolution, and taken the communion for the remission of

"his offences: That he hath honoured God and his saints; that he hath said his prayers; that he hath fasted on the hours and days appointed by the church; and that he hath demeaned himself so well towards me, who am his confessor, that I have no reason to complain of him, nor to deny him the absolution of his sins. It witness whereof we have given him the present testimonial, to the end that, upon sight thereof, *St. Peter* may open unto him the gate of eternal bliss."

tory,

tory, they hold that there are two several places to which the souls of men retire after their separation from the body, there to wait the day of judgment; some in a pleasant and delightful abode, where they enjoy the conversation of angels; others, in a dark and dismal valley, where they see nought but devils: and that while the soul is yet on its way, it may be diverted from the evil road by the prayers of priests and monks. The *Russians* had also a tradition, which was generally received, that whoever was buried in the monastery of *Petersky* at *Kiow*, would be saved, even though he died without repenting of his sins. But *Peter I.* took care to abolish, as far as he could, these, and many other superstitious abuses, when he settled the national synod.

They have such veneration for holy-water, that they not only make whole tubs full of it at once, but all their rivers used formerly to be hallowed once a year, by their bishops, with great pomp and solemnity. Twelfth-day was the time fixed for performing this ceremony at *Moscow*, where the czar and all his nobility used to be present at it^b. The procession was opened by the inferior clergy, marching two and two, with banners and pictures of saints, at the head of which were those of the *Virgin Mary*, and *St. Michael* fighting the dragon: next went the priests and bishops, in the same order; then the monks and abbots; after them the patriarch, richly attired, with a globe on the top of his mitre, to denote his universality over that church; and last of all came the czar and his court. A hole being made in the ice, the patriarch recited several prayers, conjuring the devil to come out of the water, into which he dipped his cross, and threw a handful of salt; ending the exorcism with a profusion of frankincense. The morning before, all the *Muscovites* used to chalk crosses over every door and window of their houses, lest the devil, when conjured out of the water, should fly in at them. The moment the ceremony was over, all the people pressed forward with pails and buckets, to take of the hallowed water for drink and other uses: mothers plunged their children into it over head and ears; numbers, as well women as men, leaped into it, some naked, some with their cloaths on, though so intensely cold, that one less heated with devotion, would have been afraid of being instantly frozen to death; and many brought even their horses to drink of the sanctified stream; which was also frequently given to sick persons, in their greatest extremity, as a means of either recovering them, or sanctifying them to God.

^b FLETCHER, c. 25.

*Manners
and cus-
toms.*

Before the time of *Peter I.* the *Russians* were, not undeservedly, looked upon as mere savages. But that wise and great emperor, by incredible application, and a proper temperament of severity and mildness, brought about, by degrees, such an alteration in their manners, as set them upon a kind of level with some of the civilized nations of *Europe*, at least whilst he lived; for they seem now to be retrograding apace. The work which he begun would have required a succession of princes, animated with the same spirit. The *Russians* are ingenious, implicitly obedient to the will of their superiors, and especially of late, good soldiers, when properly commanded: but they are distrustful, immodest, quarrelsome, insolent in prosperity, abject in adversity, and excessively deceitful in their traffic. Persons of distinction among them are very fond of state and splendor.

*Fondness
of drink.*

The insatiable eagerness of their common people after spirituous liquors, especially in the carnival time, may in some measure be imputed to their rigorous fasts, and the slender diet they live upon throughout the year: for though provisions of all kinds are extremely cheap in almost every part of *Russia*, their food chiefly consists of turneps, cabbages, peas, large cucumbers, onions, garlic, and coarse ill-tasted fish. Their usual drink is *quas*, which is a kind of small beer, and *braga*, brewed of oatmeal and hops: that of their gentry is mead, and, of late, wine; though even with them, brandy always makes a part of every repast. Among the lower sort, in particular, the men are those who give themselves up most to excessive drinking, which they do to such a degree, as to pawn every rag upon their backs at ale-houses, and go home stark-naked, if we may credit *Olearius*, who indeed gives more than one instance of their bestiality in this respect: nor is it at all uncommon to see their women drunk, staggering along the streets.

Dress.

THE ancient dress of the *Russians*, consisting of a long robe lined with fur, a vest enriched with jewels on days of ceremony, and a high turban of fine sable or other skins, was perhaps more noble, and certainly better suited to their climate, though it might be less convenient for war, or any active employment, than a short coat and waistcoat, like ours, which the czar *Peter* obliged them to wear, at the same time that he made them cut off their beards; of which, and of prominent bellies, they were great admirers. Their women, looking upon a ruddy complexion as the very ef-

fence of beauty, are so extremely fond of paint, that even the poorer sort among them will beg money to buy red. Both sexes wear a cross on their breasts, which is put on when they are baptized, and is never laid aside as long as they live. The peasants crosses are of lead; but those of higher class are of gold or silver. If any one were to be found dead, without a cross, the corpse would be thrown upon a dunghill, or cast into a ditch.

THE women of fashion in this country live extremely retired, seldom going out of their houses, and receiving the visits of their friends and relations much oftener than they return them. As those of this rank are not much brought up to housewifry, they give themselves but little trouble about it, especially after they are married. Their chief employment is sewing, embroidering of silk handkerchiefs, and making little purses and toys. Their dress within doors is generally made of some common stuff of little value: but when they go to church, or their husbands would honour a friend with their presence, they are clad magnificently. In visits of ceremony, it is usual for the men and women to salute each other with a kiss, if they are nearly of equal rank: but those of the lowest class prostrate themselves on the ground before persons of high distinction, in order to shew their profound respect. *Olearius*, and other writers, some of whom seem to have been too much prejudiced against the *Russians*, tell us strange stories of their unaccountable brutality to one another in the usual intercourse of life: but *Busching* says, that even the common people among them salute each other with great civility when they meet. However, that most of them are brutal enough, is very certain.

THE *Russians* seldom fail of bathing twice a week; for which purpose almost every house is provided with a bath; and he that has none of his own goes to the public baths. They often fall out naked from the warm bath, run about in the cold, roll themselves in the snow, and then plunge again into the bath; looking upon this vicissitude of heat and cold, as beneficial to the constitution, by rendering them hardy and robust: but many are of opinion that it helps to give them a fallow swarthy complexion; though it must at the same time be owned, that they are extremely subject to the scurvy, especially in the northern provinces, where few escape without visible marks of that raging distemper. Another disorder, peculiar to those who live in the farthest parts of *Siberia*, between *Tomsk* and *Kusnetsk*, is very singular. The tip of their tongue begins to rot, without any pain, and this

this mortification runs gradually till it gets into the throat, and they not knowing any remedy to stop the evil, at length kills them ^a. The coldness of their climate preserves them from pestilential distempers.

Houses.

SOME of the principal people have handsome houses of stone; but the most usual way of building in *Russia*, both in the towns and country, is to lay one beam or log of wood upon another, fastening them at the four corners, and filling up the crevices with moss. The house is afterwards covered with shingles, and holes are cut in it for doors and windows. There is commonly a brick stove or large oven in every room in the house of a peasant, which takes up a fourth part of the area, and is flat at the top, and boarded. On this, and a kind of shelves round the room, the whole family sleep, without beds. Their habitations look like so many chimnies; the fire-place, which is the stove or oven, having no vent for the smoke, but into the room. As soon as it is dark, they swarm with insects called *tarakans*, which are a species of goat-chaffers. The houses in most villages are built contiguous, as they are in the towns: so that when a fire breaks out, as very often happens, through the reigning vice of the *Russians*, drunkenness, or their negligence in putting out the many tapers which they stick about the pictures of their saints, it spreads with vast rapidity. Luckily, those who can afford it, have only to go to market, where they may immediately suit themselves with other houses, or even single apartments, ready made, which want only being tacked together. The loss of the furniture is easily replaced; that of the common people, in particular, seldom exceeding three benches, an oblong table, and a picture of a saint or two.

^a STRAHLENBERG, C. 13.

S E C T. III.

Language, Learning, Arts, Manufactures, and Commerce of Russia.

THE *Russian* language, which is remarkably soft, de- *Language,*
 rives its origin from the *Sclavonian*, though it differs greatly from it at present, and with regard to religious subjects, is intermixed with numbers of *Greek* words. The alphabet consists of forty-two letters, most of which are *Greek* characters, as they were written in the ninth century, when the knowledge of letters was first introduced into *Russia*. But as those letters did not express every particular found in the *Sclavonian* tongue, recourse was had to several *Hebrew* letters, and some arbitrary signs. The *Muscovite*, *Novogrodian*, and *Ukrainian* dialects, are the most used in *Russia*, together with that of *Archangel*, which greatly resembles the *Siberian*.

THE several branches of learning were but little known *Learning,*
 in *Russia*, before the reign of *Peter the Great*, who, sparing neither pains nor expence, to dispel the clouds of ignorance in which his subjects were involved, and to inspire them with a taste for arts and sciences, founded an academy of sciences, an university, and a *gymnasium* or seminary at *Petersburg*, besides other schools in the different parts of his empire; invited persons of distinguished abilities from other nations, to settle at *Petersburg*; collected a great number of books; and, contrary to the mistaken policy of his predecessors, encouraged his subjects to travel into those countries where arts and sciences were known to flourish. These wise and laudable measures are still continued, and have been the means of cultivating, among the *Russians*, some geniuses, who have made no inconsiderable figure in the republic of letters. Since the time of *Peter I.* the empress *Elizabeth* has also erected an university and two seminaries at *Moscow*. However, the number of *Russian literati* is as yet but small: and as there are only three universities in that vast empire, which are those of *Petersburg*, *Kiow*, and *Moscow*, learning may still be said to be only in its infancy in *Russia*: nor must we judge of the state of literature in the whole empire, from the present appearances at *Petersburg*; though the *Russians* are far from wanting natural talents. Their studies are chiefly directed to history, genealogies, and the mathematics: but they

they make a great mystery of the description and history of their own country.

THE members of the academy of sciences at *Petersburg*, not only publish collections of their own memoirs ; but compose books for the instruction of youth in the sciences, besides translating several useful works published in foreign countries.

Arts, manufactures,

FORMERLY the *Russians*, like all other people in their first state, were wholly employed in agriculture, feeding of cattle, hunting, and fishing. What they chiefly excelled in, was making of *yuchie*, or *Russia* leather, which had been a secret of long standing among them ; but they were entirely unacquainted with the more ingenious mechanic arts. However, numbers of excellent artificers having been invited to *Petersburg* by *Peter the Great*, the *Russians* shewed, that, with proper instructions, they did not want a capacity for all kinds of handicraft-trades ; for they have now flourishing manufactures of velvet, silk, woollen stuffs, linnen, copper, brass, iron, steel, and tin ; and make great guns, fire-arms, wire, cordage, sail-cloth, paper, parchment, glass, gun-powder, &c. Though it must be observed, that these manufactures are not brought to such perfection as to be carried on without foreign hands, and additional supplies of those commodities from abroad. What is wrought by *Russian* workmen, is sold for one half, or a third part less than what is made by foreigners at *Petersburg* and *Moscow* ; and the former does not do half the service of the latter. Ship-building is now carried to great perfection in *Russia* : and as to the peasants of that country, they are so far their own artists, as to make almost every utensil they have occasion for. *Peter the Great* first established the art of printing in *Russia*. His types, and other implements for that purpose, were brought from *Holland*. A press, with letters, had been sent from *Poland* to *Moscow*, and a printing-house erected, by the approbation of one of the former czars ; but the building was set on fire in the night, and burnt to the ground, by the procurement, as was generally supposed, of the priests, who looked upon all books, and especially such as treated of their own history, and the miracles of their saints, to be as dangerous as witchcraft.

Trade of Russia.

Russia affords a variety of commodities which are of great use to foreigners ; and as the exports of this country far exceed its imports, the balance of trade is considerably in its favour (A). The *Russian* home commodities are fables and black

(A) In order to give the reader some idea of the yearly exports of *Russia*, we shall transcribe the particulars, collected

by

furs; the skins of blue and white foxes, ermines, linxes, squirrels, bears, panthers, wolves, martens, kits, white hares, &c. Likewise *Russia* leather (B), iron (C), a transparent fossil, called *Marienglass*, or y glass, tallow, wax, honey, pot-ash, tar, linseed oil, pitch, train-oil, caviar (D), salt-fish, castor, iising-amp, flax, thread, *Russia* linnen, sail-cloth, callimatts, *Siberian* musk, *mamonts* teeth and bones, as are called, soap, feathers, hogs bristles, timber, &c. It may be added the *Chinese* goods, rhubarb (E), and rugs, with which the *Russians* partly furnish the rest

Busching from authentic, according to which owing quantities of the lities here mentioned, ally exported from *Persia*, viz.

	<i>Arshins.</i>
anco	1,214,000
	4,000,000
itto	600,000
	<i>Puds.</i>
x	22,000
us	1,500
	65,000
	1,000,000
	100,000
rather	200,000
caviar	20,000
istles	6,500
ins	400,000
furr, &c. &c.	70,000

The red and black or *Russia* leather, can- equalled in any other the world for colour, and softness. The best is dressed at *Jaroslrow*, and *Pleskow*. One ge of the genuineness of rather, not only by the and softness, but also by ing and smelling like leather, when rubbed The word *yucht*, or signifies a pair; two

skins being always put toge- ther.

(C) The quantity of bar, and other unwrought iron, annually exported from *Russia*, amounts, one year with another, to 300,000 *puds*; and the *Russian* iron is little, if at all, inferior to that of *Sweden*.

(D) *Caviar*, or *Caweer*, is made of the roes of the fish called *beluga*, and the sturgeon. The best is made of the *beluga* roes, and is of two sorts; namely, the granulated, and the pressed *caviar*. The former, which is most valued, is pre- pared in autumn and winter, but the latter is made in sum- mer; and both sorts are ex- ported to the southern parts of *Europe*. The granulated sort is first salted, and then put into kegs for exportation. *Caviar* is most palatable when fresh, and spread on bread, with salt, leek, and pepper; but as it soon be- comes tainted by warmth, it cannot well be exported fresh. The *Russians*, in their language, call it *Ikra*.

(E) No greater quantity of rhubarb is exported from *Rus- sia*, than what is allowed by the empress, who also fixes the price of it.

of Europe. Furs are so far from being cheap at *Petersburg* that they may be bought for the same prize at *Dantzic*, *Hamburg*, and *Leipsic*, and sometimes even cheaper; the reason of which is, that incredible quantities of them are clandestinely carried out of the country without paying any duty. The goods imported into *Russia*, are silks, chints, and cotton, cloth and other woollen stuffs, fine linnen, toys, *French* brandy, wines, herrings, and other fish, spices, hardware, &c.

IN 1749, the value of the goods exported from *Petersburg*, amounted to 3,184,322 rubels; and that of the imports to 2,942,242 rubels (A). Of these were exported to *England* to the value of 2,245,573 rubels; and the value of the commodities imported from thence, amounted to 1,012,209 rubels.

THE goods chiefly imported from *England*, are all sorts of woollen manufactures, lead, tin, dying-woods, indigo, pewter, olibanum, brimstone, lignum vitæ. The *Hollanders* and *Hamburgers*, besides these, bring wines, paper, allum, glass-wares, spices, dollars, plate, gold and silver lace, brocades, *Silesia* cloth, and all sorts of gallantries.

THE exports of the *English* from *Russia*, are hemp, flax, train-oil, linnen, pot-ash, rhubarb, isinglass, wax, tar, red-hides, and caviar; the two last for *Leghorn*. The *Hollanders* and *Hamburgers* carry out farther, wood-ash, masts, hides dried and salted, tallow, fables, hemp-seed, mats, and hogs bristles.

THE fishery of *seals*, or sea-dogs, of which about ten thousand are taken every year, yields five thousand measures of oil. The skins and oil are sent to *England*. *Morses*, or sea-horses, from *Nova-Zembla*, as it is corruptly called, used to load thirty boats a year with blubber. Their teeth are esteemed next to ivory: but this trade, being monopolized by a company, decays daily. Of cod and stock-fish, about three ships lading are sent yearly to *Denmark*: of salmon salted and dried, a ship's loading to *Bilboa*. These, with the cod, are taken in the north sea, about *Kilduin* and *Cola*; but the ships that go for them carry salt from *St. Ubes*.

(A) Lord *Whitworth* (1), in the year 1710, reckoned the yearly balance of trade in favour of the *Russians*, to be only near two thousand rubels: from whence we may judge how much their commerce has increased since that time.

(1) p. 87.

To enter more particularly into the commerce of *Russia*, it will be proper to divide it into land or domestic, and naval or foreign trade. The land-trade principally consists of

THE trade to *China*, which, at present, is carried on by caravans, and partly by private adventurers. The greatest in quantity, and the most valuable commodities which the *Russians* carry to *China*, are furs; in return for which they bring back gold, silks, cotton, tea, &c. (A). This trade, if rightly managed, would bring into the *Russian* government, a yearly profit of at least three hundred thousand rubels.

THE trade with the *Calmuks*, which is entirely in private hands, and of no great importance. They exchange with these people all sorts of iron and copper utensils, for cattle and provisions, and sometimes for gold and silver.

THE trade to *Bugbar*, or *Bochara*, one of the chief cities of *Uzbek Tartary*, near the river *Oxus*, which brings in ready money, or by bartering of goods, curled lamb-skins, *Indian* silks, and sometimes gems; which are brought to the yearly fair at *Samarkand*.

THE trade to *Persia*, by the way of *Astracan* and the *Caspian* sea, which is considerable, and brings in return raw silk and silken stuffs.

THE traders in the *Ukraine* carry provisions to the *Crim-Tartars*, and traffick with the *Greek* merchants at *Constantinople*.

THE inhabitants of *Kiow* trade to *Siberia*, in cattle and *Russia* leather; and, notwithstanding the severest prohibitions, great quantities of goods are smuggled from the government of *Smolensk*, to *Koningsberg* and *Dantzic*.

THE naval commerce of *Russia*, owes its origin to the *Hanse* towns, which formerly carried on a considerable trade with *Revel*, *Novogrod*, and *Pleskow*; till, about the middle of the sixteenth century, some *English* traders, of whom captain

* Lord WHITWORTH, p. 90.

(B) This caravan sets out from *Moscow* in the winter, and in three years before it returns. *Chinese* commissaries receive it on the borders of *Chinese* *Mougalia*, and conduct it, at their expence, to *Pekin*, where the *Chinese* maintain both the people and camels for three months, within which time the *Russians* are obliged to sell or barter their goods. At the expiration of this time, the caravan is again conveyed to the borders, at the charge of the *Chinese*. Those who advance their money in this traffic, frequently double it in three years.

Chancellor

Chancellor was the first, found the way to *Archangel*, which afterwards became the principal mart.

MONEY was formerly so very scarce in this country, that foreigners were obliged, when they bartered their goods for those of *Russia*, to give specie with them to the *Russians*, who had no idea of any commercial course of exchange till the year 1670. Most of the foreign merchants used to reside at *Moscow*, and went in the summer to *Archangel*, where they had their warehouses and factors. This practice continued till the year 1721, when the seat of commerce was transferred from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*, by order of *Peter the Great*, and the foreign traders were, in consequence thereof, obliged to remove their factories to the latter. At the same time also, among other regulations, a tariff was settled: but this was abolished in 1733, and the old *Russian* rubel was restored, by which the customs and duties are computed to this day. That rubel, before the present century, was only an imaginary piece, containing an hundred silver copeiks of those times, the only real current coin formerly known in *Russia*, which, however, were as large and heavy as those coined since (A). Fifty such copeiks were valued at one specie or *Holland* rix-dollar, which is equal to four shillings and four-pence farthing of our money, and one hundred of those rubels were supposed to weigh fourteen pounds of fine silver. They still compute by rubels of this value in commercial affairs: but the duty for all merchandize imported and exported, is paid in alberts, or new *Holland* rix-dollars, and not in *Russian* money. Fourteen such rix-dollars are valued at a pound weight of fine silver, which must be paid either in coin or bullion^f. The first real rubels, half rubels, &c. were coined in 1703^g. Their standard should be of the same goodness with *Lyon* dollars; viz. twelve ounces fine silver, and twelve ounces alloy to the pound weight: but most of the bullion that is carried into the mint, is not above ten ounces fine silver; and being seldom tried when melted, the *Russian* coins are of different intrinsic value, as

^f BUSCHING.

^g Lord WHITWORTH.

(A)

3 copeiks make an altine.
10 copeiks a greiven.
25 copeiks a popoltine.
50 copeiks a poltine.
100 copeiks a rubel.
The copeik is divided into *Denushkas* and *Polushkas*. The

denushka, which *Consent* takes to have been the first coin of the country, because the *Russian* word for money in general, is *denga*, from whence, according to him, the diminutive *denushka*, is half a copeik, and the *polushka* is half the *denushka*.

the

the run happens to be good or bad ; plate, dollars, and old copeiks, which last are received in the treasury at an allowance of 15 *per cent.* discount, being all melted together, with an additional alloy of brass. The silver chiefly used in the *Russian* coinage, is cross-dollars and *Albertus* dollars, with unwrought plate, brought from *Holland*, *Hamburg*, and *Bremen* ; partly to clear the merchants customs ; and partly in return of brass money, which the treasury often advances to foreigners, to be repaid in dollars at the end of two years.

IN 1702, the first ducats were coined with the czar's stamp, at twenty-six carrats, which is the fineness of *Holland* ducats : but the direction of the mint being taken, the next year, from the foreigners who had before had the management of it, and *Chinese* gold, of only twenty or twenty-one carrats, and from one to three grains, being used, without refining it, those ducats were utterly decried, and very few have been coined since the year 1706. The gold is imported in ingots from *China*, about three hundred and sixty pound weight *English*, yearly ; besides what is brought every summer from other parts, often in specie, by the ships which trade to *Russia*.

IN 1705, the czar *Peter* begun to coin brass copeiks, halves, and quarters. Thirty-six pounds of brass, *English* weight, which are bought in *Moscow* for seven rubels, produce twenty when coined. About ten thousand of these copeiks are given out monthly ; but no one is obliged to receive them in payment, except such as are in the service of the crown. They may be negotiated against silver at two *per cent.* loss. The brass used to come by the fleets to *Archangel*.

THE merchants and traders at *Petersburg* consist of natives and foreigners. The former may sell by wholesale or retail ; but the latter by wholesale only, and that to none but the natives : for foreigners are not permitted to have any commercial dealings with one another in *Russia*, nor are they allowed to keep the goods consigned to them in their own ware-houses ; but are obliged to deposit them in magazines, built by the government for that purpose, and to pay rent for warehouse-room in proportion to the quantity of goods they are possessed of¹. They also pay five *per cent.* for all goods bought and sold by weight, and four *per cent.* for those by tale or measure ; besides the duties on importation or exportation, which ever mount highest at the end of the

¹ BUSCHING.

trade time : for they do not actually pay for both these last^b. Whatever goods they send to *Moscow* or any inland towns, are subject to a duty of ten *per cent.* in dollars, and five *per cent.* where they are bought or sold, in brass money. The *Russians* pay five *per cent.* where they sell or buy in the country, and five *per cent.* at the general custom-house. Wine pays a particular rate of five dollars a hoghead.

MOST of the foreign traders at *Petersburg*, are only factors : the rest, who trade on their own bottoms, deal chiefly in toys and grocery. The factors are intrusted with very large capitals, and may get handsome fortunes without engaging in any commerce for themselves. The native *Russian* traders, who bring goods from different places to *Petersburg*, and carry foreign commodities up into the country, do not reside at *Petersburg*, but in various parts of the empire. In *May* or *June* they carry their goods to *Petersburg*, annually, by water ; and in the months of *September*, *October*, and *December*, after they have disposed of them, they return to their respective homes with foreign commodities. The wealthiest of these traders save themselves the fatigue of travelling, by sending their factors to *Petersburg*.

ALL foreign merchandize is generally sold at a year's credit : but the *Russian* commodities must be paid for on delivery, unless the owners of them find a difficulty in selling their stock ; in which case they deal by way of exchange : though even then they will not barter goods for goods, but commonly insist on a fourth, a third, or half of the value of the whole in specie. Of late, foreign merchants deal for the *Russian* commodities by contract, and even advance the money to the *Russians* in winter, upon condition that they deliver in the goods, at a settled price, in the ensuing summer ; and for the greater security, these contracts are entered in the custom-house books. To this unreasonable partiality in favour of the natives, and against foreign traders, to the large credit given by the latter to the former, and sometimes to the misconduct of the factors, may be chiefly imputed the great losses sustained by foreign merchants in *Russia*, which amount to some millions of rubels since the removal of the seat of trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburg* : so that the remarkable increase of foreign commerce in *Russia*, amidst such discouraging checks on trade, is very surprising. In the year 1744, the number of ships which came into the port of *Petersburg* from *England*, *Holland*, *France*, *Norway*, *Denmark*, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Stettin*, *Rostock*, *Kiel*, *Prussia*,

^b Lord WHITWORTH, p. 85.

^c BUSCHING.

Sweden, Dantzic, &c. amounted to two hundred and sixty-four; and in the following year only to one hundred and ninety-five. But in 1750, the number increased to two hundred and seventy-two; and in 1751, to two hundred and ninety^b.

THE *English* enjoyed considerable privileges in their trade to *Russia*, so early as the year 1553, when the czar *Iwan Basilowitz* was on the throne, as we observed beforeⁱ. These privileges were renewed by *Peter I.* who gave them great encouragements; but permitted them to send their goods only to *Moscow*. In 1752, a treaty of commerce was concluded betwixt *Russia* and *England*, by which it was stipulated that the *English* should be allowed to send goods through *Russia* into *Persia*: but captain *Elton*, a *Scotchman*, having entered into the service of *Shah Nadir* in 1746, and built ships for him on the *Caspian* sea, the *Russians* put a stop to this trade to *Persia*. However, the *English* still have a more considerable trade to *Russia*, than any other nation.

NEXT to them, the *Dutch* carry on the greatest trade with the *Russians*. Bills of exchange are drawn at *Petersburg*, on *Amsterdam* only^k: so that the traders of other countries, who give orders for buying *Russian* commodities at *Petersburg*, are obliged to procure credit, or to have proper funds at *Amsterdam*.

SUCH foreigners as settle at *Petersburg*, without actual commissions, and a sufficient credit in exchange, run a great risk of becoming bankrupts; of which there have been too many instances. There is not a nation in the world more inclined to commerce than the *Russians*: but they are so full of chicanery and finess, that a stranger cannot be too cautious in his dealings with them.

As we gave in our last note, some account of the money of the *Russians*, our commercial readers, in particular, if any such we have, will perhaps not be displeased at our subjoining here, in another, their weights and measures (A).

S E C T.

^b Id.

ⁱ Page 10.

^k BUSCHING.

(A) The weights peculiar to *Russia*, are (1)

A *Solotnick*, which is the sixth part of an ounce, and is divided into halves, quarters, and eighths.

A *Pound*, which is equal to ninety six *Solotbnicks*.

A *Pud*, which is forty of their pounds, and thirty-six of ours.

A *Berkowitz*, which is equal to ten *Puds*.

(1) *Busching*.

M 2

The

S E C T. IV.

Of the Coronation, Titles, Court, Revenues, Expences, Forces, &c. of the Czar.

*Ceremonies
of the
czar's co-
ronation.*

AT the accession of a new czar, all the metropolitans, archbishops, bishops, nobility, and principal merchants throughout the whole empire, are summoned to *Moscow*, against the day of the coronation; when the officiating prelate, which used to be the patriarch, while there was one, but now is the archbishop of *Moscow*, conducts the new great duke to the church of *Prechejste*, or our lady, within the *Kremlin*, where a scaffold is erected three steps high, and covered with rich *Persian* tapestry, on which are set three chairs, at equal distances one from the other¹. One of these is for the great duke, another for the archbishop, and the third for the ducal cap and robe. The robe is of purple satin, lined with sable; and on the top of the cap, which is embroidered with jewels, is a little crown, set as thick as possible with diamonds, and said to be the same which the great duke *Demetrius Monomach* took at *Cassa* in *Tartary*, and immediately destined for the coronation of his successors.

As soon as the czar enters the church, the clergy begin their hymns, after which the archbishop prays to God, to St. *Nicholas*, the great patron of the *Russians*, and to the other saints, desiring their presence at that day's solemnity. The prayer being ended, the chief counsellor of state takes the great duke by the hand, presents him to the archbishop, and says to him; "The *Kntz* and *Bojars* acknowledge the

¹ OLEARIUS, lib. iii. and FLETCHER, c. 6.

The *Russian* measures of length, are (1)

The *Arshine*, which is equal to twenty-eight inches, and one tenth, *English* measure.

The *Werfchock*, which is a tenth of the *Arshine*; and

The *Saschen*, or Fathom, which contains three *Arshines*.

Among the measures of capacity, are (2)

The *Galenok* or *Kruschka*, a measure for liquids, eight of which are equal to a *Pedro*; which last contains about twenty gallons *English*, and answers to the German *Eymer*.

The *Chetawerick*, a dry measure, reckoned equal to 320 *Russian* pounds.

(1) *Id.*

(2) *Strahlenberg*, c. 13.

" prince

“ prince here present, to be lawful heir to the crown ; and
 “ desire that, as such, you immediately crown him :” Upon
 which the archbishop leads the prince up to the scaffold,
 seats him on one of the three chairs, touches his forehead
 with a little cross of diamonds, and blesses him. Then
 one of the metropolitans reads the following prayer. “ O
 “ Lord our God, king of kings, who didst chuse thy ser-
 “ vant *David*, by thy prophet *Samuel*, and didst cause him to
 “ be anointed king over thy people *Israel*, hearken to our
 “ prayers, which, though unworthy, we offer up unto thee.
 “ Look down from thy sanctuary upon this thy servant,
 “ whom thou hast chosen and exalted for king over these
 “ thy holy nations : Anoint him with the oil of gladness ;
 “ protect him by thy power ; set upon his head a precious
 “ diadem ; grant him a long and happy life ; put into his
 “ hand a royal scepter, and make him sit upon the throne of
 “ justice ; make subject to him all barbarous nations ; let
 “ his heart and understanding always continue in thy fear.
 “ In all the course of his life, let him be constantly obe-
 “ dient to thy commandments ; suffer not any heresy or
 “ schism to come near his person or government ; but shew
 “ him the salvation of thy holy and universal church ; that
 “ he may judge thy people with justice ; protect the chil-
 “ dren of the poor, and finally attain everlasting life : for
 “ thine is the kingdom, the power, and the glory. God
 “ the father, God the son, God the Holy-Ghost, be with us,
 “ and remain with us.”

AFTER this prayer, the archbishop orders two metropo-
 litans to take the cap and robe ; and some of the bojars,
 whom he directs to come upon the scaffold, to put them on
 the great duke, whom he blesses a second time, by touching
 his forehead with the little cross of diamonds. The ducal
 cap is then delivered to them, and they set it upon the
 prince's head, while the archbishop says, In the name of the
 Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, and blesses him the third time.
 That done, the archbishop bids all the prelates approach,
 and each of them gives the great duke his benediction ; but
 only with the two fore-fingers. The great duke and the
 archbishop then sit down ; but rise again immediately, to or-
 der the singing of the litany, every verse of which ends with
Gospodi pomilui, “ Lord have mercy upon us,” and is fre-
 quently intermixed with the great duke's name. After the
 litany, they sit down again, and one of the metropolitans
 goes up to the altar, and says, singing, “ God preserve in
 “ health our czar and great duke of all the *Russias*, whom
 “ he hath of his love bestowed upon us, and grant him a

“ long and happy life.” The words are echoed round for some time, by every one present ; after which the archbishop alone goes up to the prince, and tells him, “ That since, through the providence of God, all the estates of the realm, as well ecclesiastical as temporal, have established and crowned him great duke over all the *Russias*, and entrusted him with a government of so great importance, he ought to apply all his thoughts to love God, keep his commandments, administer justice, and protect and maintain the true *Greek* religion.” He then bows himself down to the ground, before the czar, even touching it with his forehead, as a token of his homage ; and all the rest, ecclesiastics, nobles, and others, in their respective ranks, do the same. They then go to the church of *St. Michael the Archangel*, and afterwards to that of *St. Nicholas*, both within the walls of the palace, as well as that of *Precheffe*, and, after singing in each of them the same litanies as before, conclude the ceremonies with dining in the great hall of the *Kremlin*.

His Titles, THE sovereign of *Russia* was formerly stiled *Veliki Knez*, *Grand Prince*, *Great Lord*, or *Great Chief*, which we render by the words *Great Duke*. The title of *Czar*, which, in the *Sclavonian* language, signifies *King*, and likewise *Emperor*, was first assumed by *John Basilowitz*, surnamed the *Great*, grandfather of *John Basilowitz* the *Tyrant*, in the beginning of the sixteenth century, upon his being crowned in *Casan* ; and therefore is more probably derived from the *Tzars* or *Tchars* of that kingdom, or the *Tshas* of *Persia*, than from the *Cæsars* of *Rome*, whom, in all likelihood, the *Siberian Tzars* had never so much as heard of on the borders of the *Oby*^m. *Basilius*, son of *John Basilowitz* I. lost the newly acquired title and kingdom : but his son, *John Basilowitz* II. recovered both, with the addition of *Astracan* ; and accordingly stiled himself *Czar of Casan, Astracan, and Siberia, Grand Prince (A) of Moscow, Wolodimer, and Novogrod, Lord of Plescow,*

^m VOLTAIRE.

(A) This proves that *Strabienberg* is right in saying, (1) that the title of *Czar*, and that of *Grand Prince*, are as different as those of *Roman Emperor* and *Archduke of Austria*, or king of *Poland*, and *Grand Prince of Lithuania*. That the title *Czar*, in the *Sclavonian* tongue, signifies *King*, and also, sometimes *Emperor*, is evident from all the books in that language, as well sacred as profane, where these monarchs are constantly called *Czars*. In the *Sclavonian Bible*, which was translated from the

(1) Cap. vii.

Grand

w, &c. and *Powelitel*, which signifies *Imperator*, *Com-
m*, and *Samoderschitz*, *Self-preserver*, or *Sovereign*, of all
Russias. These titles remained undisputed till the year
1721, when the archbishop of *Novogrod*, to curry favour
with his prince, persuaded *Peter the Great* to change the
word *Powelitel*, into its equivalent in *Latin*, and call
himself *Imperator*. This occasioned some altercations,
from difficulties in point of ceremonial and rank, with
her courts of *Europe*; but at length the title of *Em-
peror* was universally allowed (B).

The Russian empire has been an undivided inheritance and power, since the time of John Basilowitz I. and females are not led from it. In 1722, the emperor Peter the Great issued an ordinance, by which the succession was wholly dependent upon the will and pleasure of the reigning sovereign; and this is the only written fundamental law relative to succession in Russia, where the power of the emperor is absolute and unlimited. The now reigning prince,

version of the *Septuagint*, even hundred years ago, before the *Russian Grand* took the title of *Czar*, *tsar*, *Saul*, *David*, *Selom* and *Alexander the Great*, and *Czars*: and that there is no difference in that language in the titles of *Emperors* *Caesars*, appears from this passage in *St. Matthew*, c. 12. *unto Cæsar, the things that are God's, and unto God, the things that are God's*; which is said in the *Slavonian*, *и Царю Царiewo а Богу*

But when, in the chapter, the question is, is this image? and the answer is, *Cæsar's*; then, in the next chapter, it is said *Cæsar*. In another place, we read, *Augusta Cæsar*; in the reign of *Cæsar*; where, in the Sclatongue, the name *Cæsar* is a proper or family

(B) The title of the *Rafsanjani* sovereign, at full length, runs now as follows:

N N. Emperor and sole sovereign of all the *Russias*, sovereign lord of *Moscow*, *Kiew*, *Wlodimiria*, *Novogrod*; czar in *Caspian*, *Asiatic*, and *Siberia*; lord of *Pleskow*; great duke of *Smolensko*; duke of *Esthonia*, *Livonia*, and *Carelia*; of *Tawria*, *Ingoria*, *Pernia*, *Wiatka*, *Bulgaria*, and lord of several other territories; great duke of *Novogrod* in the low country of *Tchernichow*, *Resan*, *Roslaw*, *Jarslaw*, *Biel-yero*, *Uldoria*, *Obdoria*, *Condinia*; emperor of all the northern parts; lord of the territory of *Iweria*; of the *Caribahinian*, *Greuzinian*, and *Georgian* czars; of the *Kabardinian*, *Circassian* and *Gorian* princes; and lord and supreme ruler of many other countries and territories (1)

(1) *Busching*, p. 399.

Elizabeth, who is stiled empress and sole sovereign of all the *Russias*, was the youngest daughter of *Peter I.* and ascended the throne in 1741, on the deposition of *John III.* and his mother who was regent. Upon the treaty which she concluded with *Sweden* in 1743, at *Abo*, this czarina gave the title of great duke of *Russia* to her eldest sister's son, *Charles Peter Ulrick* duke of *Holslein*, after he had embraced the *Greek* religion, and taken the name of *Peter Feodorowitz*.

Court, and attendants. THE *Russian* court has always been very numerous and magnificent, being filled, particularly on solemn occasions, by the bojars, or privy-counsellors, with all the officers of each pricase; by the nobles and gentry, who are obliged to constant attendance, by titles of honour and distinction, without any salary; such as the *krapshacks*, or carvers, who are always two of the first nobility, and whose employment is held in high estimation; the *solnicks*, or sewers, who are also used to carry any message of importance, to receive ambassadors, &c. and the *spalnicks*, or gentlemen of the bed-chamber; which two last titles are in great number, and descend from father to son, though generally confirmed by the prince; and lastly, by the *gosts*, or chief-merchants. On public feasts or ceremonies, all these received rich gowns of brocade, lined with furs, from the treasury, which they returned as soon as the appearance was over: but the czar *Peter I.* abolished these formalities, without settling any other court; some said, to save the expence during the war he was engaged in; others, from his particular temper, which was averse to such constraints^c. On any ceremony, he was attended by the chief officers of his army, and only some of his nobility. However, the former pomp has since been restored, and heightened by the addition of three orders of knighthood, created by the prince we have been speaking of^f.

Orders of knight-hood. THE first, and most honourable, is that of *St. Andrew*, or the *blue ribbon*, instituted by *Peter the Great* in 1698, in honour of *St. Andrew*, the patron of *Russia*. The empress *Catharine* gave the statutes, and assigned proper habits for this order, which has its ensigns, motto, and collar.

THE second is the order of *St. Alexander Newski*, or the *red ribbon*, which was indeed instituted by *Peter I.* but the czarina *Catharine* first conferred it in the year 1725. This order has also its badge and motto.

THE third is a female order, which *Peter the Great* found-

^c Lord WHITWORTH, p. 62.

^f BUSCHING.

ed in 1714, in honour of his consort *Catharine*; and from her name he called it the order of St. *Catharine*.

THESE honours, as *Voltaire* observes, command respect, cost the sovereign nothing, and flatter those who receive them, without adding to their power.

FORMERLY, the chief dignity in *Russia*, next to the great duke, was that of *Sunderstravoi conische*, or lord-high-steward; but that office was suppressed when *Zuiski*, who had it, was raised to the crown^b. The greatest now, is that of *dwo-retzkoi*, or chancellor; after whom come grand-master of the household; the *Orusnitschei*, or master of the horse; the treasurer; comptroller, chamberlain, tasters, harbingers, &c.ⁱ

AN hundred and fifty tables are now spread twice a-day *Table*. at the *Russian* court, and served with eighteen hundred dishes. The court-purveyor receives for this purpose, two thousand rubels every three days, exclusive of the produce of the crown-estates, and the proper quantities of wine, sugar, and spices. The daily consumption of coffee is a pud, or thirty-six pounds of our weight; and seven thousand puds of salt are expended there every month^k.

THE revenues of the *Russian* empire are variously computed. The author of the *Anmerkung uber die Moscovitischen briefe*, or "Observations on the *Moscovite* letters," pretends that they amount to sixty millions of rubels; but this is certainly exaggerated. Some compute them at twenty millions of rubels, which is still beyond the mark; and others (A), on the contrary, reckon them to be but eight millions, which is too little (B). *M. de Voltaire* says^l, that according to a state of the *Russian* finances in 1725, they amounted to thirteen millions of rubels, reckoning only the taxes and duties that were paid in money, and excluding what was paid in kind: to which he adds, that this sum was then sufficient to maintain 339,500 soldiers and sailors; and that both the revenues and troops have increased since. *M. Busching*^m agrees with him as to this augmentation, which he estimates

^b OLEARIUS, lib. iii.

ⁱ FLETCHER, ch. xxvii.

^k BUSCHING.

^l Hist. de Russie sous Pierre le Grand, p. 60.

^m Geog. vol. i. p. 402.

(A) Among which number are the author of *Das Veränderte Rusland* (1), and the writer of the remarks upon *L'histoire gé-néalogique des Tartares* (2). *Strahlenberg* says (3) they amounted

to five millions of rubels in the time of the czar *Alexis*.

(B) Lord *Whitworth* (4) reckoned them at only about seven millions of rubels in the year 1710.

(1) P. 34.

(2) P. 724.

(3) ch. 3.

(4) P. 87.

at near a fifth-part, in consequence of an imperial *ukase*, or edict issued in 1752 by the present empress *Elizabeth*; but at the same time he assures us, from an authentic account of the empress's whole revenues, lying before him at the time of his writing, that they amount to only about ten millions of rubels. Which ever of these author's is right, it is very certain, that the imperial revenues are not proportionate to the vast extent of the *Russian* dominions; that they do not all consist of ready money, the country in many places furnishing recruits for the army in lieu of it, and most of the inhabitants of *Siberia* paying their tribute in furs; and that they are sufficient to answer the exigencies of the state.

THEY arise from the annual capitation or poll-tax, to which the vassals of noblemen pay 70 copeiks, the burghers 120 copeiks, and the *Tartars*, *Tscheremisses*, and other nations in the territory of *Casan*, together with the vassals of the khan, 110 copeiks a man. This tax, according to M. *Busching*, amounts to five millions of rubels; but as it is not duly paid by a great number, the arrears remaining every year are very considerable. At the close of the year 1752, the present empress of *Russia*, considering the situation of her subjects, freely remitted all the arrears of this tax from the year 1724 to 1747, which amounted to no less than 2,534,000 rubels.

FROM the demesne lands, occupied by 360,000 peasants, each of whom pays 110 copeiks a-year; amounting in all to 396,000 rubels.

FROM the revenues of the *cataques*, or inns and drinking houses, which are in all about two millions; the privilege of selling beer, mead, and spirits distilled from corn, being monopolized by the crown.

FROM the tolls and customs by sea and land, which produce about 1,150,000 rubels; though it is to be observed, that all the inland duties, throughout the whole empire of *Russia*, were abolished in the year 1754.

FROM the continual trade carried on by the crown, in iron, pot-ash, ashes of the willow-tree, rhubarb, tar, and train-oil (A).

FROM

(A) The crown exports yearly about 40,000 *puds* of iron, which produce 240,000 rubels; and private persons, who have also iron works, sell annually as great a quantity. The pro-

fits arising from pot-ash are computed at 40,000 rubels a-year. The ashes of the willow-tree bring in 30,000 rubels; and the rhubarb, of which both the quantity to be exported and the price

FROM the salt-works, which bring yearly in to the crown 700,000 rubels.

FROM the duty on stamp-paper, amounting to 120,000 rubels.

FROM a tax on all law-suits, which pay ten *per cent.* of the value contested; from oven or chimney-money; from all hackney horses and carriages; and likewise all bath-houses, of which every village has one in public, and every fashionable house one in particular, taxed at a rubel a piece yearly.

FROM the abbey-lands, since their being managed by a secular commission for the benefit of the crown.

FROM the caravans to *China*, at least 100,000 rubels: though the revenue arising from this article is not every year equal; for it sometimes amounts to more, but is never less than that sum.

FROM the exportation of sail-cloth; which trade, however, is in private hands. The revenue from coining and the mint is likewise very considerable. The uncertain and casual sums arising from confiscations and mines, do not properly come in here, as they are generally given away to favourites.

THE ordinary expences of the *Russian* court, though very large, are no more, as we have elsewhere observed, than what the revenues can sufficiently defray.

THE annual charge of the fleet, and the canal of *Cronstadt*, amounts to 1,200,000 rubels, for which part of the cabaque, or revenue arising from the sale of liquors, is appropriated.

THE charge of maintaining the army is about 4,000,000 rubels, which is defrayed by the poll-tax. The two regiments of guards are paid out of the profits arising from the cabagues. The *Ismailow* regiment is maintained by the produce of the salt-works, and the horse-guards by the *Siberian* prikaze or college of judicature.

THE corps of cadets, of which we have spoken in our account of *Petersburg*, stands the government in 65,000 rubels a-year, which arise from the capitation, and the general commission of war. The expence of the train of artillery amounts yearly to 300,000 rubels.

THE annual charge of the civil list, in the time of *Peter I.* did not exceed 50 or 60,000 rubels; but in the reign of the

price, are regulated by the government, 200,000 rubels. About 80,000 barrels of tar are exported from *Archangel* at a rubel a barrel; and the profits arising to the crown from train-oil amount yearly to 24,000 rubels.

empres

The History of Russia.

empress *Anne*, the salaries of the court-officers alone, amounted to 120,000 rubels. In the present reign, they are not less than 190,000 rubels; and the total of the annual expences of the crown is about a million of rubels.

THE great duke, or heir apparent, is allowed 200,000 rubels a-year, for the maintenance of his household.

THE annual allowance to the *Russian* ministers at foreign courts, is about 800,000 rubels. Those from foreign courts, to the *Russian*, are defrayed at the expence of this last.

THE academy and university at *Petersburg* receive annually from the treasury, by warrant of the state-office, 53,928 rubels.

THE court allows 110,000 rubels for the support of public dispensaries; and the deductions from the pay of the officers and soldiers for that purpose, make about 40,000 rubels; so that the whole expence amounts to 150,000 rubels. We pass over several less considerable sums annually paid by the *Russian* court.

THE produce of the public shews of tumblers and rope-dancers, of which multitudes are exhibited at *Easter* for the diversion of the people, who are passionately fond of them, is allotted for paying the expence of the police, paving the streets, &c. Besides this, every house-keeper pays an assessment for his house and court-yard, according to the extent of ground he occupies, which is applied to the same purposes. The salaries of all civil officers are paid out of the monies received by the chanceries or offices belonging to their departments; and those of the governors, by the pricases or offices of their respective governments. A senator, as such, receives no pension or salary. The surplus remaining in the inferior offices, is transferred to the state-office.

Army.

By the indefatigable care of *Peter the Great*, the military establishment of *Russia* has been entirely new modelled. Before his time, the greatest part of the infantry consisted of *Strelitzes*, who, being honoured with particular privileges, as the czar's body-guards, arrogated to themselves a power which often proved dangerous even to the emperor's life. But *Peter I.* suppressed both the name and the corps. The *Russians* at present are good soldiers, especially if they be well disciplined: but the infantry far surpasses the cavalry. Both are now on the *German* footing. The army is clothed once in two years. The crown finds the arms and horses of the common troopers; but the nobility are obliged to furnish horses for the dragoons, which often cost them ten or twelve rubels a piece, while the treasury allows them only

ly seven. Most of the dragoons are gentry, and obliged to appear by the tenure of their lands.

THE *Russian* land-forces may be ranked under the general division of regular and irregular offensive, and regular and irregular defensive troops ^d.

THE offensive regulars, in time of peace, are quartered in the several provinces, where every company build their barracks in vacant places; three single men, or one that is married, being allowed a room and a garden; and the common soldiers may work for the country people for wages: but no soldier is suffered to go into the villages or farmers houses, without permission of his officer. They are exercised three days in every month; and to keep them from falling into idleness, they are obliged to repair the canals and roads, throughout the empire, every three years.

THE offensive irregulars are, gentlemen volunteers, the *Don* and other *Cosaks*, the *Calmuks*, and sixty thousand *Tartars*. The rest of these are reckoned among the defensive troops belonging to each government, because they cannot be used in war, in remote countries, without great difficulty; and besides, being continually annoyed by their neighbours, they are almost always obliged to be on duty, to watch their motions.

THE regular defensive troops, commonly called the black regiments, and computed to be generally 96,000 men, are in garrison, some in the midst of the empire, to prevent insurrections and civil broils, and some in the frontier towns.

THE defensive irregulars consist of the nobility throughout the whole empire, with their vassals; the country militia in every government; and those of the *Cosaks*, *Calmuks*, and *Tartars*, who are not ranked among the offensive troops. All these have neither pay, provisions, nor cloaths of the crown, but only arms and ammunition. They have their own officers, and are dependent on the governor-general in each province.

THE artillery of *Russia*, when lord *Whitworth* was in *Artillery*, that country, in the year 1710, was mostly of metal, generally from three to thirty-six pounders, new cast since the beginning of the reign of *Peter I.* either from old pieces which had been heaped up by that prince's predecessors, without any just regard to the *calibre*, or from the bells which every church or cloister was obliged to furnish to the foundery, after the battle of *Narva*, according to their largeness and income. In 1708, a thousand pieces of can-

^d STRAHLENBERG, ch. xi.

non, from one to sixty pounders, were found in the city of *Moscow* alone: the arsenals of *Plescow*, *Smolensko*, and *Kiow*, were filled in proportion ^f. Besides the field artillery, every battalion has always two long three pounders of metal, and an hundred charges. The mortars are of brass, or *Siberia* iron, of all bores. The field artillery is lodged, in time of peace, partly in *Moscow*, from whence it can easily be conveyed, by water, to *Smolensko*, *Casan*, and other places; partly in *Great Novogrod*, on account of *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Carelia*; and partly in the city of *Seosk* or *Scheyski*, on account of *Kiow*, the *Crim*, and *Azow*. With each of these divisions there is always a regiment of artillery, with proper waggons, ammunition, and a third part of the horses necessary for the train; the rest being dispersed in the country, but near at hand, in case of need.

and Navy. ACCORDING to the state of the *Russian* forces drawn up by *M. Van Hoven* in the year 1746, the army then consisted of 246,494 regulars, and 120,000 irregulars. The fleet was composed of 24 ships of the line, 7 frigates, 3 bomb-ketches, and 2 *praams* or flat-boats; besides the galley-fleet at *Petersburg*, consisting of 102 galleys. The complement of the whole fleet amounted to 10,570 men, of whom 7701 were sailors. The fleet has continued pretty nearly the same since that time: for if some ships have been built yearly, others have become unfit for service. The men of war are laid up at *Revel* and *Cronstadt*, and the galleys at *Petersburg*. The *Russians* cannot as yet be said to have a complete good harbour in the *Baltic*, the water at *Cronstadt* being too fresh, which does considerable damage to the ships that lie there; the mouth of the harbour being also too narrow, and surrounded with rocks and dangerous sands; and the ice remaining there too long, the sea being seldom clear of it before the end of May. Neither have they now any constant fleet in the *Caspian* sea, where, in the time of *Peter I.* they had some galleys and other vessels, on account of his war with *Persia*; nor on the *Black* sea, where, upon the surrender of *Azow* to the *Turks*, some of the ships in those parts were sold to them, and the rest laid up at *Stavropol*, on the river *Dn.* Some sea-officers and ship-carpenters have of late been sent to the eastern parts of *Siberia*, towards *Japan*, to look out for good havens, and convenient places to build ships: but we have not yet heard of any progress they have made ^h.

^f Lord WHITWORTH p. 107. ^h STRAHLENBERG, ch. xi.

THE *Russian* fleet, in general, is divided into three squadrons, and commanded by an admiral-general in the center, who bears a white flag, with a crimson cross. The van has an admiral, who bears a blue flag, with a white cross; and the rear has another admiral, who bears a red flag, with a white cross. Each of these three squadrons has a vice-admiral, a rear-admiral, and three commodores. The galleys are commanded by an admiral, two vice-admirals, three rear-admirals, and three commodores. Their flags are of the same colour as those of the squadrons they belong to, but of a different form. When the czar commands his fleet in person, his ship bears the royal standard of the empire, which is yellow, and in the middle of it are the arms of the empire.

THE high-admiral of *Russia* has the rank and pay of a general-field-marshal, of which last there are two; one of whom commands the whole army, whilst the other presides in the council of war; and they exchange their posts every three years: an admiral has the rank of a general in chief; a vice-admiral, of a lieutenant-general; and a rear-admiral, of a major-general. A captain of a man of war has the same pay, and ranks with a colonel, a lieutenant-colonel, and a major of a marching regiment; and a sea-lieutenant with a captain (A).

(A) According to the account drawn up by M. *Busching* of the annual pay of the generals, officers, and private men, in the *Russian* service,

A general-field-marshal is allowed yearly,			
<i>rubels.</i>	<i>rations.</i>	<i>rubels.</i>	<i>denstseks</i> or servants.
7000	200	valued at 1140 and	16
		A general in chief,	
3600	80	456	12
		A lieutenant-general,	
2160	50	285	10
		A major-general,	
1800	40	228	8
		A brigadier,	
840	20	171	7
In the marching regiments a colonel is allowed yearly,			
<i>rubels.</i>	<i>rubels.</i>	<i>copeiks.</i>	
600 pay, and	96	and 90	for rations, and 6 servants.
		A lieutenant-colonel,	
360	62	70	4
		A major,	
300	62	70	3
		A captain,	

The History of Russia.

THE use of letters was entirely unknown to them b their conversion to christianity^b; and the most ancient their chronologers whose works are now extant in manuscript, is *Theodosius*, abbot of the convent of *Pesthow* at who lived in the beginning of the twelfth century (C).

THE *Russians*, properly so called, are certainly collected in the territories they now inhabit^a; and derive their origin from the *Slavians* or *Slavonians*, corruptly called *Sclavonians* who first settled along the banks of the *Volga*, and wards near the *Danube*, in the countries now named *Lithuania* and *Hungary*: but being driven from thence by the *Goths* or *Wolotians*, as the *Russian* writers call them, naming the *Romans*, they first removed to the river *Borysthenes*, over-ran *Poland*, and, as it is said, built the city of *Kiow*. Afterwards they extended their colonies farther to the rivers which run into the *Ilmen* lake; confine them within narrower limits, and laid the foundation of the city of *Novogrod*. The towns of *Smolensk* and *Tjernikoff* appear also to have been built by them; though the date of these events cannot be exactly ascertained (D).

^b PETREIUS, part II. STRAHLENBERG, c. iv.

^c BUSCHING, vol. i. and STRAHLENBERG, Introduction

barism, do still make a secret of the history and antiquities of their country, even since arts and sciences have been introduced among them, is attested by many writers, and particularly by baron *Strahlenberg* (1) and professor *Busching* (2), two of the latest authors who have treated of them: and as a further confirmation of this truth, we may instance the prohibition of this dissertation intended to be published by the learned M. *Muller*, now professor at *Petersburg*; *De Originibus gentis Germanicis Russorum*: perhaps an irreparable loss!

(C) He begins his annals from the coming of the *Warengers* into *Russia*, and those chrono-

nicles have been continued to the year 1206 by an anonymous writer. Professor of *Petersburg*, who is much better qualified to write the history of *Russia* than any author now living, were allowed to do it, has given the first vol. of his *Sammlung der Geschichte*, or collection of this *Russian* matters in *High Dutch*, with wherein he corrects, in places, the errors of the author to whom he gives the name *Nestor*. M. *de Voltaire* calls *Constantine*.

(D) The *Aborigines*, ancient inhabitants, not of *Russia*, but all over S

(1) In the Introduction to his account of *Siberia*, &c.

(2) *Geograph.* vol. i.

the ninth century the *Scandinavians*, who were *Danes*, *Swedes*, or *Norwegians*, and *Swedes*, emigrated from the north, and, crossing the *Baltic*, went to seek for habitations in *Russia*¹. They first subdued the *Courlanders*, *Livonians*, *Estonians*, and extending their conquests still farther, exacted tribute from the *Novogrodians*, settled kings among them, and traded as far as *Kiow*, and even to *Greece*. These new intruders were called *Waregers*, which, according to professor *Muller*, signifies "sea-faring people," or, if derived from the old northern word *war*, "warlike-men," was probably first used by the *Scandinavians*, afterwards by the *Russians*, and, in time, came to pass for a proper name.

To these *Waregers* the name of *Russes* or *Russians*, was entirely unknown before the ninth century, owing to the origin, as several eminent writers have proved (B). They derived it, according to the *Russian* annals; and the *Fins*, of this day, though they can assign no reason for it, give the name of *Russes*, or rather *Rossa-Laine*, and stile themselves *Suoma-Laine*, that is, people living among the swamps. From them the *Novogrod Slavonians* seem to

¹ BUSCHING.

to the borders of *China*, called *Tsbudi*: for professor *Muller*, upon inquiring in those countries by whom the ancient ruins and sepulchral monuments were erected, and whether they were the works of the *Russians*? was every where answered by the inhabitants, those monuments, &c. were set up by the *Tsbudi*, who, in ancient times, had lived in that country. Now these *Tsbudi*, as the *Russian* history informs us, inhabited the north of *Russia* antecedently to the present possessors, are probably the *Fins*, *Carelians*, and *Esthlanders*: for the word *Tsbudski* is still retained in the *Russian* language, as *tskoi-Osero*, which is the name they give to the *Peipus*-lake, and *Tsbudskoi-Jesick*, by

which they mean the *Finnish* or *Esthonian* language.

(B) T. S. BAYER, *de Varegis*, tom. iv. Comment. Acad. Scient. Imp. Petrop. p. 275. ERICI JUL. BERNER Sched. Hist. Geograph. de Varegis heroibus Scandianis, & primis Russiae Dynastis, Stockholmiæ, 1743. 4to. ARVID MOLLERUS, *de Varegia*, 1731. ALGOT SCARINUS *de originibus prisca gentis Variegorum*; and professor *Muller*, in the manuscript of his curious and elaborate work *de originibus gentis & nominis Russorum*, of which the publication has been unfortunately prohibited, as we observed before.

The History of Russia.

		A captain,	
<i>rubels.</i>	<i>rubels.</i>	<i>copeik.</i>	
180	28	50	2 servants,
		A lieutenant,	
120	22	80	1
		A second-lieutenant,	
84	17	10	1
		An ensign,	
84	17	10	1
		A quarter-master of a regiment,	
84	22	80	1
		An adjutant,	
120	22	80	1

A private man is allowed ten rubels and ninety-eight copeiks a-year, besides three barrels of meal, a certain quantity of groats or coarse oat-meal, twenty-four pounds of salt, and flesh to the value of seventy-two copeiks. All these last articles are computed at five rubels and seventy-four copeiks. But six rubels and thirty-five copeiks are deducted from the pay of every private man for cloathing, medicines, flesh, cartridges, and flints for their firelocks. His whole cloathing, from head to foot, costs near twelve rubels.

The *Dentfeks* or servants are taken out of the recruits, to attend the officers; and for the support of every one of these, eight rubels and sixty-five copeiks are paid annually out of the military chest; but the masters are obliged to cloath them.

The officers and common men receive four months pay, and one month's provisions, always before-hand (1).

(1) *Strahlenberg, cb. xi.*

English are a compound of many nations. When different people are thus intermixed, it is a long while before they become civilized, or even form their language. Good order and the arts are established with such difficulty, and revolutions so frequently defeat the very best attempts to introduce them, that if any thing is to be wondered at, it is, that most nations do not live like *Tartars*.

That *Russia*, and particularly that part of it which is properly so called, was divided into a great number of petty principalities and lordships, in the dark ages we are speaking of, is certain; but for want of records relative to those times, either in the *Russian* writers, or in historians of other nations, we cannot pretend to say; nor indeed is it of any consequence to us to know, what were those several districts, what their boundaries, nor how, or by whom they were governed. Their princes, as despotic as their power would suffer them to be, were continually at war, either to defend themselves, or to invade their neighbours. The most horrid rapine, cruelty, and devastations attended the triumphs of the inhuman conqueror, and all were plunged in the utmost misery and distress; when *Gostomisl* ^p, a principal man among the *Novogrodians*, by whom he was highly revered for his prudence and understanding, pitying the unhappy fate of his countrymen, and seeing no other probable way to remedy their calamities, advised them, he himself having no male heirs, to apply to their most potent neighbours the *Waregers*, and offer them the government of their country. The proposal was readily accepted; and three princes, of known abilities and valour, named *Ruric*, *Sineus*, and *Truwor* (A), who are generally supposed to have been brothers, were sent to govern them. The first of these took up his residence at *Ladoga*, which some writers call *Garderyk*, in the principality of *Great Novogrod*; the second at *Bielo-Osero*, or the *White-lake*; and the third kept his court at *Isborfk*, or, according to *Petreius*, at a small town then called *Twertzog*, in the principality of *Pleskow*.

Ruric, Sineus, and Truwor collected for their chiefs.

P History of *Kiow*, and PETREIUS.

(A) *Petreius* (1), to shew that these three princes were probably of *Swedish* extraction, derives the name of *Ruric* from *Eric*; that of *Sineus*, from *Sigge*, or *Swen*; and that of *Truwor* from *Tur*, *Trotte*, or *Tufwuc*. The first of these etymologies is natural enough; but the two last seem forced.

(1) *Par. ii.*

*They die,
and are
succeeded
by*

THE three brothers reigned amicably, and made considerable additions to their respective territories, all of which at length devolved to *Ruric*, by the death of *Sineus* and *Truvor*, who left no issue: but for want of records we cannot say what these additions were, nor the exact time when the three brothers were invited to *Russia*.

A. D.
878.
Igor,

Ruric died about the year of Christ 878^a, and left his dominions to his son *Igor*, a minor, whom he committed to the care of a relation named *Olech*, who governed with great integrity during the young prince's minority, enlarged his possessions by the conquest of several towns and countries, particularly towards the south; undertook an expedition against *Constantinople*, which he besieged, but in vain; and, in his return home, lost his life by the bite of a serpent^r.

*who mar-
ries Olga.*

Igor then returned to *Plescow*, where he married *Olga*, a lady of the best family in that city (B), and had by her a son called *Swetoslav*. Going to demand tribute of the *Drewenses*, or *Drewliani*, as some writers call them, a people bordering on the *Volga*, he was murdered by them. His widow *Olga* revenged his death: after which she went, for what reason we know not, to *Constantinople*, where she was baptised, and received the name of *Helena*.

*and is kill-
ed.
Olga be-
comes a
christian.*

The emperor *John Zimisces* was her god-father, and fell in love with her, we are told: but she, alledging their spiritual alliance, refused to marry him. Her example made some impression upon her subjects, several of whom became converts to christianity: but none upon her son, who reigned for a long while after her death, which happened at *Pereflow*, in the 80th year of her age, and fourteen years after her baptism^s. The *Russians*, to this day, rank her among their saints, and commemorate her festival on the 11th of *July*.

*Swetoslav
sovereign.*

Swetoslav was a great warrior, and enlarged his dominions by the acquisition of several new territories: but embarking in an expedition against the *Greeks*, at the head of a numerous army, he was defeated, and forced to fly to the *Peucingians*, or, as some *Russian* writers call them, the *Petschenians*, whose prince *Malditto* killed him treacherously, and made a drinking vessel of his skull (C). *Petrei*us, indeed, says,

^a Chron. Kiov. ^r PETREIUS. ^s STRAHLENBERG, c. viii.

(B) *Reutenfels* (1) calls her the niece of *Gostomisel*.

(C) *Strahlenberg* (2) takes these

Peucingians, or *Petschenians*, to be the same with the *Drewliani* mentioned before, who

(1) *cop. vi.*

(2) c. viii.

dwelt

says¹, that this was done by the Greek general, after *Swetoflaw* had been killed in battle.

Swetoflaw left three sons, *Jaropolck*, *Olech*, and *Wolodimir*, among whom his inheritance was divided. *Jaropolck* had the province of *Kiow*; *Olech*, the country of the *Drewliani*; and *Wolodimir* had *Novogrod*. *Jaropolck* raised an army, with the help of which he killed his brother *Olech*; and *Wolodimir*, in his turn, killed *Jaropolck*. The two former were legitimate: but *Wolodimir* was born of a concubine, named *Malischa*^m.

INHERITING his father's valour, and now sole possessor of a vast dominion, by the murder of his brothers, *Wolodimir* curbed all the neighbouring princes, awed the factious at home, extended his frontiers, and through the terror of his arms, founded on their rapid success, made his subjects enjoy the sweets of peace, which they had never tasted before. During this happy calm, setting himself above the barbarous custom of his country, he demanded in marriage the princess *Anne*, sister to the Greek emperor *Basilus Porphyrogenitus*. His suit was granted, on condition that he should embrace christianity; to which he agreed; and the *Constantinopolitan* patriarch *Photius*, so famous for his immense erudition, his quarrels with the church of *Rome*, and his misfortunes, rejoiced at the opportunity of adding this part of the world to his patriarchate, ordered *Anastasi*, bishop of *Corfun*, to baptize him. *Wolodimir* received the name of *Basilus*, and twenty thousand of his subjects, say the *Russian* annals, were christened the same day. To this epocha, of the year 987, *Russia* owes the first effectual introduction of the Greek religion, to which it has adhered ever since. *Michael Syra*, or *Cyrus*, a Greek, sent by *Photius*, was received as first metropolitan, or patriarch, of the whole country. *Wolodimir*, at the same time, put away all his then wives and concubines; of the former of which he had six, according to *Petreius*, and other writers; and of the latter, upwards of eight hundred. By those wives he had twelve sons, who were baptized with him. The idols of paganism were thrown down; churches and monasteries were erected; towns built; and the arts, children of plenty and repose, began to flourish under the

A. D.
976.
Wolodimir.

A. D.
987-91
He embraces christianity.

¹ Par. ii.

^m PETREIUS, *ibid*.

dwelt upon the borders of the *Volga*; and infers from their making a drinking vessel of *Swetoflaw*'s skull, which was customary among the ancestors of the *Mungals* and *Calmuks*, that they were probably of *Hunnian* extraction.

auspices of a prince willing and able to protect them. The *Slavonian* letters were now first introduced into *Russia*; and *Wolodimir* sent missionaries to convert the *Bulgarians*; but only three or four of their princes came to him, and were baptizedⁿ.

*Divides
his domi-
nions a-
mong his
twelve
sons,*

THIS dawn of happiness seemed to preface a lasting series of blessings. But *Wolodimir*, forgetting what he had himself experienced in his own brothers, imprudently divided his dominions among his twelve sons. Sovereign power seldom admits of such a distribution. The rival brothers became mortal enemies, and as soon as he was dead, replunged their country into all the horrors of murders, massacres, and civil wars. After a long and prosperous reign, he died in the city of *Wolodimir*, which he had built, and made his principal residence. He was called, whilst living, the *Apostle and Solomon* of the *Russians*, who, to this day, honour him as a saint.

GREAT part of *Lithuania*, *Podlachia*, *Red-Russia*, *Upper* and *Lower Podolia*, the duchies of *Smolensko*, *Potoczsk*, *Witepsk*, *Novogrod*, *Twer*, *Muscovy*, *Severia*, *Czernicow*, and all the countries between the *Wilja* and the *Pripeck*, became subject to him.

A. D.
1008.

*who de-
stroyed
another.*

THESE extensive regions, formidable whilst they were united under one sovereign, became weak and defenceless when divided among many. The rage of ambition soon rendered them the alternate theatres of every crime. *Sustopolk*, one of *Wolodimir*'s sons, lord of the province of *Twer*, caused two of his brothers to be assassinated, and seized on their duchies. *Jaroslav*, to whose share *Novogrod* had fallen, either from a desire to revenge the murder of his brothers, or willing to make that a pretence for enlarging his own territories, attacked the usurper, and forced him to fly for refuge to *Boleslas I.* king of *Poland*, who, less animated, in reality, by any motive of regard or friendship, than glad of the opportunity of retaliating upon the *Russians* the miseries they had formerly made the *Poles* suffer, received the fugitive prince, espoused his cause, crossed the river *Bog* at the head of a powerful army, and defeated *Jaroslav*. *Kiow* became the victor's reward, and the new ally of *Poland* was re-established, but subjected to a tribute^o. *Suetopolk*, forgetting the service done him, proved perfidious, as soon as he thought he could be so with impunity; and arming his subjects, endeavoured to destroy his benefactors: but the hand that had raised him, defeated his designs. The perjured *Russian* re-

ⁿ STRAHLENBERG, c. viii.

^o PETREIUS.

ceived the just punishment of his treachery: his principal cities were delivered up to the *Poles*, and he himself was obliged to fly from their pursuits, and from those of his family.

Jaroslav recruited his forces, and attacked his other bro- *Jaroslav*
thers, all of whom he dispossessed of their dominions, which *becomes so-*
he seized (A). He then turned his arms against the *Cosaks*, *ver reign.*
over whom he gained several advantages; and, encouraged by the rapidity of his successes, resolved once more to try his fortune against the *Poles*: but he was again obliged to yield to the valour of *Boleslas*, and to the discipline of troops more experienced than his own. The conqueror contented himself with imposing a new tribute upon *Russia*, restored to *Jaroslav* the prisoners of war, without ransom, confirmed him in his possessions, and reduced by his generosity a rival, whose miscarriages had served only to render him the more enterprising. The *Russian* prince continued quiet during the remainder of the reign of *Boleslas*: but shook off the yoke under his successor, *Miecesslas II.* a weak and indolent king, who saw his enemies ravage his country, without daring to oppose them. *Casimir*, more politic than warlike, on his accession to the throne of *Poland*, prevented the evils with which *Jaroslav* still continued to menace that kingdom, by giving up to this last the conquered places then possessed by the *Poles*, and offering him a lasting friendship, which he proposed to confirm by a marriage with his sister, the daughter of *Wolodimir*. The offer was gladly accepted, and *Jaroslav* continued faithfully attached to the interests of his new ally and brother-in-law, and was of singular service to him in all his wars.

THIS structure of power, which had cost so many crimes, A. D.
murders, and battles, was again overthrown by *Jaroslav's* 1052.
dividing his dominions among his five sons, whom he named *Divides*
his successors. The horrors of civil war were soon renewed *his domi-*
under princes equally able to hurt each other, and equally *nions a-*
ambitious. Neither party was weak enough to be forced to *mong his*
submit, nor strong enough to command respect. *Izaslav*, *five sons.*
prince of *Kiow*, the eldest among them, distinguished him- *Their*
quarrels,

(A) *Boris* and *Cblieb*, two of now reckon them among the
those brothers, who lost their saints and martyrs, and invoke
lives in these commotions, were them as such; the former by the
so esteemed for their piety and name of *David*, and the latter
moderation, that the *Russians* by that of *Romanus* (1).

(1) *Petereus.*

self by the blackest treachery. Surprising unawares his brother *Wzeslaw*, duke of *Poloczka*, and his sons, he put them in irons, and threatened them with immediate death, if they did not renounce all their rights, in his favour. The people, incensed at his behaviour, took up arms against him; and at the same time *Wzewold* and *Swetoslaw*, two of the other brothers, joined to oppose an enemy from whose cruelty and injustice they themselves had no less to fear. *Izaslaw* was defeated, and *Wzeslaw* reaped the fruits of the victory; his brothers putting him in possession of the principality of the rival who would have deprived him of his inheritance. *Izaslaw*, vanquished and pursued, sought refuge in *Poland*, from *Boleslas* II. whom he easily engaged in his interests; that monarch wanting only a pretence to foment the divisions in *Russia*. *Wzeslaw* marched a numerous army of *Russians* and *Walachians*, to defend the frontiers of his dominions: but the resolute appearance of the *Poles*, with the good order and regularity of their disciplined troops, struck him with such terror, that he shamefully fled, and was followed by his soldiers. The king of *Poland* reinstated the prince his ally in his own duchy, and in that of the cowardly *Wzeslaw*, who continued to retreat, as fast as the enemy advanced. *Boleslas* treated *Russia* like a conquered country, draining it by enormous exactions, and still more by the excessive profusions instigated by his propensity for pleasures, and the unbounded licentiousness which he tolerated in his army. He took possession of the district of *Perzemysla*, which he pretended to claim in right of his wife, who was a princess of *Russia*: but he soon quitted it again, and left there only a few troops, not sufficient to keep the inhabitants in subjection. This was, doubtless, the effect of policy; that he might have the plea of revenge to return again into a country, which he was endeavouring to weaken by frequent invasions. What he foresaw, happened: the *Poles* had no sooner retreated, than the *Russians* revolted; *Izaslaw* was driven out of his dominions by his brothers; and all *Russia* was again involved in civil broils, to which *Boleslas* quickly added the miseries of a foreign war. Putting himself at the head of a numerous army, he engaged and defeated the confederate princes, and penetrated as far as *Kiow*, to which he laid siege. This place was well defended, and held out so long, that the enemy began to despair of taking it, when an epidemic distemper broke out in the city, and made greater havock than all the ravages of war. *Boleslas* then offered his assistance to its distressed inhabitants, and won them by his well-timed care. The *Russians* looked upon him as their

Policy of
the Poles
to weaken
Russia.

They be-
come mas-
ters of
Kiow.

their protector, rather than their conqueror. He made this country tributary to his crown; re-established *Izafslaw* in his duchy, rather in quality of governor under him, than as sovereign; divided among the sons of *Izafslaw*, the dominions which belonged to their uncles; and married his own son *Miceflas* to the princess *Eudoxia*, daughter of *Swetopolk*, duke of *Norwogrod*.

THE severity of the *Polish* government, and the disgrace of bearing a foreign yoke, roused the *Russians* again to arms. Their sovereigns formed four armies, with which they invaded *Poland* on different sides, and afterwards assembled on the banks of the *Vistula*, in order to return in a body into their own country, and by that means preserve their booty and prisoners. But *Boleslaus III.* duke of *Bohemia*, and afterwards king of *Poland*, cut off their passage, defeated them, and took from them all the fruits of their depredations.

WHEN foreign nations suffered *Russia* to enjoy tranquillity, its own sovereigns were continually raising intestine commotions. One of these, more fortunate and more enterprising than the rest, *Wolodimir II.* nephew to *Izafslaw*, possessed himself of the greatest part of these countries, and caused himself to be declared *Monomach*, or sole universal monarch. He transferred his whole power to his son *Wsewold II.* but this last plunged the state into fresh disorder, by dividing his dominions amongst his children, who set up so many separate states, incessantly employed in destroying each other. These rival princes renewed the horrid scenes of treachery, assassinations, domestic animosities, and fratricides. The *Tartars*, a people who live by rapine, availed themselves of these divisions to make incursions into *Russia*, and glut themselves with carnage, of which they are as greedy as of plunder.

THE principalities of *Wolodimir*, *Halitz*, and *Kiow*, though considerable when united, were not able separately to resist the frequent incursions of the *Poles*. However, *Jaropolk*, duke of the last of these places, collecting all his forces, resolved to make an effort to retaliate upon *Poland* the injuries he had sustained from that kingdom. The storm was ready to break out under the direction of this active prince, when the *Polish* count *Wloszczowiez*, formed and executed alone a scheme for preventing the calamities which threatened his country. Under pretence of being dissatisfied with his court, he desired the *Russian* prince to afford him an asylum, and promised to devote to him his abilities in the art of war. The

The Russians invade Poland, and are defeated.

A. D. 1106. Wolodimir II. sole sovereign of Russia.

Wsewold II. divides his dominions among his children. The Tartars invade Russia.

Jaropolk meditates revenge against the Poles.

A. D. 1135.

*Is betrayed
and taken
prisoner.*

*Wafilkon
revenge
his father
Jaropolk,*

duke of *Kiow* gave too easy credit to the counsels and pretended friendship of the perfidious *Pole*, who seized him, and carried him away prisoner through bye-roads into *Poland*. *Wafilkon*, son of *Jaropolk*, had likewise recourse to artifice to revenge his father. He prevailed on a *Hungarian* lord, to repair to the court of *Poland*, and solicit a government. The stratagem took, and the *Hungarian* was put in possession of *Willisca*, an important place in the palatinate of *Cracovia*, which he immediately delivered up to the *Russians*, and even put himself at their head to destroy it by fire and sword, after having first loaded the inhabitants with chains. Not satisfied with this, *Wafilkon* laid a still more fatal snare for *Poland*. He deprived *Jaroslav*, the ally of that crown, of his duchy of *Halitz*, and drove him from his dominions. The dispossessed prince implored the assistance of *Boleslas* III. upon which *Wafilkon*, who expected that he would take that step, and had laid his plan accordingly, bribed some of the principal inhabitants of the duchy of *Halitz*, and prevailed upon them to go to the court of *Poland*, and represent to *Jaroslav* and the king, that their presence, with a few select *Polish* soldiers, would be sufficient to effect the conquest of the duchy of *Halitz*; that the inhabitants of that country, and almost all *Russia*, would second them; and that their enemy was also engaged in a foreign war. These deputies could not be suspected, and what they said bore an air of truth. *Boleslas*, desirous to take advantage of these favourable circumstances, hastened away with only a small body of troops, and marched to *Russia*, as to a sure conquest. *Wafilkon*, who waited for him with a great army, suffered the *Poles* to entangle themselves in the defiles, and then fell upon them. *Boleslas*, for the first time, was forced to seek his safety in flight, with the shame and grief of having been imposed upon, and of having seen his bravest warriors perish ingloriously, without being able to defend themselves.

A. D.
1182.
*Contentions for
the duchy
of Halitz.*

THE hostilities between *Russia* and *Poland* continued with the same violence under *Boleslas* III. and *Casmir* II. which last made an irruption into the duchy of *Halitz*, to reinstate his nephew *Miecslas*, who had been driven from thence: but the *Russians*, hating a master not of their own chusing, poisoned him, and offered his dominions to *Wladimir*, another nephew of the king of *Poland*. *Wladimir*, to strengthen himself, sought the assistance of the *Hungarians*, whose friendship he had experienced before. But *Be'la*, king of *Hungary*, instead of helping his ally, put him in chains, and took possession of his territories, into which he sent his son *Andrew* in quality of vice-roy. The captive prince, however, escaping from

his prison, applied to the *Poles*, always ready to take arms against the *Russians*, and with their assistance defeated the *Hungarians*, and recovered the duchy of *Halitz*, he rendered tributary to his late benefactors.

The death of *Wladimir* occasioned fresh feuds and contentions. The greatest part of the *Russian* princes asserted, sword in hand, their right to the duchy of *Halitz*. *Romanus*, duke of *Poland*, took possession of it with the help of *Poland*, and afterwards became a most implacable enemy to that power, a vassal he disdained to be. But fortune did not second his sentiments. *Lesko*, then general, and afterwards king of *Poland*, killed him in battle on the banks of the *Vistula*, and made a dreadful slaughter of his numerous

The *Russians* were reduced to a most deplorable situation, usually distressed by their own sovereigns, harassed by their neighbours, and exposed to all the calamities of war; to complete their misery, the *Tartars*, still greater savages than themselves, poured in upon them with irresistible force, and actually made a conquest of their country. History does not inform us of the particulars of this remarkable event, rather than that innumerable multitudes of those barbarians, headed by their khan *Batto*, or *Battus*, after ravaging part of *Poland* and *Silesia*, broke suddenly into *Russia*. And every thing waste before them, marking their steps every act of cruelty. Most of the *Russian* princes, of whom was the great duke *George Sevoloditz*, were taken prisoners, and racked to death: in short, none found mercy, but those who voluntarily acknowledged the *Tartars* for their lords. The relentless conqueror imposed upon the *Russians* every thing that is most mortifying in slavery; in that they should have no other princes than such as he pleased of; and that they should pay him a yearly tribute, brought by their sovereigns themselves, now his vassals, or, who were to present it humbly to the *Tartarian* emperor on horseback. They were also to prostrate themselves before the haughty *Tartar*, to offer him milk to drink, and any drops of it fell down, to lick them up: a singular proof of servility, worthy of the barbarian who imposed it, which lasted near two hundred and sixty years.

George Sevoloditz was succeeded by his brother *Michael Sevoloditz Zernigoufski*, who opposed the *Tartars*, but was defeated by them, and lost his life. He left three sons, *Feodor*, *Ivan*, and *Andrew*, whose wars with each other, but

A. D.

1237.

Russia sub-

jected by

the Tar-

tars.

none for the public good, ended in the murder of them all. A son of *Alexander*, and of the same name, was then placed on the throne by the *Tartars*; and his son *Danilow*, or *Daniel Alexandrowitz*, removed his court from *Wolodimir* to *Moscow*, where he first assumed the title of *Great Duke of Wolodimir and Moscow*. *Daniel Alexandrowitz* left two sons, *Gregory* and *John*; the former of which, surnamed *Kalita*, from a purse he used always to carry about him filled with money for the poor, ascended the throne; but he was soon assassinated by another prince named *Demetri Michaelowitz*, who was himself put to death for it by the *Tartars*; and *John*, likewise surnamed *Kalita*, was then made czar. This *John* left three sons, *John*, *Simon*, and *Andrew*; and the eldest of these, commonly called *Iwan Iwanowitz*, was made czar with the approbation of the *Tartars*, on whom he was dependent.

Attacked
by the Li-
vonians
and Poles.

DURING these several reigns, which fill a space of upwards of an hundred years, and which all historians have passed over as slightly as we are forced to do, for want of records concerning them, the miseries of a foreign yoke were aggravated by all the calamities of intestine discord and war; whilst the knights of *Livonia*, or brothers of the short sword, as they are sometimes called, a kind of military order of religious, on one side, and the *Poles* on the other, catching at the opportunity, attacked *Russia*, and took several of its towns, and even some considerable countries. The *Tartars* and *Russians*, whose interests were in this case the same, often united to oppose their common enemies; but were generally worsted. The *Livonians* took *Pleskow*, and the *Poles* made themselves masters of *Black Russia*, the *Ukraine*, *Podolia*, and the city of *Kiow*. *Casimir the Great*, one of their kings, carried his conquests still farther. He asserted his pretensions to a part of *Russia*, in right of his relation to *Boleslaus*, duke of *Halitz*, who died without issue, and forcibly possessed himself of the duchies of *Perzemysia*, *Halitz*, and *Luckow*, and of the districts of *Sanock*, *Lubaczow*, and *Trebowl*a; all which countries he made a province of *Poland*.

Their con-
quests.

A. D.

1340.

THE newly-conquered *Russians* were ill-disposed to brook the government of the *Poles*, whose laws and customs were more contrary to their own, than those of the *Tartars* had been. They joined the latter to rid themselves of the yoke, and assembled an army numerous enough to overwhelm all *Poland*, but destitute of valour and discipline. *Casimir*, undaunted by this deluge of barbarians, presented himself at the head of a few troops, on the borders of the *Vistula*, and obliged his enemies to retire.

Demetrius

Demetrius Iwanowitz, son of *Iwan Iwanowitz*, who commanded in *Moscow*, made frequent efforts to rid himself of the galling yoke. He defeated in several battles *Mamay* khan of the *Tartars*, and when conqueror, refused to pay them any tribute, and assumed the title of *Great Duke of Muscovy*. But the oppressors of the north returned in greater numbers than before; and *Demetrius*, at length overpowered, after a struggle of three years, perished with his whole army, which, if we may credit historians, amounted to upwards of two hundred and forty thousand men.

Basilius Demetriwitz revenged his father's death. He attacked his enemies, drove them out of his dominions, and conquered *Bulgaria* &c. Equally politic and brave, he made an alliance with the *Poles*, whom he could not subdue, and even ceded to them a part of his country, on condition that they should help him to defend the rest against any new incursions of the *Tartars*. But this treaty was a weak barrier against ambition. The *Russians* found new enemies in their allies, and the *Tartars* soon returned. All endeavours to establish a peace merely by conventions, will ever prove ineffectual: a nation is not secure, whilst its neighbours have the power of hurting it.

Basilius Demetriwitz had a son who was called after his name, and to whom the crown ought naturally to have descended. But the father, suspecting his legitimacy, left to his own brother *Gregory*, a man of a severe and a tyrannical disposition, and therefore hated by the people, who asserted the son's right, and proclaimed him their sovereign. The *Tartars* took cognizance of the dispute, and determined it in favour of *Basilius*; upon which *Gregory* had recourse to arms, drove his nephew from *Moscow* to the principality of *Uglitz*, and forcibly usurped and kept possession of his throne. Upon the death of *Gregory*, *Basilius* returned to *Moscow*: but *Andrew* and *Demetrius*, sons of the late usurper, laid siege to that city, and obliged him to retire to the monastery of *Troitz*, where they took him prisoner, with his wife and son, and put out his eyes: hence the appellation of *Jemnoi*, blind, by which this *Basilius* is distinguished. The subjects of this unfortunate prince, incensed at the cruel treatment he had received, forced the perpetrators of it to fly to *Novogrod*, and reinstated their lawful sovereign at *Moscow*, where he died.

¹ PETREIUS, par. ii. ² PETREIUS, par. ii. & HERBERSTEIN ap. Script. rer. Moscovit. p. 6.

THE impenetrable darkness in which the history of the *Russians* has been hitherto involved, such as baffles all endeavours to trace either the regular succession of their sovereigns, or the several dynasties into which they were divided, from the time of their first monarch *Ruric*, down to this period, begins now to clear up a little. Their transactions become important to other nations, the historians of which, for they have not had any of their own, affords us some, though still very imperfect accounts of them: but even these will soon fail us again. What time has obliterated, or what perhaps never was recorded, we cannot call back from oblivion. Perpetually exposed to the fatal vicissitudes of both foreign and domestic wars, inexpressibly distressed by the bloody contests of its own disunited princes, and plunged into all the miseries of complicated slavery, *Russia* was now become a prey to the *Poles* as well as to the *Tartars*, who seemed to vie with each other which should dispose of the empire and its sovereigns. The right of conquest, which subsists no longer than whilst it is supported by power, became a title continually disputed, an inexhaustible source of cruelty and oppression.

A. D. 1450. *John Basilowicz*, great duke of Muscovy. IN the midst of this general confusion arose one of those men, whom violent passions inspire with boldness, activity, and resolution; in whom impetuous vices sometimes produce the happy effects of heroic virtues. *John Basilowicz* I. by his invincible spirit and refined policy^k, became both the conqueror and deliverer of his country, and laid the first foundation of its future grandeur. Observing, with indignation, the narrow limits of his power at his accession to the throne, after the death of his father *Basilus the Blind*, he began immediately to revolve within himself the means of enlarging his dominions. Marriage, though he had in reality no regard or inclination for women^l, seemed to him one of the best expedients he could begin with; and accordingly he demanded and obtained *Maria*, sister of *Michael* duke of *Twer*, whom he soon after deposed, under pretence of revenging the injuries done to his father, and added this duchy to his own territories of *Moscow*^m. *Maria*, by whom he had a son named *John*, who died before himⁿ, did not live long; and upon her death he married *Sophia*, daughter of *Thomas Paleologus*, who had been driven from

^k CROMERUS, de Orig. & reb. gest. Polon. lib. xxix. ap Pif. Polon. rer. tom. ii. p. 807.

^l HERBERSTEIN, Com. rer. Moscov. p. 8. and BODINUS de Repub. lib. v. c. i. p. 771.

^m HERBERSTEIN, p. 7. ⁿ THUANUS, adan. 1558.

Constantinople, and forced to take shelter at *Rome*, where the pope portioned this princess ^a, in hopes of procuring thereby great advantages to the *Romish* religion: but his expectations were frustrated, *Sophia* being obliged to conform to the *Greek* church, after her arrival in *Russia*. What could induce *Basilowitz* to seek a consort at such a distance, is nowhere accounted for; unless it be, that he hoped by this means to establish a pretension to the empire of the east, to which her father was the next heir: but however that may be, the *Russians* certainly owed to this alliance, their deliverance from the *Tartar* yoke. Shocked at the servile homage exacted by those proud victors, her husband going to meet their ambassadors at some distance from the city, and standing to hear what they had to say, whilst they were at dinner; *Sophia* told him, that she was surprized to find she had married a servant to the *Tartars*.^b Nettled at this reproach, *Basilus* feigned himself ill when the next deputation from the *Tartars* arrived, and under that pretence avoided a repetition of the stipulated humiliating ceremonial ^c. Another circumstance, equally displeasing to this princess, was, that the *Tartars* had, by agreement, within the walls of the palace at *Moscow*, houses in which their ministers resided; to shew their power, and at the same time watch the actions of the great duke ^d. To get rid of these, a formal embassy was sent to the *Tartarian Khan*, to tell him, that *Sophia* having been favoured with a vision from above, ordering her to build a temple in the place where those houses stood, her mind could not be at ease till she had fulfilled the divine command, and therefore his leave was desired to pull them down, and give his people others. The *Khan* consented; the houses within the *Kremlin* were demolished, and no new ones being provided, the *Tartar* residents were obliged to leave *Moscow*; their prince not being able to revenge this breach of promise, by reason of a war he was then engaged in with the *Poles*. *Basilowitz*, taking advantage of this circumstance, and having in the mean time considerably increased his forces, openly disclaimed all subjection to the *Tartars*, attacked their dominions, and made himself master of *Casim*, where he was solemnly crowned with the diadem

Shakes off
the yoke
of the
Tartars.

^a P. JOVIUS, de Legat. Moscovit. inter Script. rer. Moscovit. p. 129. DU CANGE, famil. August. Byzant. p. 243. ^b HER-
PERSTEIN, p. 8. ^c Id. ibid. ^d PETREII Chron. Moscovit.
p. 168.

His conquests.

A. D.
1477.

of that kingdom^c, which is said to be the same that is now used for the coronation of the *Russian* sovereigns. The province of *Permia*, with great part of *Lapland* and *Asiatic Bulgaria*, soon submitted to him; and *Great Novogrod*, a city then so famous, that the *Russians* used to express its vast importance by the proverbial expression of, *Who can resist God and Great Novogrod?* was reduced by his generals after a seven years siege, and yielded him an immense treasure: no less, say some writers^f, than three hundred cart-loads of gold and silver, and other valuable effects. *Alexander Witold*, waiwode of *Lithuania*, was in possession of this rich place, from which he had exacted for some years an annual tribute of 100,000 rubels, a prodigious sum for those days; and for that country, when it was taken by *John Basflowitz*, who, the better to secure his conquest, politically put it under the protection of the *Poles*^g, voluntarily rendered himself their tributary for it, and accepted a governor from the hand of their king *Casimir*, a weak and indolent prince, from whom he well knew he had nothing to fear. The *Novogrodians* continued to enjoy all their privileges till about two years after; when *John*, ambitious of reigning without controul, entered their city with a numerous retinue, under pretence of keeping to the *Greek* faith some of its inhabitants, who, said he, intended to embrace the *Romish* religion^o; and, with the assistance of their archbishop *Theophilus*, stripped them of all their remaining riches^b. He then deposed the treacherous prelate, and established over *Novogrod* new magistrates, creatures of his own; destroying at once, by these means, a noble city, which, had its liberties been protected, and its trade encouraged, might have proved to him an inexhaustible fund of wealth. All the north beheld, with terror and astonishment, the rapid increase of the victor's power: foreign nations courted his alliance; and the several petty princes of *Russia* submitted to him without resistance, acknowledging themselves his vassals.

The *Poles*, however, complained loudly of his late breach of faith in regard to *Novogrod*, and threatened revenge: upon which *Basflowitz*, elated with his successes, with the

^c HERBERSTEIN, ubi supra. ^f PETREIUS, par. ii. GUAGNINUS, Descript. Moscov. p. 163. ^g MATTHIAS de Michovia, Chron. Reg. Polon. l. iv. c. 72. ^o RUSSOUWENS Lief. Chron. p. 50. ^b GUAGNINUS, Loc. supra cit. & PETREIUS, p. 73.

riches he had amassed, and with the weak condition of most of his neighbours, sent a body of troops into *Lithuania*, and soon become master of several of its towns. *Casimir* applied for assistance to *Matthias*, king of *Hungary*; but was answered by this last, that his own soldiers were quite undisciplined; that his auxiliaries had lately mutinied for want of pay; and that it was impossible for him to raise a new army out of the neighbouring countries. The *Polish* monarch, in this distress, was obliged to purchase of *John* a cessation of arms for two years^a, during which the *Muscovite* made new accessions to his dominions.

THE dukes of *Servia*, whose territories were about five hundred miles in extent^r, had long thought themselves ill used by the *Lithuanians*, on account of their religion, which was that of the *Greek* church, and wanted to withdraw from their subjection to *Poland*, and put themselves under the protection of *Russia*. The following accident afforded them the wished-for pretence. Their envoys arriving at *Wilna*, desired admittance to the king's presence; which being refused, one of them endeavoured to force his way in: but the porter shut the door rudely against him, and in so doing broke one of his fingers. The servant was immediately put to death for this offence: but the *Servians*, by no means satisfied with that, returned home in great fury, and prevailed upon their countrymen to submit themselves and their country to the *Muscovites*. *Casimir* made several attempts to recall them; but to no purpose.

Servia
submits to
the Rus-
sians.
A. D.
1490.

Matthias, king of *Hungary*, dying about this time, two of his sons, *Uladislas*, then king of *Bohemia*, and *John Albert*, contended for the vacant crown. *Casimir* wanted to give it to the latter, whom he accordingly assisted to the utmost of his power; and to enable him the better so to do, though he was in great want of money as well as men, he purchased a renewal of the truce with the *Russians*, and thereby gave *John Basilowitz* time to establish himself in his new acquisitions^c.

Casimir died in the year 1492, and was succeeded on the throne of *Poland* by his son *John Albert*, who, totally disregarding the *Russians*, involved himself unnecessarily in a war with the brave *Stephen*, duke of *Moldavia*: and though he had, at the same time, both the *Tartars* and *Turks* against him, his propensity to pleasure, and his lascivious disposi-

^a CROMERUS, ap. Pistor. p. 806. ^r PETREIUS, p. 52. NEUGEBAUER, lib. vi. p. 424. ^c CROMERUS, lib. xxix. p. 812. NEUGEBAUER, p. 427.

John Basilowicz makes peace with Poland,

and marries his daughter to the duke of Lithuania.

With whom he seeks a quarrel.

A. D. 1500.

The Russians defeat the Lithuanians.

A. D. 1502.

Are defeated by the Livonians.

tion, rendered him so indolent^m, that he not only did not so much as attempt to molest *Basilowicz* in any of his possessions, but concluded a peace with him on terms very advantageous to the latter, and even entered into a treaty by which he stipulated not to assist the *Lithuanians*, though they had chosen his brother *Alexander* for their duke, in case the *Russians* should attack them, as it was supposed they wouldⁿ. *Alexander*, thinking to parry the inconveniences of this agreement, and to guard against the designs of his enemies, demanded in marriage *Basilowicz's* daughter, *Helena*, by his second wife *Sophia*, and obtained her. The *Lithuanians* then flattered themselves with a prospect of tranquillity^o: but the ambitious czar, for *Basilowicz* had assumed that title since his conquest of *Casan*, aiming only at an increase of dominion, soon found a pretence to break with his new allies, by alledging, that *Polish Russia*, as far as the river *Berezina*, had formerly belonged to his ancestors, and therefore should be his; and that *Alexander*, by his marriage-contract, had engaged to build a *Greek* church at *Wilna* for his *Russian* consort, which he had not done, but on the contrary endeavoured to force the *Polish Russians* to embrace the religion of the church of *Rome*^h. In consequence of this plea, he sent into the territories of his son-in-law, by different ways, three armies, which reduced several places, destroyed the country about *Smolensko*, and defeated the *Lithuanian* field-marshal *Ostrowsky*, near the river *Wedrasch*, where he fell unawares into an ambush of the *Russians*ⁱ. *Alexander* raised a new army of *Silefians*, *Bohemians*, and *Moravians*; but they came too late, the *Russians* having retired with their plunder.

ELATED by their success against the *Lithuanians*, they invaded *Livonia* in the year 1502, with 130,000 men: but *Walter Von Plettenberg*, grand-master of the knights of the cross, with only 12,000 men, gave them a total overthrow; killing 10,000 of his enemies, with scarce any loss on his own side (A). *Basilowicz*, dispirited by this defeat, and being then engaged in war with the *Tartars*, the *Poles*, and

^m Idem, lib. xxx. p. 820. ⁿ Idem, lib. xxxi. p. 814 and 821. NEUGEBAUER, p. 429. & MICHOVIUS, lib. iv. c. 75. p. 242. ^o HERBERSTEIN, p. 7. CFOMERUS, ubi supra. RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 53. ^h Sacrarum Elucidar. error. in præf. p. 185. ⁱ HERBERSTEIN, ubi supra. PETREIUS, p. 167, & GUACINUS, tom. 2. rer. Polon. p. 397.

(A) The annals of *Livonia*, p. 75, say, that *Plettenberg* lost but one man; which seems scarcely credible.

the city of *Pleskow*, immediately dispatched an embassy to *Plettenberg*, and concluded a truce with him for fifty years. At the same time he begged of that general to send to *Moscow*, that he might see him, one of the iron dragoons, as he called them, who had performed wonders in the late engagement. *Von Plettenberg* readily complied; and the czar, struck with admiration, rewarded the cuirassier's extraordinary accomplishments, with considerable honours and presents^t.

With whom they make a truce for 50 years.

Alexander had been elected king of *Poland*, upon the death of his brother *John Albert*, which happened in the beginning of this year: but the *Poles* refused to crown his consort *Helena*, because she adhered to the *Greek* religion^w. Provoked at this affront, and probably still more stimulated by ambition, *Basilowitz* resolved again to try his fortune with them, and accordingly ordered his son *Demetrius*, who was now the eldest, to march against *Smolensko*, and reduce that city. The young prince did all that could be done; but the vigorous resistance of the besieged, and the arrival of the king of *Poland* with a numerous army, obliged the *Russians* to raise the siege, and return home^k; and the czar was glad to make a fresh truce with the *Poles* for six years, upon the easy terms of only returning the prisoners he had taken^r. Some writers say, that flying into a violent passion with his son, the moment he saw him, and imputing the miscarriage of this expedition to his want of courage or conduct, he gave him a blow which laid him dead at his feet: to which is added, that remorse for this rash action carried the father to his grave^o: but this account, somewhat very like which has been unjustly imputed to *John Basilowitz II.* as the cause of the death of his son, as we shall see, is not confirmed by authors whose authority can be relied on. Certain it is, however, that neither of them long survived this event, and that *Demetrius* died first: for *Sophia*, who had gained an absolute ascendant over her husband, and wanted to give the sovereignty to her own children, persuaded him, by various artful insinuations, to set aside and imprison his grandson *Demetrius*, the only child of the late *John*, whom he had by

John Basilowitz again attacks the Poles;

and makes another truce with them. A. D. 1503.

^t TILLEMANNI BRIDENBACHII Bell. Livon. ap. Pistor. rer. Polon. tom. iii. p. 55, and inter Script. rer. Moscovit. p. 227. ^w STANISLAI LIVENCLAIUS de Mosc. Bell. t. iii. p. 120. ^k MICHOWIUS, lib. iv. c. 8. p. 49. ^r CROMERUS, p. 826. ^o HERBERSTEIN, p. 8. ^o MICHOWIUS, c. 81. and GUAGNINI Chron. Pol. t. ii. p. 397. ^o LACOMBE, Revolutions de Russie, p. 31.

*Declares
his grand-
son De-
metrius
his suc-
cessor.*

*His death,
and cha-
racter.*

his first wife *Maria*, and declare her then eldest son, *Gabriel*, his successor (A). Age and infirmities had rendered the czar so weak, that he blindly followed this iniquitous advice: but shortly after, finding his end approach, he sent for young *Demetrius*, expressed great repentance for his barbarity towards him, and on his death-bed declared him his lawful successor^b. He died^c in *November. 1505* (B), after a reign of 55 years; leaving behind him an immense territory, chiefly of his own acquiring.

John Basilowitz may justly be looked upon as one of the founders of the vast empire of *Russia*. He had all the qualities which constitute a conqueror; an enterprising genius, an intrepid soul, and an indefatigable body: but at the same time he had all the vices of a barbarous age, and all the ferocity of his savage country. Battles, bloodshed, and the miseries of war, were his chief delight. He fought and triumphed with that ascendancy which is the result of confidence and a happy temerity; and had the art of bringing to a sort of discipline, men who, before his time, had not even an idea of regularity, either in attacking others, or defending themselves. His air was commanding, his stature gigantic, his strength surprizing, and his look fierce and terrible.

Cromerus says^f, he never took the field but once in person, and that the success of his generals was entirely owing to his secret management: and baron *Herberstein* observes^g, that *Stephen* duke of *Moldavia* used often to wonder how *Basilowitz* enlarged his dominions without labour or pains, whilst he himself could scarcely defend his own by continual wars. That the policy by which this czar effected almost every thing he did, was such as never respected even the most sacred ties, when he could get any thing by breaking through them, is evident from his actions. History has not transmitted to us so many particulars as we could wish of all his conquests, nor of his wars with the *Poles* and *Swedes*;

^b CROMERUS, p. 81. MICHOV. l. iv. c. 85, p. 28. HERBERSTEIN, p. 7. PETREIUS, par. 2. ^c RUSSOW. *Lief. Chron.* p. 57. MICHOV. ubi supra. HERBERSTEIN, p. 8. ^f Lib. xxix. ap Pistor. rer. Polon. t. ii. p. 807. ^g P. 8.

(A) *John Basilowitz* had five sons by his second wife, *Sophia*, viz. *Demetrius*, who died before his father, as we have just observed, this *Gabriel*, *Gregory*, *Simon*, and *Andrew*.

(B) *Petreius*, and some others, mistakenly place his death in 1492.

particularly with these last, under their administrator *Steen Sture*, about the year 1479. The depredations of time, and the want of records, necessarily occasion chasms in all histories, which later writers cannot fill up. Though he punished drunkenness severely in others, and to prevent it, prohibited the selling of strong liquors; he was himself greatly addicted to excessive drinking, scarce a day passing without his being intoxicated at dinner; when he would fall asleep at table, his attendants waiting in silent dread till he awoke; after which, indeed, he generally gave a loose to mirth^a. The poor were never suffered to approach him, nor were his ears ever open to their complaints^o. Yet, with all this, even in his life time, he was stiled *the Great*. His conquests, indeed, might intitle him to that distinction, as has been the case with others; but we see nothing else that could. It was reserved for another czar truly to merit that glorious appellation, by being the father of his people. *Basilowitz* first incircled *Moscow* with a wall; and the city of *Iwanograd* was built by him in one summer^p. He also enlarged the titles of the *Russian* sovereigns; stiling himself great duke of *Volodimir*, *Moscow*, and *Novograd*, and lord of all the *Russias*.

John Basilowitz was no sooner dead, than his son *Gabriel* A. D. *Iwanowitz*, at the instigation of his mother *Sophia*, sacrificed the young *Demetrius*, by confining him again in a prison, where he perished; some say, of hunger and cold. 1505. *Basilus* During the short time this unfortunate prince survived his grandfather, *Gabriel* stiled himself only *guardian of the realm*^q; but upon his death, he ascended the throne, was crowned by the name of *Basilus*, which he liked better than that of *Gabriel*, and took all the titles then belonging to the sovereignty, to which some say he first added that of *czar*: but it seems more probable that this title had been assumed before by his father, upon his conquest of *Casan*. *Iwanowitz czar*.

Alexander, king of *Poland*, concluding that *Russia* would now be distracted a-new by factions and civil wars, which might afford him an opportunity of recovering what his father had lost, marched into *Lithuania*, to be in readiness to act: but after waiting there some time, finding that there was no possibility of relieving or setting up the young *Demetrius*, he returned home, and died the next year^r. *Basilus*, in his turn, expected that the *Poles* would quarrel, as usual, about

^a HERBERSTEIN, p. 11. ^o Idem ibid. ^p CROMERUS, p. 831. & HERBERSTEIN, ubi supra. ^q PETREIUS, p. 166. HERBERSTEIN, p. 8. ^r CROMER. lib. xxx. p. 831, 832.

A. D. 1507. the choice of a new king, and prepared to take advantage of their dissensions: but his expectations being frustrated by their unanimous election of *Sigismund* I. a prince of a mild and peaceable disposition, he sent an army into *Lithuania*, and laid siege to *Smolensko*, under pretence that his sister *Helena* had not been treated with the respect due to her dignity as queen dowager, since the demise of her late husband. The besieged made a brave resistance, till news arriving that the crown-troops of *Poland* were coming to their assistance, with the additional aid of 80,000 *Crim-Tartars*, and that they intended also to invade *Russia*, the *Muscovites* returned home with great speed^w, and their czar, excessively alarmed, thought of suing for peace on almost any terms; when an unexpected incident revived his hopes, by bringing to him one of the ablest generals of that age.

Glinfki
goes over
to the Rus-
sians.

Michael Glinfki, governor of *Lithuania*, after having been in high favour with king *Alexander* of *Poland*, found his credit decline under his successor *Sigismund*, chiefly through the means of *Zabrezinius*, grand-marshal of *Lithuania*, who charged him with a design to conspire against his prince, and render himself independent. *Glinfki's* haughty and enterprising spirit, rendered the accusation probable; and numbers of enemies, who envied his wealth and power, joined their efforts to ruin him. He petitioned to be heard in his justification; but his request not being immediately granted, he fell upon *Zabrezinius* at *Grodno*, and of his own authority^y put him to death; after which, as he could not expect that *Sigismund* would pardon this proceeding, he took up arms, seized several strong places in *Lithuania*, plundered that province, and fled with his riches to *Moscow*^z, where he was well received by *Basilius*, who gave him a considerable command, with which he made several conquests for the *Russians*. *Glinfki's* party in *Lithuania* was, however, soon dispersed by the crown-army of *Poland*; whose commander, duke *Constantine Ostrofski*, penetrating to the very gates of *Moscow*, made the czar tremble upon his throne, and forced him to submit to such conditions as the victors thought proper to impose. A treaty was concluded, and ratified at *Wilna* the following year, by which all the places taken by *Glinfki* in *Lithuania* were restored, and he and his whole family were banished to *Moscow*^z.

The Poles
invade
Russia,
and force
Basilius to
submit.

Basilius, dissembling his resentment, remained quiet for a time; after which, pretending to set out upon some other expedition, he marched with a numerous army, and encamp-

^w HERB. p. 9. PETREIUS, p. 170. ^y DECIUS, p. 302.
^z PUFFEND. tom ii. p. 254.

ed near *Plescow*, where the *Poles*, relying on the late treaty, and not dreaming of his having any design against them, visited his camp, as that of their friend and ally. But in the mean time the *Muscovite* priests of the *Greek* church at *Plescow*, pursuant to the instructions they had privately received before hand, preached to the people, on whom the voice of bigotry is always too apt to make impression, the expediency of having a sovereign of their own religion; and wrought them up to such a pitch, that they murdered their magistrates, and opened their gates to the czar; who, becoming by this means master of the whole duchy of *Plescow*, made its inhabitants slaves, sent them away to different parts of *Russia*, and replaced them with *Muscovites*, the better to secure his conquest^b. The *Poles* could not stop the progress of this revolution, after it had once begun; the emperor *Maximilian*, who had taken umbrage at their power, being then in league with the czar, and meditating himself an invasion of *Lithuania*, to guard against which their troops were fully employed.

He takes
Plescow by
treachery.
A. D.
1510.

ELATED with this success, *Basilius* led an army of 60,000 men into *Lithuania*, upon *Gliniski's* assurance that he would certainly put him in possession of *Smolensko*; the sovereignty of which the czar promised to give, in that case, to him and his heirs. The country about that city was laid waste, and its walls were battered so long, to no purpose, that the *Russians* began to think of raising the siege, when *Gliniski*, by dint of money, for that was his grand resource, found means to bribe the commanding officers of the garrison, and procured a surrender of the place. *Basilius* entered it the next day, and sent to *Moscow* every thing of value that he found thereⁱ. *Gliniski* then claimed his promise, of which the *Russian* monarch, thinking he could now do without him, or not chusing to trust him too far, eluded the performance; and shortly after, through a series of misfortunes incident to men of his towering spirit, he fell into disgrace with *Basilius*, who suspected that he wanted also to betray him, upon which he was arrested and imprisoned. In effect, *Gliniski* is said actually to have made his terms with *Sigismund*, and obtained pardon of all his former offences, on condition that he should let the *Poles* take back what the *Russians* had conquer-

Gliniski
disgraced
in Russia.

^b HERBERST. p. 56. DECIUS, p. 308. HEIDENST. de bello Moscov. lib. iv. p. 395. ⁱ HERB. p. 9. & 79. DECIUS, p. 319. LEUENC. p. 130, & RUSSOUW. p. 130. ^k DECIUS, p. 320. HERB. p. 79. NEUGEB. lib. vii. p. 467.

ed from them in *Lithuania*ⁿ; and *Basilius*, either believing, or pretending to believe him guilty, secured him in a strong prison.

The truce between Russia and Sweden prolonged. THE *Swedes*, alarmed at the success of the *Russians* in taking *Plescow* and *Smolensko*, and at their prodigious armies, the efforts of which they feared might at last be directed against them, desired a prolongation of the truce between the two crowns, for sixty years longer, to which the czar readily agreed^o; though it proved, in fact, a suspension of hostilities only for a short time. *Lithuania* was still the principal object of *Basilius's* designs; and to push that point, he ordered *Iwan Czeladin*, a man of great resolution, and enterprising even to rashness, to march thither with 80,000 men.

A. D.

1514.
The battle of Orsova, between the Russians and the Poles. The Russians are totally defeated.

The army of the *Poles*, which did not exceed 35,000, including the *Lithuanians*, but which was commanded by the brave and experienced duke *Ostrosski*, met them on the opposite banks of the *Dnieper*, near *Orsova*, and passed that rapid river in their fight. *Czeladin's* officers advised him to fall upon the enemy when about half of them had crossed over: but, confident of success, he answered, that the rest of them would then run away, and that he was determined to gain a complete victory^p. The *Lithuanians* began the attack, but were repulsed by the *Russians*, who, imprudently following them, lost an advantageous situation, and found themselves at once exposed to the full fire of the enemy's artillery. The *Polish* cavalry then rushed in among them, sword-in-hand, and made dreadful havock; the trembling *Russians* scarce attempting even to defend themselves. Those who endeavoured to fly, were driven into the *Dnieper* and drowned; and the conqueror, when weary of massacring, made slaves of the rest. At the head of these captives stood the haughty *Czeladin*, foaming with rage, and cursing his stars, for a misfortune which his own vanity alone had brought upon him. Some writers say, his confidence was such, that he left his artillery behind him, in order to march the faster; and it is pretty certain, that the *Russians* were greatly outnumbered in this battle by cuirasses, which they had not been used to wear^q. The prisoners were put in irons, and carried to *Wilna*, where baron *Herberstein* says^r, he saw several of them, among whom was *Czeladin* himself, reduced to such misery as even to ask for a few dollars.

^a NEUGE. ubi supra.

^o PUFFEND. tom ii. p. 254.

^p GUACK. tom ii. p. 360. HERB. p. 9. PETREIUS, p. 17, & alii.

^q DECIUS, p. 319. ^r p. 10.

Basilus was at *Smolensko* when he received the news of this defeat of his army; upon which, after furnishing that place with provisions and ammunition, which *Ostrofski's* negligence, in not improving his victory, gave him time to do, he left in it a strong garrison, and hastened to *Moscow*, lest his brothers should take advantage of his absence and overthrow. The *Poles*, too late, laid siege to *Smolensko*, but were obliged to raise it; partly by the brave defence of the besieged, partly by the approach of winter, for the battle of *Orsova* was fought on the 8th of *September*, and partly by their own soldiers, who, thinking they had got booty enough, resolved to go home to spend the produce of their spoils ¹.

* THE Pope ordered public thanksgivings for this victory of *The pop.* the *Poles*; and *Sigismund*, to shew his gratitude for that order, favour, sent an embassy to his Holiness, with a present of *thank-* fourteen bojars taken in the late battle. But these last were *giving* stopped near *Inspruck*, by order of the emperor *Maximilian*, for the who, after treating them handsomely at *Vienna*, ordered them *victory of* to be conveyed back to *Basilus* from *Lubeck*, to the great *the Poles* mortification of the pious *Polish* king; who declared, that he looked upon this proceeding as a violation of the rights of nations ².

IN the mean time *Basilus's* danger increased daily, and A. D. every prospect of advantage from his alliance with *Maximi-* 1515. *lian* vanished at once. The *Crim Tartars* not only made in- *Basilus's* cursions into *Russia*, since the battle of *Orsova*, but threaten- *dangers in-* ed a new invasion; and the emperor, having gained his point *crease* with *Sigismund* of *Poland* and *Uladislaus* king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, by a double marriage, which secured to him the *The emper-* succession of these last kingdoms, sent an ambassador to the *ror break;* czar, to desire him to desist from farther hostilities ³. *Maxi-* off his *al-* *milian's* former ambassador, who had solicited and promoted *liance* the war from its very beginning, was still at *Moscow*, and *with him* had not intimated any thing concerning this change of mea- *asures*; so that *Basilus*, not knowing what to make of this last, whose name was *Oderum*, treated him as a spy, and had him secured, till, about two months after, he was con- *vinced* of his character ⁴: but still he could not succeed, nor obtain from *Basilus* any answer to carry back to his master, other than, that the emperor had deserted him at an unsea-

¹ HERB. p. 10. DECIUS, ubi supra. LEVENCL. tom. iii.

p. 331. ² P. JOVIVS, de Leg. Mosc. inter Script. rer. Mosc.

p. 120. ³ DECIUS, p. 322. ORILKOVIVS, Orat. in fun. Si-

gism. ap. Piff. tom. iii. p. 49. NEUGER. lib. vii. p. 469.

⁴ HERB. p. 101. DECIUS, p. 335.

A. D.
1516.
and soli-
cits in
vain for
Glinfki's
release.

sonable time, and that he could not put so sudden a war, which his imperial majesty himself had desired beginⁿ. It was to settle this affair that baron *Her* who has left us an account of his journey, and of the history of *Russia*, was sent to *Moscow* by the *Maximilian*^o. This ambassador tried all his skill to persuade the czar to make peace with the *Poles*; and likewise shew'd him a particular letter from that monarch in which *Glinfki*, requesting his release: but he would not consent either^p.

Basilius is
unsuccess-
ful in Li-
vonnia.

Basilius undertook an expedition into *Livonia*; but his troops were so severely handled there by *Walter* of *Platte* that he was obliged to sue for peace, even upon dishonourable terms, from that grand-master of the knights of the cross. What those terms were, or what the transaction of this war, history does not inform us. Some advantage which he gained in the countries of *Petzora*, *Samojedora*, and over the *Nogaian Tartars*, for the participation of which we are equally at a loss, might help, in some measure, to console him: but a new storm broke out at his empire, and threatened to bury him in its ruins.

Sigismund
stirs up
the Tar-
tars.

Sigismund, resolving if possible to put an end to the war with the *Crim Tartars*, by money and fair promises, they should invade *Muscovy* on their side, whilst he attack'd it on that of *Opotzka*^q. *Basilius* got early notice of this treaty: upon which he sent ambassadors to the *Tartars*, with orders artfully to represent to them, that *Lithuania*, being then unprovided with troops, would be a rich and easy booty; and that the *Poles*, so careless since their last victory, would naturally imagine they were arming against the *Muscovites*, in consequence of their late agreement^u. The hint was relished, and the *Tartar* khan entered *Podolia*, which he over-ran and destroyed without mercy^w; whilst *Basilius*, under favour of this diversion, ventured to attack *Lithuania* again: but his army was small, and he was soon obliged to withdraw his troops for the defence of his own dominions, which the *Tartars*, equally treacherous to him, invaded with 80,000 horse. To palliate their behaviour to the *Poles*, from whom they had carried off a prodigious booty, they pretended that their two sons, young and impetuous, had been the cause of the accident; but that, to prove their honesty, (the cz

Basilius
counter-
plots him.

ⁿ DECIIUS, p. 335. ^o Idem, p. 101. ^p HERB. p. 80.
^q p. 75. NEUGEGB. lib. vii. p. 476. ^u HERB. ubi supra.
^w ibid. DECIIUS, p. 335. NEUGEGB. ^x DECIIUS, ubi

had not performed his promise to them) they would have *Muscovites*; which they soon after did effectually ^b. *tars in-*
sent an army to oppose them; but his troops were *vade Mos-*
and, after losing upwards of twenty thousand men, *covy*.
to abandon a considerable part of their country, which
ny plundered and laid waste.

check made the czar think of peace with the *Poles* ^f: *Various*
n his refusing to restore *Smolensko*, as one of the con- *success of*
of it, *Sigismund* detached into *Muscovy* a considerable *the Russi-*
horse, who brought back with them great spoils and *ans and*
isoners. About the same time the *Polish* troops who *Poles*.
siege to *Opotzka* under the command of their general 1518.
; an officer not equal to the undertaking, were defeated
en away ^h; the next year the *Russians* were worsted be-
ocz ⁱ; and the year after, they were obliged to quit *Li-*
o. Mutual embassies were then sent from each of
ontending sovereigns to the other. *Sigismund* insisted
ng *Smolensko* returned: and *Basilius*, to elude that
urtfully protracted the negociation so as to give room
he might be brought to it by degrees, and in the
hile to keep on seemingly good terms ^p; a policy
answered his interests particularly at that time, as he
d another visit from the *Tartars*, in which he was not 1520.
on.

use of *Casan*, who had been conquered by *John Basi-* *The Crim*
.. revolted, and were subdued again towards the be- *Tartars*
g of the reign of this czar, his son ^a; who, to punish *are joined*
appointed for their king, under him, one *Scheale*, a *by those of*
, and of the royal family ^r; a man excessively deform- *Casan*.
ghtful to behold, and of a still more shocking dispo-
of mind. Supported by the *Russians*, to whom he at
ne time bore a mortal hatred, he governed with un-
ed cruelty and despotism. The crim khan, *Mendi-*
had married *Nursultan*, the widow of two kings of
and had by her two sons; *Machmetgerei*, who suc-
him, and *Sapperei*. *Nursultan* had no children living
r former marriages. The *Casan Tartars*, abhorring
s administration, and detesting their subjection to the
ns, represented to *Machmetgerei* their distressed condi-
and begged of him, to give them for their king his
r *Sapperei*, that they might once more recover their
y; assuring him, in return, that he might ever depend

NEUGER. lib. vii. p. 477. DECIVS, p. 322. NEUGER
i. p. 480. Idem p. 487. HERB. p. 67. NEUGER.
i. p. 489. HERB. p. 67. STALKE, tom i. p. 448.

A. D. on their gratitude and affection ^b. *Sapgerei* was conducted
1521. to *Casán* by his brother, and crowned there; whilst *Scheale*,
upon the news of their approach, fled with great precipi-
tation.

THE *Tartars* then, with an innumerable force, entered
Russia, ravaged that country, where the czar, not expecting
them quite so soon, was yet unprepared to receive them,
and penetrated to *Moscow*, of which they made themselves
masters. An army which had been sent to oppose their
progress, till such time as more troops could be raised, was
defeated by them near the river *Occa*, and the czar's brother
Andrew, who commanded it, was the very first that ran a-
way ^c: *Basilius*, with difficulty, made his escape to *Nov-*
grod; so terrified, that he hid himself by the way under a
hay-cock ^d, to avoid a straggling party of the enemy. The
Tartars, however, soon obliged him to sign a writing, by
which he acknowledged himself their vassal, and promised
to pay them a tribute of so much a-head for every one of his
subjects: besides which, *Machmetgerei*, after causing his own
statue to be set up in *Moscow*, as a mark of his sovereignty,
compelled the fugitive *Russian* monarch to return to his capi-
tal; to bring thither in person the first payment of his tribute;
and, as a token of his submission, to prostrate himself be-
fore that statue ^e. *Machmetgerei* then left *Moscow*, and re-
turned home with an immense booty, and upwards of eighty
thousand prisoners ^f, who were made slaves, and sold like
cattle to the *Turks* and other enemies of the christians. In
his way back, he attempted to take *Rezan*; but was repulsed
with considerable loss by *Iwan Kowen*, who commanded in
that place for the *Russians*, and narrowly escaped with life,
his coat being shot through with a musket-ball. The *Mus-*
covites pulled down *Machmetgerei's* statue, broke it to pieces,
and shook off their yoke, as soon as their conquerors had
left them.

They leave
Moscow.

Basilius
concludes
a truce
with the
Poles.
His trea-
chery a-
gainst the
duke of
Servia.

Basilius now talked of nothing but being revenged on the
Tartars; as a previous step to which he sent ambassadors to
king *Sigismund* of *Poland*, to remove all obstructions on that
side, and concluded a truce with him for five years ^g. An-
other obstacle, which gave umbrage to the czar, was *Bas-*
ilius Semetzitz, duke of *Servia*, a politic and warlike prince,
who had always kept himself independent, and whose exten-

^b HERB. p. 368. PETREIUS, p. 91. ^f HERB. p. 70.
^p HERB. p. 68. PETREIUS, p. 92. ^g PETREIUS, p. 93.
^w HERB. p. 69. PETREIUS, p. 54. NEUGE. lib. viii. p. 497-
^y HERB. p. 70.

ive territories bordered upon the *Russian* dominions. To remove this powerful, and therefore dangerous neighbour, *Basilus Iwanowitz* procured accusations, charging him with a design to put himself under the protection of *Poland*, and take up arms against the state of *Moscow*. *Semetzitz* thereupon desired a safe conduct, that he might go to *Moscow*, to justify himself. His request was granted, and he was received there with great honours and distinction: but on the third day after his arrival in that city, he was seized and thrown into a prison, where baron *Herberstein* saw him^b seven years after. *Basilus* took possession of his duchy, and *Wbesse* do-
m marched with a large army to the borders of *Casan*; minions be-
om whence he returned back, after having built there the *seizes*.
ity of *Basilogorod*^d, without so much as attempting any one
ilitary exploit.

He seemed to be more in earnest the next year, when he *His fruit-*
nt against *Casan* an army of 180,000 men, who might have *less expedi-*
one great things if their generals had been fit to command: *tion a-*
ut one of them, through fear and neglect, exposed his part *gainst Ca-*
f the troops to imminent danger of perishing with hunger, *san*.
nd missed several opportunities of making conquests; and
ie other, secure and indolent, lost about ninety ships laden
with provisions and ammunition, on the river *Volga*, whilst
e was asleep. It was indeed generally suspected, that the
Tartars had not been sparing of their gold to either of these
ommanders^e. The most that they did, was hiring a few
ncendiaries to set fire to *Casan*, whilst they looked tamely
m; plundering part of the flat country around it, and per-
uading the *Tartars* to send ambassadors to *Basilus*, to treat
of an accommodation; which in fact they did: but their
negotiations were carried on so slowly, that baron *Herber-*
stein found them still at *Moscow*, when he was there on his
second embassy; and there was not then the least appearance
of a peace^f. This was in the year 1526, when, the empe-
ror *Maximilian* being dead, this baron and count *Neugarol*
were sent to *Basilus* by the emperor *Charles V.* and his brother
the archduke *Ferdinand*, partly to renew the former
treaty between the two crowns, which the czar had desired
by his ambassador at *Vienna*, and partly to try to mediate
peace^g between *Russia* and *Poland* (A).

*The Tar-
tars send
ambassa-
dors to
treat of
peace.*

^b HERB. p. 51.

^d Idem, p. 70.

^e Idem, p. 72, & seq.

^f Idem, p. 73.

^g Idem, de Legat. secund. p. 111.

(A) Baron *Herberstein's* first embassy to the court of *Moscow* was
from the emperor *Maximilian*.

A. D.
1526.
*Basilius
repudiates
his wife
Salomea
on account
of her be-
ing bar-
ren;*

TOWARDS the beginning of this year *Basilius* put away his consort *Salomea*, because, after having lived with her near twenty-one years, she had never borne him a child. Before he espoused her, which was in the year 1505, immediately after his accession to the throne, he called together his council and the principal persons in his dominions, and desired them to declare, whether it would be most conducive to the good of his country, that he should marry a native or a foreigner. They all agreed, that it would be best to marry one of their own nation; for that a foreign princefs would introduce many new modes and customs, occasion vast expences, and, besides, be of another religion. This advice was particularly enforced by one *Micrus*, a *Grecian* nobleman, in great favour with the czar, and much beloved by the people, in hopes that *Basilius* would pitch upon his daughter, who was reckoned a great beauty. However, no less than fifteen hundred young ladies were assembled, and out of them he chose this *Salomea*, the daughter of *Iwan Saburou*. The unfortunate czarina was now conducted to a convent, where she was forced to put on the nun's habit; and upon her breaking out into invectives against the czar for this cruel treatment, his prime minister *Iwan Schygon*, exhibited a specimen of the *Russian* manners, by beating her with a horse-whip, for daring to abuse her lord ^v.

*and mar-
ries Glinf-
ki's niece
Helena.*

Basilius then, either repenting his severity against *Glinfki*, and conceiving a more favourable opinion of him, or knowing his great abilities, and willing to secure his fidelity at any rate, married that imprisoned nobleman's niece, *Helena*. *Glinfki* was set at liberty, promoted to greater honours than before, and even appointed one of the regents of the state, in case of the czar's demise, and joint guardian, with two others, of the czarina and her children, if she should have any ^z.

*Salomea
said to be
delivered
of a son in
the convent
to which
she was
banished.*

Salomea was almost forgot, when news came to court that she was big with child in the convent; and two ladies of distinction, one of whom was wife to the high treasurer, protested that they had been so informed by *Salomea* herself, that they had seen her, and that she had every visible mark of an advanced pregnancy. The czar sent for them, questioned them himself, and, finding their report agree with the public rumour, rewarded their intelligence with a hearty drubbing administered with his own hand. Astonished, however, and alarmed, he sent to the convent persons in whom

^y HERB. ubi supra. PETREIUS, p. 178.
p. 118. HERB. p. 19.

^z PETREIUS

he could confide, to inquire into the truth of this strange affair; and *Salomea*, upon their arrival, went directly into the church, laid her hands upon the altar, and in their presence called God to witness, that she had been a true and faithful wife to *Basilus*, than whom she had never known any other man, and that she had actually been delivered of a son, who would appear at a proper time, and revenge her wrongs; but that they were not worthy to see him then*. The return of these messengers threw *Basilus* into fresh perplexities. Convinced that, if she had borne a child, it was not of his begetting, he was going to condemn her to severe punishment, and closer confinement; but his friends advised him rather to drop the affair, and let it bury itself in oblivion.

THE emperor's ministers still continued to exert their *Basilus* endeavours to mediate a reconciliation between the *Russians* *renews the* and the *Poles*, and at length prevailed so far, that *Basilus* *truce with* told them the king of *Poland* might send his ambassadors to *the Poles*. *Moscow* to treat about peace^f. *Sigismund* did so; but their negotiations, after many evasions and delays on the part of the czar, who was bent upon keeping *Smolensko*, ended only in a renewal of the truce between the two nations for five years longer^g.

Basilus then thinking seriously of reducing the *Casan Tar-* *The Rus-* *tars*, sent an army against them, and killed upwards of *sians de-* 20,000 of their troops^k; but could not force them to sub- *feat the* mit. On the contrary, in the year 1533, their allies, the *Tartars*; *Crim Tartars*, defeated the *Russians* again near the river *Occa*, *but are a-* and entered their territories, which they laid waste with fire *gain de-* and sword to a considerable distance^l. By this time the last *feated and* truce with *Poland* expired, and *Sigismund*, having again de- *invaded* *by them*. manded and been positively refused the restitution of *Smolensko*, began to prepare for war: but, naturally averse to all violence, though in ever so just a cause, he proceeded slowly, and in the mean while *Basilus* was taken ill, and died, leaving behind him two sons, *John* and *Gregory*, by his wife *Helena*.

Oderborn^m, *Petreyus*ⁿ, and some other writers, natives of *Basilus's* countries at enmity with the *Russians*, charge this czar with *death and* crimes of which he does not seem to have been guilty. Had *character*.

* HERB. p. 19. PETREIUS, p. 180, & seq. P. ODERB. de vit Basil. lib. i. p. 251. ^f HERB. p. 113. ^g NEUGER.

lib. vii. p. 519. ^k LEUEN. de Bell. Moscov. tom iii. p. 131.

^l NEUGER. lib. vii. p. 534. ^m Lib. i. de vit. Basil. p.

245, & seq. ⁿ Moscow. Chron. p. 175.

he been so fond of blood as they pretend, he would undoubtedly have put to death both *Gliniski* and *Semetzitz*, instead of only confining them: nor would he have suppressed, as he did, the proceedings against his brother *Andrew* for running away at the battle on the *Occa*; for which he deserved, and probably would have been sentenced to die. That he did not regard his word, a vice common to the age he lived in, and to the *Russians* in particular, at all times, is certain; as it also is, that he was too weak and pusillanimous to support with honour the weight of a crown not yet well established. The terror with which *Russia* kept its neighbours in awe during the preceding reign, gave way to contempt under this: their territories, accordingly, became a prey to their enemies, and the state would have fallen again into the same confusion as in former ages, had it been again divided; but fatal experience had shewn the danger of diminishing the sovereign power. *Basilus*, by his will, left it to his eldest son *John*; expressly excluding his own two brothers, *George* and *Andrew*°, and appointing *Gliniski* and two others guardians to both his children, and to his widow. Even *P. Jovius* acknowledges^p, that he was beloved and honoured by his people; and baron *Herberstein*^q confirms this character of him.

Gliniski
perishes
through
the arti-
fices of his
niece He-
lena.

A. D.
1535
John Ba-
silowicz
II.

Petreyus^r, whose account is confirmed by *Reutenfels*^s, and several others^w, describes *Helena* as a woman of abandoned morals and excessively dissolute behaviour: to which he adds, that her uncle *Gliniski*, now regent, taking upon him to reprove her for her scandalous lewdness, particularly with one *Iwan Ozani*; she found means to trump up an accusation against him, charging him with a design to send the young princes to *Poland*, and usurp the crown, and to get it so strongly confirmed by persons whom she bribed, that the states and people of *Russia* declared him a traitor, and committed him to a prison, where he ended his days miserably; but that, seeing their error soon after, they poisoned *Helena*, seized her gallant, tied him to a spit, and roasted him alive.

By the death of *Basilus*, the crown descended to his son *Iwan* or *John Basilowicz* II. (A). an infant, not five years of age.

° NEUGEB. lib. vii. p. 534. HERB. p. 19. PETREIUS, p. 181. ^p De Legat. Moscov. p. 129. ^q p. 11. ^r p. 183. ^s De Reb. Moscov. lib. i. ch. xi & xii. ^w ODERB. lib. i. p. 251. HERB. p. 19. NEUGEB. BECHMAN, & alii.

(A) The addition of *witz*, among the *Russians*, that the at the end of the name, denotes, person to whom it is given is

the emperor *Charles* readily agreed to the czar's desire ; the *Russian* ambassador accordingly engaged upwards of a hundred expert *German* artists, who were directed to go to *Lubeck*, in order to proceed from thence to *Livonia*. The *Lubeckers*, who were very powerful at that time, refused, as *Puffendorff* observes, at nothing less than engaging the whole commerce of the north, stopped them, presented strongly to the emperor, in the name of all

est son of a very great fa- here, *Basilowitz*, means the
and frequently the pre- son of *Basilus*.
re heir to the crown: as

the merchants of *Livonia*, the dangerous consequence of thus affording instruction to the *Russians*, who would soon avail themselves of it to ruin their trade, and distress the subjects of his imperial majesty. The workmen and others, intended for *Russia*, were easily persuaded to return to their respective homes; and the czar's ambassador was arrested upon his arrival at *Lubeck*, and imprisoned there at the suit of the *Livonians*. He made his escape, indeed, shortly after: but *Basilowitz*, highly incensed at these proceedings, vowed, and soon took, ample revenge on the daring authors of this insolence ⁿ.

*Basilowitz
invades
Casan.*

PRUDENCE, however, directed him to suspend his resentment for a while. He was then at war with those formidable enemies, the *Tartars* of *Casan*, who had made the *Russians* feel the weight of their tyranny. His father, *Basilius*, had begun to break their strength, and he resolved to finish that great undertaking ^o. The territories of *Casan* were conquered, after a war of seven years continuance; but the capital of that name, well fortified, and bravely defended, made such resistance, as quite disheartened the besiegers, and made them think of abandoning their enterprize. *Basilowitz* being informed of this, hastened to them with a considerable reinforcement ^p, endeavoured to revive their drooping courage, and exhorted them to push the siege with redoubled vigour. Some listened to him, and prepared to obey his orders; but the greater number, deaf to all remonstrances, after loudly insisting on peace with the *Tartars*, and leave to return home, proceeded to mutiny, and fell upon their comrades, who were for continuing the war. *Basilowitz*, alarmed at this event, rushed in among the combatants, and with great difficulty parted them: but neither menaces nor intreaties, nor even a promise of giving them the whole plunder of the city, if they took it, could prevail on them to continue the war. Their rage went even so far as to threaten the life of their sovereign; who, to provide for his safety, was obliged to make the best of his way to *Moscow*; and the mutineers, no longer regarding any command, likewise returned thither ^q.

*His troops
mutiny,
and he is
forced to
return
home.*

*He punishes
the rebels.*

JUSTLY incensed at this daring rebellion, by which the majesty and authority of the prince were set at nought, all discipline subverted, and a door opened to disorders, which,

ⁿ HENNING, Lief. Chron. ch. vi. NEUGEBO. lib. vii. p. 569. LEUENCL. p. 137. CHYT. Saxon. p. 423. ^o RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 60. ^p ODERB. lib. ii. p. 269. ^q Idem, *ibid.* p. 270.

if suffered to increase, could not but end in the total destruction of the state; *Basilowitz* saw the necessity of inflicting exemplary punishment on the ringleaders of the sedition. Accordingly, a few days after, having selected a guard of two thousand of his best troops, he ordered a great feast, to which he invited his principal nobles and officers, and, according to the custom of the *Russians*, gave them very rich garments. The chiefs of the seditious were clad in black velvet; and, after the dinner was over, he made a speech to the whole company, setting forth the behaviour of his troops in the camp before *Casan*, their contempt of his commands, and their conspiracy to take away his life; to which he added, that he was doubly sorry the instigators of such wickedness were to be found among those who were styled, and who ought to be, his faithful counsellors; and that those who knew themselves to be guilty of such atrocious crimes, could not do better than voluntarily to confess their faults, if they wished for any kind of mercy. Most of them immediately threw themselves at his feet, and acknowledged their guilt: upon which, some of the most criminal were ordered to be executed; but the greatest part were only imprisoned.

IMMEDIATELY after this act of justice, *Basilowitz* marched again with a fresh army, and re-invested *Casan*, before the *Tartars* could either expect him, or have recovered themselves. The siege went on again but slowly, and the *Russians* began to be dispirited: upon which the czar ordered his pioneers to undermine the walls of the citadel, a practice then quite unknown to the *Tartars*. This work being completed, he directed his priests to read a solemn mass to his whole army, at the head of which he himself afterwards spent some time in private prayer, and then ordered fire to be set to the powder, which acted so effectually, that great part of the fortification was instantly blown up, and the *Muscovites*, rushing into the city, sword-in-hand, dealt dreadful slaughter around them, and soon made themselves masters of the place; whilst the astonished *Tartars*, crowded out at a gate on the opposite side, crossed the river *Casanka*, and fled into the forests. Among the numerous prisoners taken on this occasion, were *Simeon*, king of *Casan*, and his queen, both of whom were sent to *Moscow*, where they were treated with the utmost civility and respect, particularly by the czar himself, whom *Simeon* out-lived.

Attacks
the Tar-
tars again.

Takes Ca-
sa-san, with
its king;
A. D.
1552.

* Idem. p. 271. P. RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 61. MARG.
Etat de l'Emp. de Russie, p. 2.

and Astracan.

A. D.

1454.

Dorpt and the Livonians agree to terms with Basilowitz ;

ENCOURAGED by this success, after leaving in *Casan* a strong garrison of *Russians* only, in order to secure to himself a place on which a kingdom depended^b, *Basilowitz* carried his victorious arms into *Astracan*, and soon reduced the capital of that country (A) by the same means as he had mastered *Casan*^c.

THE young czar's ambition began now to expand itself mightily ; and the west, which he prepared next to attack, seemed to offer him a fine opportunity to extend his dominions on that side also. The truce which *John Basilowitz* I. had concluded with the *Livonians* for fifty years, was expired : upon which *Jodocus a Reck*, archbishop of *Dorpt*, and canon of *Munster* in *Westphalia*, sensible of the danger he was exposed to by his vicinity to the *Russians*, desired the czar to grant him a prolongation of peace. *Basilowitz* bid him chuse, whether he would have a truce for five years longer, on condition that all the inhabitants of his archbishoprick should pay to him the annual tribute of a fifth part of a ducat for each person, which the people of *Dorpt* had formerly agreed to pay to the grand dukes of *Plescow* ; or for twenty years, on the farther condition, that he and the *Livonians* should rebuild all the *Russian* churches which had been demolished in their territories, at the time of the reformation, and allow his subjects the free exercise of their religion^f. *Jodocus* evaded giving an answer to these proposals, as long as he could : and at last, finding that the affair grew serious, he squeezed out of his people a large sum of money, and fled with it to *Munster*, where he resigned his prebend, and took a wife^h. His successor, whose name was *Herman*, and the deputies from *Livonia*, accepted of the czar's conditions, and swore to observe them, with the addition of this clause, which soon gave great disgust to the *Livonians* in general, but which the prelate of *Dorpt* insisted on, that the priests of the *Romish* communion should be exempted from paying tributeⁱ.

^b PETREIUS, p. 98. HEID. de Bell. Moscov. lib. i. p. 334. RUSSOUW. ubi supra. OLEAR. p. 218. ^c AUTOR. supra citat. OLEAR. p. 241.

^f BRED. Bell. Livon. 229. LEVEN. ap. Pistor. tom v. rer Polon. p. 134. NEUGE. lib. viii. p. 577. CHYTR. p. 472. VON GALEN's. Account of Livonia, p. 92.

^h LEUENCL. p. 134. NEUGE. ubi supra. RUSSOUW. p. 63. ⁱ LEVEN. loc. cit. THUAN. ad an. 1558.

(A) *Casan* was taken on the 9th of July 1552 ; and *Astracan* on the 1st of August 1554.

THAT the *Livonians* did not intend to keep to this agreement, even when their deputies swore to observe it faithfully, is evident from their being at that very time in treaty with *Gustavus Vasa*, king of *Sweden*, for him to join with them in attacking *Russia*^b. Some differences which had arisen between *Russia* and *Sweden*, owing to the governors of their frontier provinces, who had plundered one another, made *Gustavus* very ready to comply with these solicitations: but *Basilowitz*, who had very early intelligence of their designs, *Where* entered *Finland*, under pretence that their king *Magnus* had upon *Basilowitz* engaged, in the fourteenth century, to cede a part of that lowitz in-
country to the *Russians*, who were come to take possession *where* *Fin-*
of it, as the promise had not yet been performed^d. They land,
accordingly laid siege to *Wiburg*: upon which *Sigismund*,
king of *Poland*, being applied to by the *Swedes*, promised
Gustavus, not only that the *Hanse* towns, which had annoy-
ed him greatly, should not molest him during this invasion,
but that he himself would send a considerable force to join
him in *Finland*, in case he entered that contry. Depending
on these assurances, *Gustavus* marched thither directly with
a numerous army; but neither the *Poles* nor the *Livonians*
giving him, in reality, the least assistance, and his men pe-
rishing daily, he was forced to conclude a peace with the
Swedes.
Czar; who, on his side, was equally glad of an accommo-
dation, his troops having suffered greatly, without making
any progress^e.

Finland was at this time absolutely governed by *William* of *A private*
Furstenberg, grand-master of the *Livonian* knights, and the quarrel re-
archbishop of *Riga*, with some other prelates; a quarrel a-
mong whom soon proved an effectual means of seconding *Livonians*
Basilowitz's designs upon that country. The archbishop, *to great*
after attempting to set himself above the grand-master, even *distress*,
in the direction of civil affairs, to take the precedence of him
on all occasions, and to persecute those who had embraced
the confession of *Augsburg*, in favour of which *Furstenberg*
had distinguished himself greatly, chose for his coadjutor in
the archbishopric of *Riga*, *Christopher* duke of *Mecklenburg*; ;
a step from which, joined to the great abilities, and the
haughty temper of this lord, the knights of the cross apprehended they had reason to fear the same fate as had befallen
the *Teutonic* order in *Prussia*; and which was expressly con-
trary to the convention of *Volmar*, whereby it was stipulated,

^b NEUGE. p. 561. LEUENCL. ubi supra. ^d PUFFEND.
Swed. ^e LEUENCL. p. 131. NEUGE. p. 592. PUFFEND.
ubi supra. CHYT. Saxon. ^f LEUENCL. p. 133.

that no foreigner should be raised to that high dignity, without the consent of the whole order of the knights of *Livonia*. These discontents were so heightened by letters said to be intercepted from the archbishop to his brother *Albert*, duke of *Prussia*, inviting this last totally to suppress the order of *Livonian* knights, and to secularise their possessions, particularly in *Finland*, that an open war broke out between the contending parties, and the archbishop was seized and made prisoner; though both he and his brother protested that the letters in question were forged^p. He was, however, soon released, through the mediation of the emperor of *Germany*, and other potentates, backed by powerful preparations of the *Prussians* and *Poles* to avenge his cause: but in the mean time *Livonia* was exhausted of its riches, and reduced to great distress, by this unhappy wrangle^q.

*They send
ambassadors to de-
fine peace.*

A. D.
1557.

MATTERS being somewhat settled at home, the *Livonians* sent to the czar, to know whether he was inclined to receive ambassadors from them, and to conclude a peace. *Basilowitz* answered, that he could not think the *Livonians* meant really to treat of peace, whilst they kept six thousand *German* soldiers in their pay: that it rather looked as if they thought to intimidate him; and that they must therefore begin with dismissing those troops, after which he would hear them^r. They immediately complied, for the power of resisting was no longer in their hands, and sent a magnificent embassy to *Russia*^s.

*Basilowitz
applies a-
gain to the
Germans
for artists,
&c. but
without
effect.*

IN the mean time *Basilowitz* ordered his ambassador at *Vienna* to remind the emperor *Ferdinand*, and the empire, of the letter he had written in the year 1548, to the emperor *Charles*; to repeat the offer he had then made of depositing as much money as should produce two tons of gold yearly, for twenty years, to be employed in a war against the *Turks*, besides furnishing, from the time of commencing such war, some thousands of *Russians*, to be maintained at his own expence: to assure them, that his zeal for the welfare of christianity made him wish, not only to chastise the insolence of those unbelievers, who persecuted the faithful in the east, and wrested from them the empire of that part of the world; but also to bring about an union of the *Greek* and *Latin* churches, which his father *Basilus* had endea-

* HENN. Lief. Chron. NEUGE. p. 593, 594. CHYT. Saxon p. 479. ^p LEUENCL. p. 133. ^q BRED. p. 226. LUENCL. p. 134. NEUGE. p. 597. ODERB. vit. Basil. lib. ii. p. 275. ^r THUAN. & BRED. p. 229. ^s LEUENCL. p. 135. BRED. ubi supra. NEUGE. p. 498.

voured to effect, as well with the emperor *Maximilian*, as with the popes *Adrian* and *Clement*: that his particular reason for desiring to have *German* artists and officers, rather than those of any other nation, which he could easily procure from *France* and *Italy*, was, that he knew the *Germans* to be an upright, virtuous, and honest people; that they were his neighbours; and that he himself reigned over those very countries in *Scythia*, which had formerly been the seat of the *Teutons*: that he desired to raise only one battalion of foot, and one squadron of horse, in *Germany*, on the express condition that they should never be employed against any christian power, but only against the *Turks* and *Tartars*; and that he would give twenty-five of the sons of his richest nobles, as hostages for the performance of what he promised^b. All these arguments were strongly urged, and seemingly listened to; but none of them took effect: the imperial court plainly seeing the czar's real drift, which was, to introduce the arts, and military discipline among his own people.

THE *Livonian* ambassadors were received with great distinction at *Moscow*, and, according to the custom of the Russian court, were entertained there for some time, at the expense of the crown, and even stood godfathers to a son of the czar, before they had an audience. In the mean while *Basilowitz* learnt, that the *Livonians* had at last concluded a perpetual confederacy with the *Poles* against the *Russians*^c. A few days after, he gave them a pompous audience, at which, upon their applying for peace, he asked them, whether they had brought the *Dorpt* tribute. They answered, that they had searched the records of their country with great care, and could not find that they owed any tribute to the *Muscovites*. *Basilowitz*, incensed at this reply, told them, he wondered how they could so soon forget their late solemn oath; that he plainly saw they depended on being assisted by the emperor, in which they would be mistaken; and that he should order proper people to conduct them back to the frontiers of his dominions^d. He well knew that any succours the emperor might give them, must be a long while before they could arrive; and, to gain the greater time himself, he artfully ordered the guides, that were to attend them, to

^b J. BASILIDIS EPIST. in Geo. van. Hoff. I. EUENCL. p. 135. NEUGEBO. lib. viii. p. 593. CHYT. Saxo. p. 483, & FLETCHER. ^c HENNING, Lief. Chron. f. 9. BREO. p. 230, et ex eo THUAN. ad an. 1558. ^d Account of Livonia, p. 96.

A. D. 1558. lead them through round-about-ways; which was done so effectually, that they did not reach their own country till the month of *February* in the following year^b.

and declaration of war. THE moment these ambassadors had left *Moscow*, and whilst they were pursuing their journey homeward through long and tedious roads; *Basflowitz* sent a messenger to the *Livonians*, by a shorter way, to tell them, that they should soon feel the weight of his resentment for their perfidious behaviour, and that he then declared war against them^c.

The Russians ravage Livonia. THIS message was immediately followed by an army of 100,000 men, who entered the district of *Dorpt* before the end of *January*, and laid everything waste before them, with such acts of barbarity, as would be shocking to relate. They then entered the territories of *Riga*, which they treated with equal inhumanity; and after glutting both their cruelty and their avarice, at length retired with an immense booty and a prodigious number of prisoners; leaving the desolated *Livonians* to repent at leisure their ill-timed parsimony in refusing to pay the *Dorpt* tribute, which would not have amounted to above 50,000 dollars, and would have saved them from infinite calamities. *Basflowitz* himself was not in this expedition^d.

The Livonians sue for peace; A COMET, which appeared about this time, served greatly to heighten the fears of the *Livonians*. Their states met at *Wenden*, to consider what measures they should take. Those who had suffered most, were for continuing the war: but others, who feared the like fate, thought it most advisable to try to soften the czar, by offering him a present of 30,000 ducats, which would be but a trifle in comparison of what they might lose by farther hostilities. This advice prevailed; and the czar, being made acquainted with the result of the deliberation, agreed to a truce for four months, and declared his readiness to receive their envoys. Ambassadors were accordingly sent; but upon their arrival at *Moscow*, they found the face of affairs entirely altered^e. The *Livonian* governor of the city of *Narva*, out of an idle frolick, fired some of his cannon against *Iwanagrod*, or *Russian Narva*, situated on the other side of the river, and killed several of the czar's subjects, who were assembled in an open place, quite unarmed. The *Russians*, respecting the truce, did not even attempt to make

but the negotiation is broken off by an accident.

^b BASILIDIS EPIST. ap. LEUENCL. p. 136, & BRED. p. 216. RUSSOUW. LIEF. CHRON. p. 69. ^c HENNING, LIEF. CHRON. BRED. p. 230. THUAN. ad an. 1558. LEUENCL. p. 137. CHYT. SAXON, p. 479. RUSSOUW. p. 64. ^d *Autores supra cit.*

reprisals : but they sent immediate notice of this insult to *Basilowitz* ; who, highly incensed at it, told the *Livonian* ambassadors, upon their arrival, that he looked upon their nation as a set of perjured wretches, who had renounced all honesty, as well as their old religion : that they might go back with their money and proposals, and let their countrymen know, that his vengeance would soon overtake them ^e.

IN effect, the ambassadors were scarcely arrived in *Livonia*, when *Peter*, surnamed *Sifegaledrii* (A), who had been a famous pirate in the *Euxine* sea, entered the district of *Narva*, with an army of 300,000 *Russians*, well provided with artillery and ammunition, took the city of *Narva* in nine days, and, very speedily after, made himself master of *Dorpt*, where he found an immense treasure ^f. The garrisons of several other places, intimidated by the approach of these numerous enemies, quitted their posts ; so that the *Russians* became masters of great part of *Livonia*, almost without opposition. The duke of *Mecklenburg*, now co-adjutor to the archbishop of *Riga*, attempted, indeed, to stem the torrent, but was not able to stop its progress ; and *Gothard Kettler*, grand-master of the knights of *Livonia*, intreated *Christian III.* king of *Denmark*, to take *Riga*, *Reval*, and the countries of *Garnland*, *Wirraland*, and *Esthonia*, under his protection : but the advanced age of that monarch, the distance of the places, and the want of sufficient power to withstand so potent an adversary, made him decline the offer. He, however, assisted them with some money and powder, of which they were in great want ^h.

THE trade which the then powerful *Lubeckers* used to carry on to *Russia*, by the way of *Riga* and *Reval*, being stopped by these wars ; *Basilowitz* opened a new channel through *Narva*, by which he was plentifully supplied with all sorts of merchandize and military stores : whereupon *Gothard Kettler*, in the beginning of the next year, applied to the emperor, requesting him to interpose in favour of the *Livonians*, who were greatly injured, while their enemies were extremely benefited, by the trade of the *Lubeckers* ; and his imperial majesty, in consequence of this representation, wrote to

^e Autores supra cit. ^f HENNING, f. 12, 6. LEUBENCL. p. 139. BRED. p. 233. THUAN, ubi supra. NEUGER. ib. viii. p. 600. ^h Autores supra cit. & RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. f. 67. 6.

(A) Or *Sifegaleider* : so called from his having commanded seven galleys (1). The author of the account of *Livonia* (2) calls him czar *Sigaley*.

(1) *Pistor. lib. iii. p. 62.*

(2) P. 96. Gustavus

The Li-
vonian
knights
put them-
selves un-
der the pro-
tection of
the Poles.

Conquests
of the Rus-
sians in
Livonia.

Gustavus king of *Sweden*, desiring him, as master of the eastern sea, to put a stop to the traffic thus complained of. *Gustavus* was grown old, and did not chuse to embark in new quarrels; so that this letter had but little effect. The states^b of *Reval* and the knights of the cross then fitted out ships of their own, to cruise against those of *Lubeck*, some of which they took in their way to *Narva*, and with them some vessels belonging to the *Swedes*. Upon this the *Lubeckers* applied, in their turn, to the emperor, and obtained of him leave to carry all sorts of goods to *Russia*, guns excepted, and a letter to the grand-master *Kettler*, enjoining him to make them satisfaction for the damage they had sustained. *Eric* also, who succeeded to the crown of *Sweden* upon the death of his father *Gustavus*, not only gave the precedence to the *Russian* ambassadors before those of *Poland*, but repeatedly warned the grand-master of the *Livonian* knights to restore what had been taken from his subjects, and not to molest his seas any moreⁱ: and at the same time the emperor and the empire, after many consultations, sent him word, that they could not possibly assist him with troops, but would give him 100,000 florins in lieu of men. Either piqued at this treatment, or thinking the sum too small, *Kettler* took his resolution, and put himself under the protection of the *Poles*^k.

THE *Russians*, this year, returning to *Livonia*, for the third time, with a powerful army, took *Marienburg*, laid waste the district of *Riga*, destroyed *Garnland*, and penetrated to the very gates of *Reval*. *Felin*, in which was the best artillery of the whole country, became theirs by the treachery of its garrison; and with it they took the old grand-master of the *Livonian* order, *William* of *Furstenberg*, whom they carried to *Moscow*, where he ended his days in a prison set apart for noblemen^m. *Wittenstein* baffled their efforts: but they totally defeated the *Livonian* cavalry, and made most of their principal officers prisonersⁿ. Some writers relate, that when these captives were carried through the streets of *Moscow*, and shewn, by way of sight, to the people, the two dethroned kings of *Casan* and *Astracan*, spit in their faces, saying, "This is good enough for you German dogs, who put into the hands of the *Muscovites* the rod with which they first chastised us, and now punish you."

^b PUFFEND. *ibid* p. 842. THUAN. *ad an.* 1559. ⁱ HEN-
KING, p. 26. ^k RUSS. *Lief. Chron.* p. 76. ^m NEUGES.
dib. viii. p. 602. THUAN. *ad an.* 1560. CHYT. *Saxon.* p. 520.
HENN. *Lief. Chron.* p. 72, 73. ⁿ RUSS. *Lief. Chron.* p. 72.

THE distracted situation of *Livonia*, at this time, made the bishop of *Oesel* glad to sell his bishopric to *Ferdinand* king of *Denmark*, who exchanged it with his brother, duke *Magnus*, for a part of *Holstein*. The *Livonians*, and particularly the greatest part of their nobility, readily acquiesced in this agreement; chusing to be governed by a powerful prince, rather than by a helpless grand-master; and *Magnus* was accordingly received with uncommon joy: but, attempting to carry things with too high a hand, he soon lost the love of his people, who, to the calamities occasioned by a foreign enemy, would have added the horrors of a civil war, had they not been prevented by the friendly interposition of the archbishop of *Riga*, and his coadjutor at *Pernau*. The inhabitants of *Reval*, provoked at this step, but equally distressed, took off their allegiance to the grand-master of *Livonia*, and put themselves under the protection of the *Swedes*, as the *Swedes* were able to assist them, to check the trade of the *Lubeckers* to *Narva*, and to reinstate them in their former commerce with *Russia*; which neither the *Poles* nor the *Danes* could do so effectually, by reason of their greater distance. The nobility of *Esthonia* followed their example, and acknowledged *Eric* for their protector: upon which this monarch of *Sweden* sent an army into *Livonia*, under the command of *Claas Horn*, with orders to attack the grand-master, if he did not give immediate satisfaction in regard to the former demands of that crown; and the *Swedish* general, upon his arrival, very prudently confirmed the states of *Reval* and *Esthonia* in all their privileges, under the king his master. The grand-master of the knights of *Livonia*, *Gothard Kettler*, finding himself thus forsaken on all sides, accepted the offers of *Sigismund* king of *Poland*, and, in consequence thereof, agreed with him to suppress the order of the cross, of which he was chief, in consideration of his receiving the duchy of *Courland*, for himself and his heirs, as a fief of the crown of *Poland*. The possession of *Reval* would have given *Sigismund* great pleasure; and the new duke of *Courland* besieged it accordingly, as a place belonging to the *Poles*: but the *Swedish* garrison obliged him to retire.

* NEUGE. & THUAN. ubi supra. CHYT. SAXON. p. 520.
 HAN. Lief. Chron. p. 23. P LOCERN. de reb. Succ.
 lib vii. p. 374. PUFFEND. NEUGE. & THUAN. Loc. cit.
 CHYT. p. 521. RUSSOUW. p. 80. 84. 9 RUSSOUW. p. 82.
 p. 603. THUAN. ad an 1561. CHYT. SAXON. p. 528, et seq.
 PUFFEND. ubi supra.

*Policy of
the czar.*

Basilowitz saw with pleasure these divisions of the *Livonians*, and the growing quarrels between the *Swedes* and the *Poles* concerning their country; but would not interfere in them: rightly judging, that their thus weakening themselves would soon facilitate the success of his designs against them. The king of *Sweden*, to secure his new acquisitions, sent an embassy to the czar, to propose a treaty of peace, by which he should be confirmed in the possession of *Reval*. Some other potentates likewise interposed to the same effect: but all they could obtain was, a prolongation of the truce between *Russia* and *Sweden*, for two years more, which *Basilowitz* employed in fortifying his own conquests ^a.

*The Poles
affront
him grossly.*

A Treaty of marriage had been negotiating for some time, between the czar and the princess *Catharine Jagellonica*, sister to *Sigismund Augustus* king of *Poland*; and all the articles of the matrimonial contract were in a manner settled, except one, which the *Poles* unjustly demanded, and *Basilowitz* equitably refused to comply with. They insisted that the children which he might have by this wife, should succeed him, in prejudice to the princes born of his former marriage. This unreasonable condition was rejected with the scorn it merited; but the czar, who was fond of the princess, still continued his suit to obtain her: upon which the *Poles*, rashly resolving to affront him in the grossest manner, sent him a white mare finely caparioned, with a message, purporting, that such a wife was good enough for him. *Basilowitz*, highly incensed at this outrageous insult, vowed perpetual enmity against the *Poles*, and soon made them feel the weight of his just resentment ^b.

In the mean time *Catharine* was married to *John* duke of *Finland* ^a, who, mistrusting the affection of his brother *Eric* king of *Sweden*, and the friendship of his neighbours, thought to secure himself a retreat by this match, in case he should at any time be overpowered. He had lent his brother-in-law, the king of *Denmark*, 120,000 dollars upon certain castles in *Livonia*; his possessing of which gave great umbrage to *Eric*, who intended speedily to attack the *Poles*: and this disgust being heightened by intelligence which the *Swedish* monarch received, that the *Danes* and *Poles* had entered into a secret alliance against the *Swedes*, at the time of this marriage, and that the duke of *Finland* was also a contracting party with them; *Eric* cited his brother to appear before the states, to

^a RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 87. CHYT. p. 528. LOCZEN-
de reb. Suec. lib. vii. p. 374. ^b PUFFEND. p. 29. ^d Idem,
ibid. HENNING, Lief. Chron. p. 36.

give an account of his conduct: but his summons being disregarded, he seized *John*, after conquering *Abo* in *Finland*, and kept him a close prisoner *.

UPON this alliance of the *Danes* and *Poles*, in which the *The Lubeckers* were also included, *Eric* applied to the *Russians*, who *Swedes* had already besieged and taken *Polockow* ^p, the main defence offer him of *Livonia* on the side of the *Russian* frontiers, and offered to their alli-join them in an alliance against the *Poles*: but the czar, once a-thinking himself strong enough to deal with them, and against the judging that the many adversaries *Sweden* had to cope with *Poles*, would afford him the fairer opening in *Livonia*, declined the proposal ^q.

Basilowitz sent two armies against the *Poles*, but both of ^{by whom his troops are worsted.} them were unfortunate: the first, consisting of 20,000 men, commanded by *Sueriski*, was defeated in the beginning of the year 1564, near *Polockow*, which he had conquered the year before; and the second, consisting of 60,000 men, ran away upon the approach of the enemy ^r. *Pernau*, then in the possession of the *Swedes*, was surrendered the next year to the *Poles*, by the treachery of a *German* garrison: upon which the czar, suspecting they might play the same trick at *Dorpt*, removed from thence to *Moscow* all the soldiers of that nation; who, affronted at this, took a dislike to the *Russian* service, and entered into such cabals against *Basilowitz*, as frequently required his exerting great severity, to stop the progress of the growing evil ^t.

SHORTLY after, *Basilowitz* discovered a very dangerous plot, which required the utmost exertion of his policy and prudence to countermine. He had several illustrious foreigners at his court, and particularly the ambassador of *Elizabeth* of *England*, whom he consulted in all public affairs, to whom he communicated his most private thoughts ^u, and on whose approved knowledge and experience he chiefly regulated his conduct ^w. He likewise shewed great favour to the *Lutheran* clergy; and being himself well versed in polemic divinity, he frequently permitted them to discourse before

A. D.
1566.

A conspi-
racy a-
gainst him.

* *Russouw*. Lief. Chron. p. 93. *Loccen*. I. vii. p. 380. *Puffend.* CHYTRÆI, Saxon. p. 242. *Neugeb.* I. viii. p. 609. ^p *Piaschii* Chron. Polon. p. 60. *Petreibus*, p. 77. *Henning*, Lief. Chron. p. 8. *Russouw*. p. 93. ^q *Puffend.* ubi sup. p. 353. ^r *Bredens.* p. 239. *Neugeb.* I. viii. p. 611. ^s *Guaconin.* p. 363. ^t *CHYTRÆI*. Saxon. p. 553. *Neugeb.* I. viii. p. 614. *Loccen*. I. vii. p. 386. *Henning*, Lief. Chron. p. 41. 6. *Russouw*. p. 105. ^u *Oderb.* lib. iii. p. 319. ^w *Id.* lib. I. p. 258, & lib. iii. p. 217.

him,

The pretences for it.

him, and heard them with great attention ^x. This, being a behaviour quite different from that of his predecessors, greatly disgusted the bojars, who incensed, at the preference visibly given to foreigners, expressed their discontents in the most public manner, saying, that *Basilowitz* had forsaken the manners of his fore-fathers, altered their established laws and customs, and introduced foreign fopperies in their room; nay, even *Demetrius Owezinius*, one of the chief ministers of state, scrupled not to aver the same things ^y; for which he soon afterwards lost his head; though the pretended cause of this execution, was his having once publicly refused to drink the czar's health ¹. The death of *Demetrius* did not however terrify the male-contents: on the contrary, they openly complained of the injustice of it, as being too severe a punishment for so small an offence ^k; and levied an army in *Lithuania*, in order to destroy both *Basilowitz* and his family. This put the czar into some consternation; and as the strength of the rebels increased daily, he began to think seriously of the most likely means to avert the impending danger ¹.

Basilowitz feigns to abdicate the crown.

ACCORDINGLY, at a public assembly of the principal nobily and ministers of state, he stript himself of his imperial ornaments; and being asked the reason thereof, declared that as he was deemed unworthy to fill the throne any longer, he willingly divested himself of all his ensigns of royalty, and requested them to nominate some fitter person to reign over them. The next day he sent to the churches for the pictures of their principal saints, which the vulgar among the *Russians* looked upon as the guardian divinities of their country, ordered all his priests to appear in the great church of St. *Mary*, and a solemn mass to be read by the patriarch and metropolitans; after which he took an affectionate leave of them all, and went with his two sons to the castle of *Caloujenz*, about a league and a half from *Moscow*, where he remained several days, expecting that the *Muscovites* would solicit him to resume the scepter: but being disappointed therein, he ordered some of his principal bojars to repair to the city, and acquaint the people, that he was determined to go wherever God and his good fortune should direct; and that, notwithstanding their treacherous behaviour to him, he doubted not but a time would come, when he should be able to re-demand his crown in ¹

^x Id. lib. i. p. 258. seq. 267. seq. PETREIUS, p. 252.
^y ODERB. lib. ii. p. 203. PETREIUS, p. 200. GUAGNIN. Description. Mosc. p. 184. ¹ Autores citati. ^k ODERB. ubi sup.
¹ HENNING Lief. Chron. p. 46.

proper manner^m. This message occasioned a very submissive answer from the citizens: and *Baslowitz* suffered himself to be persuaded to pardon them; but ordered the principal priests and bojars to attend him in the *Alexandrian* sloboda, thither he had retired. They accordingly assembled there, and represented to him in the most respectful terms, how sorely he had afflicted his people, and how much the state was exposed to the outrages of its enemies by his abdicating the crown in such a manner: wherefore they most earnestly besought him, as a good shepherd, still to watch over his flock; and promised, that if any persons should be found guilty of fomenting the present unhappy differences, they should be delivered up to the most exemplary punishment; begging, that, for the errors of a few, he would not forsake them all, but return to his vacant throne, and continue his grace and favour to those only who should appear to deserve it.

THIS pathetic address threw *Baslowitz* into some perplexity. He was not willing absolutely to refuse their request; but wanted at the same time to secure himself from any like conspiracies for the future. He therefore desired a day's time to consider of their proposal; and accordingly the next morning he acquainted them, that they could not be ignorant of the behaviour of their ancestors to their former sovereigns, nor how treacherously they had always acted towards them: that the annals of the empire would effectually prove this, and their own consciences would convict them of the blackest designs against him, whom they had attempted to murder before his father was well dead, in order to advance the race of *Saladin Garbata*, one of their own stamp, to the imperial throne (A). In fine, that as they must be sensible of the many attempts which had lately been made to destroy him, his empress, and his two sons; to conclude a secret and scandalous league with *Poland*, and to introduce the *Turks* and *Tartars* to prey upon the vitals of the kingdom; he wondered how they could advise or request him to entrust his own life, and the lives of his family, in the hands of so treacherous and blood-thirsty a people; since the consequence of such an imprudent step must needs be his utter destruction, of which he should be in continual danger.

^m G. VAN HOFF. ODERB. lib. ii. p. 283. PETREIUS, p. 202.

(A) We do not find the transaction here alluded to, mentioned by any historian; and therefore are at a loss for the particulars of it.

NOTWITHSTANDING this unfavourable reply, the people still warmly pressed *Basilowitz* to comply with their request; and he, pretending to yield at last to their great importunity, consented to re-ascend the throne; and accordingly, a few days after, he returned to his capital.

Basilowitz had no sooner resumed the reins of government, than he proceeded to take some necessary precautions for his future safety. In the first place, he caused the principal ringleaders of the late conspiracy to be executed^m, and then raised a body-guard of two hundred men, who were chiefly collected out of the most distant provinces, and were obliged to take an oath that they would be true and faithful to their prince, and that they were no ways allied or related to his ministers or *bojars*^o. This guard, which was distinguished by the name of the *Aprisma*, or chosen people, proved a great nuisance to the people; for being wholly composed of men of low birth and education, and destitute of all generous sentiments, they frequently committed great outrages; which the czar, who by no means approved of them, was often obliged to overlook, in order to secure their fidelity^p.

A. D.
1569.
Sends an
embassy to
England.

In the beginning of this year, *Basilowitz* sent two ambassadors to England, to propose an alliance with queen Elizabeth, and establish a treaty of commerce with this nation. Captain *Richard Chancellor* having, a few years before, discovered a passage to *Muscovy* through the *White Sea*^q, by which means *Russia* was likely to be supplied with foreign goods, by the way of *Archangel*, without the assistance of *Narva* or the *Poles* (A). The czar granted to the discoverers of this new channel many exclusive privileges; and particularly,

that

^m GEORGE VAN HOFF. ubi supra. ODERB. ubi supra. PIRA. p. 203. ^o Autores citat. ^p G. VAN HOFF. ^q CAMBD. p. 125.

(A) In the year 1553, in the reign of queen *Mary*, three ships were fitted out from England, at the public charge (1), for the discovery of the north-east passage to *China*, and the *Indies*. They were commanded by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, who, departing from the *Thames*, sailed to the *North-Cape*, where one of his ships left him, and returned home. The other two ships being separated, Sir *Hugh*

proceeded farther northward, and discovered that part of *Greenland*, which the *Dutch* have since called *Spitzberg*: but the severity of the cold obliging him to return to the southward, he was forced, by bad weather, into the river *Arzina*, in *Muscovite Lapland*, where, not being able to come out, he was found the next spring frozen to death, with his ship's company; having the notes of his voyage, and his last

(1) *Burchett's Naval History*, p. 341.

one but the incorporated company of *Muscovite* merchants, should bring any goods to or from *Archangel*, or

ing before him, whereby ased that he lived till *Ja-*

But *Richard Chancellor*; hird ship, with better suc- the mean while entered *ays*, where he waited me for his companions, purpose; uncertain whe- ey were lost, or driven by stress of weather. d a council on what he do; whether to return, ne his voyage. What- nger might be in the last, one agreed to it, that ight not seem to have rage than their captain. herefore set sail, and in *ays* found themselves in ere they could no longer : any night. This ship, ing about, entered soon to a large bay or gulph. they cast anchor, in land; and while they amining the coast, they ed a fishing boat. *Chan-* getting into his sloop, wards it; but the fisher- ok to flight. He fol- and overtaking them, them such civilities, as ted their affections, to id they carried him to : where now is the fa- ort of *St. Michael's the* ed. These people im- ly spread through all the n account of the ar- f these strangers, and ame from several parts em, and ask them ques- They, in their turn, ex- the others, and found : country they were in *ussia*, governed by the

mighty emperor *John Basflo-* witz. They learnt also, that an express had been already sent to this prince, to inform him of their arrival, and receive his orders concerning them, which came a few days after; when guides were appointed to conduct them to *Moscow*, where captain *Chancellor* soon had an audience of the emperor, whose court and riches had in them a magnificence beyond any thing he could have imagined. He found *John Basflowitz* distinguished in majesty from an hundred and fifty *bojars*, who encompassed his throne; hardly any thing was to be seen in his great hall, but gold and precious stones; and in another, where the czar invited him to a sumptuous repast, all was of silver, except the buffet, in the middle, in the form of a large pyramid, covered with vessels of gold, of such a prodigious size, that it seemed to bend beneath the weight of them. Here were placed the hydromel, wines, and strong liquors, for the czar's own use.

The favourable reception that captain *Chancellor* met with, encouraged him to make a second voyage thither, four years after; when he brought back with him an ambassador from the czar, with presents to queen *Mary*, and an invitation to settle a trade to those parts: but the ship was cast away on the coast of *Scot-* land, where *Chancellor*, in saving the ambassador, was himself unfortunately drowned.

The History of Russia.

carry on any traffic whatsoever in that place¹. Besides this embassy, which was only to confirm what had been granted before to the subjects of queen *Mary*, *Basilowitz* gave private instructions to *Anthony Jenkinson*, an *Englishman*, then in his dominions, to conclude an alliance offensive and defensive with queen *Elizabeth*, by which she was to supply him with sailors, shipwrights, and ammunition, in case of need; and if he should ever be forced from his throne, either by foreign enemies or domestic rebels, to afford him and his family an asylum in her dominions; which last clause he desired her to confirm with an oath. But *Elizabeth*, to the czar's great mortification, deferred giving any answer to this proposal².

WHILE *Basilowitz* was thus planning the means of a retreat to *England*, in case he should be driven from his throne; the unfortunate *Eric*, king of *Sweden* (A), was soliciting an asylum

¹ CAMB. ubi supra. CL. ADAMI Navigat. Angl. ad Moscov. int. Script. rer. Moscov. p. 142. LORD CARLISLE'S Embassy.
² Idem. ibid.

(A) This prince, as we observed before, had lately solicited the czar to enter into a league with him against *Poland*: but before *Basilowitz* would consent to it, he demanded of *Eric* to deliver up to him, *Catharine*, his brother duke *John*'s wife. *Eric* refusing to comply with so scandalous a request, as his brother was still alive, though in prison, the treaty was suspended for awhile (1). But after the massacre at *Upsal*, in which *Eric* killed several of his nobles with his own hands, he wrote a private letter to the czar, and consented to his demand. *Basilowitz* thereupon sent an ambassador to *Stockholm*, to conclude the proposed alliance between the two crowns, and bring *Catharine* to *Moscow*. Upon the ambassador's arrival, *Eric* was greatly perplexed how to dispose of the duke his brother; but hearing that the *Danes* had penetrated into *Sweden*, and be-

ing apprehensive of a civil war if he should keep him any longer in prison, he ordered him to be removed from *Grypsholm* to *Wistebholm*, where he solemnly engaged to be true to the king his brother (2). *Eric* had no sooner got rid of the *Danes*, than he repented of his conduct to duke *John*, and his other brothers, and resolved to assign them certain lands in *Livonia*, in lieu of their patrimonial districts in *Finnland*; apprehending that he should live more securely by their absence from *Stockholm*, and that they, from motives of interest, would the more effectually defend those places against the *Russians*, *Poles*, and *Danes*: but his brothers not acquiescing in this proposal, he resolved to sacrifice them all to his interest, and particularly to oblige the czar by giving him *Catharine*. The dukes, having intelligence of this resolution, did all they could to prevent its taking

(1) *Puffend.* p. 387.

Laccen. p. 398. 400. *Puffend.* p. 386.

effed;

at *Moscow*; and *Sigismund*, king of *Poland*, had invaded the frontiers of *Russia*, with a numerous army, and invaded *Russia*.

and, tampering with the passions of those who had been sacred at *Upsal*, formed a conspiracy to dethrone *Eric* (3). Accordingly betook themselves to arms, but were soon overthrown by *Eric's* favourer, that the king intended to plunder *Stockholm*, and set it on fire, to embark himself and his treasure at *Wasa*, and from thence fled to *Moscow* (4). This action made them more anxious to advance towards the city, into which they obtained an easy admittance, through the interest with the principal citizens, who perceived the situation of *Eric's* affairs. The soldiers, thinking to be their general duke *John*, immediately to plunder the house of the *Russian* ambassador, but duke *Charles* put a stop to their proceedings, and demanded immediate restitution made of every thing they had taken (5). The next day *Eric* was throned, and succeeded, but *John*, who immediately wrote a letter to *Basilowitz*, informing him of this revolution, and that he intended to conclude a peace with *Denmark*, if he was disposed to do so; adding, that he had been protected both the pernicious effects of his ambassador, the fury of the soldiers; his errand thither was very bad nature; no less than that of depriving him of a wife, and his children of

an affectionate mother. *Basilowitz* was not a little chagrined at this unfavourable event; especially as it frustrated all his hopes of gaining *Catharine*: but, however, he returned the new king a very civil answer, in which he congratulated him upon his accession to the crown, and assured him that he never had any intention of making *Catharine* his consort; but being informed she was a widow, and had no children, his design was to send her from *Moscow* to the king of *Poland*, her brother; and that if he really desired to treat of peace, he might send his ambassadors to *Moscow* for that purpose, after releasing his minister, who had been so long detained at *Stockholm*; which he insisted should be done immediately. After the coronation of *John*, the *Russian* ambassador was dismissed with rich presents, and returned home, accompanied by the *Swedish* ambassadors, who were sent to negotiate the proposed peace: but the moment *John's* ambassador arrived at *Moscow*, *Basilowitz* ordered them to be carried to a prison, and to be detained there just so long as his ambassador had been confined at *Stockholm*. This last transaction having been represented by most of the writers of those times, as a manifest violation of the law of nations, we have given this minute detail of the whole affair, in order to do justice to the character of *Basilowitz*.

² *Puffend. p. 390. seq. Henning Liefst. Chron. p. 48. Russow. Liefst. Chron.*

(4) *Puffend. p. 392. (5) Id. p. 400. Loccen. lib. vii. p. 493.*

Another
conspiracy
against the
czar.

possessed himself of the castles of *Ula*, *Sula*, and several other places. Upon this, *Basilowitz* marched in person against the *Poles*, and entrusted the government of his dominions to a nobleman, called *Iwan Petrowitz*: but upon his return, being informed that *Petrowitz*, together with some bojars^t, had intended to prevent his entrance into his own dominions, and to maintain by force the authority he was invested with; the czar, according to the then *Russian* custom of the sovereign's being himself the executioner of his decrees, ordered *Petrowitz* to be dressed in robes of royalty, and seated upon the throne; where, after an ironical congratulation on his having obtained what he so earnestly wished, and making a sham profession of allegiance and fidelity, he stabbed him to the heart, and left him, weltring in his gore, to the fury of the guards, who soon made an end of him and all his adherents.

A prodigious
army of
Turks
and
Tartars
invade
his
dominions;

THESE troubles were scarcely over, when *Basilowitz* received intelligence, that a considerable armament then making by the *Turks*, was designed against him. *Selim*, the son of *Soliman* the magnificent, and *Roxelana*, had succeeded his father in the year 1565. This prince formed the vast design of subduing all *Tartary*, to wipe off the disgrace of the imprisonment of the sultan *Bajazet*, who had been defeated, and taken in the plain of *Ancyra*, by the famous *Tigur-Bek*, or *Tamerlane*, great khan of the *Tartars*. To this end, *Selim* made an alliance with some princes, who were to send him succours by way of the *Caspian* sea, and raised himself an army of 300,000 men, in which was the flower of the *Janisaries*. These troops embarked at *Constantinople*, crossed the *Black Sea*, and the *Palus Mæotis*, and landed at *Azoph*, where the *Crim Tartars* joined them, with a reinforcement of 40,000 archers^t. This formidable army marched directly towards *Astracan*, where the sultan had made his soldiers expect to find all the treasures of *Armenia*, *Persia*, and *India*; and had given them such an idea of the weakness of all the places in *Tartary*, that they imagined their bare appearance before them would be sufficient to make them surrender.

But are to-
tally de-
feated.

Zerebrinow, who commanded for the czar, was alarmed, and at first somewhat terrified at this multitude of enemies. But collecting together as many troops as he could, among which were several of the *Casan Tartars*, he fell upon them unexpectedly in a defile, where their numbers served only to embarrass them, put them to flight, pursued them a great way, and took all their artillery and baggage. To complete

^t GUAGN. Descr. Mosc. p. 186. ^t LEUENCL. p. 141.

their

their misfortune, their allies were not to be found at the time or place appointed, which last was near the mouth of the *Volga*. The *Russians* and their *Tartars* becoming bold, in proportion to the weakness and timidity of their enemies, followed them on all sides, and obliged them to make a shameful retreat towards *Azoph*, where they found a new subject of sorrow; that great city having been almost entirely overthrown by the blowing up of a magazine of powder. *Zerebrinow* then attacked their ships there, of which he took several with their provisions, and sunk the rest. Thus *Selim* got nothing from this grand enterprize, but loss and disgrace; for almost all his troops that had escaped the *Russian* and *Tartarian* soldiers, perished, either by hunger, or by storms, in crossing the *Black Sea*.

THE joy occasioned by the news of this victory, was *Basilowitz* heightened by the arrival of *M. Randolph* at *Moscow*, in quality of ambassador from queen *Elizabeth* of *England*. *Basilowitz* received him with great distinction, and dismissed him *from*, with many rich presents, attended by *Andrew Grogorowitz* *Sa-* *and sends* *viena*, as his ambassador to the queen of *England*, to whom he *another to*, was to tender a treaty in the *Russian* language, and afterwards *queen Elizabeth* swear to the performance of it; and to request that she would send an ambassador to *Moscow* to see it confirmed by *Basilowitz*, with the usual ceremony of kissing the cross. Queen *Elizabeth* agreed to this treaty, with the restriction of its not being contrary to the tenor of the engagements she had entered into with other powers; and farther assured *Saviena*, that in case the czar, his master, should ever be reduced to the disagreeable necessity of leaving his empire, he should meet with a safe retreat in *England*, be received and provided for in a manner suitable to his dignity, enjoy the free exercise of his own religion, and be permitted to depart whenever he should think proper. This agreement she sealed, and promised to perform, in the presence of the czar's ambassador.

THE *Russian* minister returned to *Moscow* shortly after; but queen *Elizabeth* did not send any one with him to witness the czar's confirmation of the treaty: an omission of ceremony, which *Basilowitz* took so ill, that he wrote the queen a long letter concerning it; telling her, how sensible he was of the slight she had put upon him, and reminding her of the many unsolicited privileges and immunities he had already granted to her subjects; adding, that he could not help construing her present behaviour into great ingratitude; and that

if he was disposed to resent it as he ought to do, he might easily annul all those advantageous concessions which he had formerly made in her favour. This letter produced an answer from *Elizabeth*, which she sent by *Anthony Jenkinson*, and was couched in such terms as satisfied *Basilowitz*, and cemented the good understanding of the two crowns ^b.

His severe
punishment
of Novo-
grad.

Van Hoff^c, *Reutenfels*^k, and several other writers, too violently prejudiced against *John Basilowitz II.* and determined, at all events, to make him pass for the very worst of tyrants, have imputed to mere caprice, and a love of cruelty, the signal punishment which he inflicted about this time on the city of *Novogrod* and its dependent district. History does not, indeed, absolutely point out the particulars of their offence: but an impartial reading of other authors, of at least equal authority, gives great room to think, that, during his absence in his wars, and more especially whilst other plots and conspiracies were forming against him, *Novogrod*, *Pleskow*, and some other places, had resolved to put themselves under the protection of the *Poles*; that the archbishop of *Novogrod* had spirited them up to this revolt; and that the czar's brother, *George*, had encouraged them in it, in hopes of re-establishing the grand-duchy of *Novogrod*, and of obtaining that dignity for himself^l. That a plot of this kind was actually formed, appeared from the confession of doctor *Bromelius* (A), an *English* physician then at *Moscow*, and concerned in it^m: and in consequence of this discovery, the czar's brother and his children were put to deathⁿ. Some writers relate that his end was poor and wretched, whilst others make him die with a noble intrepidity. *Van Uhlefeld*, who was at *Moscow* a few years after, says he perished by poison^p. *Reutenfels* asserts his innocence, and also that of the archbishop of *Novogrod*^q.

To punish *Novogrod* for this intended perfidy^r, *Basilowitz* marched thither with 15,000 men, ravaged the whole coun-

^b Idem, *ibid.* ^c Hist. J. Basilidis. ^k De reb. Moscovit. lib. i. c. 12. ^l PURCHAS, p. 739. JACOB. AB UHLEFELD, *Hodæpor. Ruthen.* ^m ZIEG. ex JER. HORSEY's treatise of Russia, p. 213. ⁿ PETR. p. 220. HEIDENST. de bell. Mok. lib. i. p. 335. inter script. rer Moscov. LAUR. MULLER, Pol. Lief. Chron. p. 114. ^p Hodæpor. Ruthen, p. 14. ^q Ubi supra. ^r UHLEF. *ibid.* p. 26. HEID. ubi supra.

(A) *Van Hoff* calls him *Pharmelius*, and says, he had been a poison-mixer to *Basilowitz*, to help him to destroy his subjects: but, as we observed before, no great credit is due to so embittered a writer.

try round about, forced his way into the city, and gave his soldiers, who were headed by one of their generals, called *Malute*, a man remarkable for his savage disposition, free leave to plunder it; in consequence of which they ransacked every house, church, and cloyster, and committed the most outrageous acts of barbarity. The archbishop was seized, stripped of his church-garb, and clad in a harlequin's dress, in which attire he was seated upon a grey mare, led through the streets as a shew to the populace, and afterwards sent to *Moscow*, where he was imprisoned for life. Some say, that near 3000 people were butchered on this occasion: whilst others, to make the greater shew of cruelty, reckon the number of the slain at upwards of 25,000. Several other places, deemed equally guilty, shared the same fate; and a famine, which came on immediately after, rendered their situation inexpressibly deplorable^b.

Basilowitz's attention was next turned to *Livonia*, for the possession of which the *Swedes*, the *Danes*, and the *Poles*, had been engaged in a long and bloody war. The *Swedish* commander at *Reval*, *Claas Kurfell*, endeavoured to get possession of the *Doobm*, under pretence that he and his soldiers had large arrears of pay due to them; and by the assistance of duke *Magnus* of *Holstein*, and some of the *Livonian* nobility, he was admitted into the citadel, where he soon overpowered the garrison, and made the governor *Gabriel Oxenstiern*, with his wife and children, prisoners. The next day the chief magistrate of *Reval* sent to him, desiring to know the meaning of his proceeding: to which *Kurfell* answered, that he was determined to keep the place, till he and his troops should be paid all their demands. Upon this an agreement was concluded, that he should remain in possession of the castle till the *Whitsunday* following; and that in the mean time application should be made to king *John*, concerning the arrears which he pretended to be due to him and his troops^c. These differences were politically fomented by the czar, who, well knowing that the *Livonians* would never submit to the *Russian* yoke, nor suffer themselves to be governed by a *Swedish* prince, promised to give their province to duke *Magnus* of *Holstein*, to declare him king thereof, and to content himself with the bare title of protector: but his

A. D.
1570.
The
Swedes
become ma-
sters of
Reval.

^b G. VAN HOFF. ubi supra. PETR. p. 210. GUAG. p. 190. ODERB. lib. ii. p. 284. ^c RUSSOUW Lief. Chron. f. 116. b. 109. LOCCEN. lib. vii. p. 408. PUFF. p. 406. CHYT. Saxon. p. 549. NEUGE. lib. vii. p. 628. HENNING. Lief. Chron. p. 50.

Basilowitz real design was to facilitate his own conquest of that country, declares when the *Swedes* and *Danes* should have withdrawn their the duke of forces.

Holstein

king of *Livonia*;

THIS proposal had the desired effect: it pleased the *Livonians* very much; and duke *Magnus* himself was so rejoiced at it, that, having received from *Kursell* the strongest assurances of his surrendering the citadel to him upon his return, he repaired in person to *Moscow*, in order to settle this important affair¹. On his arrival there, *Basilowitz* received him with great friendship, publicly acknowledged him king of *Livonia*, and concluded a treaty with him, by which, for a small annual tribute, he promised to rest satisfied with the title of protector only, to deliver up to him all the castles in his possession, to drive the *Swedes* away, and to protect him in his new kingdom, against all enemies whatsoever: to which he added, that he would renounce his former friendship and alliance with the *Roman* emperor, and shew the greatest favour to all the *Germans* in his kingdom: that *Magnus* should keep *Livonia* as an inheritance to him and his heirs male; and that no *Russian*, of what rank or degree soever, should at any time have any authority, or command therein; and that, in case *Magnus* should die without male issue, the crown should be transferred either to the next branch of the house of *Holstein*, or to that of *Denmark*, and to no other person^m.

WHILE this treaty was in agitation, the soldiers in the town, having discovered that *Kursell's* real intention was to sell that place either to the *Russians* or *Danes*, which ever should offer most, endeavoured to recover possession of the doohm. To this end *Nils Dublare*, one of their captains, having gained over part of the garrison, and found means to make the centinels drunk, on a day appointed, introduced his men through a hole in the wall, and made himself master of the citadel. *Kursell* and his adherents were put to death, and the old *Swedish* governor was re-instatedⁿ.

THE league between *Basilowitz* and king *Magnus* being concluded, the latter sent advice thereof to the *Livonian* nobility, promising them great favours if they would amicably acknowledge him their king, and submit to his government; and threatening them with the severest punishment in case

Of which he prepares to put him in possession by force.

¹ RUSSOUW. *Liefl. Chron.* p. 119. ^m PUFFEND. p. 408. HENNING. *Liefl. Chron.* p. 51. ⁿ RUSSOUW. *Liefl. Chron.* f. 119, & seq. LOCCEN. *ubi supra*. PUFFEND. p. 467. CHYT. *ubi supra*. HENNING. *Liefl. Chron.* p. 50, & seq.

of refusal. But neither his threats, nor his promises, proving effectual, *Basiliowitz* assembled a great army to dislodge the *Swedes*, chastise the *Livonians*, and put *Magnus* in possession of his new kingdom, by force. With this army *Magnus* immediately set forward, and attacked *Reval* and *Wittanslein* ^{*invests*} with great fury; but in the mean time thought fit to write *Reval*; letters to the burghers and inhabitants of *Reval*, informing them, that his only intention was to free them from the *Swedes* and *Poles*, and to unite their scattered provinces under a *German* prince: that the czar had solemnly invested him with sovereign authority over them, and had sent him with a proper force to drive away their worst of enemies; and that he therefore desired them to surrender peaceably to him, as to a *German* duke; for that otherwise he should be under a necessity of establishing himself, by means which would inevitably ruin their country. Though this requisition was seconded by several letters from such of the *Livonian* nobility as were in *Russia*, advising their countrymen at *Reval* to acknowledge duke *Magnus* for their sovereign, no answer was returned to it; the commandant *Gabriel de Moerby*, and most of the principal inhabitants, having agreed to defend the place to the last extremity, rather than submit to the czar, or any other person whom he should nominate^b: thinking that he would use them in the same manner as his father *Basilus* had treated *Michael Gliniski*, after the conquest of *Smolensko*. They, therefore, sallied out upon the besiegers several times, with great success; and, being well supplied with all necessaries by king *John*, the siege advanced but slowly; but is obliged to raise the siege. so that *Magnus*, after having lain a considerable time before the place, and lost a great number of his troops, was at last obliged to raise the siege, set fire to his camp, and depart^c.

THIS bad success was followed by misfortunes of still worse consequence; for about this time a terrible pestilence raged over the *Russian* dominions, and swept away vast numbers of people^f. An attempt was also made by some of the *Livonian* nobility, whom *Basiliowitz* had advanced to considerable posts, to seize the strong city of *Dorpt*; but being repulsed in the execution of their enterprise, they fled into *Poland*: and the *Crim Tartars*, by the persuasion of the

^b RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. f24, & seq. LOCCEN. p. 409. CHYT. ubi supra. HENNING, Lief. Chron. p. 51. ^c CHYT. p. 597. LOCCEN. p. 410. HENNING. Lief. Chron. p. 52. RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 124, & seq. ^f ODERB. lib. iii. p. 292. ^g CHYT. ubi supra. HENNING. Lief. Chron. p. 52. RUSSOUW. p. 137.

*Invasion
by the
Crim
Tartars,*

*who plunder
and
burn Mos-
cow.*

*The Tar-
tars retire,
and Basi-
lowitz
makes a
truce with
Poland.*

Poles, suddenly invaded *Russia* with an army of 70,000 men: The *Russians* might, indeed, have prevented their passing the *Wolga* and *Occa*; but their commanders in those parts not having orders to that effect, the *Tartars* pursued their march, and the *Russians* retreated, till they came within eighteen leagues of *Moscow*; where, making a stand, they were totally defeated^b. When *Basilowitz* heard of this, he packed up his most valuable effects, and, together with his two sons, took refuge in a well fortified cloister; which the *Tartars* were no sooner informed of, than they entered the city of *Moscow*, plundered it, and set fire to several churches. A violent storm, which happened at the same time, soon spread the flames all over the cityⁱ, which was entirely reduced to ashes in less than six hours, though its circumference was then upwards of forty miles^k. The fire likewise communicated itself to a powder-magazine at some distance from the city, by which accident upwards of fifty rods of the city-wall, with all the buildings thereon, were also destroyed; and by the concurrent testimony of the best historians, upwards of 120,000 citizens were burnt, or buried in the ruins, besides women, children, and foreigners^l. The castle, however, which was strongly fortified, held out to the last; and the *Tartars*, for want of proper materials, could not attempt to reduce it by force^m. The distressed *Basilowitz*, upon hearing this dismal news, thought proper to retire from the cloister to *Jaroslaw*; and the *Tartars*, being soon after informed, that duke *Magnus* was coming against them with a numerous army, would not venture to penetrate any farther into the country, but retired, laden with immense riches and many prisoners of great distinction; having first sent a naked sabre to the czar, with this message, that he should look upon it as a token left him by an enemy, whose revenge was still unsatisfied, and who would soon return again to compleat the work which he had as yet scarcely begunⁿ.

AFTER the retreat of the *Tartars*, *Basilowitz* held a council of war, to enquire into the conduct of his officers and troops during the late invasion; and those generals who had declined facing the enemy, were ordered to be put to death, their estates confiscated, and the troops under their command

^b G. VAN HOFF. ubi supra. ⁱ HORSEY's treatise of Russia. CHYT. Chron. Livon. p. 133. G. VAN HOFF. ubi supra. THUAN. ad an. 1571. RUSS. Lief. Chron. p. 135. FLETCH. p. 157. ^k PETR. Mosc. Chron. p. 7. ^l VAN HOFF. ubi supra. ^m CHYT. Saxon. p. 603. ⁿ VAN HOFF. ubi supra.

were disbanded ¹. These accumulated misfortunes did not, however, depress the spirits, or subdue the courage of the czar. On the contrary, having concluded a three years truce with his mortal enemy *Sigismund* king of *Poland* ^k, he rejected, with disdain, the overtures of a peace made to him at the same time by *John* king of *Sweden* ^m; who, being apprehensive that, as the *Tartars* had retreated from *Russia*, the czar would turn his arms against *Sweden*, caused the imprisoned king *Eric* to be removed from *Abo* to *Grypsholm*, and from thence to *Örby*, where he placed a very strong guard over him, and ordered him to be narrowly watched, to prevent *Basilowitz's* rescuing him from his confinement ⁿ.

Basilowitz intending to make some farther use of duke *Ravages Magnus* in his design upon *Livonia*, sent for him to *Moscow*, *Finland* with a splendid retinue, in order to concert a proper plan of *and Livonia* operations ^o. The truce he had lately concluded with the *Poles*, together with the death of their king *Sigismund*, which happened shortly after, seemed greatly to favour the execution of his scheme, as there now was little reason to apprehend any disturbances on the side of *Poland* for some years ^p. Under these favourable circumstances he resolved to employ the utmost of his force against the *Swedes*; and having assembled two very powerful armies, he sent one to invade *Finland*, and the other to attack *Livonia*. The former of these armies ravaged the country without opposition, and returned home laden with spoils; whilst the arrival of the other in *Livonia* was so sudden and unexpected, that *Basilowitz*, who headed it, soon became master of the important fortresses of *Wittenstein*, where he put the whole garrison to the sword ^q. He did the same at *Nenhoff*; and having conquered *Karchu-tenstein*, *sen*, he returned, with part of his army, to *Novogrod*. The *and several* rest, to the number of 16,000, marched into *Esthonia*, *and several* where the *Swedish* general, *Claas Ackeson*, with only 600 *places:* horse and 1000 foot, attacked and routed them, killed 7000 *but is de-* of their men, and forced the survivors to retire, after losing all *feated* their baggage ^r. *by the Swedes.*

THIS defeat had such an effect upon *Basilowitz*, that he wrote a very mild letter to the king of *Sweden*, expressing a

¹ HORSEY, & CHYT. ubi supra. ^k GUAG. p. 365. ap. Puff. tom ii. ^m HEID. de bello Mos. lib. v. p. 414. ⁿ PUFF. p. 414. ^o HENN. Liefl. Chron. p. 54. RUSS. Liefl. Chron. p. 140. ^p HENN. ubi supra. NEUGE. lib. viii. p. 640. ^q CHYT. SAXON. p. 618. HENN. Liefl. Chron. p. 54. LOCCEN. p. 413. ^r PUFF. 416. LOCCEN. p. 413. HENN. Liefl. Chron. p. 147.

Magnus
married to
a relation
of Basilow-
witz.

The
Swedes
continue to
harass the
Russians.

A. D.
1574.

Who take
Pernau
and other
places in
Livonia.

The Livo-
nians sell
some fort-
resses to the
Danes.

desire to make peace^p. In the mean-time he concluded a match between the pretended king of *Livonia*, *Magnus*, and *Maria*, a relation of his at *Novogrod*; and was so well pleased at the celebration of these nuptials; that he is said to have sung part of the ceremony himself, and to have beat time to the musicians by striking on their backs¹. The *Swedish* monarch, however, being somewhat elated with the success of his troops, and willing to rid himself effectually of so dangerous an enemy as *Basilowitz*; not only refused to listen to the proposed peace, but sent *Pontus de la Gardie* into *Livonia*, with 5000 *Scots*, who harried the czar to such a degree, that he again applied for peace, and desired a truce in the mean time^k. But the two kings differing about the place where their ministers should meet, the czar insisting on *Novogrod*, and *John* on the borders of *Soesterbeck*, the war was begun afresh, and each side acted with the utmost vigour.

The *Swedes* laid siege to *Wesenburg* and *Telsburg*; but after losing a great number of men, they contented themselves with plundering all the places they could, and then retired. The *Lubeckers*, who had formerly assisted *Basilowitz* in the affair of *Narva*, were particularly punished; *John* taking from them sixteen of their largest and richest ships. On the other hand, the *Russian* troops attacked the *Swedish* and *German* dragoons in their camp, and made a great slaughter of them, ravaged *Livonia*, and made themselves masters of *Pernau*, which they treated with such lenity, as induced several other places to submit to king *Magnus*¹.

DURING these transactions, the nobility of *Livonia*, in conjunction with the *German* dragoons, sold to the *Danes*, the castles of *Hafel*, *Lobe*, and *Lebal*, which the king of *Sweden* had given the dragoons as a security for the payment of 80,000 florins, due to them for arrears of pay^b; and in consequence of this sale *Nicolas Van Ungarn*, the *Danish*

^p PUFFEND. ubi supra. ¹ HENNING. Lief. Chron. p. 56. RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 148. ^k PUFFEND. p. 416. LOCCEN. p. 413. CHYT. ubi supra. RUSSOUW. p. 149. ¹ HENN. Lief. Chron. ubi supra. PUFFEND. p. 418. RUSSOUW. p. 166. ^b CHYT. Saxon. p. 622.

(A) *Laur. Muller* is mistaken in saying, that she was the daughter of *Basilowitz's* brother (1). She was the daughter of *Andrew*, nephew of *George*, who was brother to *Basilus the Blind*, which last was the grandfather of *Basilowitz* (2).

(1) P. 114. (2) *Clytr. Genalog.* p. 618. *Petrus.* and *Henning.* p. 147.

adholder at *Oesel*, took possession of them. About the same me, duke *Magnus* of *Saxe-Lauenburgh*, who had married *ophia*, sister to the king of *Sweden*^m, arrived at *Sonenburgh*, of which he took possession as a fief from his brother-in-law. This occasioned a dispute between him and the *Danish* governor of *Oesel*, whom the duke imprisoned, but released soon after. The *Swedes* not attempting to retake *Pernau*, the *Russians* remained possessors of the place, and granted to such of its inhabitants as chose to withdraw, passports for themselves and their effects: but duke *Magnus* of *Saxe-Lauenburgh*, under pretence that they had not acted properly in the defence of the city, plundered them, and sent them prisoners to *Stockholm*ⁿ.

Basilowitz now desiring peace more than ever, agreed that his ambassador should treat with those of *Sweden* at *Soesterbeck*; but several difficulties arising, the congress ended in concluding a truce for two years, in favour of *Finland* only. This no ways displeased the czar; as having nothing to fear from that quarter, he had the better hopes of conquering *Livonia*. In the mean time, the emperor *Maximilian II.* whom some of the *Poles* had elected for their king, sent ambassadors to *Basilowitz*, to offer his mediation in regard to the proposed peace between *Russia* and *Sweden*: but the *Swedes* were so peremptory in their demands, that nothing could be done^o. The czar, in consequence of the truce for *Finland*, turned his arms against the *Danes*, and took from them the lately acquired castles of *Hafel*, *Lobe*, and *Lehal*, with several other places. The king of *Denmark* complained bitterly of the injustice of this action; but was answered by *Basilowitz*, that as those castles belonged to his enemies the *Swedes*, he thought himself sufficiently warranted in his proceedings against them^p.

ABOUT this time, the *Poles* elected *Stephen Battori*, chief magistrate of *Siebenburgen*, a man of a warlike disposition, for their king: and to prevent the emperor *Maximilian's* counteracting this election, they hastened the coronation as much as possible^q. This event was highly pleasing to *Basilowitz*, who, by espousing the emperor's claim, hoped to reap considerable advantages in his designs upon the *Swedes*. He therefore sent ambassadors to *Maximilian*, offering to assist

A. D.
1576.

A truce
concluded
in favour
of Fin-
land.

Basilowitz
takes the
fortresses
lately ceded
to the
Danes.

Stephen
Battori
chosen king
of Poland.

^m PUFFEND. p. 393. ⁿ RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 166.
HENNING. Lief. Chron. p. 57. CHYTR. SAXON. p. 625. THUA.
ad AN. 1575. p. 51. edit. Germ. ^o HENN. p. 57. ^p CHYTR.
SAXON. p. 625. ^q NEUGEGB. lib. ix. p. 633. HENN. p. 58.

him

him against the new elected king of *Poland*, who, he said, having obtained the crown by means of the grand enemy of the christian powers, the *Turk*, was not worthy to wear it; desiring him to take the *Poles* under his protection, and offering to restore part of *Livonia* to him on that account. This embassy was very acceptable to *Maximilian*, who thankfully acknowledged the czar's generosity, and promised to return the favour whenever it should be in his power. The advantage which the emperor proposed to himself by this connexion with *Basilowitz*, was, that if he attacked the *Poles* with one great army, and the czar should second him with another, king *Stephen* would be unable to withstand their joint forces, and be the more easily induced to resign his crown. On the other hand, the czar imagined that the *Poles*, being engaged with the emperor, would not be able to frustrate his intention of conquering *Livonia*.

Sends an embassy to the czar, to propose peace.

SOON after, king *Stephen* sent an embassy to *Moscow*, to notify his election to the *Polish* crown, and either by an absolute truce, or a protracted treaty, to keep the czar from attempting any thing against *Livonia*; intimating, that whatever differences subsisted between them, might be then amicably compromised, if *Basilowitz* was as pacifically disposed as he was. *Basilowitz* answered, that though the emperor, with whom he was in league, had been chosen king of *Poland*; yet he was no ways averse to living in peace with *Stephen*, and should therefore be glad if he would send ambassadors to examine into, and accommodate the differences between them; and that in the mean time he would refrain from all acts of hostility against the *Poles*.

The Russians invade Livonia.

IN the mean while, he sent a body of 1500 *Tartars* into *Finland*, to make a false alarm in that country, and an army of 50,000 men into *Livonia*, to besiege *Reval*; to frighten the inhabitants of which, he caused it to be reported, that he himself was at the head of his troopsⁿ. The *Russians* accordingly invested the city, and continued to bombard it for six weeks: but the besieged, who were well supplied with necessaries, made a brave and resolute defence; and by their frequent and successful sallies, so weakened the *Russian* army, that they were obliged to raise the siege^o; which they were the rather induced to do, as their general *Iwan Koltzoff*, who had sworn to the czar, that if he did not gain possession of

ⁿ RUSSOUW. p. 186. ^o PUFFEND. p. 433. HENN. Lief. Chron. p. 61. LOCCEN. p. 418. RUSSOUW. Lief. Chron. p. 174

Reval, he would never see his face again, was unfortunately killed by a cannon ball from the garrison ^k.

NOTWITHSTANDING this bad success, the czar was resolved not to close the campaign without gaining some advantage; and therefore, putting himself at the head of his army, he encamped near *Pleskow*, from whence he sent for king *Magnus* to meet him. This new sovereign of *Livonia* was suspected of having treacherously endeavoured to persuade the king of *Poland*, and the princes of *Prussia* and *Courland*, to engage in a war against *Basilowitz*, who, being informed of it, severely reproached *Magnus* with ingratitude; but this last having found means to appease him, he not only treated him with great distinction, but entered into an agreement with him, that the places which they should respectively conquer, should be equally divided; that *Magnus* should have the city of *Wenden*, and all that lay on the other side of the *Aal*, and that the czar should have the rest; but that in case any other places should surrender to *Magnus*, he should have no right to them without the czar's consent. Soon after this agreement, *Magnus* returned to *Livonia*, where he was informed, upon his arrival at *Ermis*, that the city of *Wenden* was willing to surrender to him, as it accordingly did soon after, and that day he took possession of the castle and city, and received an oath of fidelity from the inhabitants ^l.

IN the mean time *Basilowitz* broke up his camp before *Pleskow*, and treated all the places he passed thro' with great mildness, except such as belonged to baron *Van Dauben*, who was one of those that attempted to seize *Dorpt*, but upon meeting with a repulse, had taken refuge in *Poland*. While the czar was thus engaged, the inhabitants of *Kackenhausen*, sent to king *Magnus*, desiring to put themselves under his subjection. *Magnus* being sensible, that, according to the late treaty concluded with the czar at *Pleskow*, he could not comply with this request without his consent, sent a messenger to *Basilowitz*, to acquaint him therewith, and receive his directions: but before he had any answer, he ventured not only to grant their request, but also published a writing, which he distributed there and in the adjacent places, warning them against the designs of the *Russians*, and informing them, that he acted solely for the benefit of the kingdom of *Poland*, and the grand duchy of *Lithuania*, to whom those places properly belonged: upon which they readily received his garrisons, and threw themselves upon his protection.

^k Id. p. 179, 186. ^l HENNING. Lief. Chron. p. 61.

*Basilow-
witz's re-
venge.*

*His noble
behaviour
towards
Magnus,*

*and just
indigna-
tion a-
gainst the
people of
Wenden.*

*Their def-
perate re-
solution.*

Basilowitz being acquainted with these proceedings before the arrival of *Magnus's* messenger, who was dilatory in his journey, set out immediately for *Kackenhausen*, where he imprisoned the burghers, and put to the sword those whom king *Magnus* had sent thither, but permitted the *Lithuanians* to depart quietly. In the mean time, some of *Magnus's* troop had taken one of the czar's officers, named knéz *Alexander Polubensky*, who had a large sum of money with him, and detained him prisoner. *Basilowitz* sent several expresses to *Magnus*, to demand this nobleman, but in vain; whereupon he marched from *Kackenhausen* to *Wenden*, and represented to the inhabitants how ill *Magnus* had used him, and how manifestly he had violated the treaty of *Pleskow*: but they endeavouring to excuse their master, the czar immediately laid siege to the place, till, at the earnest request of the citizens, *Magnus*, with only a few attendants, went into the czar's camp, and falling on his knees, begged pardon for himself and the city. *Basilowitz* no sooner saw the king of *Lithuania* thus prostrate before him, than he dismounted from his horse, and desired him to rise, returned him his sword, and after reproaching him with the ingratitude of his late conduct, freely pardoned him and the city, and assured them of his future protection. At this instant, a cannon-ball from the castle narrowly missed killing the czar; which so incensed him, that he mounted his horse and rode away directly, swearing by St. *Nicolas*, that for this fresh instance of perfidy, every person in *Wenden* should suffer death. *Magnus* was then put under arrest in a farm-house, and obliged to sign an obligation, by which he engaged to pay the czar 40,000 *Hungarian* florins by the next *Christmas*, as a satisfaction for the money taken from *Polubensky*; and in case of failure of payment at that time, to forfeit double the sum, and remain a prisoner at *Moscow* till the whole should be discharged. This account, delivered by a writer of veracity, shews the falsity of what has been asserted by others, who, out of enmity to *Basilowitz*, say, that *Magnus* was forced to creep upon his knees upwards of a thousand paces, before the czar would look at him; that this last spit several times in his face; and that the *Russians*, afterwards, beat him unmercifully with sticks. The troops in the castle of *Wenden*, alarmed at *Magnus's* not returning, and imagining that *Basilowitz* was meditating some fatal design both against him and them; assembled, received the sacrament, and then

blew up the citadel and all that were in it^o. *Wolmar* and several other places submitted soon after^p. In the course of this campaign, *Basilowitz* made himself master of all the towns north of the *Duina*, except *Riga*, *Treyden*, and *Reval*. After this success, *Basilowitz* returned to *Dorpt*, where he told the imprisoned *Magnus*, who was brought before him, that he had formerly entertained the highest esteem for him, and as a proof of it, had given him one of his relations in marriage; but that, by his late perfidious behaviour, he had forfeited that esteem, and did not deserve the least indulgence: notwithstanding which, he would still permit him to go to his consort at *Kackenbausen*, and advise him to be more faithful for the future^q. After *Magnus* was thus dismissed, the czar returned to *Moscow*, being apprehensive of another visit from the *Tartars*^r.

THIS retreat gave the *Livonians* fresh spirits, and they exerted their utmost strength to recover the places which the czar had garrisoned. *Wenden* was taken by surprize, and the *Russian* troops were treated with great barbarity. *Dunburgh*, and several other castles in the neighbourhood, shared the same fate^s; which so intimidated the *Russians* in *Overpelen*, that they voluntarily surrendered that city: but soon after, recollecting the risk they run from the resentment of their master, they again made themselves masters of it. The *Swedes* then fell upon the *Russians*, who had laid siege again to *Wenden*; and with the assistance of the *Poles*, under the command of *Andrew Sapieha*, killed above 6000 of them, took a great number of prisoners with all their baggage, and obliged the rest to seek their safety by flight. This so incensed *Basilowitz*, that he resolved to carry his arms not only into *Livonia*, but also into *Courland* and *Prussia*^t. To this end he concluded a truce with the *Tartars*^u, and accommodated all differences between him and the *Danes*; though the *Danish* ambassador so far exceeded his commission in this affair, that upon his return to *Denmark* he was disgraced^w. These affairs being settled, *Basilowitz* assembled an army of 100,000 men, which he sent against *Pleskow*; and in the

The Livonians, Swedes, and Poles gain advantages over the Russians.

^o HEID. lib. i. p. 327. ODERB. lib. i. p. 255. PETR. p. 190. ^p LAUR. MULLER, Pol. Hist. p. 46. Account of Li-

vonian. ^q HENN. p. 66. PETR. p. 193. ^r HENN. p. 67.

^s JACOB AB UHLEF. Hodæporicon Ruthenicum, p. 13. 42.

^t HEID. de Mosc. bello, lib. i. p. 328. HENN. p. 61. LAUR.

MULLER, Pol. & Liefl. Hist. p. 45. & seq. ^u PUFF. p. 439.

HEID. p. 338. NEUGEBO. lib. x. p. 673. ^w PUFF.

ubi supra.

mean time, *Magnus* perceiving that his affairs in *Livonia* were in a very precarious situation, went over to the king of *Poland*, in order to engage him to enter *Russia* with a powerful army, and thereby oblige the czar to withdraw the greatest part of his forces for the defence of his own dominions. King *Stephen* desired *Nicolas Radzivil*, the chief magistrate of *Courland*, to treat with *Magnus*, and assure him of the friendship of *Poland*, on condition that he should hold his castles as fiefs from its king, or exchange them with him for other places². This treaty being concluded, *Stephen* attacked the *Russian* frontiers; and though the czar sent ambassadors to him to prevent his farther proceedings, yet because they would not make a formal enquiry after *Stephen's* health, before they entered upon business, the *Polish* ministry would not treat with them; so that they returned back to *Moscow* without success².

1579.
Against
whom the
Poles de-
clare war
in an ex-
traordi-
nary man-
ner.

In the beginning of the next year, *Stephen Battori*, having made a treaty of alliance with the *Swedes*, by consent of the diet of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, raised an army to attack *Russia* in earnest; to retake what *Poland* claimed; and to put an end to this war, which had lasted too long. His hopes of success were raised by a reverse of fortune, which the czar had just experienced in *Livonia*; where the *Swedes*, assisted by some *Germans* and *Polanders*, had retaken *Wenden*: an event which greatly dispirited the *Russians*. However, not to do any thing irregular, *Stephen* determined first to demand satisfaction from *Bastowitz*, by an embassy; and, in case of refusal, to declare war in form against the *Russians*, before he attacked their territories.

Basil Lapotinski was chosen ambassador for this purpose, and sent with a numerous train of nobility^b. He was received on the frontier with all the honours due to his character; but when he was advanced farther into the country, and his errand known, he had much ado to get safe to *Moscow*. When there, having declared that he should go to his audience with a drawn sabre before him, and being told that an attempt to enter the imperial palace, in that manner, might cost him his life; he answered, that the czar was master of his life, but that nothing should hinder him from acquitting himself of his duty with the utmost exactness. Accordingly, when the day of audience came, he was

² JACOB AB UHLEF. Epist. ad Goldastum. BAYLE Dict. Hist. & Brit. sub. voce Uhlefeld. ^a HENN. f. 68.. HBID. lib. i. p. 332. NEUG. lib. x. p. 671. ^b HEID. lib. i. p. 338, 340. NEUG. lib. x. p. 674.

conducted to the palace, his master of the horse carrying his sabre naked before him. The czar, clothed in a robe covered with diamonds and pearls, received him in a magnificent hall. *Lapotinski*, after saluting him in the *Polish* manner, made a speech, in which he demanded reparation for all the injuries done to *Poland* by the *Russians*; adding, that, in case of refusal, the king, his master, would be obliged to do himself justice: with which words, he presented to the czar a letter from *Stephen*, to the same effect, and a scymeter.

Bafilowitz, after reading this letter, which was written in the *Russian* language, and sealed with a seal of gold, answered, that he was not so susceptible of fear, as at the sight of such menaces, to abandon his dominions to *Poland*; and that those who had so often vanquished the *Poles* and the *Livonians*, who had subdued the *Tartars* of *Casan* and *Astracan*, and triumphed over the forces of the *Ottoman* empire, would make king *Stephen* repent of his rash undertaking. He then took leave of the ambassador, and ordered him to be treated with the respect due to his high station. So true it is, that virtue commands respect, even in an enemy: for the czar regarded the law of nations less than the noble intrepidity of *Lapotinski*.

WAR being thus declared, each side made great preparations. The czar, besides augmenting his troops, reinforcing his garrisons, and erecting magazines in all necessary places, excited the *Crim Tartars* to invade *Poland*: but *Stephen* was first in the field, with volunteers of all nations, who were willing to learn the art of war under so renowned a commander.

THE stress of the war was directed against *Poloczkow*, the avenues to which *Stephen* took possession of, whilst his general *Radzivil* sent a trumpet to summon the *Russian* garrison to surrender. No regard was paid to this message; and, in the mean time, the *Polish* troops, while they waited his return, began to seize on *Kosian*, *Sitno*, and *Krasny*. The king arriving soon after with the heavy artillery, opened the siege of *Poloczkow*. *Their conquests.*

THE czar, more intent upon defending his possessions than aiming at new conquests, was encamped under *Pleskow*; from whence, however, a detachment of *Russians* crossing the *Duina*, made an unexpected incursion into *Semigallia*, where they took a prodigious booty^d. On the other hand,

^c ODERB. in vit. *Basilid.* lib. iii. p. 294.

NEUGEB. p. 674.
p. 677.

^d HENN. p. 69.

HEID. ubi supra.

NEUGEB. lib. x.

the *Poles* sent parties into *Russia*, on the side of *Smolen*, where they put all to fire and sword, and even burn suburbs of that city. A detachment, commanded by *Oski* and *Michael Wiefnowieski*, passed the *Dnieper*, and an irruption as far as *Petzop*, *Radhost*, and *Starodub*, whence they carried off considerable plunder.

IN the mean time the siege of *Poloczkw* was pushed considerable vigour, and the besieged made an equally defence. *Basilowitz*, from time to time, sent several detachments, which endeavoured to throw themselves into town, but with little success. The trenches had been eighteen days, when *Stephen* ordered fire to be set to a out-works of the place. This order was executed with determined bravery, that many of the *Polish* soldiers rushed through the flames to attack the enemy. The *frans*, astonished at this resolution, made a feint of capitulation in hopes of gaining time to throw up a new intrenchment whilst the flames concealed them from the besiegers. *Stephen*, who penetrated their design, ordered that no quarter should be given them, day or night. At length, seeing their works destroyed about the town, and the *Poles* in possession of an eminence which commanded them, they the capitulated. *Stephen*, who wanted not to shed blood, who had an interest in preserving this fortress as much as possible, granted its inhabitants life and liberty, received to his troops such as were willing to enlist with him, and permitted the rest to retire to the *Russian* army. A great quantity of cannon and ammunition was found in the place, with it were taken some prisoners of distinction, who opposed the surrender of the town: among these was archbishop of *Wielkiluki*^e.

THE taking of *Poloczkw* was followed by the submission of *Turowla*, *Susa*, and *Socola*^f. The two first surrendered immediately, upon offering the garrisons liberty to take with their arms and baggage. *Sokol*, a fort situated between the *Dressse* and the *Neyffe*, in the way from *Poloczkw* to *Pleskow*, made some resistance. Besides the usual garrison *Theodore Basilowitz Czeremetow*, who had attempted to throw himself into *Poloczkw* with a detachment of troops and several *Russian* lords, was retired into this fort, and a thousand well disciplined militia remained under the command of the place. The *Poles*, however, made their approach in form, and by throwing a few red-hot-bullets into

^e LAUR. MULLER, *Pohln. Liefl. Hist.* p. 48. ^f NEU-
p. 688 & 694.

town, all the buildings and fortifications of which were of wood, set it on fire in several places. The flames spread with such rapidity, that the garrison and people, reduced to the dismal alternative of perishing by fire, or opening themselves a passage through the besiegers, attempted this last, but were forced back into the midst of the conflagration, where they made signals to surrender, and demanded quarter: but the German soldiers not understanding their language, and the Poles, irritated by the late obstinate resistance of the garrison of *Poloczkow*, refusing to listen to them, they made a fresh sally, and were again repulsed by their enemies, who followed them quite into the place. At that instant, a centinel upon the gate let fall the port-cullis, by which means both parties were shut up in the town, in the midst of the flames. A dreadful battle then ensued: 4000 *Russians* perished in the fort, which was reduced to ashes, and almost as many were taken prisoners, among whom were *Czeremetow*, and several other officers of distinction^s. The Poles then entered the *Russian* territories, where all submitted to king *Stephen*; who at length put an end to this campaign, in order to assist at the diet of *Warsaw*.

Basilowitz, beginning to despair of success in this war, *Basilowitz* retired to *Novogrod*, from whence he made some of his principal nobles write to the palatine of *Wilna*, to sound him, if there might not be some means found to bring the king to listen to terms of peace; to accelerate which he offered, though contrary to the custom of his ancestors, to send ambassadors to *Poland*^h. *Stephen* was also desirous of peace, but could not, with honour, consent it, while the *Russians* kept *Livonia*; especially as, besides the cession made of that province to the crown of *Poland* by the knights of the cross, king *Magnus*, who had put himself under the protection of the *Polish* monarch, had likewise transferred to him all the rights he had to it, either by the investiture of the czar, or by the oath its inhabitants had taken to him. It was therefore resolved in the diet, though not without strong opposition, that the war should be continued against *Russia*.

THE *Polish* army, with the additional strength of two considerable bodies of *German* and *Hungarian* auxiliaries, took the field early in the next year, and laid siege to *Wielizuki*, one of the keys of *Russia*, situated on an eminence in the midst of marshes, covered on one side by a lake, and on

^s HEID. ubi supra. NEUGE. p. 674.
lib. x. p. 694.

^h NEUGE.

the other by the *Lowat* (A). This city, in which was a numerous garrison, well provided with all sorts of store, not be reduced without setting it on fire, by which most of its people perished: its governor was master of the *Hungarians*, and all the country round about waste; the licentious soldiers thinking themselves authorized to commit every kind of barbarity^a. *Wielicz* and *Torpiecz*, two important posts on the *Duna*, were taken with little difficulty. The garrison of *Torpiecz* surrendered, on condition that they should retire to *Novogrod*; but those of *S.* a fortress on the *Wielka*, between *Wielkiluki* and *Plesk*, refusing to capitulate, were put to the sword. *Zickury* delivered up to the *Polish* general, *Radziwil*, upon giving its inhabitants leave to retire elsewhere. Thus they extended their conquests as far as *Porckow* and *Ophen*, which are but about seventy wersts from *Pleskow*; and *Ophen* had also a great inclination to attack this last place, not being sufficiently provided for an enterprize of importance, and the season being by this time far advanced, it was thought more adviseable to defer this siege till the next campaign, and in the mean time to assemble the diet in order to obtain the necessary succours.

*Fruitless
project of
the Poles
to seize the
czar's
treasure.*

ABOUT this time some *Poles* proposed, with the aid of the *Swedes* and *Danes*, to surprise the monastery of *Ilmen* on the *White Sea*, where the czar's principal treasure was deposited, and which they were informed was but weakly defended. *Laurence Muller*, whom we have frequently had occasion to mention, and whose account^b we follow here, was sent to view to both these nations, the latter of which declined the proposal, on account of their not being at war with the *Russians*. The king of *Sweden*, whose brother-in-law, *John*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, had tried before to persuade him in the same expedition, at first listened to it readily, offering ships and troops: but, upon farther consideration, thinking the distance too great, or the expence too large, the success doubtful, or having, perhaps, other uses

^a NEUGE. 699, 734.
Resp. Moscow. 333.

^b Account of Livonia,
^c Pohn. Lief. Hist. p. 51.

(A) *Wielkiluki* lies in the province of *Rzeva*, 120 wersts on the north of *Witynsk*, and at the same distance south from *Novogrod Weliki*, from which it is separated by forests, plains, and the great river *men*. *Pleskow* is 180 distant from it on the west.

marine, he altered his mind; so that nothing came of this project.

Basflowitz, sensible that his troops were not so well appointed as those of the *Poles*, whom he hoped to weary out by avoiding a decisive battle, contented himself with putting good garrisons in such places as he judged they would attack, in order to make them lose time in those sieges, whilst his emissaries endeavoured to sow dissensions among them in their own country; and to spirit up an insurrection in *Lithuania*. This scheme failing, he returned to *Moscow*, where, to divert the attention of the people from his misfortunes, and make them think that the *Polish* war gave him but little Marriage concern, he spent his time in feasts and diversions, was of the czar married for the seventh time, and assisted at the nuptials of and his his eldest son *John Iwanowitz* ^d. son.

He was, however, mistaken, both in imagining that he could blind his subjects, and in thinking that the republic of *Poland*, unable to support the expences of the war for any length of time, must either continue it so faintly that he should find himself in a condition to fall upon them, or that they must at last desire a peace, which he would agree to on their own terms, in order to make war again, when a more favourable opportunity should offer; for the fatal consequences of an agreement entered into by the *Swedes* and *Poles*, stipulating, that they should act separately, and keep *Swedes* for themselves what each other should conquer ^e, soon shewed the *Russians* the dangers they were threatened with; and *Poles*. *League between the Swedes and the Poles.*

Basflowitz received such advice from his spies in *Poland*, a set of men by whom this czar was always remarkably well served, as fully convinced him, that *Stephen* would not be satisfied with any thing less than the recovery of *Pleskow*, and that he was making all necessary preparations to carry his point. The king of *Sweden*, on his side, sent a large army under the command of his son-in-law, *Pontus de la Gardie*, who, late as it was in the year (A), invested *Kexholm*, and made himself master of that strong fortress and its dependencies ^f; after which, entering *Livonia*, he reduced the castle and abbey of *Padis* to such distress of hunger, that the *Russian* garrison was so enfeebled as to be scarcely able to meet him at *the* *Swedes gain great advantages over the Russians.*

^d NEUGE. p. 735. THUAN. ad an. 1580. ex HEID. lib. iii. 1581.
^e PUFFEND. p. 443. LAUR. MULLER, p. 56.
^f PUFFEND. ubi supra. LOCCEN. p. 422.

(A) The beginning of November.

the

the gates to make their surrender^a. *Wajenberg*, *Tely Lode*, *Tickel*, and several other places, submitted to him with little resistance; and early in the spring he invested *P* which the king his master had attacked, to no purpose, years before. This general, by promising his soldiery plunder of it for twenty-four hours, induced them to do it with so much fury, that they soon carried it, and cut a thousand *Russians* in pieces. From *Narwa* they went to *Novogorod*, which surrendered by capitulation. *Jumogor Coporio* did the same^b. The *Swedes* afterwards going to *Novogorod*, turned on a sudden upon *Wittenstein* in *L* which they took, and from thence proceeded to *Pern* which they laid siege^c.

Basilowitz desires the mediation of the pope.

Basilowitz, thus distressed, and knowing the pope's desire to repair the breaches which *Calvin* and *Luther* had made in the church of *Rome*, applied to *Gregory XIII.* for his mediation, and promised, that, if he made peace between him and *Poland*, he would submit the church of *Russia* to the Holy See. This bait was too tempting for the pope not to bite at. The jesuit *Possevin* was ordered to go immediately to the king of *Poland*, and endeavour to oblige him, by the obedience owed to the church, to put an end to the war with the czar^d.

The Poles take Riga,

BEFORE the arrival of this legate from the pope, the king of *Poland* had begun his third campaign with the conquest of *Riga*, the inhabitants of which surrendered to him, upon promising to confirm to them, as he did, their privilege of religion^e. He then drew towards *P* the possession of which had so long been an object of contention between the *Russians* and the *Poles*. This city was remarkably well fortified for those times and that count-

^a HENN. *Liefl. Chron.* p. 70. ^a OLEAR. p. 444. HENN. p. 70. ^a CHYTR. 693. NEUGEB. *Heid. lib. iv.* p. 388. L. MULLER, p. 56. LOCCEN. ^b ODERB. *lib. iii.* p. 292. HEID. *lib. iii.* p. 403. 415. ^c Comm. de *Moscov.* ^d NEUGEB. p. 713. THUANUS, 1581. p. 67. ex HEID. *lib. iv.* p. 393.

(A) *Pleskow* is about six miles in circumference, situated on the river *Welika*, which washes its walls on the south, at the distance of five wersts from the lake *Peipus*. The north side of it was fortified with a wall of stone, within which the czar, after the taking of *Polozzkow* and *Wielikiln*, raised a broad terrace around the town were

was then, through the care of *Basilowitz*, who foresaw the enemy's design, defended by a garrison of 7000 horse and 50,000 foot, including the burghers who were fit for service, and extremely well provided with all necessaries for a long siege ^b. The generals who commanded in it were *John* and *Basil Zwirski*, *Coroschin* and *Plesceioff*, men of approved valour and great abilities; and the czar had placed round the town several bodies of *Cosaks*, commanded by a brave *Circassian*, in order to hinder the *Poles* from ravaging the country.

KING *Stephen* being informed of the state of *Pleskow*, both by some deserters from thence, and by the people of the country, began to hesitate whether he should attack a place so likely to baffle his efforts. His troops were not sufficiently numerous to form a line of circumvallation, nor had he infantry enough for the assault and the trenches; besides which, he was in want of powder, his magazine at *Susa* having been blown up by accident, and his difficulties with respect to provisions seemed insurmountable. However, thinking his own honour, and that of his nation, interested in the prosecution of what he had begun, he determined to exert his utmost endeavours to reduce this important place. His leaving it, after having approached so near, would have given fresh courage to the dejected *Russians*, and his taking it would crown him with renown.

The siege being resolved on, the next point to be considered was, where to begin the attack. This was controverted for some time between the King and his General, late his Chancellor, *Zamoisky*; till at length it was agreed, that it should be at the eastern side of the city. *Zamoisky* was disliked by the *Poles* in general, who said he was better qualified to shed ink than blood, and quite unacquainted with the management of war ^d. The *Polish* forces were divided according to their different nations: the *Poles*, *Lithuanians*, *Hungarians*, and *Germans*, had their respective posts, in which they endeavoured to surpass each other. Without entering into a detail of the particulars of this famous siege, we shall only say, that the besiegers and the besieged did

^b NEUGE. p. 713. THUANUS ad an. ex HEID. lib. iv. p. 393.

^d LAUR. MULLER, p. 52. HEID. lib. iii. p. 404.

towers; but as these were ancient works, whose flanks could not well defend each other, *Basilowitz* had added, in the in-

termediate spaces, good works of turf, and furnished them with artillery.

every

every thing that could be expected from the most warlike people; till at length the former, beginning to want powder, were not able to batter the place so strongly as before. On the other hand, no endeavours were omitted by the *Russians* of *Ingria* and *Novogrod* to throw additional succours into the town; but the *Polish* king and his generals, who flew incessantly from place to place, frustrated every attempt of that kind.

The pope mediates a peace between the Russians and the Poles.

DURING this siege, the king of *Poland* received several ambassadors, and among the rest one from the grand signior, to demand certain *Tartars* who had deserted, and at the same time to congratulate him upon his conquests, and offer him considerable succours; which were neither accepted nor refused. The jesuit *Possevin*, invested with the dignity of legate from the pope, arrived also in his camp, from the court of the czar, with whom he had conferred about the conditions of a peace, which he was to mediate in the name of his Holiness^f, who hoped by that means to bring *Russia* over to the *Romish* communion. *Possevin*, at an audience which he had immediately, told the king, that his czarish majesty was desirous to make peace upon the terms he had proposed during the siege of *Polockzkow*: to which *Stephen* made no reply; but gave the mediator to understand, that peace could not be made unless the czar yielded all *Livonia* to the crown of *Poland*. The jesuit, upon this, sent a courier to *Baslowitz*, who immediately named *Zapolicia*, a town about ninety wersts from *Pleskow*, for the conference to be held in; under the mediation of the pope^h.

THE czar's real design was to draw the negotiation out in length, in hopes that the cold, which began to be very violent, and to which the troops that composed the *Polish* army had not been accustomed, would oblige their generals to decamp. He knew that *Pleskow* wanted for nothing, and was satisfied of the bravery and fidelity of those who were to defend it. *Stephen* was obliged to go to *Warsaw*, to assist at the diet; and it was well known, that *Zamoisky* was not beloved by the troops. The *Poles* being informed of all these circumstances, by a person in the train of the *Russian* plenipotentiaries, and who was in the secret of the embassy, redoubled their attacks upon *Pleskow*, and detached a party to besiege the monastery of *Pezzura*, which, lying in the

^f POSSEV. Comm. de Moscov.

^h POSSEV. ubi supra.

ODERB. lib. iii. p. 313. NEUGEB. p. 728. PUFFEND. p. 446. HEID. lib. v. p. 415. CHYTR. p. 703. THUAN. ad an. 1582.

road between *Pleskow* and *Riga*, and being fortified and filled with troops, incommoded the forages of the *Polish* army. What added greatly to the hopes of the *Polanders*, was, an information which they received from one *Suturma*, secretary to the governor of *Pleskow*, and taken prisoner by them, purporting, that the provisions and ammunition of the town were almost exhausted; whereupon *Zamoisky* made all the necessary dispositions to oblige it to surrender by famine.

WHILE the siege of *Pleskow* was thus carrying on, and the *Russian* ministers tried all ways to gain time, by sending couriers continually to the czar, and protracting their negotiations, in hopes that the severity of the weather would oblige their enemies to decamp; a large detachment of the *Polish* army, commanded by *Christopher Radziwil*, *Kmita*, and *Haraburda*, ravaged the borders of *Russia* towards *Mobilow*, *Skolw*, and *Toropiecz*, and advanced very far into the province of *Rzeva*, where two foragers falling into their hands, alarmed them with an account, that a body of 15,000 men were not far off, and that the czar was with his court at *Starica*, where he had another still greater army^m. *Radziwil*, however, advanced as far as the *Volga*, beyond which he sent his *Tartars* out in parties, and would have followed them himself, and have advanced towards *Starica*, if one *Murfa*, an officer of the czar's household, who threw himself purposely in the way of the *Poles*, had not spoken with such confidence of the numerous troops, at the head of which *Basilowitz* was, at *Starica*, that the *Polish* general believed him, and thereupon turned back. The truth was, that the czar had then only eight hundred men about his person, and that he had retired with precipitation as soon as he heard that the *Poles* had crossed the *Volga*; so that it would not have been difficult for *Radziwil* to have taken him prisoner, if he had marched directly to *Starica*, instead of amusing himself with sending parties to destroy the country in the way to *Moscow*. The *Polish* detachment, after missing this stroke, retired by the province of *Rzeva*, and encamped at *Chelm* on the *Lowat*, from whence they advanced toward *Stara-Russia*, continually plundering the *Russian* territories on every side.

THE *Swedes*, in consequence of their late convention with the *Poles*, over-ran *Livonia*, and took so many of its places, that *Stephen* could not help saying, they caught the game whilst he beat the bushⁿ. It seemed, indeed, as if

in *Livonia*.

^m ODERB. lib. iii. p. 293. HEID. lib. iii. p. 416. ⁿ CHYTR. P. 693. PUFFEND. p. 446. LOCCEN. lib. vii. p. 423.

Basilowitz

Basflowitz suffered them to proceed in their conquests, purposely to breed a jealousy between them and their new allies: and if that was his view, he did not entirely miss his aim; for the *Polish* troops, disliking their general, wanting to return home, and envying the acquisitions obtained by the *Swedes*, whilst they were fruitlessly employed in a tedious siege, began to murmur greatly: a circumstance which the legate *Possévin* laid hold of, to dispose *Stephen* the more readily to peace^o; which was at length concluded at *Zapolicia*, on the 15th of *January*, in the year 1582^p.

1582.
Peace concluded between the Russians and the Poles at Zapolicia.

By this treaty the czar agreed to deliver up to the *Poles*, all that part of *Livonia* which bordered on *Lithuania*, and contained thirty-four towns and castles, together with *Polockzkow* and its dependencies: in consideration of which, *Wielkiluki*, *Sawolocz*, *Newilla*, *Ostrow*, and several other places in their neighbourhood, were receded to him^q. This peace was to last ten years, if both parties should live so long; but in case either of them died, the survivor was to be at liberty to attack immediately the territories of the deceased; and these conditions were soon after sworn to by the ambassadors on both sides^r. *Basflowitz*, however, had still the advantage of having despoiled *Livonia* of all its best treasure and artillery, and of surrendering it poor, divided, and ruined^s.

The Swedes, not included in the treaty,

No mention was made of the *Swedes* in this treaty: but not thinking it proper to quarrel with the *Poles*, they raised the siege of *Pernau*, and sent as their ambassador to *Stephen* one *Dominic*, an *Italian*, originally a cook, who had the assurance to ask a cession of *Narva*, *Wesenburg*, *Teisbury*, *Wittenstein*, *Lode*, *Lehal*, *Hapsal*, and *Reval*. So shameful a demand, made by such an ambassador, was treated as it deserved.

attempt in vain the reduction of Notteburgh.

SHORTLY after this the *Swedish* commander, *Herman Fleming*, in the absence of *Pontus de la Gardie*, laid siege to *Notteburgh*, without orders, and, not being able to gain his point, made deep incursions into *Russia*, which the *Tartars* were then attacking on the opposite side^t.

Basflowitz would undoubtedly have exerted himself to revenge this insult, if a dreadful accident which befell him,

^o NEUGE. p. 428. & 722. HEID. lib. ii. p. 357. & 404. ^p Autores supra citat.

^q Autores supra citat. & Tractat. de Russiæ. & Moscov. Relig. p. 276.

^r L. MULLER, *Pohl.*

Liefl. Hist. p. 59. HEID. lib. vi. NEUGE. lib. x.

^s Loccen. lib. vii. p. 423. LAUR. MULLER, p. 90. MARGAR.

^t PUFFEND. p. 448. NEUGE. p. 730. HENN. f. 71. b.

HEID. lib. v. & ex eo THUAN. ad an. 1582. LOCCEN. lib. vii.

p. 424. L. MULLER, p. 65, & seq.

just before the conclusion of the peace of *Zapolicia*, had not given a quite different turn to all his thoughts. The *Russians*, though persuaded that their czar had good reasons for remaining inactive, as he had done for sometime past, while the *Suedes* on one hand, and the *Poles* on the other, made every day fresh conquests, and the last, in their progress, committed the greatest disorders; yet could not forbear murmuring at a conduct, in which there appeared to them more pusillanimity than prudence. Several of the nobles, joining together, made their remonstrances to the czar, threw themselves at his feet, offered him their lives and fortunes, and conjured him to wipe out the stain which so long an inactivity would bring upon the whole *Russian* nation; adding, that he had only to command it, and he should soon see an army on foot as numerous as the leaves of a forest; and that if he would put his eldest son at their head, his presence would inspire them with courage to surmount the greatest difficulties ^b.

Basilowitz, incensed at this address, which he looked upon John Ba-
as a reproach of cowardice, answered, that since his subjects ^{*Basilowitz*} wanted a sovereign who would obey their wills, and be ac-
countable to them for his conduct, they might chuse one ^{*accident-*}
where they would. The *Russians*, afraid of the wrath to ^{*ally kills*}
which they found they had provoked their prince, prostrated ^{*his own*}
themselves again at his feet, protesting, that it was not ^{*son.*}
through any disaffection to him that they had taken this step,
which they saw was displeasing to him; assured him, that
they were very sorry for what they had done, and conjured
him to continue to govern them at his own good pleasure.
He then insisted on their discovering the authors of this rash
undertaking, that he might punish them for their boldness;
and suspecting that his son had intelligence with those who
demanded him for their general, he reprimanded him very
severely. The innocent young prince, extremely concerned
to find himself suspected by his father, begged that
he might be permitted to justify himself: but the czar,
to silence him at first, struck him on the head with a
staff he had in his hand, tipped with an iron ferril, and un-
fortunately hit him on the temple, so that he dropt down mo-
tionless at his father's feet. Instantly penetrated with grief
at this dreadful sight, *Basilowitz* passed at once from anger
to the most piercing sorrow, threw himself upon the body of
his son, embraced him, pressed him to his bosom, and spoke
to him with all the fondness of a loving and afflicted parent.

^b ODERB. lib. iii. p. 310. PETR. p. 235. HEID. lib. v.
P. 411. ex quo NEUGEE. p. 427. et THUAN. ad an. 1581.

The prince recovered so as to be able to assure his father, that there was no conspiracy; that he was incapable of harbouring such a thought; and that, far from having ever had any such design against him, he besought the Almighty to give him the empire of the universe, and to add to his life the days that had been taken from his own. He died four days after, to the inexpressible grief of his father, whose affliction had like to have brought him also to the grave; for it was with great difficulty that he was prevailed upon to take any nourishment, or change his dress, even for a considerable time; nor could he ever after hear the prince mentioned, without immediately shedding tears (A). He caused a most magnificent

(A) All authors of credit acquit *Basilowitz* of any intention to hurt his son, and agree that the blow which occasioned his death was quite accidental; tho' they differ a little in regard to the circumstances, which provoked the czar to this excess of anger: some saying, that the young prince, unable to bear his father's inactivity, whilst enemies were over-running his country, told him, he thought the courage and bravery of the king of Poland, who had taken and destroyed so many of his provinces, a much greater treasure than all his boasted riches, which had not been able to protect them (1): and others, that he had attempted to plead too warmly in favour of the czarina, who had displeased *Basilowitz* by an indecency of dress (2); or that he had expostulated too freely with his father concerning the state of the empire, which he said his successors would not thank him for, if he

left it in its then distressed situation, surrounded by as many enemies as it had neighbours (3). Which ever of these was the case, or whether it was owing to the cause mentioned above, *Basilowitz*, intending only to make a sign to the prince to be silent, and stretching out to that end his staff, which was an ensign of his dignity (4); whilst he chanced to turn his head aside, to speak to some other person, and his son was bowing, had the misfortune to hit him upon the temple; and, which the generality of writers do not relate rightly, the prince, stunned with the blow, fell down in strong convulsions, which were followed by a fever that carried him to the grave (5). Other authors, again, say, he did not die of the blow, but of the violence of his passion (6): and captain *Margaret* declares positively (7), that he died on a pilgrimage after he had received this stroke. Be that as it may,

(1) *Neugeb.* p. 725. *Tkuan.* ad an. 1581. ex *Heidenst.* l. v. p. 4. o.

(2) *Pfessin.* comm. 2. p. 17. *Chytr.* p. 752. *Tragœd. Moscov.* ex eod. p. 5.

(3) *Henning.* p. 73. *L. Muller.* p. 114.

(4) *Poffevin.* comm. p. 34. à *Glen. Allen.*

Navigat. Anglor. ad Moscov. p. 148. *Margaret.*

(5) *Neugeb.* ubi supra.

Poffevin. *Petr. Tbuan.* ubi supra. *Henning.* ubi supra.

(7) *Etat del'Empire de Russie.*

ificent funeral to be made for him : and to expiate his , if it could be expiated, sent 77,000 florins to the pa-
1 of *Constantinople* and *Alexandria*, and to the monks
ratched the holy sepulchre, that they might pray with-
asing for the soul of his son^b. What added to the
th of the czar and the state, was, that this prince,
f *Basflowitz's* first consort; *Anastasia*, was deservedly
ject of all their hopes ; his second brother, *Theodore*,
of a weak understanding ; and the third, *Demetrius*,
ant.

E news of the peace was immediately carried to *Ples-* The siege
where it occasioned an universal joy, as well as in the of *Pleskow*
of *Poland*. General *Zamoisky* recalled all his detach- raised, in
, and the siege was raised; in the course of which both consequence
s had sustained very great losses; and acquired nearly of the
glory ; for if the *Poles* had shewn an invincible per- peace,
nce to accomplish so difficult an enterprize ; the *Rus-*
ad given proofs of an extraordinary valour, and an in-
le fidelity to their sovereign, in supporting this siege so
without receiving any succours, or having the least
ct of being relieved.

E *Swedes*, who, as we observed before; were not in- and a
in the treaty, and found themselves menaced with a truce made
rom *Poland*, which claimed all *Livonia*, sought to with the
peace with the czar : but as they could not agree up- *Swedes*.
eir respective pretensions, a truce only was concluded
vo months, which was followed by another for two
; before the expiration of which, the czar *John Bas-*
died. After the death of his son he fell into a deep
choly, which did not suffer him to enjoy any part of
ort remainder of his life.

E jesuit *Possavin*, having succeeded in what the czar *Basilo-*
l of him with respect to the peace, demanded, in his witz e.
the accomplishment of that prince's promise; to re- vades the
the church of *Russia* to the see of *Rome* : but *Basilo-* demands
unswerved, that this was an affair which could not be of the pope's
ed in a short time ; that he thought it not just to force legate.

HERB. lib. iii. p. 311. et ex eo PETR. p. 238. THUAN.
1582. ex HEID. lib. vi. p. 424.

1 it is, that his father had ing *Basflowitz*, should have sol-
ign to kill him, and that lowed, particularly on this oc-
ysel, and some other wri- cation, the concurrent testimony
who have endeavoured to of historical truth.
y their oratory in blacken-

the conscience of any christian in matters of religion, and that therefore time, and the insinuations of the clergy, must do the work; towards which he would lend his assistance, and send his holiness an account of the progress that should be made. *Possevin* was dismissed with evasive answers of this kind, and honourably conducted to the frontiers of *Bologna*. That legate has himself given many reasons why his negotiation failed ^h; and what he says, is confirmed by *Heidenstein* ⁱ and *Thuanus* ^k: but a particular circumstance which gave the czar a great dislike to the pope, was, his being informed by the *English* ambassador, then at the court of *Moscow*, that the pontiff of *Rome* was an haughty prelate, who suffered even kings to kiss his slipper ^o.

*Worsted
by the Tar-
tars, he
makes
peace with
them.*

SHORTLY after the conclusion of the peace with *Poland*, the *Tartars* began to make incursions into *Russia*; upon which *Basilowitz* assembled a considerable army, under pretence of attacking the *Swedes*, and marched suddenly towards *Casan*. The enemy, guessing his design, lay in wait for him among the mountains he was obliged to pass over, and, aided by a deep snow, which disabled the *Russian* cavalry and heavy armed troops from acting, destroyed a very great number of his men ^p. The czar thereupon made peace with them, and returned to *Moscow*; where death, soon after, put an end to all his farther designs.

1584.
*The death
of John
Basilow-
witz.*

SENSIBLE that his end approached, without shewing the least concern on that account, he turned his thoughts particularly to the welfare of his people; to promote which, he employed the remainder of his life in endeavouring to correct numbers of abuses that had been introduced into his empire during his long wars. Many acts of great clemency confirmed this beneficent disposition. Two days before his death he was carried in a chair to his treasury, to which he made a sign with his hand to *Jerome Horsey*, then resident from queen *Elizabeth*, and who was present when he died, to follow him. All his jewels were then spread before him, and he talked of the nature and properties of each kind of stone, according to the notions of those times. Returning to his apartment, he sent for his son *Theodore*, and his counsellors, and chose out of these last four in particular, as persons on whom he relied for the guidance of their future sovereign. He then desired his son to set at liberty all the prisoners.

^h POSSEVIN. de Comm. de Moscov. passim.

ⁱ P. 47.

^k Ad an. 1582.

^o Ld. Carlisle's embassy.

^p CHYT.

P. 752.

NEUGER. lib. x. p. 746. ex quo THUAN.

an. 1584.

his dominions, to abolish several new taxes, to restore every estate that had been unjustly confiscated, and, as much as possible, to keep peace with his neighbours¹. A bath was then got ready, by his order; and, on coming out of it, he went to bed, rested a little while, and then called for a draught-board; but, in playing, he fell back and expired (A).

In this prince *Russia* lost the greatest monarch she had *His character* ever known. He was a profound politician, well acquainted with the interests of his neighbours, and his own; valiant, and almost always successful in war, till king *Stephen* of *Poland* took the field against him; from which time, through some unaccountable notion he had conceived, he constantly avoided a decisive battle; contenting himself with several little flying camps, which were at too great a distance from one another. By these, indeed, he covered *Novogrod* and *Moscow*, but did not hinder parties of the enemy from plundering several places on his frontiers. Knowing the genius of the *Poles*, he concluded from thence, and any one equally well acquainted with that nation would have been apt to think the same, that they would never have consented to continue the war so long as they did. But there are conjunctures in which the multitude give way, and a brave people will sacrifice even their vices to the valour of their master, or to reasons of state.

John Basilowitz was learned for the times he lived in, and particularly in matters of religion; for which reason he would never suffer any to be persecuted for their belief: knowing that conviction must come from reason and conscience, and not from violence and tortures, which may make men hypocrites, but cannot render them good christians. In this, however, we except the Jews, whom he would not endure; his sentiments, with respect to them, being, that those who had betrayed and killed the Redeemer of the world, ought not to be trusted, or even tolerated, by any prince who professed himself a christian; and in consequence of this he obliged them, either to be baptised, or to quit his dominions°. He was naturally very hasty and passionate; but could check his anger, as the jesuit *Possévin* experienced, when, in one of their conversations touching

¹ CHYTR. ubi supra. THUAN. ubi supra. L. MULLER, Pöhl. & Löff. Hist. p. 114. ° ODERB. p. 319. PETR. p. 252.

(A) He died on the 26th of March 1584.

the church of *Rome*, to which great efforts were made to bring over this prince, the czar not allowing the pope's lineal succession from *St. Peter*, or his being justly entitled to the appellation of sole head of the universal church; *Possévin* answered, that he might as well deny his own succession from *Volodimir*; and that, if he questioned the justice of the papal authority, he wondered why he, and his predecessors had ever sent an embassy to *Rome*. *Basilewitsch* thereupon started up, and told the legate, that he must surely think he was talking to an ignorant peasant. Every one present began to tremble for *Possévin*: but the czar, sitting down again a moment after, kissed him, as a token of reconciliation, changed the discourse, and desired they might never more meddle with matters of religion, lest something worse should unguardedly escape him: and the next day, he again made excuses for his warmth^p. In such passions *Basilewitsch* may, undoubtedly, have done many things that cannot be excused, and which he himself was afterwards sorry for; as appears by his endeavouring to curb the natural violence of his temper. His enemies have endeavoured to represent him as a hypocrite in religion; but he certainly shewed, on many occasions, that his devotion was unfeigned; being frequently the first at church, one of the most fervent there (A), and always ready to set an example to the monks, whom he hated on account of their idleness^q. Persuaded that kings were sovereign pontiffs of their own dominions, he would often officiate in person in that quality; and at such times retire to the monastery of *Alexandrowa*, to prepare himself for those holy functions, which he performed with a patriarchal dignity^r. The charge of avarice, which several writers have alledged against him; is refuted by the many pensions granted to foreigners, the many churches he built, the great expence at which he carried on his wars, particularly against *Poland* and *Livonia*, and the vast magnificence of his court; such as no idea had ever been formed of before. His collecting uncommon quantities of jewels, was, probably, more for the sake of grandeur, than out of avarice; and to shew

^p POSSEV. Comm. p. 34, 38. ^q ODERB. p. 320. ^r *Ibid*

(A) *Milton* observes of him, who used to beat their heads against the ground (1)† bloody and full of sores; owing their prayers. *Olearius* is to the custom of the *Russians*, the same.

(1) P. 262.

othe

other nations, that he was in no want of wealth. He found himself in circumstances, wherein the welfare and glory of his state required enterprizes more difficult than any of his predecessors had been engaged in: besides which, he was determined, if possible, to civilize his people, by introducing among them the manners and arts of other nations: a great undertaking, which one of his successors completed in our days, but which raised many murmurs against *Basilowitz*, as the author of strange innovations (A). The very nature of his people rendered severity necessary; and their manners required, that the punishment should be great and exemplary; for no other means could keep them within bounds, or secure his life^b. He was, therefore, inflexible in his sentences, and insisted on their being executed with the utmost rigour. At certain stated times, persons of every rank, who thought themselves aggrieved, were admitted to his presence, and allowed to present petitions, which he received with his own hand, read over himself, and answered immediately. If any one of these contained complaints against his ministers or governors, and they were found to have injured or oppressed even the meanest of his subjects, they were sure to be punished, according to the nature of the offence, either corporally, or with forfeiture of their estates, or even with death: a proceeding which displeased all his nobles, and made them ready to enter into any plot against him^c. The

^b Apologia pro Joanne Basilide II. c. i. § xii. ODERB. p. 317. PETR. p. 247.

^c Ibid. &

(B) A most extraordinary instance of the obstinate attachment of the *Russians* and their neighbours to their old customs, happened in the time of this czar, and, undoubtedly, influenced him not a little in the severity with which he found it necessary to treat them. The king of Poland, *Stephen Batteri*, having recovered *Lithuania*, as well by the treaty of *Zapolicia*, as by convention made afterwards with the king of Sweden, went himself into that province, to establish a new form of government. According to the constant custom there,

when any peasant, all of whom were treated as slaves, had committed a fault, he was whipped with a rod till the blood came. The king was willing to commute this barbarous punishment for one that was more moderate: but the peasants, insensible of the favour designed them, threw themselves at his feet, and intreated him not to make any alteration in their ancient customs, because they had experienced, that all innovations, far from procuring them the least redress, had always made their burdens sit the heavier upon them.

severity of these punishments, generally much heavier than were inflicted in any other nation, for such the very genius of the *Russians* made it necessary that they should be, has induced most writers to represent this prince as the cruellest of men, and worst of tyrants : but if they had considered the circumstances of things, and the nature of the people over whom he reigned, we believe they would, with some more judicious authors ², have been less full of rancour, virulence, and partiality ; to obviate all suspicion of which last, or of a love of singularity in this attempt to vindicate the much injured character of a great prince, truth requires our declaring, that, with all the virtues we have here given him, virtues which we think his just due, though denied him by the generality of historians, he had his vices, and those very great ones. His passions were violent ; the natural ferocity of his country prevailed in him to the very last ; he was impatient of controul, and is said to have been so much addicted to women, as to have had several concubines, besides seven lawful wives ¹ : though we cannot think he ever went so far as to have naked women placed on the high-ways to gaze at as he passed by, which some have pretended ; or that he carried his resentment so far, as to think of putting all the women in *Moscow* to death, because some of them had affronted one of his mistresses : and much less can we believe what others say, of his making his concubines common to his sons. No writers of any credit aver these things ; nor indeed does baron *Uhlefeld*, who resided a considerable time at the court of *Moscow*, in quality of ambassador from the emperor of *Germany*, and who has been pretty particular in his account of *John Basilowitz II.* accuse him even of incontinence.

WE cannot close the character of this prince without observing farther in his favour, that neither solicitations nor interest could ever influence him in the disposal of offices or employments, which, to the best of his knowledge, he always gave to the most deserving ; sure to punish them severely, if ever they deceived him ^m. Scarce any prince was a greater lover of justice and order. Detesting drunkards, whom he rightly judged capable of doing the most wicked things during their intoxication, he commanded that they should be imprisoned for a time proportionate to their degree

² THUAN. ad an. 1584. SCHURTZFL. Diff. Hist. t. i. Diff. xlv. p. 8. BAR. DE MEYERB. Itiner. Moscov. p. 57. APOLOG. pro Joanne Basilide II. 1712. 4to. ¹ APOLOG. ubi supra.

^m ODERB. p. 254.

of ebriety, especially if they transgressed on days set apart for abstinence : and looking upon people who ran in debt, without being able to pay, as men of bad principles, and dangerous to society, he ordered them to be publicly stigmatized and banished ; saying, that none were fitter to become traitors to their countryⁿ. This prince first composed a body of law, for the use of his subjects, collected from many precedents and customs, and called it *Suderaja Kniga*, which, in the *Russian* language, signifies the *Book of Justice*. This book, which he delivered to his judges, was always observed, and made the standard in all law-proceedings, though not printed till the reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz*.

John Basilowitz II. underwent the fate of most great conquerors, in seeing almost all his acquisitions taken from him, or on the point of being lost, even in his lifetime : but he bore this reverse of fortune with uncommon fortitude ; even affecting to seem gayest when things were at the worst, in order still to retain his authority over his subjects. The last rebellion of the *Tartars*, and the bad success of his wars against the *Poles*, the events of which he studiously concealed from his people, afforded striking proofs of his great firmness of mind^o.

His person was tall, robust, and well-proportioned^b ; and his countenance comely and majestic, without any thing fierce or disagreeable in his looks^c. His eyes were small and lively, his nose aquiline, and his complexion ruddy^f. *Oderborn* and *Petreyus* say^g his memory was so great, that he could tell the names of all his officers, and of every prisoner he had taken ; to which they add, that his penetration and judgment, particularly in political affairs, were equally strong. His crown was deemed inestimably rich : his robe was purple-embroidered with jewels, and his shoes were set with diamonds of very great value. In his right-hand he carried a globe, enriched with precious stones, and in his left a scepter, embellished in the same manner^w ; whilst his fingers were covered with the finest jewels the *Indies* could produce. When he appeared in public, the arms of the empire, finely embroidered upon a spread-eagle, which his father *Basilius* first assumed, and magnificently adorned with

ⁿ Idem, p. 317. PETR. p. 247. ^o ODERB. p. 270.
^b HERD. lib. i. p. 339. ^c ODERB. p. 316. PETR. p. 246.
^d Genealog. Mag. Mosc. Duc. Scriptoribus rerum Moscov.
 praemissa. Adami Navigat. Angl. ad Moscov. p. 148. ^f ODERB.
 & PETR. ubi supra. ^g Ubi supra. ^w PERNEST. Epist. in Honor.
 Thesauro, par. i. p. 281. J. AB UHLEF. Hodæpor. Ruthen. p. 38.

jewels, were sometimes carried before him : a piece of state which helped to command respect ^b.

HE left two sons ; *Theodore*, who succeeded him, and *Demetrius*, an infant, whom he placed under the tutelage of his great favourite, the knez *Bogdan Bielski*, a man of vast genius, but excessively haughty, very cruel, audaciously bold and enterprising, and ready to sacrifice every thing to his unbounded ambition.

1584.
Theodore
Iwano-
witz czar.

THEODORE was twenty years of age when he came to the throne. His person was engaging, and his temper amiable ; but his understanding so weak, that, particularly whilst his father lived, he preferred the conversation of monks, and such sort of people, to the company of great men, and ministers of state, and made ringing of bells his chief amusement ; which displeased *Basilowitz* so much, that he used frequently to say, he was fitter to be the son of a sexton, than a prince. All historians ^c agree in giving him this character ; except *Oderborn*, who, for what reason, or upon what ground, we cannot divine, extols his wisdom and conduct, saying ^f, that he only affected simplicity during his father's lifetime, in order to avoid jealousy and suspicion. Certain it is, that mildness and moderation, of which he had a greater share than of resolution, knowledge, or discernment, were by no means sufficient alone to qualify him to govern so untractable a people as the *Russians*.

Bielski's
ambitious
projects.

THE aspiring *Bielski*, sensible of this want of capacity in *Theodore*, thought it would be easy for him to seize on the sovereignty, if, by excluding that prince as incapable of governing so vast an empire, he could place his pupil on the throne. To this end he took great pains to have it reported among the people, even before the death of *Basilowitz*, that *Theodore* was too weak and simple ever to be fit to reign ; and after his emissaries had industriously propagated this opinion among the lower class, he himself began to sound the nobles. In the mean time *Basilowitz* died, *Theodore* was crowned, and his very first acts of authority endeared him to his subjects ; for he immediately abolished some very heavy taxes, discharged several prisoners, who had been confined so long, that they despaired of ever more seeing the sun, and broke

^b UHLEF. ubi supra. ^c L. MULLER, Pohl. Liess. Hist. p. 114. PETR. Mosc. Chron. p. 256. MEYERB. Itin. Mosc. p. 58. MARGARET, f. 6. STAN. LUBIENSKI, Opera posthuma. p. 28. SANDRAT. Mosc. p. 139. TRAGÆD. Mosc. p. 5. LUNDORF. Sleidan. contin. tom. iii. p. 6. THUAN. ad an. 1605. ^f P. 223.

the late czar's new raised body-guards, whose insolence and licentiousness had rendered them extremely odious. The grandees of the empire, to whom *Bielski* had applied in order to learn their sentiments concerning *Theodore*, perceiving that, under the specious pretext of consulting the welfare of the state, and being a faithful guardian to the young prince committed to his care, he, in reality, aimed at making himself sole master of the realm, vigorously opposed his designs. Finding himself thus disappointed, he endeavoured to effect by force what he could not compass by fraud. He raised forces, bribed some of the troops in *Moscow*, took possession of the castle of that city, and began to act with a despotic authority. The nobility, alarmed at these proceedings, soon made the people sensible, that this haughty minister aimed at nothing less than usurping the throne: upon which they immediately besieged him in the castle, and reduced him to such straits, that he attempted to escape in disguise; but falling into the hands of the besiegers, they gave him his choice, either to renounce the management of affairs, or suffer death. He chose the former, and banished himself to one of the most remote parts of the empire, in the kingdom of *Casan*.^b *His designs are frustrated, and he is banished.*

Theodore had married the sister of the knez *Boris Gudenow*, grand-master of his horse (A). This man, knowing how to take advantage of the incapacity of his brother-in-law, had already found means to seize insensibly on all his authority. To a distinguished birth, he joined an insinuating behaviour, which rendered him capable of undertaking and executing whatever he pleased. He had greatness of soul, but was naturally cruel; and could put on an air of meekness and popularity, which concealed an immoderate ambition. He endeavoured, at first, to gain the people and the nobles, by repeated acts of beneficence; was accessible to all; and had the art of throwing the blame on others, when he was forced to send any person away dissatisfied: in short, all his actions seemed calculated for the public good. By these means he raised himself to the post of prime-minister, commander in chief, and co-regent of the empire, with universal approbation.^f *Character and rise of Boris Gudenow.*

^b ODERB. de vit. Basilid. lib. iii. p. 321. ^f PETR. p. 25. LUBIENSKI, p. 78, & Op. posth. p. 28. KOBIERZ. Hist. Ula-dil. p. 55.

(A) Captain *Margaret* says (1) she only passed for his sister, but was in reality his daughter. Her name was *Irene Udovia*.

(1) Fo. vi.

*Embassy
from Po-
land.*

DURING the disturbances which attended the beginning of this reign, *Sapieha* arrived at *Moscow*, in quality of ambassador from *Stephen* king of *Poland*: but as his credentials were addressed to the late czar *Basilowitz*, he deferred delivering them, till such time as he should receive fresh instructions from his court. Under pretence of sending for these, he wrote his master word, that the situation of the *Russians*, and the weakness of their prince was such, as offered him a fine opportunity to recover *Smolensko*, from whence he might easily proceed to *Moscow*; but *Stephen* nobly ordered *Sapieha* to use his utmost endeavours to reunite the *Muscovites*; adding, that the czar had sent him an embassy to that effect^o. At the same time the *Swedes*, with whom the truce was now expired, desired to make a perpetual peace with *Russia*. *Theodore* received their ambassadors graciously, but insisted on keeping all his possessions in *Livonia*, and on being reimbursed the expences of the late war. The *Swedes* objecting to these conditions, the intended peace was converted into a fresh truce for four years^p. A new congress was held soon after, in which the subject of a perpetual peace was again resumed: but upon the king of *Sweden*'s being desired to treat with the chief magistrate of *Novogrod*, which he looked upon as inconsistent with his dignity, the negotiation broke off, with only confirming the late truce^q.

*A fresh
truce with
Sweden.*

1587.
*Boris en-
deavours
to obtain
the crown
of Poland
for Theo-
dore:*

Stephen Battori, king of *Poland*, dying soon after this, *Boris Gudenow* endeavoured to obtain that crown for *Theodore*; promising the *Poles*, that, if they would elect him for their sovereign, he would do his utmost to bring about an union of the monarchies of *Russia* and *Poland*, from whence many considerable advantages would arise. The *Polish* nobility, knowing the temper and disposition of *Theodore*, were greatly inclined to come into this scheme^r, by which they hoped, at least, to recover *Smolensko* and *Livonia*, and free the *Livonians* from all their troubles, without the hazard or expence of war; besides, perhaps, having a share in the chief direction of affairs. However, when the diet met at *Warsaw*, the majority of its members voted for *Sigismund*^s, prince of *Sweden*, the son of *John*, and nephew, by his mother's side, of *Sigismund Augustus*, who had reigned in *Poland* immediately before *Stephen*: the rest elected *Maxi-*

*but it is
given to
Sigismund*

^o Vid. ipsas literas *Sapiehæ*, ap. L. MULLER, Pohn. & Ließ. Hist. p. iii. & ODERB. ubi supra. ^p LOCCEN. Hist. Suec. lib. vii. p. 427. PUFFEND. p. 454. CHYTR. p. 760. ^q LOCCEN. ubi supra. ^r PIASEC. Chron. p. 70. CHYTR. p. 783. ^s CHYTR. p. 784. PUFFEND. p. 457.

milian of Austria. This division drew the latter into Poland, at the head of an army, which was defeated by general Zamoiski. Maximilian was taken prisoner, and purchased his liberty by renouncing the crown.

It was now to be feared that the kings of Sweden and Poland would make an alliance, so much the more fatal to Russia, as the Crim Tartars threatened its provinces with an irruption: and, indeed, they shortly after executed their design; though it was not attended with the ill-consequences that had been apprehended, because Boris Gudenow opposed them with troops, which, if they were not capable of attacking and driving them away, harassed them in their progress, and prevented their penetrating far into the country. *The Tartars are checked by Boris.*

Theodore's disappointment in not obtaining the crown of Poland, was soon after compensated by the total reduction of the vast districts of Siberia, many of which had before been tributary; but all of them now became absolutely subject to the czar^b, without costing the life of a single man, through the means of one Stobinow, or Stragenow, a native of that country, as we have already related^c. *1589. Siberia entirely subjected to Russia.*

The truce with Sweden, which had been so often renewed, drawing again towards an end, commissaries were appointed on both sides, to meet on the frontiers of the two states, to convert it into a peace. The very name of war alarmed the czar Theodore, and Gudenow had very good reasons for endeavouring to preserve tranquillity: for in the midst of arms, and the embarrassment of a war wherein he must have appeared in person, he could not form a party to put the last hand to the plan he had been laying down so successfully hitherto. The Russian ministry were therefore ordered to purchase peace, if it could not be obtained otherwise; and to offer considerable sums to the Swedes, if they would, in changing the truce to a treaty of peace and alliance, restore to the czar Iwanogorod, Jamogrod, Coporie, Kexholm, and the other places which they had conquered in Ingria and Carelia, about nine years before. The Swedes were deaf to the proposal; and all that could be settled was, that the truce should be prolonged for three months, and that the commissaries should meet again at the expiration of that time. *Fruitless negotiations for peace with the Swedes.*

Gudenow then altered his proceedings with the Swedes. Not to be their dupe, and at the same time to shew them that if he was willing to pay for a peace, it was not through

^b HENNING's Observations on A. Von Brandt's Travels, p. 393.

^c Page 81.

The Russians burn Iwanogrod;

want of power to obtain it otherwise, he caused the next *Russian* ambassadors to be followed by an army capable of giving weight to their demands°. They entered into conferences (A), because the *Swedes* were come to the place appointed; but soon broke up, when it was known that the *Russian* troops had sacked and burnt *Iwanogrod* (B); though the *Russian* plenipotentiaries protested that these hostilities were committed unknown to them.

take Iwanogrod, and besiege Narva.

Both sides had now taken the field. *Theodore*, and *Boris* who commanded under him, appeared with an army of 100,000 men; which the *Swedes* were no sooner informed of, than they recalled the troops they had sent to make incursions into *Russia*. This gave the czar an opportunity of marching on without interruption to *Iwanogrod*, which soon surrendered (C). He next invested *Narva* (D), before which he formed eight camps, and forced the *Swedish* army, commanded by *Gustavus Banner*, to retire to *Wesenberg*. The *Russians* carried on their attacks with great spirit, but were vigorously repulsed by the besieged, though with the loss of half their men: and in the mean time the *Tartars*, whom *Theodore* had secured by dint of money^p, laid *Finland* waste: upon which *Charles Horn*, governor of *Narva*, plainly foreseeing the straits he was likely to be reduced to, and solicited by all the citizens and the garrison, not to expose them to the last assault, which the enemy was preparing to give, and they could not resist, agreed to give up to the *Russians* all their conquests in *Ingria*, and to sign a truce for a year, on condition that they should raise the siege. These proposals were readily accepted; though a dispute, which lasted two days, arising from the *Russians* insisting that the title of their czar signified more than king, which the *Swedes* would not allow^q, was very near putting a stop to it. Immediately after the conclusion of this treaty, *Theodore* made his public entry into *Iwanogrod*, and after staying there only one day, he returned to his army.

A truce concluded for a year.

1591. The Poles refuse to assist the Swedes.

The next year, at the meeting of the states of *Poland*, the *Swedish* ambassador desired the assistance of the *Poles* against the *Russians*: but upon their receiving letters from *Theodore*, expressing his desire of peace, they refused to afford the *Swedes* any succours, and recommended to them to

° CHYTR. p. 810. p LOCCEN. p. 438. q PUFFEND. p. 470.
r CHYTR. p. 806. t MARGARET, f. 5.

(A) On the 7th of January.

(C) On the 26th of January.

(B) On the 12th of January.

(D) On the 4th of February.

put an end to the war ^f. The *Swedes*, however, were still averse to an accommodation; and though the plague raged violently among them, and swept away great numbers, they still continued to harass the *Russian* territories, and, with the assistance of the *Tartars*, penetrated to the gates of *Moscow*: but they were soon entirely defeated and dispersed ^g.

The ambitious *Gudenow*, unable to bear even a nominal superior, for he exercised in fact all the functions of the sovereign authority in the name of the czar *Theodore*, whom he governed as he pleased, now resolved to make himself sole master of the throne of *Russia*. To this end, under pretence of rewarding their services, by giving them governments, and other considerable employments, he removed to a distance from the court those whom he thought capable of seeing through, or obstructing his design. Every thing seemed to favour his wish. King *John* of *Sweden* was more intent upon religion than war; and a misunderstanding which subsisted between him and his brother duke *Charles* would scarce allow him to intermeddle with the affairs of his neighbours. The *Poles* were not pleased with his son *Sigismund*, who, contrary to the oath he had taken when he accepted the crown, had not yet reunited *Livonia* to *Poland*; and the czarina, his sister, who had never brought *Theodore* but one child, a daughter, which died in her third year ^h, began now to be reputed barren; insomuch that the states of *Russia*, in pursuance of an ancient custom, demanded that she should be divorced, and shut up in a convent, and that the czar should marry the sister of knez *Floro Iwanowitz Zizlphouschis*. This *Boris* strongly opposed: and by artfully insinuating to the patriarch, who was the only person that could prevent a compliance with the accustomed requisition, that if the czar should have heirs by a new consort, and the young *Demetrius* should come of age, it would necessarily create great disturbances in the empire; he so far gained him over to his interest, that the head of the *Russian* church ordered *Floro's* sister to be sent directly to a convent ⁱ. He then endeavoured to conciliate the affections of the people by several popular acts; particularly by surrounding *Moscow* with a wall of stone, which was before only of timber; making many improvements at *Smolensko*, and erecting several castles between *Casan* and *Astracan*, two of which became afterwards the towns of *Borisgorod* and *Czaargorod* ^j.

^f CHYTR. p. 823.

^g Idem, p. 826.

^h MARGAR.

f. 6. ⁱ PETR. p. 258.

^j MARGAR. f. 6. PETR.

p. 283.

was an officer of *Demetrius*, there is little likelihood that he could be deceived ; but if he belonged to *Gudenow*, the mother of the young prince, informed in time of his criminal design against *Demetrius*, might, as several authors say she did, substitute in his stead another boy of the same age, and thereby save his life. This would have been difficult in any other country than *Russia* or *Turky* ; but that difficulty will disappear to those who are acquainted with the manners of the *Russians*. The great people there are absolute masters of their vassals, and the peasants are born their slaves, whom they dispose of as we do of the brute-animals about our estates and houses ; so that it could be no difficult matter for the czarina to find a child whom she might sacrifice to save her son.

THE news of this murder soon reached *Moscow*. The author of it was not named, tho' he was sufficiently suspected. The dowager-czarina made great complaints of it to the czar, from whom she demanded justice ; and *Gudenow* himself gave orders for discovering the assassin : but those who knew him were not deceived by such appearances. He understood that his name was whispered about, and was sensible of the necessity of endeavouring to stifle the report. The expedient that seemed to him the most likely to answer this end, was to turn the thoughts of the people to something more immediately interesting to them. To this purpose he caused *Moscow* to be set on fire in several places in the night-time ; and during the conflagration, which could not but rage with extreme violence in a vast city, where all the buildings were of wood, he appeared remarkably active in endeavouring to suppress the flames : his looks and actions seemed to express infinite concern. The next day he sent for the principal citizens, and others who had sustained the greatest damage, and after a long and pathetic lamentation for so dismal an accident, he promised them, not only to obtain from the czar a sum of money sufficient to compensate their losses, but that he would rebuild their houses with stone, at his own expence ; and then dismissed them, possessed with the highest admiration of his unexpected generosity, and the most cordial satisfaction at having such a man as *Boris* at the head of the government. At the same time he sent troops to *Uglitz*, to raze the castle to the ground, and drive away the inhabitants ; because, said he, they had suffered this murder, and harboured assassins.

Sets fire to the city of Moscow.

His artful generosity to his inhabitants.

THE death of king *John* of *Sweden*, which happened this year, seemed to offer the *Russians* a fair opportunity to

1592.
John king of Sweden dies.

Negotiations for peace with Sweden.

conclude the long-wished-for peace with that kingdom, the states of which were at variance among themselves concerning his successor. *Sigismund*, king of *Poland*, was the next heir, as son of the deceased monarch; but his great zeal for the *Romish* religion, and his being already possessed of the crown of *Poland*, made most of the *Swedes* think duke *Charles* a fitter person to ascend their throne. *Sigismund*, however, obtained leave from his subjects to repair to *Sweden*, in order to assert his right to that crown; but upon the express condition, that if he did not return to them within a year, they should consider him as having abdicated his government, and proceed to the election of a new king^t. In the mean time duke *Charles*, who acted as regent, sent commissaries to treat with the *Russians* on the proposed peace^v, and ordered the commanders in *Esthonia* to provide themselves with all proper necessities, in case either the *Russians* or the *Poles* should attempt any thing against them before the succession was properly settled^w. These commissaries concluded a truce with the *Russians* for two years, but postponed the peace to a farther treaty.

1593.
The Russians send an embassy to the pope.

DURING this treaty the *Russians* sent an embassy to pope *Clement XII.* in order to obtain his recognition of *Theodore* as a king, and that his ambassadors might be treated at *Rome* in the same manner as those of other crowned heads: but his holiness would not agree to this, unless *Theodore* would embrace the *Roman catholic* religion, and subject the church of *Russia* to the see of *Rome*. This refusal did not, however, much chagrine the *Russians*, as their czar was already acknowledged a king, not only by the emperor of *Germany*, but by the sovereigns of *England*, *Denmark*, *Persia*, and several other potentates^y.

1595.

Peace concluded between the Russians and the Swedes, at Teusfin.

THE negotiation between the *Russians* and the *Swedes* was again renewed in the beginning of the next year; and in the year after, 1595, a treaty of peace was concluded between the two nations, at *Teusfin*; though the *Poles* exerted their utmost efforts to prevent it. The *Russians* renounced *Esthonia* for ever; and the *Swedes* gave up *Kexholm*, and a part of *Carelia*. The commerce of the north was likewise opened by this treaty, after having been interrupted by a war which lasted thirty-seven years^z.

^t PIASEC. Chron. p. 120. LOCCEN. lib. vii. p. 442. PUFFEND. p. 485. ^u PUFFEND. p. 479. ^w LOGCEN. lib. vii. p. 441.

^y HERB. Conf. MARGARET, f. 5. ^z LOCCEN. p. 449. PUFFEND. p. 801. CHYTR. p. 595. MEYERB. p. 501.

SOON after the conclusion of this peace, *Theodore* sent a solemn embassy to the emperor *Rudolph II.* which was one of the last public acts of this prince. The *Russian* writers are silent on the subject of this embassy: but we may guess its purport from the emperor's answer, in which, after thanking the czar for his offer of assistance against the *Turks*, and expatiating largely on the renown he would thereby gain from all the christian powers, he told him, that he could say nothing positive with respect to the proposed confederacy of the principal potentates of *Europe*; the king of *Spain* being then ancient and infirm, and greatly embarrassed, not only by *France* and *England*, but with his own disaffected subjects. He promised, however, to promote this affair, both at the *Spanish* and papal courts; and in the mean time advised *Theodore* to continue in friendship with the pope and the sopher of *Persia*, as a point which nearly concerned the peace and tranquillity of christendom in general. He thanks *Theodore* for having gained the *Tartars* over to his interest, and tells him, that ever since the conclusion of the late treaty of peace with *Sweden*, he had constantly kept ambassadors at this last court, as well to testify his friendship for the czar, as to induce the *Swedes* to be more ready to comply with his desires*.

Nor long after this, *Theodore* was taken ill; and it being apprehended that his disease was mortal, the chief of the nobility requested him to name a successor; which he told them he would do, by delivering his staff to the person he thought most proper. Accordingly, when he found his end draw near, and the priests had dressed him up in a monk's cowl, according to the then custom of the *Russians*, he held out his staff to *Theodore Nikititz Romanow*, who was his cousin by his mother's side, and his next heir: but *Theodore*, refusing to accept it, presented his brother *Alexander*, who, likewise declining it, presented a third brother named *John*; who, in his turn, presented a fourth called *Michael*, and this last presented a knez, not related to the family: upon which *Theodore*, in a passion, threw his staff upon the floor, saying, that whoever took it up should have the throne. *Boris Gudenow* then stepped forward, and took it, to the great mortification of all the *Russian* nobility¹.

Theodore died after a reign of twelve years, not without violent suspicion of his having been poisoned by his brother-

* CHYTR. p. 904. ¹ PETR. p. 263. CHYTR. p. 934.
THUAN. lib. CXX.

in-law. The czarina seemed so sensible of this, that she strongly reproached her brother *Boris Gudenow* with the murder of her husband, and would never speak to him afterwards.

In this prince ended the line of *Ruric*, which had governed *Russia* upwards of seven hundred years.

S E C T. II.

From the extinction of the lineage of KURIC, to the accession of the now reigning family of ROMANOW.

*Artful
manage-
ment of
Boris.*

WHEN the six weeks of mourning for *Theodore* were expired (A), *Boris* assembled the nobility and principal citizens of *Moscow*; and having surrendered the staff of their late czar, declared, that he had no inclination to reign, and therefore desired them to appoint whatsoever person they thought fit to ascend the vacant throne^k. He then withdrew, and retired to a monastery about three miles off, leaving the astonished assembly in the utmost perplexity how to behave. Some of his creatures, taking a proper opportunity, then observed, that their meeting was scarcely numerous enough to determine so important an affair, and that it would be better to convene deputies from all the cities and provinces of the empire. This advice was approved of, and *Boris* was pitched upon: but he still actually refused the crown, and at the same time caused a report to be spread, by some of his emissaries, that he was going to be shaved, and to take the habit of a monk; and by others, that the *Tartar* khan was marching with an incredible force to invade *Russia*, whilst it was destitute of a sovereign. The people, who loved him, alarmed at these tidings, ran in crowds to the convent, where, throwing themselves on the ground, tearing their hair, and beating their breasts, like men in the utmost despair, they vowed they would never quit the place, till he had promised them to be their czar. Pretending then to be overcome by their intreaties, and saying, that if it was the will of Providence that he should be their prince, he must be so; he put a

^k PETR. p. 264. & seq.

(A) The *Russians* used to mourn but six weeks.

he issue of his conquering the *Tartars*, who were ad-
g towards *Moscow*, to which end he desired all the no-
und militia to meet him at *Zirpokow*, in the ensuing
of *June*^m. He accordingly repaired thither at the
ppointed, and found 500,000 men assembled, ready
his orders. With this prodigious army he took the
but instead of meeting the numerous enemies that
en talked of, only an ambassador from the *Tartars* ap-
with about an hundred attendants, who was going
cow to treat with *Boris*, as this last well knew. Coun-
ng, however, great mystery and surprise, he ordered
y to be drawn up in two columns, and his artillery
anged properly and fired, whilst the *Tartars* were led
h the troops, to shew them the strength of *Russia*;
hich they were dismissed with rich presents. A year's
is then ordered to the *Russian* soldiers, and proper
ies were presented to each of the nobles: upon which
I declared *Boris Gudenow* their czar, and immediately
he oath of fidelity to himⁿ. He then displayed his
icence, by treating daily near 10,000 men at a time,
weeks running, always under rich tents, and served
ing but plate, according to the account of captain
ret^q, who was one of *Boris's* officers. In the mean
oper persons were sent to *Moscow*, with an account,
ie *Tartars*, intimidated by the new czar's wise and
eparations, had not dared to advance against him.
eople, believing it, came in throngs to meet him,
nducted him with great joy to *Moscow*, where he was
ly crowned by the patriarch^w, on the then new year's
the *Russians* (A).

Who is
proclaimed
czar by the
troops,

and
crowned.

s, at his coronation, made a vow not to shed any *First acti-*
within five years, nor inflict any heavier punishment *ons and*
riminals, than banishing them to *Siberia*, or some *behaviour*
distant place. Numbers of the nobility, who were *of Boris*,
solutely in his interest, soon experienced this last *when*
czar.

em, p. 265. MARGARET. OLEAR. p. 116. Descript.
ilzevir. p. 116. THUAN. ad h. a. ⁿ MARGAR. f. 8.
p. 269. ^q F. 20. ^w MARG. f. 8. PETR. p. 270.

The 1st of September,
The *Russians* used to
the commencement of
ear from the first day of
ber; because, said they,
certainly created the world

in the autumn, when the corn
was in full ear, and the fruits of
the earth fit to eat. The *Great*
Peter corrected this, among se-
veral other abuses, as will be
bserved in his life.

fate f, under various pretences ; whilst others, particularly those who had any sort of claim to the crown, were forbid to marry. *Theodore Nikititz Romanow*, to whom the late czar had first offered his staff, by way of designating him for his successor, was imprisoned, and separated from his wife ; after which, both of them were forced into different convents, and obliged to take orders and change their names. That of *Philaret* was given to *Theodore*, whose posterity soon after came to, and now fill, the throne of *Russia*, notwithstanding all the endeavours of this usurper to deprive them of the sovereignty. A total alteration of manners ensued : from obsequious, popular, and easy of access, which he was before ; he now became haughty, reserved, and excessively suspicious.

HE had a daughter, whom he hoped to settle advantageously, both for her and himself, by marrying her to *Gustavus Ericson*, natural son of *Eric XIV.* king of *Sweden*. In this view he sent to *Gustavus*, who had retired to *Thora* in *Prussia*, where he led a private life, and invited him to *Moscow*, with pompous promises of doing great things for him ^h. *Gustavus* accepted the invitation, and was received with the utmost magnificence, loaded with presents, and treated with extraordinary splendor. But this profusion of liberality was of short duration ; for *Boris*, finding that he was so strongly attached to a mistress he had, as to decline all thoughts of marriage, and that his genius was not equal to any great enterprize ^u, bribed one of his servants, and thereby procured the passport he had granted him for his safe-conduct, then took away all his presents, stopped his pecuniary allowance, and at last banished him to the duchy of *Uglitz*, with a revenue of 4000 rubels for his support ^v.

1600.
He concludes a
peace with
the Poles :

THOUGH *Boris* was thus disappointed in his designs of making *Gustavus* subservient to his views, as *Magnus* had been to those of *Basilowitz* ; yet the *Poles* were so far alarmed at these proceedings, that they sent a grand embassy to *Moscow* to conclude a peace, which was at length agreed upon for twenty years, and the *Polish* ambassadors were dismissed with great pomp and rich presents ^v.

1601.
And an
alliance
with the
Danes.

THE hostile intentions of *Boris* against the *Swedes* still subsisting, he first attempted to gain possession of the important city of *Narva* by treachery ^z ; but being disappointed therein, he endeavoured to cultivate the friendship of *Chris-*

^f PETR. p. 271. MARGAR. f. 29. ^h PETR. p. 282.
MARGAR. f. 30. ^u PETR. p. 275. ^v Idem, ibid. ^v MARG.
f. 30. ^z PETR. p. 277.

tion IV. king of Denmark, who wanted only a proper opportunity to attack the Swedes^b; and having entered into an alliance with him, he proposed a match between the king's brother, and his daughter^c.

WHILE these treaties were negotiating, a terrible famine reduced Moscow and the adjacent country to such extremity of distress, that the most shocking cruelties were committed, by the nearest relations, upon one another, to stop their tormenting hunger. Thousands of people lay dead in the streets and highways, with their mouths full of hay, straw, or even the most filthy things, which they had endeavoured to eat. In many houses, the fattest person was killed, to serve for food to the rest. Even parents were said to have eaten their own children, and children their parents, or to have sold them to buy bread. Petreius says^e, that he himself saw a woman bite several pieces out of a child's arm as she was carrying it along; and captain Margaret relates^f, that four women having ordered a peasant to come to one of their houses, under pretence of paying him for some wood, killed and ate both him and his horse. This dreadful calamity lasted three years; in the course of which, though Boris tried all possible means, and spent immense sums to alleviate it, upwards of 500,000 persons died in the city of Moscow only^h.

IN the midst of this inexpressible misery, duke John of Denmark arrived at Moscow, to celebrate his marriage with Duke John Axinia Borissowa, the czar's daughter. He was received with the utmost cordiality, and entertained with as great magnificence, as the then deplorable condition of the country would admit of: but he had not been there above a month, when he was taken ill, and died, to the great grief of Boris, who visited him daily during his sickness, and mourned for him three weeksⁱ.

SOON after the death of duke John, an embassy arrived at Moscow from the Ottoman Porte, with large presents to the czar, in order to conclude with him a treaty of friendship and alliance: but Boris refused the presents, and dismissed the ambassadors with contempt, telling them, that he should ever be an enemy to the Turks, because they were enemies to the christians, and then at war with his brother the Roman emperor^k.

^b PUFFEND. p. 546.

^c PETR. p. 275.

^e P. 292.

^f Ubi supra.

^h PETR. p. 294.

ⁱ MARG. ubi supra.

^k PETR. p. 262.

Grants
privileges
to the Lu-
beckers,
English,
and
Dutch.

1604.
Deme-
trius said
to be alive;

and in Po-
land.

Boris at-
tempts to
murder
him.

ABOUT the same time the *Lubeckers* applied to him for renewal of their privilege to trade to *Pleskow*, *Novogrod*, and *Moscow*, and sent him several valuable presents of plate, with a large spread eagle finely gilded, and filled with ducats. Their request was granted, and the same indulgence was extended to the *English* and *Dutch*¹.

A melancholy gloom, which had hung upon *Gudenow* for a long while, was now visibly increased by a report, that *Demetrius* was still alive, and that another child had been murdered in his stead. This information gave him great uneasiness, and many persons, who were suspected of being in the interest of that prince, were put to the rack, in order to extort a confession; but nothing positive could be discovered: others were banished, and privately murdered upon the road; and *Demetrius's* mother was removed to an obscure place, six hundred miles from *Moscow*. At length positive intelligence was brought to *Boris*, that two monks had escaped from a monastery, and gone into *Poland*; that one of them was called *Griška Utropeja*; but that the name of the other, who was supposed to be *Demetrius*, could not be learnt; and that they were then in the service of *Adam Wiesznowieski*, chief magistrate of *Kiow*. This news threw *Boris* into the utmost consternation. He tried every means to prevail upon *Wiesznowieski* to deliver up to him the person supposed to be *Demetrius*; but all his efforts proving ineffectual, he sent a party of *Cossacks* to murder him; in which he also miscarried. This proceeding naturally confirmed the belief, that the person said to be *Demetrius*, was really such; as no other motive could make *Boris* be so desirous to take away his life; for an impostor, if disregarded, must of course soon sink into his primitive obscurity.

WHETHER this *Demetrius* was really the person he pretended to be, or only an impostor, is, as we observed before, a point more difficult to be cleared up, than perhaps any other in all the annals of *Russia*. Those who believe the latter (A) say, that *Griška Utropeja* was himself the man who personated *Demetrius*, and give the following account of him. He was born at *Jaroslaw*, of a noble family, but not rich, and had been thrust into a monastery on account of his extravagance and debaucheries. His person

¹ Idem, p. 283.

(A) In which *Petrei*us (1) has been implicitly followed by many writers.

(1) *Moscow, Chron.* p. 284.

was handsome, he had much wit, and was just of the age that *Demetrius* would have been; circumstances which an old monk, of the same monastery, took advantage of, in order to set him on the throne of *Russia*. The better to carry on his design, he sent him into *Lithuania*, where he was received by *Wiesnowieski*; into whose favour he soon insinuated himself by his diligence and ingenuity; but one day, his master being angry with him, called him *Bledinsin*, or son of a whore, and struck him. *Griska*, taking advantage of this disgrace, burst into tears, and told him, that if he knew who he was, he would not call him by that name, nor treat him in such a manner^m. The curiosity of the *Polish* lord made him insist on his explaining himself; upon which the other answered, that he was the legitimate son of the czar *John Basilowitz II.* that *Boris Gudenow*, in the reign of the late czar *Theodore*, his brother, would have murdered him; but that the misfortune fell upon a priest's son, very like, whom his friends had substituted in his place, while he was conveyed awayⁿ. Then, shewing a cross of gold set with diamonds, which, he said, was hung about his neck at his baptism, and adding, that the fear of falling into the hands of *Boris Gudenow* had kept him from discovering himself till that instant, he threw himself at *Wiesnowieski*'s feet, and begged his protection; enlivening his story with so many circumstances of his being concealed in a monastery, and his actions with such shew of sincerity, that the *Polish* lord, believing him, immediately ordered him cloaths, horses, and a retinue suitable to his supposed birth, and, not thinking him safe at his house, because it was too near the borders of *Russia*, sent him into *Poland*, to *George Mniefski*, palatine of *Sandomir*, who received him with great kindness, and promised him all the assistance in his power, to restore him to his throne, upon condition that he should tolerate the *Roman catholic* religion in *Russia*, as soon as he had established himself thereon. *Demetrius*, continue our authors, not only agreed to this condition, but promised to marry the palatine's daughter, whose name was *Mariana*^o. The hopes of so advantageous an alliance, and *Mniefski*'s great zeal for his religion, made this palatine engage his own credit, and that of all his friends, in his favour, with a promise to interest the republic in it, if there should be occasion.

His reception in Lithuania.

From whence he is sent into Poland.

^m MARGAR. f. 48. ⁿ Idem, f. 58. TRAGGED. MOSCOV. GREVENB. p. 11. PETR. p. 284. et ex eo OLEAR. p. 116. & LUNDORF. Sleid. contin. tom iii. p. 666. ^o PETR. p. 288. OLEAR. p. 117. LUBIENSKY op. posth. p. 29. KOBIERZ. Hist. Uladisl. p. 57.

SOME authors, who have treated all this as a fable, say, they cannot see with what design, or to what advantage, this old monk, whose name is never mentioned, should put *Griška* upon acting this part: and other cotemporary authors assure us, that they had seen *Griška Utrapeja* in his cloister, and that he never stirred from thence till the knes *Zufki*, who had an interest in giving an air of truth to this invention, brought him to *Moscow*, from whence he disappeared on a sudden, and it was never known what became of him.

The Poles BE this as it may, the republic of *Poland* entered strongly
espouse his into the interest of *Demetrius*, the proofs of his birth were
cause. examined in the diet (A), he was acknowledged as the legitimate heir of the crown of *Russia*, an army was raised to set him on the throne of his ancestors, and he was presented to the king, whose assistance he requested in a very pathetic manner, representing, that many other princes had laboured under great misfortunes, and that even his majesty himself had been born in prison, though he was then happily and justly king; a circumstance which could not but induce him to pity the unfortunate P.

Sigismund, sensible that he might possibly reap from this affair, in case he should place *Demetrius* on the throne of *Russia*, at least the recovery of *Esthonia* and *Finland*, if not that of the crown of *Sweden*, which his nephew, *Charles IX.* had usurped from him the year before, listened to the proposal; but, seeing the difficulties that attended it, declined giving any positive assurances of success, and only promised to do something when a proper opportunity should offer; at the same time hinting, that the nobles of his kingdom might do, in the mean while, what they thought proper, at their own expence. Upon this, the palatine of *Sandomir*, allured by the prospect of the stipulated alliance, raised a considerable number of men, in order to establish *Demetrius*.

P Trag. *Moscov.* p. 12. LUBIENSKY, ubi supra. LUND. Sleid. contin. t. iii. p. 669. Descript. *Russ.* Elzevir. p. 118, & seq. ex THUAN. PUFFEND. p. 548. LUBIEN. ubi supra.

(A) Two very extraordinary that he had a wart on his cheek; circumstances in this pretended both which had been observed of *Demetrius*, as he is generally the young *Demetrius* at *Uglitz* (1). called, are, that one of his arms was shorter than the other, and

(1) Descript. *Russ.* Elzevir, p. 118, ex Thuan.

trius upon the throne. While this was doing, an embassy arrived from *Boris*, to remind *Sigismund* of the peace which then subsisted between him and the czar; to insist on his delivering up the pretended *Demetrius*, dead or alive; and to warn him that his assisting that impostor, as he called him, would draw upon him a war, which he might have cause to repent. *Sigismund* answered, that he had not the least intention to infringe the peace of the two nations, and therefore had not given any sort of assistance to the unfortunate *Demetrius*, who, he could not help thinking, really deserved it: but that if any of his nobles should chuse to risk their fortunes in order to procure him redress, he could not hinder their so doing^w.

THE grandees of *Poland*, no ways intimidated by the czar's menaces, raised 4000 men, at the head of which they put *Demetrius*, who marched directly into the province of *Moscow*, where *Czernichev*, *Putivol*, and several other places, declared directly for him^y. This success, together with the dreadful miseries of the still raging famine, and the appearance of some extraordinary phenomena in the air, threw the *Muscovites* into the utmost consternation^z, and made them reflect on the several circumstances of the supposed murder of *Demetrius* at *Uglitz*, and the late conduct and behaviour of *Boris*, who, excessively alarmed, assembled an army of 200,000 men, but, distracted with suspicions, knew not whom to intrust with the command of it; and, as to foreign assistance, he had but little reason to expect any. The king of *Sweden* was not able to help him much; and neither the emperor nor the king of *Denmark*, to whom he applied for troops, could be brought to any fixed resolution.

WHILE *Boris* was thus distressed, racked by the remorse *He advances into* of his conscience, and looking upon every one as his enemy, *Demetrius* advanced to *Novograd*, which he besieged (A), and, *Russia*; with a handful of men, defeated 5000 *Russians*^b. Fortune *gains a* was less favourable to him in the next engagement (B), in *1605*; which, though his army had been very considerably increased *by numbers of male-contents, who resorted to him daily,* *Is defeated; but recovers his loss.*

^w LUBIEN. op. posth. p. 30. Trag. Moscov. p. 14. PIASEC. Chron. p. 265 LUNDORF. Sleid. contin. t. iii. p. 670 Descript. Ruff. Elzevir. p. 120. ex THUAN. ^y PETR. p. 298. MARG. & Descript. Ruff. Elzevir. p. 121. & seq. ^z PETR. p. 296. PIASEC. Chron. p. 264. ^b MARGAR. f. 35. PETR. p. 209. KOBIERZ. Hist. Uladisl. p. 60.

(A) On the 21st of December, (B) On the 21st of January. he

Boris a-
gain at-
tempts his
life.

he lost 8000 men, and all his cannon. The victors might then easily have retaken all the places he had conquered, if they had pursued their advantage, and been unanimous: but, either through discord, or treachery in some of their commanders, they lost three months before an insignificant town called *Crom*, and did not take it at last. This delay gave *Demetrius* time to recruit his shattered army, reinforce his garrisons, and take the field again, as well as to bribe several of *Gudenow's* principal officers^c; in which he succeeded so far, that the *Russian* generals gave their troops leave to go home for a time, under pretence of their having already endured sufficient hardships. *Boris*, who had imprudently given the chief command of them to *Zufki*, in whom he at the same time had no confidence, and who did not like him^k, hearing this, sent orders to them to stay; but the consequence was, that they remained inactive for a long while. He then had recourse to stratagem, sending to *Putilov* two old bojars, who promised the burghers, and other chief people of that city, great things, if they would deliver *Demetrius* either dead or alive, and produced a letter from the patriarch, threatening to excommunicate those who should espouse his cause, or give him the least assistance; but the conspirators were detected, and to avoid punishment, not only made a full discovery of the whole transaction, but joined *Demetrius*, and wrote to the nobility at *Moscow*, assuring them, that the rival of *Boris* was really the son of *Jehn Basilowitz II*^l.

Death of
Boris Gu-
denow.

SEVERAL other attempts of the like nature, at length determined *Demetrius* to treat the czar in his own way. To this end, he applied to one *Bosmanoff*, an officer (A), who, going to *Moscow* with a feigned account of a victory gained over *Demetrius*^m, took an opportunity of conveying so strong a poison to the czar, that, very soon after (B), whilst he was giving audience to the *Swedish* and *Danish* ambassadors,

^c PETR. p. 302. MARGAR. f. 36. LUND. Sleid. contin. t. iii. p. 671. ^k MARGAR. f. 37. ^l Trag. Moscov. p. 18. LUND. Sleid. contin. t. iii. p. 672. Descript Russ. Elzevir, p. 104. ex THUAN. ^m PETR. p. 303.

(A) He had been governor of *Novogrod*, according to *Lesbiansky* (1).

(B) On the 23d of April.

(1) Op. post. p. 31.

he dropped down, and immediately expired, the blood gushing out ^a from several parts of his body (C).

SUCH was the end of *Boris Gudenow*, a man of strong parts, great courage, and a perfect master in the art of dissimulation. He was naturally formed to govern; and had it not been for his cruel and tyrannical temper, no prince could have stood fairer in the affections of his subjects. His body was buried privately, in the church of *St. Michael*, near the remains of the former czars.

His character.

As soon as *Boris* was dead, his widow sent for *Zusky* and *Mitishousky* from the army; whereupon they repaired immediately to *Moscow*, and placed the late czar's son, *Theodore*, upon the throne. This young prince, who was but fifteen years old, had been educated amidst a crowd of flatterers, who sought only to gain his favour by soothing his passions. His behaviour was very brutish and insolent, and his disposition tyrannical; circumstances which some writers look upon as a strong presumption, that the chief part of the nation did not believe the legitimacy of *Demetrius*, whose character was quite the reverse.

Theodore Borissowicz czar.

THE army was not yet informed of *Gudenow's* death, when *Bosmanoff*, who is thought to have poisoned him, arrived with orders to take upon him the chief command, and administer to the soldiers the usual oath of fidelity to the new czar. But instead of discharging, he betrayed his trust: for, having gained most of the troops to his interest, he, in conjunction with the *Cossacks* that were in *Crom*, fell suddenly upon the remainder of the *Russians*, commanded by the late czar's brother, *John Gudenow*, put them to flight, and took all their artillery and ammunition; after which, crying out, that *Demetrius* was the only lawful heir to the crown, and that those who had the good of their country at heart should follow him, he immediately went over to *Demetrius's* general, *Zapotski*, with most of his troops, and upwards of five

Defection of the Russian troops in favour of Demetrius.

^a PIASEC. Chron. p. 265. Trag. Moscov. p. 19. LUND. Skeld. contin. t. iii. p. 672. KOBIERZ. Hist. Ulad. p. 61.

(C) Other writers say, that whilst he was giving audience to the ambassadors of the kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, who, as enemies of *Poland*, had sent to offer their assistance against king *Sigismund*, he fell into so violent a passion in speaking a-

gainst this last prince, that he was seized with a bleeding at the nose, which could not be stopped, and of which he died a few days after. *Strahlenberg* says (1), that driven to despair by *Demetrius's* success, he poisoned himself.

(1) Ch. iv,

hundred persons of distinction. *Demetrius*, who was then at *Putivol*, received them with such affability, as completed their attachment to him; whilst *Gudenow*, abandoned by his army, fled, with a small number, but was pursued and taken; and upon his refusing to bow to *Demetrius*, to whom he was carried, he was committed to prison^o.

THIS defection of the army was soon known at court, where it occasioned the utmost consternation. Every one immediately resolved to follow the path which interest pointed out, and the name of *Demetrius* resounded through the whole city of *Moscow*. At the same time *Michael Solikoff*, one of the prisoners who had been delivered up to *Demetrius* by *Bosmanoff*, and who wanted to recommend himself to his new master, went to the village of *Crasma-cella*, within a quarter of a mile of *Moscow*, told the inhabitants of that place, that their lawful sovereign was actually coming to take possession of his crown, and published manifestos from *Demetrius*, declaring, that those who should espouse his cause, would meet with every sort of favour and affection; but that his opponents must expect no mercy^r. These declarations had the desired effect, in stirring up the whole city to revolt. The people went in a body to the castle, which they forced and plundered, and then thrust the young czar, with his mother, sister, and other relations, into prison^q.

The Muscovites revolt, and imprison Theodore and his family.

Death of Theodore and his mother.

Demetrius, who was at *Thula* when he received the news of this great change, sent *Basilius Galitzin* immediately to *Moscow*, to receive the oath of fidelity of that city; and at the same time ordered one *John Bogdanoff*, a diack, to repair thither with all speed, and strangle *Theodore* and his mother in their prison, but not hurt his sister. *Bogdanoff* executed his orders, and gave out that they had poisoned themselves: but *Petreius* says^r, that he himself saw the marks of a cord round their necks, after they were dead (A).

^o Descript. Russ. Elzevir, p. 126. ex THUAN. MARGAR. f. 34. PETR. p. 306. Trag. Moscov. p. 22. KOBIERZ. Hist. Uladissl. p. 61. ^p PETR. p. 309. MARGAR. f. 38. LUBIENSK, op. posth. p. 31. ^q MARGAR. f. 39. PETR. p. 311. LUBIEN. p. 32. ^r P. 313.

(A) They were killed on the 10th of July. Captain Margaret (1), *Lubienisky* (2), *Kobierzicko* (3), and *Ludolphus* (4), agree with *Petreius* that they were strangled. *Thuanus*, and the Elzevir Description of Russia (5), where he is copied, seems to think they poisoned themselves.

(1) F. 39. (2) P. 32. (3) P. 62. (4) t. i. p. 175. (5) P. 128.

A few days after (B), *Demetrius* made his public entry into *Moscow*, and was declared sovereign of all the *Russias*, czar of *Moscow*, *Novogrod*, &c. and king of *Astracan* and *Casan*, with extraordinary pomp and grandeur. A detachment of Polish horse began the procession, with their kettle-drums and trumpets at their head: after them marched a band of musqueteers, in the middle of which was *Demetrius's* coach drawn by six horses richly caparisoned: next came the clergy with their banners, preceding the bishops, who carried pictures of the virgin *Mary* and St. *Nicolas*, the patron of *Russia*; and after them came four archbishops, who preceded the patriarch. At some distance came *Demetrius*, mounted on a fine white horse, and surrounded by a great number of the principal men of the empire. In this state he went first to the church of St. *Mary*, and from thence, after having paid his devotions, to that of St. *Michael*, where the czars are interred. He stopped some time to look at the tomb of his father, as he called him, *John Basilowitz II.* and being informed that *Boris Gudenow* was also buried in that place, he ordered the body of this last to be taken up, and carried, with those of his wife and son, to a common church-yard without the city^a. Passing afterwards by his palace, he turned his head another way, and commanded that it should be pulled down to the ground^b.

DEMETRIUS was solemnly crowned on the 29th of July; immediately after which, to silence those who might doubt his legitimacy, he sent *Mitisloufski* and *Zuski*, with numerous retinue, to fetch the widow of *John Basilowitz II.* from the convent to which *Boris Gudenow* had banished her, upwards of six hundred miles from *Moscow*; and upon her approaching that city, he himself went out to meet her at a considerable distance, attended by great numbers of his nobles. To give the greater, and more public marks of respect, he alighted as soon as he perceived the coach she was in, went up to her on foot, and embraced her with all imaginable transports of joy and affection, which she returned with every demonstration of equal tenderness. In this manner, still on foot, and bare-headed, and surrounded by all the lords of his retinue, whose behaviour was the same, he conducted her into *Moscow*, where he assigned the grand duke's

^a Petr. p. 314. MARGARET, ubi supra.
Moscovit. p. 26. LUNDORP. Sleid. contin. tom. iii. p. 675.
Descript. Ruff. Elzev. p. 130. ex THUANO.

^b Tragced.

(B) On the 15th of July.

palace

*The people
are dis-
pleased.*

*He sends
an ambas-
sador to
Poland,*

palace for the place of her residence, and behaved to her on all occasions with the deference and duty of a son, visiting her every day, and being received with all the fondness of a loving mother^d. This conduct regained him the public esteem, which he had in a great measure forfeited, by debauching the daughter of the deceased *Boris*, and then shutting her up in a convent^e. But their regard for him did not continue long: for besides abolishing many of their ancient customs, of which they were extremely tenacious, and degrading, as they thought, the dignity of czar by appearing too much in public^f; his caressing some jesuits sent to him by *Antony Longinus*, the Pope's nuncio at the court of *Poland*, and ordering them the best house in *Moscow* for their habitation, indisposed every one in *Moscow* against him. The religion of their forefathers was menaced by the arrival of these visitors, and the priests of the country took care to magnify the danger. Another subject of discontent, immediately upon the back of this, was his sending his chancellor *Offernaci Iwanowitz Vetaci* (A) to *Poland*, in quality of his ambassador, with a very pompous retinue, and several rich presents taken out of the treasury.

The purport of this embassy was, to return the king and the republic of *Poland* his sincere thanks for the signal services they had done him; to propose a treaty of the strictest alliance; to make war upon the *Turks*, and not only drive them from the frontiers of *Poland*, and out of all *Hungary*, but totally from the *Holy Land*, which he saw with grief in the hands of those infidels; and lastly, to desire *Sigismund's* leave, for the czar to marry the daughter of his generous benefactor, the palatine of *Sandomir*. This last article in particular, as well as the stripping of the treasury of some of the crown-jewels, which were sent to *Poland*, was excessively displeasing to the *Russians*, who hated the *Poles*, and detested their religion, both of which they feared would be forced upon them in consequence of this marriage^m.

Sigismund answered *Demetrius's* ambassador, that he was very sensible of the acknowledgments of the czar his master; that he commended his zeal against the *Turks*, and should

^d PETR. p. 318. MARGARET, ubi supra. Traged. Moscov. p. 28. LUNDORP. Sleid. cont. tom. iii. p. 677. Descript. Russ. Elzev. p. 134, ex THUANO. ^e PETR. ubi supra. ^f Idem, ibid. ^m PETR. p. 321. MARGARET, PIASEC. Chron. p. 266. LUNDORP. tom. i. p. 201.

(A) Others say, his treasurer *Athanasius Iwanowitz Rosclow*.

very

very willingly accept his alliance ; but that he must first de-
 liberate thereon with the republic : and that as to the mar-
 riage of the czar with the daughter of the palatine of *Sando-*
mir, he not only consented to it, but should be greatly re-
 joiced at it. Upon this the ambassador married *Mariana* who mar-
Mnieski, in the name of the czar his master. The ceremony ries the
 was performed by the bishop of *Cracovia* (B) ; and *Sigismund*, daughter
 who gave away the bride, recommending to her at the same of the pa-
 time to continue her love for the *Poles* and the *Romish* reli- latine of
 gion, made a very grand entertainment, at which the new *Sandomir*,
 czarina appeared with a magnificence suitable to her rank ; by proxy
Demetrius having sent her jewels to a vast value ^c. from the
 czar.

Demetrius received homage from all the lords of the em-
 pire at his coronation, and gave them, in general, leave to
 marry ^d, which the late usurper had forbid : but very soon
 after, according to the custom in *Russia*, where the crime of
 one person commonly involves all his relations and friends,
 he banished near seventy families, because they were allied,
 or had been attached to that of *Boris*. This act of justice,
 as it would have been called in any other prince in that coun-
 try, was much condemned in him, on account of his having
 imprudently shewn greater confidence in the *Poles* than the
Russians, even in the first days of his reign. The people The people
 murmured loudly, and scrupled not to say, that these fami- grow dis-
 lies were banished, merely to enrich strangers with their contented.
 spoils ; which would draw others into the country, likewise
 to be rewarded at the expence of those who should commit
 the least fault.

These discontents were heightened every day by the art-
 ful management of knez *Theodore Basilus Zuski*, a man of
 distinguished birth, who, seeing that none were left of the
 late czar's family, thought he might ascend the throne with-
 out much difficulty. To this end, he and his two brothers ^{1606:}
 put themselves at the head of the disaffected party, declared *Zuski*
 that *Demetrius* was an impostor, an upstart raised from the heads a
 dust, whose design was to extirpate the nobility, overturn conspiracy
 the religion of *Russia*, and render them all slaves to *Poland* ; against
 to prevent which, it was necessary that they should take Deme-
 away his life. *Demetrius*, having timely notice of the plot, trius.
 ordered the three *Zuski*'s to be seized and tried. The eldest

^c LUDOLPH. p. 334. Tragœd. Moscov. p. 29. PIASEC.
 Chron. p. 266. LUNDORP. Sleid. cont. tom. iii. p. 678. Ko-
 BIERZ. Hist. Uladisl, p. 64. ^d MARGARET, fo. 40.

Is condemned to death, but pardoned.

was condemned to be beheaded, the two others to be hanged; and extraordinary preparations were made for execution, as if it was intended that this example should strike a lasting awe in every malecontent: but it was to render the czar's clemency to the criminal the more conspicuous: for when he was upon his knees on the scaffold and waited only for the stroke of the executioner, whose sword was already lifted up, a pardon was proclaimed, and his sentence commuted into banishment with his brothers^m. *Demetrius*, injudiciously, recalled him soon after from his banishment and restored to his favour a wretch who rested not till he had destroyed him.

The discontent of the people increase.

THIS conspiracy, and its well known causes, only have rendered *Demetrius* extremely circumspect and cautious in his behaviour to the *Russians*. He took, indeed, some measures which they seemed to approve of; such as, dismissing several of the *Poles* who had accompanied him into *Russia*; he used to be continually about his person; and coining a great quantity of new money, then much wanted, out of the immense treasures which *Boris* had amassed: but his faults were for two of the jesuits before mentioned, *Nicholas Cn* and *Andrew Lowitz*; his being blindly guided by them so far as to allow them publicly to exercise the *Roman Catholic* religion in *Moscow*; his marriage with a princess in communion; his disregarding at least, if he did not ably neglect, many rights and ceremonies which the *Russians* looked upon as highly necessary to be observed, among which were his not bathing regularly as they did, and his eating veal, which they deemed an unclean meat; his counselling foreigners, and his endeavouring to introduce them into the country, whilst he ridiculed the absurdities of his own; together with his giving some considerable employments to the *Polanders*, whom his subjects looked upon as their enemies: all this lost him the affections of the great who, in *Russia*, have always a share in the management of public affairs, and the disposal of offices, which are very numerous. Every one of his actions were now scrutinised; for the lives of great men are exposed to the scrutiny of the public in proportion to their elevationⁿ. Putting aside the haughty state of the former czars, by appearing in public more than they had used to do, and his fir-

^m MARGARET, fo. 40. PETR. p. 323. LUNDORP. contin. tom. iii. p. 676. KOBIERZ. p. 67. LUDOLPH. p. 202. Descript. Russ. Elzev. p. 132, ex THUANO. LUST. Bell. Catil.

ple to speak to him without being commanded, a treat-
it the *Russians* had not been used to, were deemed derog-
ory from his dignity, and construed into proofs of his not
ing the person he pretended. The very diversions with
ch he endeavoured to amuse himself during the interval
ween the celebration of his marriage and the arrival of his
e were criticized, and found such fault with, that even
own servants presumed to behave disrespectfully to him on
account.

HE murmurings of the malecontents were not kept so se-
but that they frequently reached the ear of *Demetrius*, who,
ength, began to be apprehensive of them; and under-
ding that they complained, above all things, of his not pla-
any confidence in his own subjects, but that he was con-
ally surrounded by a guard wholly composed of foreigners,
icularly *Poles* and *Germans*; he came to the imprudent re-
ion of disbanding this guard, and forming another of *Rus-*

*Demetrius impru-
dently changes
his guard.*

But soon finding that this complaisance was not suffi-
to appease the exasperated minds of the people, he repent-
oo late of having delivered himself up into the hands of his
emies; and to repair this error, he fell into that of adding
his new body of guards, some companies of *Livonians*,
nans, *English*, *Scotch*, and *French*. One of these was com-
ded by captain *James Margaret*, a *Frenchman*, whose ac-
it of *Russia* we have had frequent occasion to quote.

To add to *Demetrius*'s perplexities, news was brought him
it this time, that 4000 *Cossacks* had assembled between
and *Astracan*, and brought with them one *Peter*, a youth
bout seventeen years of age, whom they called the son of
late czar *Theodore Iwanowitz*, and declared they were de-
ined to place him on the throne of his ancestors. *Demetrius*
d to have written a letter to this *Peter*, telling him, that
would come to *Moscow*, and prove himself to be really
on of *Theodore*, he would resign the crown to him; but
, if he knew himself to be an impostor, his best way was
stire immediately. We shall see this phantom appear
n hereafter: but in the mean time *Demetrius* was killed
re any answer came to his letter, and the *Tartars* disper-
after having plundered several places.

*The Tar-
tars set up
a pretender
to the
throne.*

MARGARET, fo. 40. b. P. PETR. p. 324. † MARGARET.
de l'emp. de Russ. fo. 40. PETR. p. 322. TRAGED MOS-
T. p. 33. LUNDORP. Sleid. contin. tom. iii. p. 679. Def-
Russ. Elzevir. p. 141. ex THUANO. † MARGARET,
I. LUBIENSK. op. posth. p. 106.

Zuski a-
gain con-
spires a-
gainst De-
metrius.

DURING these transactions, Zuski, whose vindictive was as ungovernable as his ambition was boundless, unconquer the shame and uneasiness of owing his life to : whom he had greatly injured, and therefore could not so studied to find out an excuse for the ingratitude with wh was determined to repay that great obligation which *Dem* had laid upon him ; and at length found that the fine p of *Love of his country*, which has in all ages been a cloak for the most wicked enterprises, would, in his op so far justify whatever he should do, as to render him a innocently criminal. He therefore put himself once on the head of the malecontents, into whose party he found difficulty to bring the patriarch and most of the clergy, presenting to them the danger that menaced their religion in lieu of which, said he, *Demetrius* had resolved to effect that of the *Romish* church. The death of *Demetrius* was accordingly resolved, as a sacrifice due to the nation : but execution of this vengeance was deferred till his bride should arrive from *Poland* with the riches he had sent her ^c.

Arrival,
marriage,
and coronation of
the czarina.

MARIANA MNIESKI, the betrothed czarina, came from *Cracovia* in the beginning of the month of *January*, that city being three hundred *Polish* leagues from *Moscow* and her retinue very numerous, she did not reach the city of *Russia*, till the first day of *May*. Besides her father, her brother-in-law, with their domestics, and those of the *Russian* ambassador, who accompanied her, together with thousands of armed *Polanders*, by way of guard ; many of the *Polish* nobility took this opportunity to see the country, a multitude of traders, of various nations, had put themselves into her train, that they might safely transport their various cargoes, by which they expected to make great profit. A splendid retinue of *Russians* and *Poles*, at the head of which was *Peter Bosmanoff*, whom the czar had charged with care of this solemnity, received her at some distance from *Moscow*, and conducted her through that city, amidst the clamations of the people, the discharge of cannon, and sound of various instruments of music, first to the palace, from thence to the convent of *Tebude*, where the czar's dowager was, and where she was to continue till evening, should be ready for her nuptials. On the eighth of *May*, the patriarch performed the ceremony of blessing the marriage, and immediately after, she was crowned czarina, with

^c PIASEC. Chron. p. 226.

^t PETR. p. 331.

stop than the *Russians* had ever beheld (A). The czar and his consort then repaired to the imperial palace, where the court was as brilliant as it was numerous, and nothing was omitted to render the entertainment magnificently sumptuous.

THE very first appearance of the vast train of armed *Poles*, at came with the czarina, displeased the *Russians*, who were quite shocked when they saw them afterwards unload great quantities of arms out of their carriages^u. Their indignation increased daily at seeing these new-comers, these heathens, as they called them, assume airs of authority; and the czarina, imprudently, heightened all their discontents, first, by sitting on being crowned in a *Polish* dress; in which, however, she was over-ruled; and afterwards, by appearing in that habit the very next day, and wearing it from that time^v.

Only one but *Russians* were at the first day's entertainment: but the *Poles* were received afterwards with uncommon distinction^h. The *Polish* ambassador *Alexander Grofenski*, at first, refused to be present, because he was not to be allowed to dine at the czar's table, though the *Russian* ambassador had been admitted to that of the king of *Poland* on a similar occasion. *Demetrius* pleaded the custom of the country; and at last it was agreed that *Grofenski* should have a separate table near that of the czar^y.

In the mean time *Zuski* took care artfully to point out every incident that might contribute to mortify, and consequently exasperate the *Russians*, who, now wrought up to the pitch he wanted, began to exclaim loudly against *Demetrius*, and to brand him with the name of heretic; for that, contrary to the precepts of their religion, he had several times eaten veal, which they were taught to look upon as an unclean meat, even during the public festivals; that he had contemned their holy days, by making his greatest entertainments, and receiving the nuptial presents, at those very times^z; and that, though proper baths had been constantly prepared for him ever since his marriage, according to the custom and religion of the *Russians*, he had not only gone to church, defiled and impure, without using them, not even after the wedding night, but had taken his *Poles* and their dogs with him into their holy temples^b. These speeches were made with such unrestrained violence, that some of *Demetrius's* guards seized one of the se-

^u PETR. p. 327. ^v Idem, p. 340. ^h MARGARET, fo. 42. ^y Idem, ibid. ^z PETR. p. 340. OLEAR. p. 146. ^b TRAGED. Moscov. p. 36.

(A) *Petrus* (1) and *Margaret* (2) gives a particular account of the ceremony.

(1) p. 337. (2) fo. 42.

Demetrius was in the very act of speaking thus treasonably against the czar, who, being told by some of the conspirators that the fellow was drunk when he talked at this rate, let him go unhurt. His father-in-law, and his friend *Bosmanoff*, warned him repeatedly to take care of himself, for that a conspiracy was certainly carrying on against him: but he took no other notice of it, than barely to bid his guards be watchful ^b.

BESIDES the malecontents in *Moscow*, whose number was very great, *Zuski* had now near 20,000 well armed men dispersed in different parts round about that city, waiting only for his orders to advance. The chief of the conspirators met privately, and settled the time and manner of executing their design, which it was agreed should be on the eve of a grand entertainment the czarina was to give on the 17th of *May*; whilst the troops were introduced the day before, by different ways, under pretence of their belonging to bojars who were come to see the festival ^c.

AT fix o'clock in the morning of the appointed day, all the disaffected knez and bojars appeared at the head of their troops, and, being joined by some thousands of the populace, likewise armed, seized on the palace, where they found only about thirty guards, unable to make the least resistance. *Petr Bosmanoff*, awaked by the tumult, ran almost naked to endeavour to appease it; but was the first victim to the fury of the people, who immediately began to massacre all that were, or looked like, *Polanders*; whilst *Zuski*, armed with a sabre in one hand, and a cross in the other, ran about every where to animate his countrymen to take vengeance: at the same time ordering the great alarm-bell to be rung, and a report to be spread that the *Poles* had taken up arms to murder all the *Russians*.

Demetrius himself arose, and asking what was the matter, was answered by one of the guards, who was in the plot, that it was a fire: but the cries of the dying, and those who fled for shelter, soon taught him the true cause of the tumult: whereupon catching up a cimeter, he would have gone out to meet the rebels, but was prevented; upon which he jumped out of a window, and in the fall dislocated his thigh, so that he could not rise from the ground ^d. In this situation he was taken and carried into the great hall of audience, where *Zuski* set a strong guard over him; whilst the conspirators, breaking

^b PETR. and MARGARET. ubi supra. ^c PIASEC. Chap. p. 286. PETR. p. 336. ^d PETR. ubi supra. TRACOST. MOSCOVIT. p. 38. MARGARET, fo. 43. LUNDORP. Skiz. contin. T. iii p. 631. KOBIERZ. Hist. Uladisl. p. 68.

open every room in the palace, killed all the *Polas* they met, treated the ladies of that nation with the utmost brutality, seized all their riches, and those of the merchants who had followed the czarina, which last they demanded with bitter imprecations: but an old lady, under whose hoop she was then hid, saved her, by assuring them that she had been sent for to her father's before break of day, and that she was still here.

WHILE the unfortunate *Demetrius* was exposed to the cruel insults of every miscreant now about him, still boldly asserting his birth-right, and appealing to his mother, *Zuski* went to the dowager czarina, and insisted on her declaring upon oath, whether the captive prince was or was not her son. She, at first, declined giving any answer to the question; but, being pressed, at length said, that her son had been murdered many years before^e. *Zuski* returned with this reply: whereupon *Demetrius* desired leave to speak to the people; but this was refused; and several questions were put to him, which he answered in such a manner, that though the nobles who asked them, kept his reply secret; yet a German, who chanced accidentally to stand by and over-hear what passed, was instantly killed, that he might not divulge them^f. *Demetrius* the rest of the conspirators, as if they had waited only ^{us killed,} for this signal, then fell upon *Demetrius*, and mangled him to death with a thousand wounds. His body was afterwards stripped naked, and dragged through the streets of *Moscow*, to the very spot where *Zuski* had received his pardon when on the point of being beheaded. There it was laid upon a table, with the legs of *Demetrius* extended over the breast of *Bogdanoff*, whose corpse was stretched out upon a bench. The noble vented their invectives against the murdered czar for three days, at the end of which his remains were interred; though they were shortly after taken up, and burned; to which a height had *Zuski* raised the fury of the people^o. The fate of *Sandomir*, and his daughter, the czarina, were arranged; but promised their liberty, on condition of his paying 10,000 rixdollars, and her restoring all the jewels that had been sent her. They performed this agreement on their side: and, in a few days after, both of them were sent prisoners to

^e STRAHLENBERG, C. iv. ^f DESCRIPT. MOSCOV. p. 147.
^o TRUANO. ° PETR. p. 340. TRAGOEDE MOSCOV. p. 41.
 MARGARET, fo. 42. OLEAR. p. 118. PIASEC. CHRON. p. 286.
 HUNDORF. Sleid. contin. T. iii. p. 682. LUDOLPH. T. i. p. 203.
 DESCRIPT. RUSS. Elzevir. p. 145.

Jaroslaw. Near 2000 *Poles* perished in this massacre; the remainder were sold to the *Tartars*^a.

SOME writers say, that the czarina dowager was con-
ced with *Demetrius*, and that she declared upon oath, that I
not her son: but this does not seem to be sufficiently at
Others assert, that, upon *Zuski's* returning with her in
answer, *Demetrius* insisted upon confronting her; and
Zuski thereupon, without deigning to give him any a
drew out a pistol, and shot him through the head. As
czarina's declaration concerning him, even supposing
have made such a confession, there is no saying what for
menaces, backed by irresistible power, might extort
woman in her situation.

GREAT pains were taken immediately to publish the r
as they were called, why *Demetrius* had been killed; in
to render his name the more odious to the public. The
pal of these were, that he was an impostor; that his rea
was *Griska Utropeja*; that he had been a monk, at
time he had served the patriarch in quality of secretar
fled from his convent to *Poland*; to prove which,
were produced, who called themselves his brothers and
but even his enemies allowed this to be a poor contriv
Certain it was that *Griska* did fly from his convent to
and with him the person supposed to be *Demetrius*. Th
dered it necessary to endeavour to make *Demetrius* p
Griska. But this *Griska* returned to *Russia* with *Den*
and captain *Margaret* says, that any one might have se
and his brothers, who held lands under the family of C
in his time; that the *Griska* in question, was 35 years
whereas *Demetrius* was but 25; and that *Demetrius* I
displeased at his debaucheries and irregular life, banish
to *Jaroslaw*; to which this author, who, as we obser
fore, was captain of the guards to *Demetrius*, adds, I
Englishman belonging to the factory at *Jaroslaw* assured
had heard *Griska* declare and affirm upon oath, wh
news of the death of *Demetrius* first reached that plac
the *Russians* had killed the real son of *John Basilowitz II*
he himself had carried from *Russia* to *Poland*. Captain
garet ends with saying, that *Zuski* sent for this *Grii*
Jaroslaw; but that he could not learn what afterwa
came of him^k. To the principal charge, before men
against *Demetrius*, were added others, suited to the ge

^a PETR. p. 358. MARGARET, fo. 43. ⁱ TRAGOED
COV. p. 45. DESCRIPT. RUSS. Elzevir, p. 153. ^k M
RET, fo. 54.

the *Russians*; such as his being a forcerer, and a heretic, in league with the Pope; a tyrant, who liked none but foreigners; who despised the *Russians*, embezzled their treasures, contemned their religion, and profaned their churches: times, of which the bare mention was enough to make every *Russian* curse him¹.

Demetrius had good natural parts: but he was much too *His character* and too mild to govern so stubborn a people as the *Russians*, who must be ruled with a rod of iron. His education in convent, could not possibly fit him for a throne. Unexperienced in the artifices of courts, he became an easy prey to a few favourites, who flattered him; and to add to his misfortune, the chief of these favourites, were *Poles*, the most odious of all nations in the eyes of his subjects. His imprudent countenance them above all others, and giving them some of the finest posses in the empire, whilst the *Russians* were scarcely suffered to appear before him, together with his marrying a princess of that detested country, immediately set his nobles against him; and his endeavouring to introduce the manners of that hated country, even before he was actually seated on the throne, alienated at once the affections of all his people. His stature was of the middle size; his limbs were strong, and nervous; his complexion was brown; and under the right eye he had a wart, which was a mark that had been observed on the avowed *Demetrius*, when a child, *Uglitz*^m.

Immediately after the death of *Demetrius*, the nobles and *Zuski elected czar* then at *Moscow* proceeded to the election of a new sovereign; the first free election they had known since the reign of *Ruric*ⁿ. Their suffrages were equally divided between the knez *Basilius Iwanowitz Zuski* and *John Galitzin*: whereupon *Worotinski*, after desiring these two to withdraw, while the assembly should determine which of them to prefer, presented to the electors the great importance of the matter in debate; that it behoved them to be extremely cautious of choosing a person who had either many or very powerful relations and adherents, lest it should be attended with sure evils; and that certain conditions ought to be stipulated with the party elected, such as, particularly, that all private animosities should absolutely be laid aside; and that

¹ THUANUS, et ex eo DESCRIPT. RUSS. Elzevir. p. 155. TRAG. MOSCOW. p. 45. LUNDORP. Sleid. contin. T. iii. p. 4.^m MARGARET, fo. 34. TRAGÆD. MOSCOW. p. 51. LUNDORP. Sleid. contin. T. iii. p. 685. ⁿ STRAHLENBERG, 208.

no alteration should be made in their established laws, nor any new taxes be laid upon the people, without the consent of the senate. All this being readily agreed to, he added, that those who had voted for knez *Galitzin*, as for an honest and prudent man, had done well; but that his family was so numerous and potent, that he could not help recommending to them to consider a little better of this point before they came to a definitive resolution. Upon which one of the assembly answered, "These lords are of equal merit, and we have already done what our duty requires: but to decide this matter, let us consult the people, to the end, that no body may have just cause to blame us". This motion was unanimously agreed to. In the mean time *Wortinski* found means to send a person privately among the people, to tell them that *Zuski* was chosen, and that as soon as the bojars came out, they should proclaim him. They did so, to the astonishment of the electors; who, knowing none of their body had left the assembly, looked upon this event as a miracle. *Zuski* was accordingly declared czar, was crowned soon after, and received the homage of all the people.

ONE of *Zuski's* first cares was to publish a long manifesto, tending to justify his own conduct, and blacken that of *Demetrius*, whose corpse he then ordered to be taken out of the grave and burnt, and the ashes to be thrown into the *Moskwa*, that nothing of him might remain: and at the same time he sent to *Uglitz* for the body of the young *Demetrius*, said to have been assassinated by order of *Baris*, and gave it a pompous burial in the church of St. *Michael* at *Moscow*, after the patriarch had declared him a martyr, and enrolled him among the number of the saints^p. His next object was, to re-establish the tranquility of the state.

1607.
Sends an
embassy to
the Poles.

THE Poles were bitterly incensed at the insult offered to their ambassador and the palatine of *Sandomir*, and exasperated beyond expression at the murder of so many of their nobles as had perished in the late bloody massacre. *Zuski*, therefore, began with publishing a sort of apology; after which he sent an ambassador to King *Sigismund*, to tell him, that there having been found among the papers of *Demetrius*, and the palatine of *Sandomir*, letters which proved that the impostor's enterprize was not the work of the jesuits, as some

^p PETR. p. 375. MARGARET, fo. 43. TRAGOP. MOSCOV. p. 44. LUNDORP. Skid. contin. T. iii. p. 683. P MARGARET, fo. 44. PETR. p. 378.

pretended,

ided, and of the palatine only (A), but that the King
 if and the republic had countenanced and promoted it,
 so far as to lend real succours; the czar and the whole
 nation thought they had a right to complain of such
 duct, which was a manifest violation of the treaties
 to on both sides; and that it also appeared, that *Deme-*
had sent considerable sums of money into *Poland*, to
 those who had been his abettors; all which it was in-
 on that his *Polish* majesty should restore, and at the same
 lifavow the whole undertaking, if he would avoid the
 quences of a bloody war.

land was then distracted by the confederacy of the *Rokof-*
*rs*¹, headed by *Radzivil* and *Stadniski*, who demanded the
 mation of numbers of abuses both in the church and state,
 were particularly exasperated against the jesuits, by whom
 King was beset, and whom they looked upon as the au-
 of all their misfortunes. On the other hand, the states
weden assembled at *Upsal* had declared *Sigismund* and his
 xcluded from the crown of that kingdom, and had given
 his uncle *Charles*, duke of *Sundermania*, who was pre-
 g to make good his pretensions to the province of *Livo-*

For these reasons, the *Russians* found more moderation
 temper at the court of *Poland*, than could otherwise have
 expected. *Sigismund* apologized for what had happen-
 by acknowledging that himself and all the *Poles* had been
 luses of *Demetrius*, in thinking him the true and lawful
 of the great *John Basilowitz*: that therefore they had
 violated the treaties made with that monarch, in aiding
 son, as they supposed him, to recover a throne which
 her had usurped from him; and that as to the damages
 fioned thereby, it was but just that they should be repair-

*Who agree
 to his de-
 mands.*

PETR. p. 376. TRAGOED. MOSCOV. p. 53. THUANUS,
 ESCRIPT. MOSCOV. Elzevir. p. 158. ¹PIASEC. p. 280, 295.
 IENESKI, op. posth. de motu civili in Polon. L. i & ii.

1) Among the historians of
 times, who will have it
Demetrius was a monkish
 ator, some say, that he first
 ivered his design to the je-
 of *Poland*, desiring their
 rful protection, and pro-
 ig to re-establish their or-
 and the *Roman* catholic re-
 n in *Russia*. With this

view, add they, the jesuits took
 care to instruct him in every
 thing that might give success to
 so great an enterprize, and found
 means to interest pope *Clement*
 VIII. in the affair; whilst the
 palatine of *Sandomir* contributed
 his money, and the assistance of
 his friends, in hopes of raising
 his daughter to the throne.

ed

ed on each side ; to which end, as well as to restore a good understanding, conferences should immediately be held.

Makes an alliance with the Swedes. Charles IX. of Sweden, to whom *Zuski* had also sent an embassy, delighted with the prospect of drawing succours from *Russia* to support his pretensions against *Poland*, readily consented to an alliance between the two states.

Takes measures to secure tranquility at home. AT home, the new czar seemed to have nothing to fear, but that the suggestions of strangers might draw the people from their duty, and engage them in new designs : to obviate which, he caused all the *Poles* and *Germans*, that were dispersed about his dominions, to be sought out ; and having got together about fifteen hundred, whom the soldiers or the populace robbed of all they had, he divided them into three bodies, ordered them to be clothed, gave them wherewithal to defray the expences of their journey sparingly, and then sent them home, by the way of *Smolenskew*, *Livonia*, and *Poloczka*.

A second, pretended, Demetrius. THESE prudent precautions seemed to promise the *Russians* that tranquility which they had stood so much in need of, since their misfortunes at the end of the reign of *Iohn Bassilowitz*, the weakness of that of his son *Theodore*, the troubles of that of *Boris*, and the calamities occasioned by that of *Demetrius*. But a new impostor started up, with the name of *Demetrius*, and, tho' he never appeared, caused more mischief in *Russia*, than he had done whose name he took, and of whom he was the fatal spectre.

THE knez *Gregory Schacopski*, keeper of the seal to *Demetrius* when he was killed, gave rise to this imposture^b. Seeing all in confusion, and that the enraged populace were seeking for every one who had been attached to that prince, he fled, with two *Polish* gentlemen, dressed like *Russians*, to *Putivol*, a town always faithful to *Demetrius*, from the time of his first bringing it under his subjection. *Schacopski* took great care to publish on the road, that *Demetrius* was not killed, but another, who had been mistaken for him ; and that he had happily escaped in the midst of the dreadful massacre, and would very soon return to punish his ungrateful subjects. At the same time he affected to shew great respect to one of his companions, in order to make him pass for *Demetrius* : and on his arrival at *Putivol*, he assured the inhabitants, that *Demetrius* was gone to implore succours from his allies ; that he sent him to certify to them that he was living, that he would soon see them, and that he desired them to continue firm in their allegiance to him. The

^b PETR. p. 380. LUDOLPH. tom. i. p. 206.

people of *Putivol*, upon hearing this, vowed they would sacrifice their lives for their sovereign.

Schacopski then sent to the *Cossacks*, whose chiefs met him at *Putivol*; while the rest of the partizans of *Demetrius*, who deplored his fate, and treated *Zuski* as an ungrateful man, and an usurper, assembled under a bojar named *Isthoma Bascow*, and marched thither, in hopes of finding their prince. All the country took part with them, and fifteen castles withdrew from the obedience of the czar, who no sooner heard of what passed in the *Ukraine*, but he went thither with all speed, at the head of an army, which, though raised in haste, he imagined would be more than sufficient to reduce to their duty a body of malecontents, who had united by chance, and had not had time enough to put themselves in a posture of defence. But his confidence cost him dear: for his troops were beaten, and he was forced to retire in great disorder to *Moscow*^d. The rebels defeat the czar's army.

THE victors, reinforced by 12,000 *Cossacks*, commanded by *Iwan Isaiwitz Polutnich*, followed him, and were on the point of making themselves masters of *Moscow*, where all was in confusion, when *Polutnich* shewed *Bascow* a commission from the pretended *Demetrius*, enjoining the latter to give up the command to him. *Bascow* was so piqued at this affront, that, having debauched near 9000 of the *Cossacks*, he went over to the czar, and acquainted him, that there was in reality no *Demetrius* at *Putivol*. Four thousand of the other troops followed the example of the *Cossacks*, and abandoned *Polutnich*, who retired to *Caluga*, which a detachment from *Zuski's* army immediately besieged^e. *Schacopski* thus defeated in his schemes, and unable to find any one who would really venture to personate *Demetrius*, sent to the pretended *Peter Theodorowicz*, whom we mentioned before, and offered him his assistance. *Peter* readily accepted it, and advanced with 10,000 *Cossacks*, who raised the siege of *Caluga*^f. The rebels then fortified themselves in *Tula*; but *Zuski*, advancing against them, forced them to surrender (A) after an obstinate defence, and, contrary to *Their* promise, treated his prisoners with the utmost severity, *Peter Theodorowicz*, as he called himself, was hanged, and *Schacopski* and *Polutnich* were starved to death in prison^g. ring-leads
ers are
taken and
put to
death.

^d PETR. p. 381.

^e PETR. p. 385.

^f Idem, p. 389.

^g Idem, p. 400.

(A) On the 28th of October 1607.

ONR

1608. ONE might naturally suppose that even the name *Demetrius* would have been buried with *Schacopski*: but *The Poles* *metrius* would have been buried with *Schacopski*: but *set up a Poles*, whose domestic feuds were now ended; whose *third De-* wanted money, which they could have only from a *metrius.* who longed to revenge the late treatment of their countrymen; and whose interest it was to keep up the phantom divided and distressed the *Russians*; after looking about time for a proper person to answer their designs, pitched on an artful fellow, a school-master at *Socla* in *Polish* who could speak the *Russian* language, and sent him, handsome retinue, to *Putivol* and *Starodub*, where he himself out for *Demetrius*^b. Numbers of malecontents immediately resorted to him from all quarters, and thence *Adam Wiesnowieski* and *Romanus Rozynski*, together with several other *Polish* nobles, soon joined him with 60,000 their countrymen, and 8000 *Zaporog Cossacks*¹.

The king of Sweden offers Zuski his assistance, which is refused. THE king of Sweden, knowing that his enemy *Sigismund* of *Poland* would be glad of any opportunity to create a creature of his own upon the throne of *Russia*, in thereby, to regain *Estonia* and *Finland*, and perhaps himself master of *Sweden* also, kept a watchful eye on his transactions^m, and sent *Peter Petreus*, whose *Chronicle* we have often quoted, to the czar, to warn of the impending danger, and offer him the assistance of thousands of his troops: but *Zuski*, flushed with his successes at *Tula*, at first refused, tho' he was afterwards asked themⁿ: for the pretended *Demetrius*, continuing his march, came up with the *Russians*, whose army consisted of 170,000 raw undisciplined men, and defeated them with great slaughter; the first time near *Bolchow*, a town far from *Caluga*, and the next near the river *Chou*. Field marshal *Masalki*, who commanded the czar's army, was taken prisoner in this last engagement.

The pretended Demetrius gains two victories over the Russians; THE victors, whose numbers were increased by the multitudes of disaffected *Russians* who flocked to them, pursued the vanquished to the very gates of *Moscow*, and probably have made themselves masters of the capital, not been for 5000 *Muscovites*, whom they forced to join at *Bolchow*, and who, quitting them on a sudden, threw themselves into the city, and defended it with great bravery; notwithstanding which, its inhabitants were

and lays siege to Moscow. and probably have made themselves masters of the capital, not been for 5000 *Muscovites*, whom they forced to join at *Bolchow*, and who, quitting them on a sudden, threw themselves into the city, and defended it with great bravery; notwithstanding which, its inhabitants were

^b Idem. ibid. PIASEC. Chron. p. 302.

¹ PIASEC.

PETR. p. 402. LUDOLPH. tom. i. p. 253.

^m PU

p. 548. LUDOLPH. tom. i. p. 142.

ⁿ PETR. |

² PIASEC. p. 303. PETR. p. 406. LUDOLPH. tom. i. p.

have capitulated, and received the pretended *Demetrius*, if this last had not insisted upon the czar *Zuski*'s being delivered up to him ^P.

IN the mean time *Zuski*'s uncle got together a body of troops, with which he encamped within four wersts of *Moscow*. The *Polish* general, who commanded the siege, attacked him in his camp, defeated him, and took him prisoner. The czar himself attempted another action: but his army was again repulsed; and he then saw no way to extricate himself from the approaching danger, but by engaging king *Sigismund* to withdraw his forces, and give over his designs. To this end he released the palatine of *Sandomir*, and his daughter, on condition that they should employ their interest to bring about this point: but the fictitious *Demetrius*, who was informed of all that passed, and who knew how much it would forward the success of his enterprise to have these persons in his power, sent a party of horse to intercept them, and bring them to him. Upon their arrival, he received them publicly with great ceremony, shed tears, as if the overflowings of his joy, and embraced the lady as his rescued consort. They immediately saw the imposture, and could not but express their astonishment at the confidence of the man who so steadily maintained his part, while he was personating this feigned character: but the palatine had been too sensibly affronted and ill-treated by *Zuski*, to let slip so favourable an opportunity of being revenged on him; and his daughter could not refuse to concur with him in it, as a means by which she might re-ascend to that high degree of grandeur from which she was so lately fallen, and at the same time avenge herself and her murdered husband^q. Accordingly, after remaining a few days in the camp, she appeared with a splendid retinue in the tent of the pretended *Demetrius*, whom she acknowledged for her husband, and treated, to all outward appearance, with the same kindness and respect as if he had been really so. This public testimonial brought over to the impostor numbers who had doubted till then; and the news of it being soon spread, almost all *Russia* declared for him, except *Moscow*, *Novogorod*, and *Smolenskow*^r.

Signal impudence of the impostor.

THE king of *Poland*, taking advantage of the confused situation of *Russia*, in order to recover the places that had once belonged to his crown, laid siege to *Smolenskow*. *Zuski*,

1609.
The Poles besiege Smolensk.

^P PIASEC. p. 304. PETR. p. 407. LUDOLPH. ubi supra. kow.

^q PIASEC. ubi supra. KOBIERZ. Hist. Uladisl. p. 71. PETR. p. 409. PIASEC. p. 305.

thus

Zuski re- thus attacked on all sides, and on the point of being driven
ciens suc- from the throne, now accepted the late offers of the *Swedes*,
cours from and agreed (A) to relinquish to them for ever, *Kexholm*, and
the Swedes all pretensions to *Livonia*, on condition of their sending him
5000 men, whom he was to pay, under the command of
count *James de la Gardie* *. With these succours, which
came just in time, *Zuski* was enabled to make head against
the pretended *Demetrius*, but durst not hazard a battle to
relieve *Smolenskow*. *Sigismund* himself eased him in this de-
stress: for, rightly judging, that if *Zuski* should be entirely
ruined, the *Russians* would probably substitute in his stead the
feigned *Demetrius*, of whom he wanted to make no other
use than to hinder them from assisting *Sweden*, which he in-
tended to attack; he recalled the *Poles* that served under the
pretended *Demetrius*, who thereupon fled to *Caluga* †. By
this means the siege of *Moscow* was raised; and *Zuski* gained
a sort of respite, till his subjects, weary of him and his go-
vernment, considering the train of misfortunes that had at-
tended his reign during five years, and imputing all their ca-
lamities to him, as to a person visibly disliked by heaven, re-
solved to chuse themselves a new master. Accordingly, af-
ter many debates, they offered the crown to *Uladislaus*, the
son of *Sigismund* king of *Poland*; hoping by his means to
save *Smolenskow*, to destroy *Demetrius*, and to establish peace;
and perhaps too, from their natural antipathy to the *Poles*,
with a resolution to get rid of him as soon as their end should
be answered.

1610.
Uladis-
laus chosen
czar:
Zuski de-
throned;
and the
pretended
Demetrius
kill-
ed.

Uladislaus accepted the crown, *Zuski* was deposed, shaved,
and put into a monastery †, from whence he was taken to
be delivered to the *Poles*, with all his family, and soon after
died of grief †, or, as some say, by poison. *Demetrius* made
head against the *Poles* for some time, till he was massacred at
a feast by the *Tartars*, to revenge the death of *Kasimouki*
their chief, who had been drowned by his order. His party,
however, still subsisted for some years; for not only *Zarvski*,
the general of the *Cossaks*, proclaimed his son, whom several of
the *Russians* acknowledged †, upon *Zarvski*'s promise to
assist them in driving away the *Poles*; but a new impostor
took the name and place of *Demetrius*.

* PETR. p. 411. LOCCEN. lib. viii. p. 507. † KOBIERZ.
p. 150. PETR. p. 428. PIASEC. p. 314. † KOBIERZ. p. 289.
LUDOLPH. tom. i. p. 335. PETR. ubi supra. † PIASEC.
327. et ex eo LUDOLPH. tom. i. p. 375. † KOBIERZ. p. 292.

(A) By a treaty concluded at *Wiburgb*.

THIS was the clerk of an office, whose real name history *A fourth*, has not preserved : but we are told, he was a man of intrigue, *pretended*, bold, enterprising, and who wanted neither wit nor conduct ^b. Demetrius. He first appeared in the province of *Novogorod*, where he gave himself out for the true *Demetrius*, the same who had escaped from the hands of the assassins employed by *Boris*, from *Zuski* at *Moscow*, and from the snares of the *Tartars* at *Caluga*. Numbers of soldiers joined him ; and such crowds of the meaner people flocked to him by degrees, that he was almost astonished himself to find how strong he was grown. He carried his boldness so far as to send an ambassador to *Charles IX.* of *Sweden*, to demand succours from him, by virtue of the alliance between the two states ; and published a manifesto to engage those whom he called his true subjects, to return to their obedience.

THE king of *Sweden*, amazed to see this *Demetrius* arising every moment, like a phoenix from his ashes, ordered *Petrius*, who had often seen *Griska Uropeja*, to examine who he was : but the new *Demetrius*, being apprised of this, feigned himself out of order, and sent the *Swedish* minister to his principal secretary, who was then at *Iwanogorod*, where all the country had acknowledged him. *Petrius* desired him to acquaint his master, that he had secret affairs, of great importance, to communicate to him : but it was of greater importance to him not to be seen ; so that the *Swede* was obliged to go away without speaking to him, or being able to determine any thing farther, than that he believed him an impostor. However, he carried on his schemes for sometime : till at last some of his own party betrayed him, and sent him in chains to *Moscow*, where he was hanged ^c.

WHILE *Sigismund* still doubted within himself, whether he should consent to his son's accepting the crown of *Russia*, his ambition being to make a conquest of that empire, he pressed *Smolenskow*, which had now sustained a siege of near two years, to surrender to him ; to which the governor replied, that he was ready to open the gates to the czar *Uladislaus*. This not satisfying *Sigismund*, who wanted the surrender to be made to him, that he might re-unite it to his crown, and the *Polish* troops before the place beginning to grow weary and dissatisfied, orders were given for a general assault. The attack was made in the night of the 13th of *July* ; when the principal inhabitants, finding that their enemies would infallibly over-power them, retired, with all

Who is
hanged.

1611.
Smolensk-
kow taken
by the
Poles.

^b OLEAR. lib. iii. ^c PETR. p. 462 & 475. Relation
curieuse de l'état présent de Moscovie, p. 457, & seq.

their most valuable effects, into a church, under which they laid a sufficient quantity of gun-powder, and blew themselves up°. The flames soon communicated to all the other buildings; so that the *Poles*, who entered it sword-in-hand, in about four hours time, became masters of a city reduced to ashes, and almost depopulated; upwards of 200,000 of its inhabitants having perished during the siege.

*Dreadful
insurrection
at Mos-
cow.*

THE *Poles* were continually representing to their king, that the *Russians* fought only to deceive him, and that it would be more glorious for him to be the conqueror of their country, than only the father of their czar. In consequence of this idea, tho' he had promised that *Uladislaus* should soon go to *Moscow* to receive the homage of his new subjects, yet he deferred his departure from day to day, and sent in his stead such numbers of *Poles*, that upwards of 10,000 of them were reckoned in the city of *Moscow* alone; a number sufficient amply to revenge the late massacre of their countrymen. The *Polish* general, *Stanislaus Solkouski*, likewise received, in the mean time, the oath of allegiance from the *Russians*, in the name of *Uladislaus*; and, with their consent, which he found means artfully to obtain, put a thousand men in garrison in the castle of *Moscow*. At length, however, the continued delays of the departure of *Uladislaus*, the insolence of the *Poles*, who had forgot how dear their licentiousness had cost them a few years before, and the impatience of the *Russians*, who saw no end of their miseries, all together, spurred them on to meet in great numbers in the place before the castle, where they loudly complained of the outrages they had received from the *Poles*, who ought to have protected and defended them; adding at the same time, that they should be forced to use those remedies which nature had put into their hands for their safety, if some better course were not taken. *Solkouski* did all that was in his power to appease them, and even punished severely some of the most culpable among the *Poles*: but this did not satisfy the *Russians*; and the *Polanders*, apprehending a general insurrection, redoubled their guards, and forbade the *Russians* to assemble or bear arms. Incensed at this, they all rose, and met in several parts of the city, in order to oblige the *Poles* to divide their forces. Some parties of the latter, not thinking themselves strong enough to resist, had recourse to an horrid expedient to divert their enemies. They set fire to the city, which then consisted of above 180,000 houses, in three or four different places; and while its distressed in-

• KOBIER. p. 404. PIASEC. p. 324. LUD. tom. i. p. 375.
habitant

habitants ran to the assistance of their wives and children, they fell upon them on all sides, and made so dreadful a laughter, that all the streets were covered with dead bodies. At least 100,000 souls perished either by the fire or sword ^b. The czar's treasury was plundered, as well as the churches and convents, from whence the *Poles* took an incredible quantity of gold, silver, and precious stones, which they sent into their own country: even their common men got such riches, that, it is said, some of them loaded their pistols with large pearls ^f. About 7000 *Poles*, who had committed all this mischief, lorded it over the ashes of *Moscow* for fifteen days; at the end of which, leaving a garrison in the castle, but imprudently neglecting to supply it with provisions, they vacuated the ruined city, and went to their king, whom they obliged to advance their pay ^g.

In the mean time *Zachary Lippenow*, a brave and resolute *Russian*, putting himself at the head of an army raised in *Russia*, laid close siege to the *Poles* in the castle of *Moscow* ^h. *Sigismund*, now master of *Smolenskow*, might easily have sent them succours, and thereby have secured his footing in *Russia*: but he returned into *Poland*, without giving them besieged any assistance, either in men or money; and when he, shortly after, undertook to retrieve his affairs in the empire he had left, none of his designs succeeded, on account of the jealousy of his generals ^m. The *Poles* blocked up in the citadel of *Moscow*, made several vigorous sallies; but were at length reduced to such miseries, by hunger, that they offered to surrender, on condition that they should be allowed to march home unmolested. The *Russians* agreed to these terms, but basely broke their word, and put most of them to the sword ⁿ. With this place *Sigismund* lost all that he had in *Russia*.

Uladislaus's election to the crown was set aside, on account of his not coming to accept it; and as soon as the *Russians* and senators saw the state a little at rest, they proceeded to the choice of a new sovereign. Some of the members of the assembly which met on this occasion, opened the debate, with recommending to the rest, above all things to give such regard for the welfare of their country in giving

^b PIASEC. p. 323. KOBIER. p. 374. PETR. p. 34. OLEAR. t. iii. LUDOLPH. t. i. p. 374. ^f PETR. p. 40. & seq. KOBIER. p. 381. ^h KOBIER. p. 424. PIASEC. p. 325. KOBIER. p. 450, 453. PIASEC. p. 378. PUFEND. p. 577. PETR. p. 478. LUDOLPH. t. i. p. 411. ⁿ KOBIER. Hist. Ladisl. lib. vii. p. 441, 450. PIASEC. Chron. p. 277.

their votes, as to avoid all foundation for future troubles; admonishing them, that though the intention of those who were for promoting the interest of a foreign prince might be good, and believed by them to be for the advantage of the empire, yet they might be mistaken, and thereby subject *Russia* to endless woes; that, in electing one of their own body, they ought to take care not to chuse a person whose relations were too numerous, or who had been instrumental in the late unhappy troubles, by which many had made themselves friends, and others enemies, and therefore might easily be the cause of new disturbances: and lastly, that whoever was chosen, should agree to certain conditions drawn up by the assembly, and not be crowned till he had solemnly sworn to observe them.

AFTER several had been named, and rejected, one of the electors proposed *Michael Theodorowitz Romanow*, son of the archbishop of *Rostow*, a youth of seventeen years of age, who was with his mother in a convent at *Castruma*; his father *Theodore Nikitiz Romanow*, or *Philaret*, as he was called, upon his being obliged to take orders, as we observed before, being then a prisoner in *Poland*, whither he had been sent on an embassy°. This proposal soon gained the approbation of many; and particularly of the people: for in this prince were centered all the circumstances necessary to preserve the tranquility of the state. There were but three males of his family living; he had not been concerned in the late troubles; and his father, being a prelate of known piety and virtue, would rather advise peace, than endeavour to excite new divisions; of which he had given proof, by a letter he found means to convey from his prison to his wife's brother *Czeremetoff*, wherein he exhorted him, as a general and a senator, earnestly to consider the good of the empire, and to persuade the rest of the senate to do the same.

Czeremetoff, or, as that family now spell their name, *Sheremetow*, laid this letter before the assembly, whom it immediately determined to fix upon the good archbishop's son; a choice which none could object to, though no one present could certify any thing as to his personal qualifications. The noblemen of *Castruma* who were present at the election, had indeed seen him, but could only say, that they believed him good-natured, temperate, pious, and discreet for his age. The assembly was neither willing to set him

° PUFFEND. p. 580. KOBIEK. p. 469. PIASEC. ubi supra.
 OLEAR. lib. iii. c. iii. LUDOLPH. p. 463.

aside on account of his youth, nor to decide absolutely in his favour, till they were acquainted with his character, and had seen him; for which reason they deputed two of their number to his mother, with a letter, desiring she would send her son to *Moscow*.

THE tender mother no sooner learnt the purport of their message, than she began to weep and lament her misfortune; in that her only son was to be taken from her to share the fate of so many czars, who had been miserably slaughtered. Full of this idea, she wrote a letter to her brother *Czeremetoff*, earnestly requesting him to use his endeavours with the senate, that her son might be excused, as being too young to be fit for so high a dignity, and having no relations able to assist him with their good advice, as he himself, as well as they, would find, but perhaps too late; wherefore she intreated him to prevail on the electors to think of some other person, more capable to govern both himself and the empire.

THIS letter, and the report of the deputies, caused a warm debate in the assembly; many taking it amiss, that a woman should thus oppose the will of the representatives of the state; whilst others, considering her reasons, and that she was not ambitious of having her son promoted to the crown, were the more confirmed in the opinion they had conceived of him.

Czeremetoff, actuated by much weightier reasons than those which influenced his sister, prudently dissembled, saying, he would not concern himself in the matter: but, at the same time, he worked effectually under-hand, to bring about this election, which seemed to him the only thing that could save his country, and persuaded the metropolitan of *Moscow* to insist upon chusing young *Romanow*. Accordingly the prelate, expecting, undoubtedly, to advance his own interest by it, repaired one day early to the assembly, and declared, with a solemn asseveration, that he had had a revelation, and that, if the *Russians* wished to have a prosperous prince to rule over them, they could not chuse a better than the son of the archbishop of *Roslow*. This declaration had such an effect, that the whole assembly instantly desired *Czeremetoff* to write once more to his sister, and beg of her to let her son come to *Moscow*. To this *Czeremetoff*, fearful lest his nephew should be disapproved of if he came to *Moscow*, either on account of his youth, or for other reasons that might possibly occur to the electors, but could not then be foreseen, politickly answered, with a feigned humility, "I must not oppose the will of God, nor the opinion of this

“ assembly: though I think some regard ought to be paid to the mother’s endeavours to avert the election of her son. For my part I will be neutral; lest any one should think I have more regard for my relations, than for the good of the empire, and that I may have a clear conscience before God and this assembly, in case any misfortunes should happen on account of his youth.”

THIS speech, accompanied with many tears, had such an effect, that even those who had been most against the election of the young prince, now cried out: “ Why should we use so many intreaties in this case, since we have such full power from the Almighty? As to his youth, God, who has chosen him, will also protect him. Let us therefore no longer debate the matter, but acknowledge him our sovereign.” With these words they went to the church, and proclaimed him, to the great joy of all that were present, especially the common people, who were mightily taken with the pretended revelation ^P.

S E C T. III.

*From the Accession of the now reigning Family of
ROMANOW.*

1613.
Michael
Theodo-
rowitz
czar.

MICHAEL THEODOROWITZ begun his reign with taking every step that prudence could suggest to appease the troubles of his empire, and strike at the root from whence it was apprehended others might arise. His temper was sweet and engaging; he delighted in the arts of peace, and was resolved, if possible, to efface the remembrance of all the cruelties of his predecessors.

*Makes his
father pa-
triarch of
Russia.*

As soon as he had notified his election to the king of Poland, his father, the archbishop of *Rostow*, was immediately set at liberty, and sent home. Michael received him as the best of parents; created him patriarch of all *Russia*, upon the death of the then head of the church of that empire, which happened soon after; constantly treated him with the utmost respect and filial piety; consulted him in all affairs of importance, and gave him the first place in all public assemblies: marks of respect which added greatly to the dignity of the patriarch’s office, highly revered before.

WE have already observed, that *Charles IX.* of Sweden had sent to assist the czar *Zuski* against the *Poles*: but the *Russians* not seconding *James de la Gardie*, as they ought to have done, he retired with several hundred *Swedes* and *Finnlanders*, to seek, at least to make good, the expences the king his master had been at. With this view, he endeavoured to seize on the places which *Zuski* had promised him, and pressed the *Russians*, in particular, to evacuate *Kexholm*: but instead of complying with his demand, they took from his courier the instrument of the treaty he had made with them, which he was sending into Sweden, and refused him entrance into *Novogorod*. This perfidy determined *de la Gardie* to take by force, what he found he could not obtain otherwise: and accordingly, having received a reinforcement from Sweden, under the command of *Evert Horn*, he made himself master of *Ladoga* and *Kexholm*, and, re-entering Russia, invested *Novogorod*, at the time when they were deliberating at *Moscow* about setting aside the election of *Uladislavus*†. He then proposed prince *Charles Philip* of Sweden to succeed him, and some of the principal men in the country gave him hopes that this might be brought about: but having observed the irresolution and inconstancy of the *Russians*, he thought he might push the affair with a better prospect of success, if he appeared in a condition to be able to support him. He therefore attacked *Novogorod*, and took it by assault. Those who fled to the castle were allowed to capitulate, on condition of their putting themselves under the protection of Sweden, and electing for their sovereign his brother, who, on his side, was to allow them the free exercise of their religion, and to defend them against all their enemies. After this *de la Gardie* put a garrison in the fortrefs, and took the oaths of all the *Russians* who were found in the city; upon which the people of *Novogorod* sent deputies to offer the crown to prince *Charles Philip*‡. But while these things passed, *Charles IX.* died, and his son *Gustavus Adolphus* succeeded him.

Gustavus, who was much embarrassed with the wars of *Denmark* and *Poland*, not answering the solicitations of the *Adolphus Russians* so warmly as they expected, all the interest of *Charles becomes Philip* would soon have been suppressed, if *de la Gardie* had not taken uncommon pains to preserve it. At length, peace being made at *Knaredh* between Sweden and Denmark, *Gustavus*

† PIASEC, p. 284. KOBIERZ. p. 461, & seq. " PIASEC. ubi supra. KOBIERZ. p. 476. LUDOLPH. p. 464. PUFFEND. p. 581. PETR. p. 480.

besieged *Augdow*, which the *Russians* had surpris'd^c: and *Gustavus* returned to *Sweden*, where the situation of affairs required his presence. *La Gardie* accompanied him, and the management of the war in *Russia* was left, during their absence, to colonel *Jaspar Andersen Crausen*, field-marshal *Evert Horn*, and *Magnus Martensen Palmen*, with power also to treat about peace^e.

1615. *THE* *Russians* were greatly distressed, they still demanded terms which the *Swedes* could not agree to. *Gustavus* wish'd for peace; but at the same time thought himself intitled to advantageous conditions. To this end, he had recourse to the *English* ambassador, who was then at the czar's court; and to give weight to his remonstrances, he came back the next year to *Narva*, and ordered his troops to besiege *Pleskow*^f. *Evert Horn*, with 30 of his men, was killed in the very first attack, in which the *Russians* lost about 700^k. The czar sent an army of 24,000 men to relieve the place: but *Gustavus* leaving a sufficient force to continue the siege, met them with the rest of his troops, and attacked them with such bravery, that he killed 9000 on the spot^w. *Pleskow* continued to make a vigorous defence, till, winter coming on, and contrary winds having prevented the arrival of the heavy artillery of the *Swedes*, *Gustavus* was obliged to raise the siege.

1617. *AT* length the differences between the two crowns were mutually submitted to the mediation of *England*, whose minister, Sir *John Merrick*, accordingly opened the conference with the *Russians* at *Glebova*; where a truce was agreed to, with the preliminary articles of a peace, which was concluded in the beginning of the next year (A) at *Stolbowa*, a village between *Tiffina* and *Ladoga*^y. By this treaty, the czar yielded up to the king of *Sweden*, *Kexholm*, and its dependencies, with all *Ingria*; an acquisition which enabled the *Swedes* to make a strong rampart on that side of *Russia*, and cut the *Russians* off from all communication with the *Baltic* sea: though these last comforted themselves for that loss, by seeing their commerce increase daily in the *White Sea*, by

^c PUFFEND. 587. PETR. p. 486. ^e PUFFEND. p. 588.
 PETR. p. 487. ^f LOCCEN. lib. viii. p. 529. ^k PUFFEND.
 p. 590. ^w LOCCEN. lib. viii. p. 530. ^y PUFFEND. p. 591.
 LOCCEN. p. 530.

(A) On the 13th of February 1617.

of the *English* and *Dutch*, with whom they chose to rather than with any other nations (A).
 The czar now turned his whole attention towards re-estab-
 lishing order and tranquillity in his empire, and remedying
 miseries that had crept in during the late troubles. There re-
 mained no enemies abroad, but the *Poles*; and they were too
 employed by the *Turks*, to give him much uneasiness
 but as soon as their hands were at liberty on that side,
 sent all their force against *Russia*, which prince *Uladis- Ula-*
 laded at the head of a numerous army, pretending that, in con-
 sequence of his election, the *Russians* ought to acknowledge *Uladis-*
 laded as their sovereign. They, on the contrary, reproached *Russia*.
 for having abandoned them, and said, that his refusal to
 come into *Russia*, when his presence was absolutely
 necessary, discharged them from their oaths of allegiance to
 him. He penetrated to the very gates of *Moscow*, and let
 his troops ravage all the adjacent country: but finding, at
 length, that the *Russians* were determined to support their new
 prince *Michael*, he consented to an accommodation, and con- 1618.
 cluded a truce at *Diwielina*, for fourteen years, the basis of *Makes a*
 which was, that each should enjoy what he was then actually *truce for*
 enjoying. 14 years.
Russia was now at peace with all her neighbours, and the
 czar took a condition to execute the prudent and salutary mea-
 sures which he was taking for the prosperity of his people. One of
 these was, his marrying, that they might have an heir to
 his crown, of his own blood. His choice fell upon *Eudocia*, 1625.
 daughter of *Lucijan Streschnew*, a poor, but virtuous gen- *Michael*
 tleman, whom the czar's messengers, sent to acquaint him *Theodo-*
 with the elevation of his daughter, found, as we have already *rowitz.*
 mentioned, (B), helping his own domestics to cultivate his patri-
 monial inheritance, at the distance of near two hundred miles
 from *Moscow*. *Streschnew* was ordered to court, and created
 a count; but soon preferred the sweets of his rural retreat, to
 the splendour of the court, and he begged leave to retire.

OFFEND. ubi supra. LUDOLPH. p. 561. ^b STRAHLEN-
 C. IV. OLEAR. lib. iii.

As most of the writers
 have hitherto been our
 historians, bring their accounts no
 lower than to this peace,
 which, indeed, many of
 were cotemporaries; the
 must not expect the sanc-
 tion of equal authorities for

every event in the future part of
 this history, over which great
 darkness still prevails; owing
 chiefly to the incommunicative
 temper of the *Russians*, parti-
 cularly in regard to the affairs
 of their empire.

(B) Page 149.

Eudocia,

Who
therefore
declare
war a-
gainst
them.

diet of *Poland*; but no sort of satisfaction could be obtained. Incensed at this procedure, and at the behaviour of the *Polanders*, who were continually sending priests of the *Romish* communion into *Russia*, where they left no method untried to make converts to that persuasion, the czar resolved to declare war against *Poland*, without waiting for the expiration of the truce, and the rather, as he had received ambassadors from *Sweden*, and the grand signior, who seemed likewise highly exasperated against *Poland*.

1633.
But are
defeated.

Just as the war was, in which the czar engaged, it was not successful. An army of a 100,000 *Russians*, commanded by *Michael Borissowitz Szebin*, besieged *Smolenskow*, but were defeated with great slaughter, and obliged to raise the siege; *Uladislaus*, who had succeeded his father *Sigismund III.* coming to the relief of that important place, with a vast force. The conqueror, pursuing his advantage, entered *Russia* the next year, and laid siege to *Biela*, while his *Tartars* made incursions on all sides.

1634.

Szebin, and his camp-marshal *Ishmael Gossen*, were accused of not having behaved well before *Smolenskow*, and lost their heads: but this act of justice did not re-establish the affairs of the czar, whose counsellors advised him to make peace with *Uladislaus*. A negotiation was accordingly begun, and at length, with much difficulty, brought to a conclusion; *Uladislaus* renouncing the title of czar, in consideration of *Michael Theodorowitz's* yielding to his son for ever, the provinces of *Smolenskow* and *Czernichew*, with their dependencies.

Peace con-
cluded be-
tween the
Russians
and the
Poles.

Death and
character
of the
czar's fa-
ther.

A little before this (A), *Michael* lost the best of friends in the person of the patriarch *Theodore*, or *Philaret Nikititz Romanow*, his father, and principal counsellor. He had always so great a respect for this venerable parent, that, besides giving him the highest rank next the throne, his name was constantly inserted with the czar's in all public acts, which ran in the name of the czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, and his majesty's father, the most holy patriarch. As he had joined the mure to the sword, having been a general in the army before he was an ecclesiastic, the affable and modest behaviour, so becoming the ministers of the altar, had tempered and corrected the fire of the warrior, and rendered his manners amiable to all that came near him. He had been an eye-witness to all the revolutions that had happened from the time of the death of *John Basilowitz II.* whose consort was his aunt. He had profited by all the errors committed by the czars *Theodore*, *Boris*, *Demetrius*, *Zuski*, and *Uladislaus*; and had drawn from their

(A) Towards the end of the year 1633.

conduct

conduct such lessons, for the instruction of his son, as effectually made him appear without any of the faults of his predecessors, unless it be, that he had too high an idea of his own power, which made him neglect to cultivate those alliances with his neighbours, which might have enabled him to execute great things, especially in the then situation of affairs between Sweden, Denmark, and Poland.

THE peace between the *Russians* and the *Poles* had not been concluded above two months, before an embassy arrived at Moscow from Frederick duke of *Holstein-Sleswick* (B), who had built the city of *Frederickstadt*, upon the *Eyder*, where he was desirous to establish that important branch of commerce, the silk-trade; to derive which, advantageously, from its source in *Persia*, it was necessary for him to maintain a correspondence between his little court and that of the sophy. His views were to carry on this commerce either by the way of *Narva* or *Archangel*; but that could not be done without leave of the czar to bring his merchandise through *Russia*. Such was the object of this embassy, which arrived at *Moscow*, soon after another from *Sweden* on the same subject. The czar granted to the duke of *Holstein* what he refused to several princes; perhaps because he was pretty well satisfied that the undertaking could not succeed.

THE peace which the *Russians* now enjoyed, enabled their *Morofou* czar to apply himself more than ever to regulate the disorders of the state, and look into the concerns of his own family; for the welfare of which it was of high importance to provide for the education of the czarowitz, who was to succeed him in the throne. With this view, he appointed for his governor *Boris Iwanowitz Morofou*, whom we shall find acting a great part under the reign of his pupil.

Michael Theodorowitz was so respected by his neighbours, for his equity, prudence, and piety, that, during the remainder of his life, his court was constantly graced with ambassadors from all the princes about him, as well in *Asia* as *Europe*, who courted the friendship of so great a monarch. Even the *Cossacks*, ill treated by the *Polish* nobility, against whom they were often obliged to take up arms in order to preserve the privileges they had acquired by their services against the *Turks* and *Tartars*, offered to put themselves under his protection, and assist him to take vengeance on their then allies, the *Poles*, for the mischiefs they had occasioned in *Russia*. But the czar,

(B) The ambassadors were often quoted, was secretary to *Philip Crusus* and *Otho Brugman*. this embassy.
Adam Olearius, whom we have

religiously

religiously adhering to his treaties, and preferring the advantages of peace and tranquility, to any acquisitions that might be made by war, declined their propoals, and contented himself with keeping up a good understanding with them.

*Death of
the czar
Michael
Theodo-
rowitz.
1646.*

THIS pacific prince, deservedly beloved by all his subjects, who looked upon him as their father, died on the 12th of July 1645, in the 49th year of his age, and the 33d of his reign^f. He left two children, the czarowitz *Alexis Michaelowitz*, who succeeded him, and the princess *Irene*, who was betrothed to a count of *Holstein*, *Christian Wolmar*, natural son of *Christian IV.* king of *Denmark*, but died in the year 1656, without being married.

*Alexis
Michaelo-
witz
crowned
czar.*

Morofou was too well acquainted with the fickle temper of the *Russians*, to give them time to form designs, or enter into cabals against the heir to the crown, whose youth might perhaps, otherwise have offered them a plausible pretext, for he was but in the sixteenth year of his age. He therefore immediately assembled the knez and bojars, and they crowned *Alexis Michaelowitz* the very next day after the death of his father, without observing the tedious ceremonies usually practised at the coronation of the czars.

*Ambition
of his
prime mi-
nister Mo-
rofou.*

AFTER the coronation of the young czar, *Morofou* changed his office of governor, into that of confident and prime minister; and took upon him the same authority in affairs of state, as he had over the prince in the life time of his father. The czarina, widow of *Michael Theodorowitz*, died eight days after the coronation of her son, who shewed his regard for her, by the favours he bestowed on all her family: though the ambitious *Morofou*, whose interest it was not to have spies upon his actions about the court, took care that their promotions should be such as kept them at a distance from *Moscow*; whilst, on the other hand, he introduced his own relations, friends, and creatures on whom he could rely, their fortune depending on his, and placed them about the person of the prince.

MONARCHS can neither see, nor do all things themselves: wherefore a faithful minister, who has the interest of the state, which is really that of the prince, at heart, and sacrifices all private views to the welfare of his country, is an inestimable treasure. It would have been happy for the young czar, if these had been the principles of *Morofou*, who certainly loved him tenderly, but with too much regard to his own interest, and too determined a resolution to be, at least, the first subject in the empire.

^f OLEAR, lib. iiii.

To secure his favourite point, he had recourse to two very important measures : the first was, to keep the czar as much as possible from concerning himself in affairs, by continually engaging him in parties of pleasure ; and the next, to provide for him a wife, who, being obliged to him for her good fortune, might make her influence over the czar subservient to his purposes. With this view he cast his eyes upon the two daughters of the bojar *Ilia Danilowitz Miloslauski*, a nobleman of small fortune, but strongly attached to him. Both these ladies were extremely handsome, especially the eldest, who was called *Maria Ilychna* ²; and *Morosou* resolved to marry himself her whom his master should not make choice of : by which means he would not only become brother-in-law to the czar, who, for that reason, would be the more engaged in his preservation ; but, by means of his wife, would be able to insinuate into the czarina, and by her into the czar, whatever he should think proper. This project succeeded. The daughters of *Miloslauski* were invited to court, and the czar no sooner cast his eyes upon the eldest, but he was charmed with her, and, without debating long on the matter, told *Miloslauski*, the same day, that he would honour him with his alliance, and marry his daughter. This compliment was accompanied with such presents as enabled the whole family of the intended bride to appear at court in a manner suitable to their high station. The czar and the young lady ^{1647.} were soon betrothed, according to the custom of the *Russians*, ^{Through} and the nuptial ceremony was performed eight days after, ^{whose} with the utmost magnificence. *Morosou* married the other ^{means the} sister, at the end of another week ^b. From this time *Morosou*, ^{czar mar-} now the czar's brother-in-law, and his father-in-law, *Miloslauski*, associating themselves with *Leponti Stepanowitz Ples-* ^{ries one sis-} *sou*, first judge of the *Smenskoi Duor*, or principal court of ^{ter, and he} judicature in *Moscow*, formed a kind of triumvirate, which, ^{the other.} for a while, governed the whole *Russian* empire.

TOWARDS the end of the reign of the czar *Michael Theodorowicz*, a daring impostor appeared in *Poland*, and pretended to be son of the great duke *Basilus Iwanowitz Zuski*. His real name was *Timaska Ankudina*, and he was the son of one *Demko*, or *Demetrius Ankudina*, a linen-draper at *Wologda*, ^{Son of a} where he was born. *Demko*, perceiving somewhat more than ^{linen-} ordinary wit in this child, had him brought up to reading and ^{draper.} writing, in which he soon made such progress, as to pass for a very extraordinary person among his illiterate countrymen. His voice, and skill in singing hymns at church, recommend-

² STRAHLENBERG, c. iv.

^b OLEAR. ubi supra.

*His first
prefer-
ment.*

*Cheats his
fellow offi-
cer.*

*Burns his
wife,*

*and flies to
Poland.*

ed him to the archbishop of the place, who took him into his service, in which he behaved so well, that the prelate, conceiving an affection for him, married him to his grand-daughter^b. This alliance, which might have been very advantageous to him, proved his ruin; for he presently began, in his letters, to assume the quality of son-in-law to the waivode of *Wologda Welicopermia*. Having squandered away his wife's fortune, after the archbishop's death, he went with his family to *Moscow*, where, upon the recommendation of a friend of the archbishop's, he found an employment in the *Nova Zetvert*, an office where those who keep public houses are obliged to take all the liquors they sell. *Timoska* was made receiver there; but lived with such extravagance, that he could not make up even his first payment of taxes due to the czar; and as great exactness is expected in all accounts of that kind, he set his invention to work, to supply the deficiency, which amounted to 200 rubels. To this end, he went to one of his fellow officers, named *Basili Gregorowitz Spilki*, who had done him several kindnesses, and told him, that one of the chief merchants of *Wologda*, to whom he was under great obligations, being come to *Moscow*, he had invited him to dinner, and should be glad to let him see his wife, if *Spilki* would do him the favour to lend her his wife's pearls and rings, that he might present her in a condition suitable to his employment. The other immediately complied, without asking any sort of writing or acknowledgment for what he lent, though the jewels were worth above a thousand rubels. *Timoska*, instead of pawning them to make up his accounts, sold them outright, made use of the money, and impudently maintained to his friend, that he had never lent him any thing. *Spilki* arrested him; but could not detain him in prison, for want of a proof of his demand. Shortly after, *Timoska* had some difference with his wife, who often reprimanded him with his perfidiousness, and other vices too shocking to mention: upon which, fearing on one hand to be called to account for what he was in arrear with the czar; and on the other, that his wife might, perhaps, turn evidence against him; he sent his son one day to a friend of his, shut his wife up in a stove, and set fire to the house, in which the poor woman was burnt.

After this, he went into *Poland*, but so secretly, that it was thought at *Moscow* the same fire had consumed him, with the rest of his family. It was about the year 1643 that he went away: but hearing in 1645, that the czar was

^b OLEAR. lib. iii.

to send an embassy to the king of Poland, and that his at Warsaw was known in Russia, he went in the year to Chmielnisky, general of the Cossacks, and begged his aid against the persecutions which he suffered, for no cause, said he, than that the czar knew he was nearly related to the prince Basilus Iwanowitz Zuzki.

carried on this imposture with such art, and insinuated himself so far into the favour of Chmielnisky, that he began to grow considerable; when a Moscovite officer, named Kossou, who was sent to this Cossack general, happened to know him, advised him to return to Moscow, and endeavour to make up the sum he owed to the czar, which was not so great but that he might afterwards obtain his money, by the intercession of friends; for it was not yet known that he pretended to be the son of the czar Zuzki.

At MOSKOW, reflecting on this incident, began to think himself not safe in Poland; and therefore, in the year 1648, he took the best of his way to Constantinople, where he abjured the Christian religion, and was circumcised. The fear of punishment, for crimes committed at Constantinople, drove him thence to Rome, where he became a Roman catholic.

Turns
Turk.

From Rome he went to Vienna, in the year 1650, and hence into Transylvania, to prince Ragotzky, who gave him letters of recommendation to Christina, queen of Sweden. This princess received him kindly, and, giving credit to his story, allowed him an honourable subsistence. The queen of Sweden.

Becomes a
Roman
Catholic.

Goes into
Sweden.

Some merchants then at Stockholm, soon acquainted the queen with the imposture that was carrying on by this man, and how much he was carrying out every where, that he was none of Basilus Iwanowitz Zuzki. The czar immediately ordered Kossou, who had seen him with Chmielnisky, in the year 1648, to desire the queen to deliver up the impostor: but Christina, who knew that inquiry would be made after him, refused to do so.

His man, or rather his companion, whose name was Timofka, or Constantine, having staid behind on some business, was taken, and sent chained to Moscow, where Timofka's mother and kindred were put to the rack, and some of them executed. Shortly after, Timofka himself was discovered at Reval in Livonia, where the queen ordered him to be arrested: but having found means to escape out of Livonia, he fled to Brussels, and there saw the archduke Leopold.

From thence he went to Wittemberg, and Leipzig, where he made profession of the Lutheran religion, and published himself his confession of faith in Latin. From thence he went to Neustadt, in the duchy of Holstein, where Peter the Lutheran minister, in consequence of letters from the czar to the duke of Holstein, arrested him.

To Brus-
sels.

Embraces
the Lutheran
religion.

of *Holstein*, got him secured. He was carried to (and put under a strong guard, till the czar sent express for bringing his person to *Moscow*.

One of the messengers sent for this purpose was *Spilki*, whom *Timoska* had cheated of his wife's pearls. He desired to see the prisoner, and to speak in the presence of some of the officers of the court: *moska* behaved as if he did not know him, and would speak the *Moscovite*, but the *Polish* language, purposely perplexed the other, who could not speak it well. *Spilki* asked him, whether his name was not *Timoska Ankudina*, and whether he had not robbed the czar's treasury, and committed several other enormous crimes? To which he replied *Timoska Ankudina* might have robbed the czar's treasury, but he applied the money to his own use, with which he had no concern; that his name was *Johannes Sinensis*, and in *Polish* language *Zuski*; artfully avoiding even to hint his former pretence to be the son of *Basilus Iwanowitz*. But when *Spilki* asked him, whether he did not remember his past life? the other derided him, gave him injurious language, and added, that he could not look upon him as *Poslanick*, since he was only a poor shop-keeper, a liar; alluding to his name, *Spilki*, which signifies maker.

Timoska, one day, intreated the duke of *Holstein*, to point his chancellor, and some others of his council, to receive the state of his affairs from his own mouth. He asked him, what house and family he was of? what was he a-kin to the czar? why the czar persecuted him? wherein he could any way prejudice him? He answered "that it was well known his name was *Johannes Sinensis* the *Polish* language *Zuski*; that, at his baptism, he had been named *Timotheus*: that he was the son of *Basil D. Zuski*, and that he had been so named from a city of *Russia* called *Suia*: that he was originally a *Moscovite*, but was brought up in *Poland*, in the province of *Novogard-Verskio*, and that he was hereditary lord of *Hukragi-Verska*, upon the frontiers of *Russia*: that the czar was his kinsman, the czar's father being only a gentleman, whereas his was a prince born; which was the reason the czar persecuted him: that the khan of *Tartary*, was then at war with the king of *Poland*, would have employed him in a war against the czar; but he had too great an affection for the country of his ancestors, to disturb quiet: that it was in his power to send above 100,000

into *Russia*; but that God, of his goodness, had turned his heart from any such attempt."

The *Poslanick* who came from *Sweden*, having entered into a sort of familiarity with him, had advised him to write to the patriarch, as the most likely person to procure his pardon. He did so; and desired the *Poslanick* to convey his letter, the substance of which was, That he was indeed a *Moscovite*, and had received at his baptism the name of *Timothy*, the diminution of which is *Timoska*. That he had once had a great desire to enter *Russia* with an army of 300,000 men; but that the guardian-angel of his country had diverted him from that pernicious design. That he thereupon came to himself, and was now resolved to return to the place of his nativity: that, had he been minded to continue his wicked life, he could easily have got out of prison at *Neustadt*; but that his intention was to return to *Moscow* voluntarily, with those whom the czar had appointed to conduct him. The *Poslanick*, not doubting but that his producing this letter would extort such a confession as might convince every one present, opened it, and read it in his presence. But he had to do with a man, whom a small matter would not force to betray himself. *Timoska* endeavoured to persuade the duke of *Holstein*, that the *Poslanick* was a cheat, and the letter a forgery; for that he had never written it: as a proof of which, he immediately wrote another letter, in a stile and character so very different, that the *Poslanick*, losing all patience, threw it in his face: whereupon *Timoska* took it up, and tore it to pieces.

At length, the distraction of his conscience became indisputably apparent in the inconsistency of his depositions, and the declaration he had made, both by word of mouth, and in writing: for one while, he said, he was the son of the czar *Basilus Iwanowitz Zuski*; and another, that his father's name was *Basilus Domitian*. Sometimes he would be thought a *Polander*, and would confidently maintain, that he was no *Russian*, and that there was not any thing in his person, language, or manner of life, that could induce a sensible man to think him such. Indeed his beard was trimmed quite differently from the usual fashion of the *Russians*: he spoke the *Latin*, *Italian*, *German*, and *Turkish* languages fluently; and had such an art in counterfeiting all sorts of hands, that it would have been very hard to have convicted him by that which he wrote in his first employment.

Timoska, perceiving that all his evasions would not serve his turn, fell into despair, and would have killed himself: *Endea-*
Y 2 *ours to*
for, kill himself

for, in the way to *Travemunde*, where he was to be shipped off, not far from *Neustadt*, he threw himself headlong from the waggon, and endeavoured to get under the wheels, in hopes of being crushed to death: but the ground being soft and sandy, he received no hurt, the carriage was immediately stopped, and he was put into it again, so fastened, that he had no chance of making another escape. He then appeared satisfied; tho' he at the same time tried all the means he could to destroy himself: but he was so narrowly watched, that, at last, being out of all hope to effect it, his pretended composure of mind was much abated, and on his arrival at *Novogorod*, he fell into a deep melancholy; notwithstanding which, even amidst the greatest tortures, he expressed an admirable constancy, if one may so call the resolute obstinacy in which he persisted with regard to his first depositions: whether he intended thereby to confirm strangers in the opinion he would have imprinted in them, or that he considered within himself, that his confession could not prevent his execution, nor alleviate his doom.

*Is put to
the torture.*

As soon as he came to *Moscow*, he was put to the torture, in the presence of several of the nobility: but he impudently told them, that, of all the bojars, he would not deign to speak to any but the *Knez Nikita Iwanowitz Ramonow*, with whom, tho' he knew him only by fame, on account of his goodness and courage, he should be glad to have some discourse. While two bojars were gone to fetch *Nikita*, *Timofka* desired somewhat to drink; upon which some *Quas* was offered him in a wooden bowl: but he would have mead, and that in a silver cup; though, after they had so far complied with his humour, he only put it to his lips, and would not drink. Seeing *Nikita* come in with the two bojars, he saluted them, but still affirmed, that he was the son of *Basilus Iwanowitz Zufki*; though it was plainly proved, that he was the son of *Demko Ankudina*, linen-drapeer at *Wologda*, and that the czar *Zufki* had no children, but only two brothers, both of whom died without issue male.

WHILST he was under the torture, his mother was brought to him, and exhorted him to acknowledge his crime. He seemed, at first, to be moved at her presence; but persisted in affirming that he knew her not; no more than he would one *John Pescou*, with whom he had left his son, when he quitted *Russia*. This man represented to him how much he was to blame for behaving as he did; desired him to throw off the masque under which he had cheated the world, and disturbed his country; and conjured him to con-

sider

sider his child, and not rely any longer on illusions and impostures, which would only aggravate his misery, and bring upon him a redoubled weight of the vengeance of the Almighty. This affected him to such a degree, that he would not speak a word afterwards, tho' there were brought before him divers persons who had known him when he was in the Nova Zetvert, or Tavern-office. He was then examined, and found to be circumcised. The next day, he was put again to the torture, but would not speak at all : upon which he was carried to the chief market-place, where his sentence was pronounced, and immediately put into execution. His right arm was first cut off, with an ax, below the elbow, and his left leg, below the knee ; then his left arm, and right leg, and last of all his head. The trunk was left upon the ground, where dogs devoured it in the night ; and the members, which had been stuck upon stakes, were dragged the next morning, by the executioner's servants, to the place where all the filth of the city was thrown.

KOSTKA, the impostor's man, was pardoned, because he had confessed the truth : but, in regard to his having been unfaithful to his prince, he was sentenced to lose three fingers of his right hand. However, the patriarch, representing that the religion of the *Russians* obliges them to make the sign of the cross with the right hand, obtained that this sentence should be executed on the left of the criminal, who was afterwards banished to *Siberia* ^c.

A *Polish* envoy, who was to have his public audience of the czar on the day that *Timoska* was put to death, was conducted through the market-place, just at the time of the execution, that he might be an eye-witness of it, and be able to give the *Poles* an account of the end of that impostor, whom they had looked upon as the son of the czar *Basilus Iwanowitz Zushi*. But even this did not hinder them from afterwards producing another impostor, as we shall see.

THE triumvirate of *Morosou* and his colleagues was supported with such impudence and haughtiness, that the people, *sons of* accustomed to the mild and wise government of the late czar *Morosou Michael Theodorowitz*, knew not how to bear the insolence and *bis as* of these favourites. *Plesseou*, in his office, sold justice, and *sociates*. not satisfied with the presents which he received with both hands, he would reduce the parties to the utmost misery by studied delays ; and as to those who were accused of any crimes, he had always false witnesses ready to serve any pur-

^c OLEAR. ubi supra.

poses, particularly to bring in charges against such as were rich enough to redeem themselves from his persecutions; imprisoning and oppressing them, till they purchased their liberty with the ruin of their estates. One of the instruments of his tyranny, was *Peter Tichonowitz Trochanistow*, who had married his sister, and was of the rank of those the *Russians* call *Ocolnitz*, from among whom the bojars are chosen. He had the management of the *Puskarsk Pricase*, that is to say, was superintendant of the armourers, cannoniers, and all other workmen, belonging to the arsenal, whom he greatly oppressed: for instead of paying them monthly, as was the custom in *Russia*, where all who were in the czar's service were so punctually paid, that if they came not the first day of the month for their money, it was sent home to them; he, on the contrary, kept them out of it several months, and then forced them to compound, and give receipts for the whole sum, tho' they received but part of it.

BESIDES these grievances, trade was obstructed, monopolies were granted, and no employment could be had, but by dearly purchasing the good pleasure of the favourite *Morjou*. One got a patent, prohibiting the farther use of the ordinary *arselines*, in order to oblige the people to buy iron ones with the czar's mark upon them: but instead of selling them for eight or ten copeiks a piece, which was the most they were worth, they could not be had under a rubel: A vast sum was raised by this means, because those measures were necessary in all parts of the empire. Another contrived raising the *pucl* of salt to thirty copeiks, which before cost but twenty. But instead of making any advantage of this, it was found, at the year's end, that the dearth of salt had so hindered the sale of it, that not only the czar's revenue was very much diminished, but great quantities of fish were lost for want of being properly cured. All this made it plain, that the design of the ministers was rather to oppose the people, than to promote the service of their prince; for otherwise they would soon have abolished this new impost.

1648.
The Mus-
covites
discontent-
ed.

THE inhabitants of *Moscow*, who had lived very quietly under the reign of the late czar, could not help shewing their resentment at these grievous concussions. They had their assemblies about the churches, at the hour when their devotion led them thither, and resolved, at last, to petition the czar: but as no one single person would or durst undertake to deliver the petition to him, they agreed to do it in a body, as he should come out of the palace. Their greatest anger was against *Plessecu*, and their desire, that his place might be filled up by some person of honour, from whom they

they might expect more justice. They had their petition ready, and endeavoured two or three times to give it to the czar; but the bojars, who attended him, took it from them, and reported it as they were instructed by *Morosou*; so that no answer was returned, nor any grievance remedied. This happened so often, that the people at last resolved to take another method, and make their complaints by word of mouth, as soon as an opportunity should offer.

ON the 6th of *July*, 1648, they took their advantage of a procession, which the czar made to a monastery in the city, called *Stertenskoï*. The people assembled, as usual, in the market-place, to see him pass by: but at his return they broke through those who attended him, and, laying hold of the bridle of his horse, stopped him, and intreated him to hear their complaints concerning the injustices and violences committed by *Plesseou*, and begging that some other person might be put in his place, who should better discharge the duty of so important an office. The czar, tho' startled at their procedure, kept his countenance, seemed moved with the grievances of his good subjects, and promised to enquire into the matter, and that they should receive satisfaction. The people desired no more, and were going away well contented with that answer, when the bojars, friends of *Plesseou*, began to give them abusive language, thrust some off their horses, and struck others with their whips. The people, incensed at this treatment, threw such volleys of stones at the aggressors, that it was with difficulty these last got into the palace, though the czar's guards interposed: a circumstance which inflamed the populace to such a degree, that they threatened to force even the czar's apartments, and take away all they found there, if *Plesseou* was not immediately delivered up to them.

An insurrection at Moscow.

MOROSOU went out into a balcony, and endeavoured to appease the people, exhorting them, in the name of his czarish majesty, to go back to their homes, and make no farther disturbance: but they told him, that they had as much to say to him as to the other; and accordingly, some of them went immediately to his palace, which they forced, ransacked, and demolished in a moment, after throwing one of his servants out of the windows, for having attempted to resist them. Their fury was such, that they spared not even the images of their saints, for which the *Russians* used always to have a great veneration: but they shewed some respect to *Morosou's* wife, only taking away her jewels and pearls, which they threw into the street,

street, and frightening her by saying, that if they had not looked upon her as sister-in-law to the czar, they would have cut her to pieces.

FROM the house of *Morofou* they went to those of *Plessou*, *Trachanifou*, the chancellor, and of all who had any relation to, or dependence on the favourite, where they found such riches, that pearls were sold by the handful, so cheap, that one might have bought a hatful for thirty rubels; and the finest fables, and gold and silver stuffs, were sold for next to nothing^b.

The chancellor of Russia murdered by the people.

Nazari Iwanowitz Tzifou, chancellor of *Russia*, who had farmed the impost upon salt, was one of the victims to this popular fury. He lay, at that time, sick in bed, having received a dangerous hurt by a fall from his horse: but hearing that *Morofou's* house had been ransacked, and not doubting but that his would share the same fate, he hid himself under a heap of wood, that was piled up to serve the stoves, and over which some fitches of bacon were laid, the more effectually to take away all suspicion. This stratagem would certainly have saved his life, had he not been betrayed by one of his servants, who, taking advantage of his master's misfortunes, laid his hands on a sum of money, and made off with it to *Nischnovogorod*, after having discovered to the people the place where the chancellor was concealed. The enraged multitude took him out by the heels, and dragged him down stairs into the court, where they beat him to death. His body was thrown upon a dunghill, and the house plundered of every thing that was in it^c.

WHILE these disorders were committed in the city, care was taken to secure the palace against the outrages of the people, who continued in arms all night between the 6th and 7th of *July*, in such a manner, as shewed they only waited for day-light to begin again: whereupon orders were sent to the *German* troops then in *Moscow*, to meet at their several rendezvous in the city, and from thence to proceed directly to the castle, to defend the czar. They marched with drums beating and colours flying; and the *Muscovites*, instead of opposing, gave them way, telling them, that they had no quarrel against them, for that they knew them to be men of honour, who did not approve of the oppressive proceedings of the ministry.

THE czar then sent out the knez *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow*, to disperse the tumultuous assembly of the people, who, he knew, had a very great respect for him. *Rom-*

^b OLEAR. lib. iii.

^c Idem, ibid.

now addressed them with great civility, and told them, that he thought they ought to be satisfied with the czar's assurance, given the day before, that he would remedy the disorders of which they complained: that his majesty had commanded him to tell them as much, and to advise them to return to their respective homes, that he might the better perform what he had promised them. The people answered, that they were not dissatisfied with the czar, but with those who, under his name, abused his authority; and that they would not stir till *Morosou*, *Plesseou*, and *Trachanistou* were delivered up to them, to be punished for the injuries they had done to the whole empire. *Romanow* commended them for their loyalty to their sovereign, and assured them, that he would immediately acquaint his majesty with their affection for him: that he doubted not but orders would be given for executing those three lords; but that he could safely take his oath that *Morosou* and *Trachanistou* had made their escape; and as to the third, he should instantly be put to death. Accordingly, *Romanow* was no sooner returned to the czar, than word was sent to the people, that *Plesseou* would be brought out directly; that the two others should also be delivered to them, as soon as they could be taken; and that they might send for the executioner to do his office. He was soon found, being at the castle-gate with his servants; and in about a quarter of an hour, *Plesseou* was put into his *Plesseou* hands, to be led to the market-place, and there beheaded. *put to* But the people, impatient to be revenged, fell upon him so *death.* violently with sticks and clubs, that they killed him before he reached the intended place of execution, and then dragged his body through the streets, following it with the most bitter curses; till, at last, a monk, whom the deceased had ordered to be cudgelled, cut off his head^d.

Morosou had indeed made his escape, and was so fortunate *Trachan-* as to avoid those that were in search of him, till he got into *istou put* the castle again by private ways: and that it might not be *to death.* thought the czar had connived at the escape of any one, messengers were sent to apprehend *Trachanistou*, who was found near the *Troitzskoi* monastery, about twelve leagues from *Moscow*. The next day he was brought to the *Smenskoi Duor*, the tribunal where *Plesseou* had sat as judge, and the czar commanded his head to be struck off. This execution wrought so much upon the people, that, though they were informed that *Morosou* had been seen in the country, and none knew what was become of him, they forbore pressing

^d Idem, *ibid*.

*A great
fire at
Moscow.*

the czar any farther to deliver up a man, who, they thought, was not in his power ; and about eleven o'clock in the morning every one retired to his own home.

In the afternoon, several houses in the *Metroki* and *Twerski* quarters of *Moscow* were set on fire. - The people immediately ran thither, with an intention rather to steal than quench the flames, which soon consumed the part of the city called *Czargorod*, reducing to ashes every thing between *White-wall* and the river *Neglina*, and then, spreading to the czar's taverns and magazines of strong waters, raged with such violence, that it was feared the palace could not possibly escape ; especially as all the firemen, instead of being ready for their duty, had got so drunk, that they lay weltering in the streets, where many of them were suffocated by the smoke of the buildings burning around them. At length a monk, dragging along a heavy burden, called to some to help him to cast it into the fire, saying, that it was the carcase of the abominable *Plesseou*, and that nothing else could quench the flames *. The fire abated soon after, which was attributed to this pretended miracle.

*The czar
intercedes
for Morosou.*

SOME days after this terrible accident, the czar treated the *Strelitzers* with strong waters and hydromel ; and his father-in-law, *Ilia Danilowitz Miloslawski*, invited several of the citizens to dine with him, and spent many days together in entertainments. The patriarch also enjoined the priests and monks to endeavour to pacify the people, and to exhort them to that respect and obedience to the higher powers, which their religion required, and their consciences ought to oblige them to. These means had the desired effect ; especially when they found that the czar had filled the places of those who had been executed, with honest and upright men, capable of performing the duties of their respective employments. But *Morosou* was still in danger ; from which the czar resolved to endeavour himself to extricate him. To this end, he took the opportunity of a procession to speak to the people, having *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow* by his side ; and told them, that he was extremely grieved to hear of the injuries and violences done by *Plesseou* and *Trachanissou*, under his name, but contrary to his intention : that he had put into their places, persons of integrity, who, being acceptable to the people, would administer justice impartially, and without corruption ; and that they might not fail therein, he himself would have an eye upon them : that he repealed the edict by which the additional duty had been laid upon salt, and that he would immediately abolish all monopolies ; for

* *Idem, ibid.*

that

that his subjects should enjoy all their privileges, which he would even increase, if there should be occasion. The people bowed down to the ground, and thanked his majesty, who thereupon resumed his discourse, and said, That it was true, indeed, he had promised to deliver up to them the person of *Boris Iwanowitcz Morosou*, whom he acknowledged he could not absolutely justify, though, at the same time, he could not resolve to condemn him: that he hoped the people would not deny the first request he should make to them, which was, that they would pardon *Morosou*, only for that time; that he himself would be answerable for him for the future, and assured them his behaviour should be such as to give them cause to rejoice at their lenity: that if they would not have him be any longer of his council, he would dismiss him; but that he desired them to look upon that lord as one who had been a father to their prince, and one who, having married the czarina's sister, must needs be extremely dear to him, and consequently, that it would be very hard for him to consent to his death. The tears which accompanied this conclusion of the czar's speech, shewed plainly his affection for that favourite, and so moved the people, that they all cried out, "God grant his majesty a long and happy life. God's and the czar's will be done." The czar, highly rejoiced, thanked the people for this obliging proof of their zeal and affection for him.

Who is pardoned,

SHORTLY after, *Morosou* appeared in public, among those who attended the czar on a pilgrimage to the *Troitzkoi* monastery. He went uncovered from the castle to the city-gate, saluting the people on both sides with great submission; and from that time he embraced every opportunity to gratify and assist those who applied to him on any business they had at court ^b.

and becomes a different man.

EVENTS of this kind, where the people exert their power, are sometimes necessary to re-establish that justice and good order which insolent favourites, or covetous and ambitious courtiers, have trod under foot: and in this we find, that even the *Russians*, slaves as they are on most occasions, can use desperate means to recover their freedom, when the oppression of bad ministers grows insupportable to them.

NOT long after this tumult was quieted, another broke out in a different part of the empire, upon the following occasion. A war between *Russia* and *Sweden* had seemed almost inevitable, for some time, on account of the disorders committed on the frontiers of the two states by the subjects

1649. The czar sends an embassy to queen Christina of Sweden.

^b Idem, *ibid*.

of

of both crowns, who left their own habitations, and over to the other country, to avoid paying their debts. *Russians* made great complaints: but when his czarish in the year 1649, sent his ambassador *Boris Iwanowitz kin*, into *Sweden*, to queen *Christina*, and the affair was amended into, it was found, that there were many *Swedes* in *Russia*, than *Russians* in *Sweden*: whereupon agreed, that this transmigration should be forbidden for the future: but as the czar, by this mean acquired a great number of subjects, he was to pay queen of *Sweden*, by way of indemnification, 190,000 part in money, and part in rye; and the first payment to be made in the spring of the year 1650. According to the queen of *Sweden's* commissary, coming into *Russia* time agreed on, received the money; and an order sent to *Theodore Amilianou*, a merchant at *Pleskow*, to provide as much rye as amounted to 90,000 rubels.

1650.
A tumult
at Ples-
kow.

THIS avaricious man, taking advantage of the opportunity to enrich himself, caused all the rye, wherever to be seized, and would not permit any private person to purchase even a single bushel without his leave, who were sure to pay dear enough for. The inhabitants of *Pleskow*, sorely aggrieved by this oppression, complained of the covetousness of the *Swedes*, charged *Pushkin* with variation in his employment, and perfidy to his prince, imagining that this negotiation was concluded contrary to the czar's intentions, endeavoured to engage the city of *Novgorod* in this quarrel, which went so far, that, for chief merchants having declared for them, the waivode made much ado to prevent a general insurrection. Both the others resolved, that they would stop the money which was to be transported into *Sweden*, and that they would no longer submit to the contract made for the rye; but would, in all probability, starve the country. Therefore chose three deputies, a merchant, a *Cosack*, an *Amil*, and ordered them to go to *Moscow*, to know whether this treaty was made, and put in execution, by the czar's consent.

IN the mean time, without waiting the return of the deputies, they ransacked *Amilianou's* house, and tortured his wife, to make her confess where her husband, who had laid up his money. The waivode came, in order to prevent the disorder, but was forced out of the city, as the neighbouring nobility were invited to come in, against monopolizers and patentees. As soon as the deputies arrived at *Novgorod*, the waivode ordered

be put in irons, and sent them in that condition to *Moscow*, whither the waivode of *Pleskow*, and the merchant *Amilianou* likewise repaired at the same time. Intelligence was also brought, that the people of *Pleskow* had robbed and abused a *Swedish* merchant; whereupon the czar sent back the waivode, and with him a bojar, to endeavour to prevent any farther disorders. Those of *Pleskow*, who would not receive them at first, at length opened their gates; but it was only to put the waivode in prison, and affront the bojar, who, very imprudently, at so unseasonable a time, treated the people with such severity, that they fell upon him with sticks, and beat him so, that he was left for dead.

However, the czar executed his treaty with *Sweden*, but paid money instead of rye, and sent with the *Swedish* commissary a strong guard of *Strclitzers*, to conduct him to the frontiers. At the same time he ordered *John Nikitowitz Gaveniski* to assemble the nobility of the neighbouring provinces, who, supported by a good body of troops, besieged *Pleskow*, and took it; the inhabitants being forced to make their peace by delivering up the seditious, who were put to death, or sent into *Siberia*².

The reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz* was troubled with several tumults of this kind, which, however, did not prevent his doing great things, and maintaining two important wars, one with *Poland*, and the other with *Sweden*.

THE *Poles* had been terribly harrassed during the last years of the reign of *Uladislaus*, by the revolt of the *Cossacks* under the command of the famous *Chmielniski*: but they may be said to have drawn all their misfortunes upon themselves, by their manner of treating the chief of the *Cossacks*, and the rest of that warlike nation. When *Uladislaus* died, they had penetrated a great way into *Poland*, where they committed unheard-of cruelties and devastations, and were so powerful, that it was thought, that whoever had the support of the *Cossacks* might be chosen successor to *Uladislaus*. The czar *Alexis* had then on foot a fine army, which he offered to employ in the service of the *Poles*, if they would give him the vacant crown: but they not listening to his proposal, he used menaces, which had likewise no effect: for *France*, having made it a point to place upon the throne of *Poland* a prince who should be devoted to her, employed her money properly, to engage the *Cossacks* to withdraw during the time of the election, that she got the prince *John Casimir*,
John Casimir
chosen king
of Poland.

² OLEAR. lib. iii.

brother

brother of *Uladislaus*, to be chosen, on condition he should marry the princess of *Gonzague*, his brother's

THE new king would not meddle in the difference between the *Poles* and the *Cossacks*, but thought the latter so in the right, that when the nobles urged him to put him the head of an army to chastise the rebels, as they them, he answered, it was not well done to burn the *Chmielniski*, or to abuse his wife and children. At length *Cossacks*, abandoned before *Zbaras* by their allies the *Turks* who offered to make peace with *John Casimir*, were also to make their peace: but as a great many could not confide in the *Poles*, some sought protection the *Turks*, and others under the czar.

1654.
The czar
declares
war a-
gainst Po-
land.

ALTHOUGH the czar *Alexis* had not been irritated with contempt with which the *Polanders* treated the advantages he made them to obtain their crown, he would have wanted reason for declaring war against them. *Skow*, *Kiow*, *Czernichow*, which had been ceded to them the last treaty of peace, were losses too considerable for the *Russians* to put up with quietly. They had not gained but by taking advantage of the distressed condition to which they had reduced the empire, by patronizing so many impostors; and therefore the czar thought he had the same in his turn, to profit by the deplorable state in which he found these mortal enemies of his country. He marched to *Smolenskow*, and sat down before it, with 300,000 *Russian Cossacks*.

Recovers
Smolen-
skow,

1655.
Wilna,

THIS siege was long; which is not to be wondered at, if we consider that *Smolenskow* is one of the strongest places on the frontiers, and that the *Poles*, foreseeing the rupture which this monarch however did not resolve on without advice of his whole empire represented in senate, had fortified it with a large garrison, and every thing necessary for a vigorous defence. After a full year, the town surrendered, and this conquest opened a door for the *Russian* army into the heart of *Lithuania*, where they besieged *Wilna*, which did not hold out very long. The *Russians* lived at large in the country, and caused such misfortunes as were long felt in the great duchy.

The pro-
vince of
Czerni-
chow, and
the city of
Kiow.

WHILE this army found nothing to stop its course to *Prussia*, another body more numerous, on account of supplies from the *Cossacks*, went on with as little opposition to the banks of the *Dnieper*, where the whole province of *Czernichow*, and the important city of *Kiow*, returned

obey

obedience of their former sovereign ; whose dominions were, in the mean while, desolated by a dreadful plague.

THE misfortunes which Poland laboured under, were greatly increased by the king of Sweden, *Charles Gustavus*, falling suddenly upon her. *John Casimir* had, with very little prudence, endeavoured to prevail upon *Christina*, queen of Sweden, to protest against her abdication in favour of her cousin *Charles Gustavus*, and solicited the archbishop of *Upsal*, and the states of the kingdom, to take this step in her absence. *Charles*, justly incensed at so irregular a conduct, entered Poland, and almost entirely subdued it in less than three months. His Polish majesty, having some apprehensions of this blow, had made a long truce with the Russians, to whom he left all their conquests within the ancient limits of Russia, upon condition that a certain sum should be paid him at different times.

THE czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*, having thus had the honour to blot out the shame which the loss of three fine provinces had brought upon his country, thought he might be at leisure to apply himself to the peaceable acts of government : but the jealousy that almost all the nations of Europe had conceived of the king of Sweden's arms in Poland, obliged him to come again into the field, to stop the rapidity of that prince's conquests. He had reason to complain of the Swedes, who, in attacking their common enemy, not satisfied with the many provinces they had taken, had, by a treaty between *Magnus de la Gardie*, and *Radziwil*, appropriated to themselves the great duchy of *Lithuania*, which the czar might look upon as his conquest. This last was sufficient cause for him to carry his arms into *Carelia*, *Ingria*, and *Livonia*. The troops which the czar sent into the two first of these provinces made no other progress than ravaging the open country ; but were beaten in several places. The weight of the war was in *Livonia*, where the Russians took *Duneburg* and *Kakenhausen* by storm ; from whence they advanced to *Riga*, which they cannonaded for seven whole months, without being able to make one assault, though they were assisted by the Poles, and their army amounted to 120,000 men. *De la Gardie* and *Helvesld*, who were in the place, defended it with such bravery, and made so many successful sallies, that the besiegers were obliged to decamp, with very great loss. The two nations then agreed to a truce, which was afterwards changed into a peace, by the treaty of *Cardis*, concluded the 2d of June 1661.

TOWARDS the end of the reign of *Uladislaus* of Poland, a new *Demetrius* had appeared in that kingdom. Mere chance, as it is said, discovered him, and he himself was ignorant of his

1656.

Truce between Russia and Poland.

Hostilities between the Russians and the Swedes.

Conquests of the Russians.

Who are repulsed before Riga :

and conclude, first a truce, and afterwards a peace.

Another Demetrius produced by the ignorant Pol

norant of his own birth : but it is more likely that *Uladislaus*, an ambitious prince, who could not digest the loss of the *Russian* crown, had raised him up, and instructed him how to behave, that he might serve as a pretext for his declaring war against the czar *Alexis*, if the *Cossacks* had not found so much employment for him, that he had no time to execute his project, which was, as protector of this *Demetrius*, to endeavour to place him upon the throne, and, if he succeeded, to put the crown afterwards upon his own head.

THIS *Demetrius* was a *Cossack*; and brought up among that people. He was well-made, wanted not wit, and seemed to be about twenty-five years of age. It is said, that as he was going into a bath in the little town of *Samburg* in *Polish Russia*, some marks of an extraordinary kind were observed upon his back ; that *Dmielouski*, the treasurer of the crown, being told of it, sent for him, asked him several questions, and afterwards examined these strange characters ; but not being able to make any thing of them, he sent for a *Russian* priest, who immediately read, *Demetrius the son of Demetrius*. As learned antiquaries every day explained their obscure inscriptions according to their own fancies, so these characters were made to signify, that this young man was the son of *Griska Utropja*, the first usurper that took upon him the name of *Demetrius*. It was said, that his mother, the daughter of the palatine of *Sandomir*, had been delivered of him in prison, and that the wife of a *Cossack*, who was in her service, being brought to bed at the same time, had taken the son of that princess, and given her own in his stead ; that a *Russian* priest having baptized the son of the princess, and seeing it was likely to continue unknown, and pass only for the son of a poor peasant, had imprinted these characters that were between his shoulders, with a certain indelible liquor. This was the story founded upon the characters, which, without doubt, were put upon the back of the *Cossack* for the present purpose ; and to render this event the more miraculous, and make it believed that providence had the greater hand in the discovery of this youth, it was given out, that his supposed father and mother were both dead, no body knew where or when ; so that some of the domestics, with whom the princess had intrusted the secret at her death, had sought for them in vain.

It is very easy to detect the imposture of this affair, if we recollect that of the second *Demetrius*, massacred by the *Tartars* at *Caluga*, and the manner in which the daughter of the palatine of *Sandomir* was put to death. However, this impostor appeared at the court of *Poland*, where he was treated as the son of the czar till the death of *Uladislaus*, and where
he

he had contracted a strict friendship with the famous *Galga* (A), the *Tartarian* prince, prisoner of *Uladislaus*, to whom that king generously gave his liberty, that he might not lose the opportunity of ascending the *Tartarian* throne, to which he was the next heir.

AT the death of *Uladislaus*, the face of affairs was entirely changed, by the election of *John Casimir*, especially with respect to this *Demetrius*, who, fearing he should be delivered up to the czar, with whom the new king seemed desirous to live in peace, retired to *Reval*, and from thence to *Sweden*; but not thinking himself in safety there, he went into *Holstein*.

WE have already seen that the duke of *Holstein* had sent an embassy to *Russia*, in order to settle a trade of silk into *Persia*. One of the duke's ambassadors, *Otto Brugman* of *Hamburg*, going thither a second time upon the same business, abused the confidence of his master, by borrowing large sums of money in *Russia*, of which he could give no account. The czar expected the duke should discharge the debts of his ambassador, and the thing was reasonable: but the duke had not yet done it, when a *Russian* factor, who was in *Holstein* at the time that this new *Demetrius* appeared there, gave the duke to understand, that his czarish majesty would remit this large debt, if he would deliver the impostor into his hands; which, upon those conditions, was agreed to. The pretended *Demetrius* was accordingly seized, and sent to *Moscow*, where he was confronted by an old woman, who declared herself his mother. He was prosecuted as a cheat, and a disturber of the public repose, convicted, and condemned to have his head cut off, his body quartered, and his quarters hung upon as many gibbets.

Who is delivered up to the Russians, and put to death.

THE czar *Alexis* employed every means to settle the tranquillity of his dominions, and made numbers of excellent regulations for the welfare of his people. Though a stranger to foreign languages, he caused an epitome of several sciences to be translated from them into the *Russian* tongue, and took great delight in reading it himself. The laws of the several provinces of his empire were collected and printed together, by his order, in one body, which, in the *Russian* language, was called *Ulogenie*: but for want of a good lawyer to digest them into proper order, it is but an imperfect and confused collection. He likewise introduced several new manufactures,

Civil government of the czar Alexis.

(A) The title of the next heir to the throne, like *Dauphin* in *France*, or prince of *Wales* in *England*.

particularly of silk and linen¹. He added to the city of *Moscow* two suburbs, called the new and the old *Meshanskoja*; and built in other parts of his dominions several market-towns, such as *Wolda*, and others, which were peopled by *Lithuanians* and *Poles*. He endeavoured to extend the prerogatives of the crown farther than any of his predecessors had done, but with great circumspection; and was the first who created a privy council for trying causes concerning his person. When he suspected any one, he proceeded very cautiously, as well in administering the torture, as in executions; but when a person was found guilty, he generally ordered him to be executed privately. His daughter *Sophia* is said to have learned this method from him. He was also the first who made a distinction among the *bojars*, by calling the chief and oldest of them *Kommatnye Bojars*, of which his privy council, for foreign affairs, consisted.

THE wars in which *Alexis* was engaged in the beginning of his reign, necessarily required great expences. His revenues were no more than five millions of rubels: yet he kept a magnificent court, maintained a great army, and, by his economy afterwards, left his treasury very rich. What enabled him to do this, was, the vast contributions raised during the *Polish* war, and his paying only the foreign officers, and regular troops: for the *Russian* nobles, though obliged to serve as long as they were able, looked upon it as a disgrace to receive any salary. When any such were grown incapable of service, or had sons old enough to replace them, they were freed, and their toils were rewarded with the gift of lands which had devolved to the crown^d, either by confiscation (B),

¹ STRAHLENBERG, c. v. § 18. and 19. ^d Idem, ibid. § 37.

(B) In former times, it was customary among the *Russians*, that if a nobleman was found guilty of embezzling the effects belonging to the crown, such deficiency was, in some measure, demanded of the whole family, which, if the delinquent was convicted, and condemned to be beheaded, lost twelve degrees of nobility, and all their estates. This made the families watch each others conduct: the consequence of which was, that a poor relative, if honest, was assisted in every shape; but a spendthrift and libertine was deprived of the means of undertaking any thing of moment. Nay, the family itself, if they disliked the management of a person who had a public employment, would protect against his conduct; after which they were not made answerable for any deficiency, nor were their estates then liable to confiscation (1).

(1) *Strahlenberg, ubi supra.*

or by the extinction of families; or they were promoted to the government of provinces. He greatly improved the culture of his dominions: many desarts were rendered habitable in his time, and peopled with prisoners taken from the *Poles* and other nations. He also intended to have had fleets in the *Caspian* and *Black Seas*; for which purpose he sent for shipwrights from *Holland* and other places: but the completing of this work was reserved for his august son, *Peter the Great*; an ambitious rebel now checking the designs of *Alexis*.

Stenko Razin, chief of the *Don-Cossacks*, who have been under the protection of *Russia* ever since the year 1559 (A), excited a dreadful rebellion against the czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*. The cause of his discontent was said to be the ignominious death of his brother, who had commanded the *Cossacks* that served in the *Russian* army, in the campaigns of 1654 and 1655, against the *Poles*. The knez *George Alexowitz Dolgorucki*, commander in chief of all the forces employed in the expedition, pretended to keep the *Cossacks* in the field as long as he pleased: but they, not used to be forced in their actions, abandoned the *Russian* general, and went to receive orders from their own chief. *Dolgorucki* took upon him to call this chief, who was *Stenko Razin's* brother, to an account for the conduct of his men, and, without much deliberation, ordered him to be hanged. This was *Stenko's* pretext for arming against his sovereign: but ambition soon appeared to be his real motive, since he not only made war against the czar, but also against the king of *Persia*.

He first began his depredations upon the river *Volga*, where he took all the small shipping he could meet with, plundered them, and killed their men, unless they would join his company. After this first act of hostility, putting himself at the head of an army of his countrymen, he ransacked every place, church, and monastery, near the *Volga*, and marched from thence to *Jaik*, a town situated on the river of the same name, which divides the kingdom of *Astracan* from the country of the *Calmucks*. From *Jaik*, which was easily mastered, he proceeded to the *Caspian* sea, and from thence returned to the *Volga*, doing great mischief by destroying numbers of houses and villages. He then marched to the town of *Terki*, in *Georgia*, and advanced to the frontiers of *Persia*, where he did great damage both to the subjects of the czar and to those of the schah.

The inhabitants of a small town in *Persia*, being informed of his approach, betook themselves to a neighbouring

fort for security: whereupon *Stenko* sent them word, that they had no reason to fear, and invited them to return, assuring them, that he and his men were not come to do them any hurt, but to buy provisions and other necessaries for his troops. The people, believing him, come back to their town with great confidence, and opened their shops, where *Stenko* and his soldiers began to lay down ready money for what they wanted: but upon a signal given to his *Cossacks*, they fell upon the inhabitants, and butchered them without mercy.

THE governor of *Astracan*, knez *John Simonewitz Proforoffski*, sent a considerable number of troops against him, to stop these cruel proceedings; whereupon *Stenko*, finding himself too weak to resist, and apprehending no good issue, asked pardon, which *Proforoffski* promised him, in the czar's name, on condition that he would make his submission, and demean himself, for the future, as a loyal subject. *Stenko* and his companions, upon this, went to *Astracan*, where they were kindly received, and, in return, made rich presents to the people, out of the apparel, jewels, and other ornaments of which they had robbed the houses of many gentlemen. *Stenko Razin* himself was not to be distinguished from the rest, but by the marks of respect that were shewn him by his followers, who always saluted him by the name of *Batske*, "Father." He was tall, and well proportioned; somewhat pitted with the small pox, but not so as to be unbecoming, and of a stately mien and deportment; but of a cruel disposition, as will appear from the following action.

Remark-
able in-
stance of
his cruel
disposi-
tion.

HE had with him, when at *Astracan*, a *Persian* princess, whom he had taken prisoner with her brother. The brother he presented to the governor of *Astracan*, but kept the sister for his concubine. Being one day on board his yacht, diverting himself on the *Volga*, and full of wine and frolic; after boasting of the many rich presents he had given and received since he had been restored to the czar's favour, he on a sudden broke out into these extravagant expressions, addressing himself to the *Volga*: "Well, said he, thou art a noble river, and out of thee have I had much gold, silver, and other things of value. Thou art both the father and mother of my fortune and advancement! whilst I, unthankful man, have never offered thee any thing. But now I am resolved to manifest my gratitude. With these words, he took the princess in his arms, and threw her into the *Volga*, in all her rich attire, and ornaments of pearls, diamonds, and other precious stones.

What

What heightened the barbarity of this act was, that the lady was deservedly as much admired for the endowments of her mind, as for the beauty of her person, and had always behaved with the utmost complacency towards him.

Stenko Razin, after a short stay at *Astracan*, returned with his associates to their own homes, on the borders of the river *Don*, and carried with him several *Russians*, whom his money and promises had bribed to join him.

THE governor of *Astracan*, understanding that several persons in the service of the czar, his master, had withdrawn, and insisted themselves among the rebels, sent one *Wederos*, a captain of the *strelitzes*, to *Stenko*, with instructions to demand the *Russians*, and order him to send them back, on pain of the czar's displeasure, which he might not so easily appease a second time, as he had done before; but, perhaps, he compelled to make satisfaction for his former offences and his present together. *Wederos* went accordingly to *Stenko*; but the haughty *Cossack* would scarce admit him to an audience: and when he began to insist upon his sending back the men whom he had inveigled from their duty, he flew into a violent passion, drew his sword, and threatened to kill him if he dared to persist any longer. The *Russian* officer, being a discreet man, had then recourse to fair speeches, by which he somewhat pacified his fury; so that *Stenko* only asked him, how he dared to make such an impudent demand. "Shall I then, said he, betray my friends, who have deserted their nearest allies, and their fortunes, out of pure inclination to me? And shall I be threatened with the loss of favour to boot? Prithee, go tell thy master, that I value the czar no more than I do him: and let him know, that I shall be with him before he is aware on't, and reward him for his presumption." This insolent answer made the governor rightly judge, that he might expect another visit from the rebel: nor was he mistaken; for within three days after, *Stenko* began to march towards the *Volga*, where he had eighty *Stroegs*, or barks, besides other shipping, well provided with men and ammunition. However, he did not, at first, commit any act of hostility. The governor of *Astracan* assembled his council, who agreed, that as long as *Stenko* offered no violence to any place belonging to the czar, they should not oppose him, till the arrival of a fleet which they expected.

ABOUT fourteen days after, the fleet arrived, consisting of a great many vessels, with 6000 *strelitzes*, well furnished with all kinds of provision and ammunition. *Stenko*, by treachery,

His information to the governor of Astracan.

Whose fleet he becomes master of by treachery.

having intelligence of all their designs, by his emissaries, ordered some of his own people, in whom he could best confide, to run away, and join the governor's forces, under pretence of desertion. Accordingly, when they came to the *Astracan* fleet, they feigned great discontent at the treatment they had received from *Stenko*. The adverse party received them with open arms, in hopes of discovering, by their means, the intentions of their rebel master. But as soon as they were under sail, and almost close upon the enemy, the traitors, on a sudden, fell upon the officers, murdered most of them, and surrendered the rest, with the whole fleet, into the hands of the *Cossacks*. *Stenko*, enriched by this prey, immediately ordered his men two months pay before-hand, with a promise, for their farther encouragement, of enjoying freely whatever they could make by plunder.

THE governor was not a little dismayed at this event; especially when he heard how much the common people murmured against him, and how well *Stenko* was spoken of, not only in *Astracan*, but in all the towns round about, which were under the dominions of the czar. The *streli-tzes*, who had not received any pay for a long time, and had heard of *Stenko's* generosity to the men, began to mutiny, so generally, that the governor and officers durst not oppose them by any rigorous methods, but were forced to soothe them by fair words and large promises.

Stenko Razin, finding his strength increase daily, and having now near sixteen thousand men under his command, landed part of his forces, some of which went to *Czaritzza*, and others to *Czarnojar*, whilst he himself remained with the fleet, where he was as highly respected as if he had been a sovereign prince. When he was warm with liquor, few of his officers dared to appear in his presence; for it was a common thing with him, at such times, to behead a man for a very trifling offence, even though he were his greatest favourite. The meaner sort were in no danger from him; for they were wont to flatter him, and, upon a wink, would dispatch their officers when he had taken any dislike to them. Thus, by shewing a greater regard for the common men than the officers, he became the more dreadful and formidable; for the sole command and direction of the whole army lay in himself. This also gave such encouragement to the rabble, that, in the space of four or five days after he had got the *Astracan* fleet, his army was raised from sixteen to twenty-seven thousand men, who were a mixed multitude of peasants, slaves, *Tartars*, *Cossacks*,

sacks, and men of restless minds from all parts, pleased with the thoughts of the free enjoyment of plunder. These miscreants, over-spreading the country, committed many inhuman acts, and murdered such of the gentry as could not escape from them, which many did, by disguising themselves in the habit of slaves.

Stenka, being arrived to this pitch of grandeur and authority, was as much puffed up as if he had conquered the whole empire. It is true, he refused the title of king or emperor, saying, that his desire was not to rule as a lord, but to live with his countrymen as a brother, and to pull down that tyranny and oppression which they, for many years, and their progenitors, for many ages, had been forced to endure, contrary to reason and the law of nature. Yet, notwithstanding this pretended moderation, he had the impudence to send ambassadors to the court of Persia, with letters in which he assumed the most pompous titles, and stiled himself the sophy's brother. The purport of this embassy was to invite the sophy to enter into an alliance with him, to supply him with ammunitions of war, and whatever else he might have occasion for, upon paying their value. The ambassadors were ordered to ask these things at first in gentle terms: but if they met with a refusal, they were to menace the sophy, and give him to understand, that their master had 200,000 men ready to invade his territories, and that he might take an opportunity to visit him when he should be least expected.

As soon as the sophy understood that these ambassadors were instructed to threaten him, in case he refused to comply with the demands of the rebel their master, he sent for them, and immediately ordered their heads to be chopped off, and their bodies to be thrown to the dogs; except one, whose life he spared, that he might go back to tell his master how they had been received at the Persian court. But this proved only a reprieve for the poor surviving ambassador: for upon his relating to Stenka Razin the success of their embassy, this last flew into such a rage, that he ordered the executioner to cut him to pieces.

AFTER this, Stenka left no means untried to increase his fleet and army; for which purpose he sent several of his emissaries to debauch the Russian soldiers, and entice them to desert the czar's service, in many towns upon the Wolga; judging those the fittest for his turn, as they were best acquainted with the military affairs of Russia, and therefore could be the most useful, in attacking any place he might have a design upon. In this he succeeded to his wish: and

Fakes having mustered his forces, he sent to *Camiskinska* a body of *Cossacks* *strelitzes*, who, pretending they were imperial troops sent by the czar for the defence of the town, in case it should be *treachery*; attacked, were readily admitted, and so much confided in, that they soon found an opportunity to kill the governor, and almost all the officers of the garrison; having before seduced the rest, and brought them into their party. When this was done, a signal was given, by firing a gun, to *Stenko*, who came up, and surprized the town, which he garrisoned with *Cossacks*; removing the *Russian* *strelitzes* into his navy.

THE news of this event occasioned great alarms at *Astracan*; none knowing who was a friend, or who an enemy; upon which the governor, *Prozoroffski*, considering, that the common people, who delight in novelty, and are generally soon tired; even of the best of governments, might form designs of joining the enemy called together his council, to consult what was best to be done in so dangerous a conjuncture, in order to quiet the minds of the people, and defend the city. After mature deliberation, it was agreed, that the surest way to effect the former, would be, to proceed cautiously in the latter; for that the stopping of the growing power of the rebels, would soon pacify the common people at home; but it would not be safe to put any confidence in the *strelitzes*.

UPON this resolution, numbers of gentlemen immediately offered to go as private men, in this sudden, but urgent expedition; and on the 16th of *April* 1670, eight hundred horse, of which four hundred were *Russians*, and the rest *Nogayans*, set out under the command of *Levonti Bogdanoff*, to reinforce the garison of *Czaritza*, and furnish that city with ammunition and provisions. But on the 28th, an express arrived at *Astracan*, from *Bogdanoff*, with an account, that the *Cossacks* had already taken *Czaritza*, and killed 1200 *Muscovite* *strelitzes*, who were but newly come thither before the siege. After this intelligence, which was extorted from a *Cossack*, who fell into *Bogdanoff's* hands, and was put to the torture, the *Russians* marched to *Czaritza*, *1670,*
Becomes
master of
Czaritza,
nojabr.

BY this time the czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* had full intelligence of all that had been done in this second revolt of the *Cossacks*, and of the designs of *Stenko*, together with the cruelties he had already committed, and the continual ravages he was making: whereupon he gave orders for levying new forces, and equipping immediately as many vessels as could be got ready with speed. The towns upon the *Volga*

ga did their utmost to complete a fleet of forty sail, each of which had only one great gun, but a sufficient quantity of small arms, and other ammunition, for as many men as the barks could properly carry. On board this fleet were 2600 frelitzes, and 500 volunteers, under the conduct of *Simeon Iwanowitz Elboff*, a knez, who was appointed commander in chief of the expedition. These forces left *Astracan* on the 25th of *May*, when the people of that place began to murmur against their governor more than ever, even abusing him as he passed through the streets; whilst he did not dare to check them, for fear of greater commotions, till he should be informed of the success of *Iwanowitz Elboff*. On the 4th of *June*, a gentleman, who had made his escape, brought intelligence that *Czarnojahr* had been taken by the *Czarno-*rebels, just before the *Russian* general arrived there; that *jahr*, the governor and all the officers had been massacred, and their bodies thrown into the river; and, what was still worse, that the private soldiers, under the knez *Elboff*, had murdered all their officers in the fleet, declared for the *Co-*sacks, and surrendered all the shipping to *Stenko Razin*, tho', immediately before their coming to *Czarnojahr*, they had unanimously sworn to live and die with their leaders. Tho' the governor of *Astracan* endeavoured as much as possible to stifle this bad news, the people learnt it, and grew so excessively insolent and outrageous, that neither magistrates nor officers dared to appear, or assemble to consult how to remedy these misfortunes.

Stenko Razin, having intelligence of this, marched to *Af- Astracan-*tracan, the gates of which were immediately opened to him. The governor, *Prozoroffski*, was then at church, from whence he was forced away in the midst of divine service, and cast headlong from the top of a high steeple, which stands in the middle of the city, as a mark to direct those who navigate on the *Caspian* sea, or travel over the vast and little frequented neighbouring desert. It is said, that *Stenko* whispered something in *Prozoroffski*'s ear, as the *rus-*sians were dragging him along; probably by way of trying to bring him over to his party: but the faithful knez shook his head, and refused to comply. The cruel rebel, not stopping here, put to death *Prozoroffski*'s brother, and many noblemen, who would not come over him, with several *German* and other officers, and some sailors, who, though they ran to the *Caspian* sea, were fetched back again to be slaughtered. The churches, cloysters, and houses of the richest citizens, were plundered; the records of the chancery were burnt, the czar's treasury of the kingdom of *Af-*tracan

AFTER this conquest, *Dolgorucki* settled his quarters and tribunal at *Arfamas*, where he executed so severe a judgment upon the rebels, that the avenues to that place resembled the dreadful entrance of the *Tartars* of the Poets. In one place lay heaps of headless carcases, almost covered in their own blood: in others were wretches impaled alive, many of whom did not expire till the third day, with hideous cries, and in bitter agonies; and all around were gallowses, each of which was loaded with forty or fifty men. Within the space of three months, above eleven thousand men were put to death by the common executioners, after being condemned in a legal way: for the *Russian* army, going out by parties, brought in numbers of the rebels every day. Happily for the czar, they were dispersed in different places: otherwise, it would have been very difficult for his forces to have mastered them. *And treated with inflexible severity.*

AMONG the prisoners who were brought to *Dolgorucki* was a nephew of *Stenko Razin*, and a nun in man's habit, put over her monastic dress. This nun had commanded 7000 men, and acted with much valour in the war. When taken prisoner, there appeared not the least alteration in her, nor any fear of death, when she was sentenced to be burnt alive: for, among the *Russians*, the deserting a monastery was, in those times, thought a crime never to be forgiven. A little before her death, she wished that many more had behaved as courageously as she had done; and then, said she, the knez *George* would have found his best safety in his heels. Being come to the place of execution, she signed herself after the *Russian* manner, with the cross on her forehead and breast, and then laid down quietly upon the pile, where she was burnt to ashes.

WHEN the rebellion was pretty well quelled in those parts, the czar sent the knez *Constantine Zarbatoff* to disperse the rebels about *Tamboff*, a town situated on the river *Don*, in the province of *Rezan*, about fifty wersts to the north-east of *Sergog*. This was soon effected, and all the discontented countries were reduced to their former obedience, after the destruction of about 100,000 men, killed in the field, or put to death by the hangman. The czar was exceedingly grieved at the melancholy necessity of taking away so many lives; but there are occasions when such severities are absolutely requisite, and a sovereign is forced to sacrifice some members, to save the body of the state. *The rebellion entirely quelled.*

Stenko Razin, alarmed at the loss of his friends on every side, knew not where to seek safety for himself. He suspected every one, and feared lest some of his own people should.

should follow the example of the inhabitants of *Lysko*, who had delivered up the chiefs of the rebels in order to make their peace with the czar. Full of this idea, he betook himself to the deserts, and wandered there from place to place, till at length he fell into the snare he hoped to guard against, and was betrayed by the person in whom he had the greatest confidence. This was his godfather, *Cornelius Jacoloff*, a commander of the *Cosacks*, who had remained faithful to the czar, but was always so highly respected by *Stenko*, that this last could not imagine he had reason to distrust him. But he did not consider, that, by revolting against his lawful sovereign, he had lost all title to the favour of honest men.

1671. *Jacoloff*, entering into serious conversation with him
Stenko is about the state of his affairs, after representing the
betrayed; danger he was daily in of being murdered by assassins, betrayed by false friends, or overpowered by the superior forces of the czar, which it would not be possible for him long to resist, advised him to think of making terms with his prince. *Stenko*, dejected by his late misfortunes, listened to the proposal: upon which *Jacoloff* proceeded to tell him, that the czar himself, sensible of the many important services it was in his power to render him, desired a reconciliation, and wished to see him at *Moscow*; adding, that he was authorised to assure him, that he would be received there with great distinction; that all the inhabitants of that city would come out to meet him; that he would be allowed to make a public entry; and that extraordinary honours would afterwards be conferred upon him.

Stenko, wrought upon by these, and many other similar persuasions, which the gloomy aspect of his situation contributed not a little to enforce, at length consented to go to *Moscow*, upon a farther assurance that he should see the czar himself, and plead his own cause. His brother *Trolka*, who was forced to accompany him, blamed *Stenko* for all the mischief that had been done, and for the step he then took: but this last endeavoured to comfort him, by telling him of the great honours they should receive at *Moscow*.

carried to
Moscow, UPON their arrival within a week of that capital, they were met by a prodigious croud of people, in the midst of whom was, instead of a triumphal car for their public entry, a waggon, with a gibbet erected in it, to which *Stenko* was immediately fastened by a chain about his neck and hands. His brother *Trolka* was made to walk on foot, chained to the side of the waggon. In this manner they were conducted through thousands of spectators, on whom *Stenko* never once looked, but kept his eyes on the ground. They were carried

hed to the *Smenskoi-Duor*, and some days after put to the question, when *Stenko* was condemned to the punishment inflicted on criminals guilty of high treason; which is, to have their arms, legs, and head cut off, and their body thrown to the dogs (A).

Stenko suffered without a groan, after his sentence had been publicly read to him at the place of execution. *Trolka* was also brought to the scaffold, but pardoned, upon his promising to discover where his brother had concealed his treasure.

THE death of this rebel was immediately followed by the surrender of *Astracan*. *Sjourteous*, surnamed the *Devil's Whisker*, whom the traitor *Stenko* had left to govern that city, being poisoned by his own soldiers, who hoped thereby to get their pardon from the czar: but as there are always some men, whom neither the fear of committing crimes, nor the dread of punishment can deter, one of *Sjourteous's* guards put himself at the head of those who continued in the revolt. However, the *Russian* commanders soon hemmed them in on all sides, and prevented their escape. All the other places which *Stenko* had taken, returned directly to their due allegiance.

WHILE *Russia* was agitated by this rebellion, *Poland* was not less disturbed. The *Zaporog Cossacks*, headed by one of their chiefs called *Dorofensko*, did as much mischief there, as *Stenko's* ruffians upon the borders of the *Volga*. The weak *Michael Wiefnoiwieski* was just elected in the room of *John Casimir*, who, from cardinal, had been made king, and had now changed his crown for the abbey of *St. Germain* in *Paris*.

KING *Michael*, at his first coming to the throne, sent an embassy to *Moscow*, and renewed the treaty of friendship between the *Russians* and the *Poles*. At the same time the *Turks*, solicited by the *Tartars*, who were in alliance with *Dorofensko*, and yet more strongly tempted by the deplorable situation of the kingdom of *Poland*, rent by the unhappy dis-

1676.
Treaty of
friendship
between
the Rus-
sians and
the Poles.

(A) *Sirahlenberg* says (1) he was decoyed to *Moscow* by a crafty secretary, on pretence of an accommodation: that he was first imprisoned there, and then carried through the city on a triumphal chariot, upon which stood a gallows; and that he was at last hanged upon another high and costly gibbet; because his design was to have usurped the kingdom of *Astracan*, and to assume the title of king. The author of the *Verandertes Russland* (2) says he was quartered.

(1) C. v.

(2) P. 323.

visions which reigned among her nobles, took up arms, to make their advantage of these misfortunes. The czar, not doubting but that after ravaging *Poland*, where little resistance could then have been made, they would turn their arms against *Russia*, sent a minister to *Constantinople*, to notify to the divan the renewal of this alliance, and to declare, that he could not avoid breaking with the *Ottoman Porte* if they attacked *Poland*.

*The Turks
seek to
quarrel
with Po-
land.*

In the mean time the *Tartars* and *Dorofensko's Cossaks* continued their hostilities, and made themselves masters of a great part of the *Ukraine*, of which the *Turks* pretended that the *Poles* had no right to complain, because, said they, that province was entirely free, and its inhabitants, the *Zaporog-Cossaks*, had always been under the protection of the *Ottoman* empire.

It was thought that the grand signior would not have taken up arms but at the instigation of *France*, who had many subjects of complaint against the court of *Poland*, and, besides, sought to find employment for the emperor, whose interest to oppose the progress of the *Turks* could not but oblige him to enter into this quarrel. All *Europe*, except *France*, was on the side of *Poland*. It is true, the *United Provinces*, *France*, and *England*, were then at war among themselves. The czar assisted *Poland* with an army of 20,000 men, commanded by old *Gowaski*, whilst a body of *Don* and *Zaporog Cossaks* made an irruption into the *Crim*, which caused a diversion very favourable to the *Poles*, but could not prevent the taking of the important fortress of *Caminiec*. The *Calmucks* were then ordered to march, to continue the invasion: upon which a peace, such as it was, was made between the king of *Poland* and the sultan. The *Tartar* khan, *Selim Girey*, being obliged to quit *Poland*, in order to succour the *Crim*, covered his departure under the honourable pretext of making himself mediator of this treaty, which was concluded in a very short time, as it usually happens between two powers, when one of them is entirely exhausted. *Caminiec* and *Podolia* were to be ceded to the *Turks*; the *Cossaks* were to have the *Ukraine*; and satisfaction was to be made to the khan of *Tartary*, by paying him 11,000 crowns, and a yearly pension of the same value. A tribute of 22,000 ducats was also to be sent every year to the *Porte*. Nothing was stipulated in favour of the *Russians*. The *Turks* and *Tartars* took and killed, in this short war, upwards of 300,000 *Poles*.

*Peace
made be-
tween
them.*

THE divisions among the *Cossaks* having obliged them to seek protection, one part from *Russia*, and the other from
the

the grand signior, this last expected, that, in consequence of the late cession of the *Ukraine*, the czar should evacuate all the places he possessed there; and to this purpose sent an *ag* to *Moscow*. The czar told him, that "he was not capable of so much baseness as to submit to a mahometan dog, and that, if the grand signior threatened him with his scymeter, he hoped his sabre would not be useless." *Haughty answer of the czar to the grand signior.*

NOTWITHSTANDING this resolute answer, the divan, *The Turks* dissatisfied with the peace with *Poland*, obliged the sultan to take up arms again; and after debating for some time, whether they should make war against the czar or *Poland*, determined for the last; not doubting, but if they conquered that kingdom, *Russia* would afterwards become an easy prey. Fraught with this idea, the sultan sent back a *Muscovite* ambassador, who was then at *Constantinople*, with orders to notify to his master the czar *Alexis*, that if he any ways assisted *Poland*, his highness would fall upon him with such forces as should soon over-run *Russia*. *renew the war against the Poles.*

THESE menaces produced a letter yet more haughty than the foregoing answer; and, at the same time, the czar sent a solemn embassy to the king of *Poland*, to assure him, that he might depend on 20,000 *Russians*, and every other service in his power. *Alexis* not only kept his word in regard to these succours, but ordered 22,000 more to advance to the borders of the *Dnieper*, to be ready to cross that river on the first notice: besides which, the *Cosaks* and *Calmucks* were directed to make a fresh irruption into the *Crim*, where they gave the *Tartars* employment enough to prevent their joining the *Turks*, as they would otherwise have done. In the mean time the sultan laid the czar's letter before his council, and, with their advice, returned him the following answer. *The sultan's answer to a letter from the czar.*

"MOST excellent of christian hospodars, &c. After saluting you kindly, we declare to you, that upon receiving your letter to our most high, most clement, and most glorious imperial majesty, master of the universe, and equal in power to *Alexander the Great* (may the Almighty still increase our strength!) we caused the same to be translated and read; and we find, that in the hopes of succouring your friend and neighbours, you speak to us in terms, which are not usual among kings and monarchs. Though, by the peculiar providence of the Almighty, our imperial house is raised above all others, and not accustomed to expressions so injurious and indecent; yet we shall give you for answer, that we cannot but be greatly astonished, that you, who do not hold the first rank among the christian kings and potentates, and who

" would

“ would not have obtained even an equality with them, had
 “ you not procured from our majesty peace for yourself and
 “ subjects, should dare to make use of such terms: terms
 “ which not only offend our majesty, but might cost you
 “ your dominions. As to what concerns *Poland*, we have
 “ executed what we have resolved upon; and by the help
 “ of Providence, which directs all events, every thing on
 “ that side is in a good condition, so that nothing more is
 “ to be said about it: but as to your desiring to assist your
 “ good friend and neighbour, the king of that country,
 “ why did you not do it before the war, by giving him
 “ wholesome advice? You might even have been a diligent
 “ and faithful mediator between the most high *Ottoman*
 “ *Porte* and him. But at present, when you threaten us,
 “ that the kings your neighbours will not suffer the progress
 “ of our arms, of which they are jealous; Know, that we
 “ ourselves pay little regard to such menaces; being satisfi-
 “ ed, that they are not ignorant of the justice of our cause,
 “ which has made us masters of so many provinces, towns,
 “ and countries: and since it hath pleased God, that those
 “ should be disappointed who had any ill-designs; be per-
 “ suaded also, that, as soon as we shall be informed how
 “ you intend to act towards us, you shall receive good for
 “ good, and evil for evil.”

*The czar
 sends to all
 the princes
 of christen-
 dom to
 form a
 league a-
 gainst the
 Turks.*

THE czar, finding that the *Turks* were determined to re-
 new the war with *Poland*, used his utmost endeavours to
 arm all the powers of *Europe* against those enemies of the
 christian name; to which end he sent ambassadors to every
 court in christendom. His minister to pope *Clement X.* tho'
 he was a *Roman* catholic, refused to kiss his holiness's slipper,
 saying, that so mean an act was beneath the dignity of the
 prince he had the honour to represent. He declared to the
 pope, in a writing which he delivered in *Latin*, that the czar,
 his master, had resolved to make war against the *Turks*, to
 stop their progress into *Poland*; that he had nothing more at
 heart than to see all christian princes in the same disposition,
 and wished they would unite against those tyrants; that his
 czarish majesty had, for that purpose, sent ambassadors to
 all the potentates of *Europe*; and that he exhorted his holi-
 ness to put himself at the head of a league so powerful, so
 necessary for the welfare of the church, and from which
 every christian state might expect the greatest advantage.

THIS ambassador of the czar *Alexis* was greatly caressed
 at *Rome*. The pope assured him, that this resolution of his
 sovereign was extremely agreeable to him; and the cardinals
Altieri, *Barberini*, *Orsini*, *Chigi*, and *de Hesse*, paid him
 the

heft honours. But when they were to give his holiness answer in writing, they framed great difficulties about his title, because the court of *Rome* supposed, that the word understood this word to be equivalent to emperor. The congregations were held upon this subject; and it was resolved, that, rather than give this potentate the title of emperor, which was not refused him by any other nation, his answer should be sent to his nuncio in *Poland*, and transmitted from thence by his auditor. The other ambassadors of his czarish majesty were equally well received here; and the king of *Spain*, in particular, gave a very favourable reception to the minister at his court: but he was disappointed in empty promises. The situation of *Europe* was such at that time, that every sovereign had enough to do in his own affairs.

The czar had some reason not only to be dissatisfied with the king of *Poland*, but even to distrust him: for though he assisted him against the *Turks*, as soon as he was at peace, he had not taken any sort of care of the interests of the *Christians*, who were not so much as mentioned in his treaty: and after the peace was made, the *Polish* minister had only presented a simple copy of the treaty to the czar; subsequent to which he had several conferences with the *Turkish* chieftains, without informing his czarish majesty what passed in them. At length the jealousy, or the natural antipathy between the two nations, gave room to doubt whether the *Polish* monarch was sincere in his acknowledgment of the services done him. He therefore ordered his ambassador in *Poland* to demand a farther explanation from the king; and at the same time to assure him, that the *Russian* army, which was on this side of the *Dniester*, was ready to cross it, as soon as the *Turks* should be driven beyond the *Niefter*.

The king of *Poland* answered the *Russian* ambassador, that he had the deepest sense of gratitude for the services his majesty had done him, by the irruptions he had made into the *Crim*, by his *Calmucks* and *Don Cossacks*, and for the arms and ammunition he had so generously sent to the *Cossacks*. That, though *Komor Orfanski* had communicated to the minister of his czarish majesty, the peace concluded with the *Turks*, and had left them a copy of the treaty; nevertheless, since his majesty desired it, he had sent a more authentic, sealed with his seal, to shew him that the treaty contained nothing prejudicial to his czarish majesty. That there had, indeed, been some conferences, and the conclusion of the peace: but that they were only

to obtain the liberty of the hostages of the city of *Leopold*: and lastly, that there was no likelihood that this new treaty would subsist long; but, on the contrary, that the treaty would break through it as soon as possible, upon the advices he had received, that all the christian powers were arming in favour of *Poland*, which he had resolved to conquer; thinking nothing more invincible than his arms, since he had subdued the fortress of *Caminiec*: though neither his majesty, nor the republic, had given him reason to violate the peace. His *Polish* majesty besought the czar to give orders to the army, which was near *Kiow*, to join that of *Lithuania* and *Poland*, that they might march together into *Podolia*, and jointly oppose the efforts of the common enemy.

THE king of *Poland* assembled the diet; in which, among other resolutions, was taken, that of intrusting the operations of the crown-army to the grand general *John Sobieski*. The forces of the *Turks*, though very formidable, fell greatly short of their former boastings; the plague in *Europe*, the revolt of the *bassa* of *Aleppo*, and their fear of being attacked by the *Persians*, who had got together a considerable army, having prevented the execution of their vast designs. *Poland* and *Russia* were in a different situation. The grand general had assembled an army of 40,000 men at *Rubieson*, in the palatinate of *Bielz*, where the *Lithuanian* army of 12,000 men, beside some horse, was to join them. The czar had 150,000 men in the *Ukraine*; and *Siesko*, chief of the *Cossacks*, had undertaken to find such employment for the *Tartars*, that they should not be able to go to the assistance of *Hussien* *bassa*, who was at the head of the *Ottoman* troops. In effect, the *Cossacks* made so successful an irruption into the *Crim*, that, after killing great numbers, they carried off above 20,000 prisoners, reduced upwards of forty villages to ashes, and spread terror through the whole country.

THIS diversion contributed not a little to the glorious victory obtained by *John Sobieski* over the *Turks* near *Cachim*: a victory, by which that general merited the crown of *Poland*, restored the honour of his nation, obliged the *Poles* to agree to honourable terms of peace, and for which the *Poles* were in a great measure indebted to the generous assistance of the czar.

Michael, *Michael Wiefnowieski*, king of *Poland*, died at *Leopold*, on the 10th of *November*, the eve of the day on which *Sobieski* gained the victory we have been speaking of. An *interregnum* ensued till the 22d of *May* following, during which several candidates appeared for the crown, as usual. There were three parties: the first, which was composed of *Lithuanians*, and had the famous

amous Patz, chancellor of the grand duchy, at its head, proposed the prince of *Lorrain*: the senate, a part of the nobles, and the *French* faction, supported the prince of *Neuburg*; and the third, and most formidable party, being the whole army of the crown, was devoted to the grand general *John Sobieski*, who publicly excited the army to demand a *French* prince for their king, but worked effectually, under hand, to place the crown upon his own head.

THE czar also thought, that he had some right to hope for this crown for his son; and his ambassador at *Rome* had already endeavoured to obtain the pope's interest to that end, by representing to him the advantage which all christendom might expect from the union of these two states under the same sovereign, who might alone be able to make head against the mortal enemy of the christian faith.

THE affair was of a delicate nature. The pope had not altogether rejected the proposal; but only given the ambassador to understand, that it was not a proper time to do any thing in it, king *Michael* being still alive. The party against *Sobieski*, proposed in the diet, that it should be forbid to elect a *Piaſt*, that is to say, a natural *Polander*; and those who were inclined to the czar readily seconded them.

HIS czarish majesty offered to unite *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Russia*, in the same manner as *Poland* had been united with *Lithuania* under the last of the family of *Jagellon*; and promised faithfully to maintain the catholic religion in *Poland*; to pay the debts of the nation, and to furnish it with an army capable of forcing the *Turks* to abandon all their conquests. Advantageous as these offers might seem, in the then situation of affairs, they made no impression, unless it was to the prejudice of the czar: for the *Poles*, who could not see 150,000 *Russians* in the *Ukraine*, without being jealous of so vast a power in a neighbour that had never liked them, disapproved of his pretensions, saying, that he had no other view in soliciting their crown, but to take vengeance on them for the ravages they had committed in *Russia*.

AT length the *Poles* united, and chose for their king *John Sobieski*, whose great qualities gave them just reason to hope for a speedy deliverance from the shameful tribute which the *Turks* had imposed upon them, and which they exacted with haughtiness and menaces. The new king sent an embassy to the czar, to court his friendship: and, on the other hand, *Alexis Michaelowitz* was particularly interested to manage matters so, that the *Poles* might not make peace

without him; lest all the forces of *Turky*, which nothing could hinder from being very considerable at the opening of the next campaign, should fall upon *Russia*. To prevent this, his czarish majesty sent another army into the *Ukraine*, stronger than the former, under the command of general *Romanancuski*, who divided these forces into three bodies. The first marched towards *Czeberin*, a town at the south extremity of the *Ukraine*, upon the river *Tesizum*, which falls into the *Dnieper* at *Kyrlow*, the place of residence of the famous *Cosack* rebel, *Dorosensko*, who had been the author of this war, by taking up arms against *Poland*, and drawing the *Turks* into the *Ukraine*. The second body took the route of *Kaniow*, one of the principal towns of the *Cosacks*, upon the *Dnieper*, about ninety miles from *Kiow*: and the third, which was commanded by the *Cosack* *Hanenka*, advanced towards *Czirkaassy*, a town on the *Dnieper*, about sixty miles from *Kiow*. This last division met a body of *Dorosensko's* *Cosacks*, who fought with great fury, but were almost all cut to pieces. The *Russians* attacked *Czeberin*: but *Dorosensko*, finding himself too weak to defend so large a place, set fire to it, and retired to the castle, with hopes of being soon succoured by the *Tartars*. The *Russian* general contented himself with keeping him shut up in this fort, and employed the rest of his army in reducing all the little places of the *Ukraine*, and destroying the straggling parties of *Tartars* that ran up and down the country.

In the mean time the czar, to penetrate into the real sentiments of the *Poles*, caused a report to be spread, that the sultan desired nothing more than to make peace with them, if they would help to drive the *Russians* out of the *Ukrains*. The *Poles*, whose jealousy had been excited by the conquests which the *Russians* had made in that province, fell into the snare, and shewed, that they were not against such an accommodation. The czar then ordered his minister to complain of this to their king, and at the same time offered to join his forces to the crown-army of *Poland*, that they might act in concert: but nothing could get over the diffidence of the two courts, nor conquer the jealousy of the *Poles*, who cared not to share the honour of a victory with their neighbours.

WHILST affairs were in this posture towards the *Dnieper*, the king of *Sweden*, *Charles XI.* who had succeeded his father, found himself much embarrassed. He had taken, as that prince had done, the part of *France*, from which he drew large supplies: and to hinder the elector of *Brandenburg* from declaring for the *Dutch*, he had sent troops into that electorate, where they were beaten near *Fehrberlin*. This battle

battle was followed by a league between *Denmark*, *Brandenburgh*, *Holland*, *Lunenburgh*, and *Munster*, united against the *Swedes*, who could not possibly have been able to resist, if the czar, then in strict correspondence with the *Dutch*, had joined in the confederacy, and carried the war into the heart of *Sweden*, while the others attacked her only in the most distant parts, her dominions in *Germany*. To dissuade *Alexis* from any such design, if it should be suggested to him, and at the same time to be exactly informed of the affairs of *Russia*, the king of *Sweden* sent a solemn embassy to *Moscow*.

THE czar, who was not altogether ignorant of the motives of this embassy, was willing to give the *Swedish* ministers to understand, that tho' he had actually 150,000 men in the field, in the *Ukraine*, he had still other troops enough to act elsewhere in such manner as he should judge most advisable. In this view, the ambassadors were received with extraordinary magnificence, and treated sumptuously for some weeks at *Nicol'sko*, about three miles from *Moscow*; in their way to which capital they were met by twenty-four regiments of foot, of 1000 men each, and 8000 horse, of six different nations, all completely armed, well clothed, and well mounted. This long train of troops was followed by several companies of merchants, richly dressed, and by two hundred pieces of cannon, of which some were gilt with gold, and some were plated with silver. As soon as the ambassadors entered the city, three *Prisaffs* received them in the czar's coach, while seventy sumpter horses were distributed among their retinue. The czar's master of the horse began this second procession at the head of a fine company of the nobility, magnificently dressed, and superbly mounted. Among this number was the czar's brother. But when the ambassadors were to have their audience, count *Oxenstiern* would not consent to make his speech to the czar with his head uncovered, which the *Russians* insisted upon, because the *Swedes* had exacted the same thing from a *Russian* ambassador at *Stockholm*, a few years before. An express was sent to the king of *Sweden* on this account; which *Oxenstiern* was not displeased at, as it gave him the more time to make his inquiries.

Dorofensko, blocked up in the castle of *Czecherin*, pressed the grand signior, without ceasing, to send an army into the *Ukraine*, to drive the *Russians* from thence. The *Ottoman* emperor desired nothing more than to withdraw his troops with honour, from *Poland*, and by some means to engage the new king, whose valour he feared, to listen to peace.

To this end the *Turkish* army, now consisting of near 400,000 men, crossed the *Niefter* on a sudden at *Sorakka*, entered the *Ukraine*, and seized on *Kosniok*, *Sciana*, *Jampul*, *Kuzfsyn*, with several other little places; after which they sent 5000 men to succour *Dorofensko*: but the *Russians* having intercepted them in their march, put them all to the sword. This irritated the rebels to such a degree, that, consulting with the *Turks*, they agreed to lay waste all the *Ukraine*, in order to force the *Russians* to retire for want of subsistence. This barbarous design was but too well executed: for in less than a fortnight all that fine province, covered with a plentiful crop, and all sort of fruits, was reduced to a mere desert.

*The king
of Poland
marches a-
gainst
them.*

Jahn Sobieski, judging that the sultan would not have taken this step but with a design to fall with greater force upon *Poland*, after he should have beaten the *Russians*, resolved to march to the assistance of his allies: and accordingly, upon the news of the *Turks* having ravaged the *Ukraine*, taken several places, and sent 100,000 men to besiege the great city of *Human*; he advanced with the crown-army towards *Jamwaroff*, from whence he made four large detachments, to divide the forces of the enemy, and give the *Russians* an opportunity not only to save *Human*, but also to take *Czaberna*, which they still kept besieged, and, at the same time, to seize the rebel *Dorofensko*. *Sobieski* had likewise a great number of vessels ready to throw a bridge over the *Niefter*, in order to carry the war into the enemy's country.

Couwanski, at the head of the *Calmuck Tartars*, marched into the *Crim*; but too late to save *Human*, of which the *Turks*, springing eight great mines at the same time, whereby a large passage was opened to them to begin the assault, made themselves masters, after killing near 100,000 men. *Romadonowski* revenged this massacre, as much as he could, upon the *Tartars*, commanded by their khan in person, who returned to succour the *Crim*. The *Russian* general attacked them, and defeated them with great slaughter: but upon a report of the whole *Turkish* army being on their march, *Romadonowski* thought proper to retire behind the *Dnieper*. This occasioned such terror at *Moscow*, that the czar immediately sent a reinforcement to his army, of which he gave the command to the knez *Dolgorucki*, till he should join it himself: for he intended to head these troops in person; and therefore caused his son *Theodore Alexowitz* to be acknowledged his successor, to prevent disturbances during his absence. In the mean time, the crown-army of *Poland*, commanded by *Jahn Sobieski*, lay between *Leopold* and *Caminiac*, in order to harass the garrison of this last place; and the *Turks*, seeing no more enemies,

and finding that their forces diminished daily through sickness and famine, returned back by way of the *Danube*. Thus the czar lost, on a sudden, the fruits of two campaigns, in the course of which he had subdued the greatest part of the *Ukraine*.

THE *Poles* now discovered all their jealousy. They sent a plenipotentiary to *Kudzin*, to treat with the *Russians*, of whom they complained, for not having restored *Kiow*, as they had promised to do. The *Russians*, on their side, complained of several writings of the *Polanders*, in which they had not shewn the czar the respect that was due to him, and proposed an equivalent for *Kiow*.

DURING these altercations, the *Polish* army, now headed only by some rebel *Cossacks* of *Dorofensko's* party, went on from conquest to conquest, till, in less than six weeks, they had subdued all the *Ukraine* as far as *Kiow*. The *Russians*, jealous, in their turn, of this new progress, refused to furnish the *Poles*, who were encamped in the neighbourhood of this fortress, with any provisions, till, upon complaint of their king, who was returned to *Warsaw*, the czar sent orders to the waivode of *Kiow*, not to refuse any thing to the army of the allies: but at the same time he took care not to forget any circumstance that might hinder *Dorofensko's* making his peace with *Poland*, because the surrender of *Czeberin* would have put that crown in possession of all the *Ukraine*.

SUCH was the situation of affairs when the czar *Alexis Michailowitz* was taken ill, and died, in the forty sixth year of his age. He had two wives: one the daughter of *Ilia Danilowitz Miloslawski*, of whom we have already spoken; and the other, the daughter of *Cariloff Nariskin*, a captain of *Hussars*. This last, to whom he was married in the year 1671, survived him, and lived till the year 1694. By the former of these consorts he had four sons, *Simon*, *Alexis*, *Theodore*, and *John*, the two first of which died before him; and four daughters, *Catharine*, *Theodosia*, *Mary* and *Sophia*. The children of the second marriage were *PETER*, justly surnamed *the Great*, and a princess, who was called after her mother's name, *Natalia*. All the daughters died unmarried.

BESIDES these, he had a natural son, whom he created *knez*, and whose mother he married to a nobleman called *Muschin Puschkin*. But when the czar married his second wife, this lady, having through jealousy dropt some injurious expressions against the new czarina, was sent with her son to *Asiracan*, where they died.

His character.

Alexis Michaelowitz was one of the greatest princes of his time; and one of the best and wisest that *Russia* had known for many years. Though valiant, he never made war but when he could not avoid it. He was a father to his people, whose happiness he constantly studied, and endeavoured to render his government as easy to them as possible. Neither care nor expence was spared by him to form them for war, by drawing into his service, with large pensions, foreign officers, capable of instructing them in military discipline. It were, indeed, to be wished, that he had, at the same time, obliged them to adopt some of the customs and manners of those foreigners, which might have established a good correspondence between them and the more civilized people of *Europe*: but the great father of their religion, the patriarch, whose power was not yet curtailed, opposed to this the ancient usages, and the fear that such communication might corrupt the established faith. *Alexis* loved his people, loved justice and peace, and endeavoured, during the rest of his reign, to repair the ills which his favourites and ministers had occasioned in his youth, by abusing his too great confidence in them.

Theodore Alexowitz czar.

Theodore Alexowitz, born in the year 1657, was just turned of eighteen when he ascended the throne. His father had caused him to be acknowledged his successor, the year before his death, when he thought of putting himself at the head of his army in the *Ukraine*, as we mentioned before. This young prince found his affairs somewhat embarrassed. The war in the *Ukraine* had lasted three years, and followed immediately that which the czar had been obliged to make against the *Cossacks*; so that his finances could not be in good order. However, he continued his father's design upon the *Ukraine*; and with the more vigour, as he wanted to bring the enemy to a good peace.

Peace concluded between Poland and the Turks.

THE king of *Poland* had now made peace with the *Turks*, in whose hands he left *Caminiec*, and their respective armies had quitted the field. That of *Poland*, reduced from fifty-seven, to twenty-three thousand men, went into winter quarters; and that of the sultan passed the *Niefter*, and the *Danube*. By one of the articles of the treaty, the *Turks* offered the *Poles* their assistance to retake the provinces which the *Russians* had conquered from them. *Sobieski* had, indeed, not accepted this offer: but at the same time he did not reject it with that cordiality which would have become a good ally on the like occasion. By another article of the same treaty, the *Turks* surrendered to *Poland* all that part of the *Ukraine* which lies on the west of the *Dnieper*, and reserved

to themselves the southern part, then under obedience of *Dorofensko*.

THE *Russians* had, by this means, a fair field opened to them, in which they found no enemy to oppose their enterprises : so that they soon brought back again to the subjection of the czar, not only all the towns in the *Ukraine*, which the *Turks* had kept for themselves, among which was the strong city of *Czeherin*, but also some other places yielded to the *Poles* ; and what still enhanced the value of this conquest, was, their taking the rebel *Dorofensko*. This *Zaporog-Cossack*, dissatisfied with the *Poles*, as we observed before, had devoted himself to the *Turks* and *Tartars*, whom he invited into *Poland*, and particularly into the *Ukraine*. He had often endeavoured to make his peace with *Poland*, but always with an intent to deceive : and though the grand signior had sent him the general's staff, he sought the protection of the czar *Alexis*, to whom he sent this mark of his dignity, that he might hold it only from him : after which he treated with the king of *Poland*. So true it is, that a traitor will always be a traitor, what party soever he embraces.

THIS expedition drew upon the czar all the forces of the *Turks*, whose first exploit was the siege of *Czeherin*, where he *Russians* received them with so much valour, that they retreated in confusion, after having lost a considerable part of their army, with their baggage and artillery. Checked by this repulse, they attempted nothing farther during the remainder of the campaign : but as there was room to apprehend that they would return the next year to revenge this affront, the czar sent a minister into *Poland*, to demand, in his turn, the succours which he himself had been ready to give his neighbours, when distressed. But the *Poles* were so far from being disposed to return the favour, that they not only excused themselves, on account of the melancholy situation into which the late troubles, and the last war, had thrown them, as also of the new treaty concluded with the *Porte*, which would be infringed by granting the succours demanded ; but their king himself sent to *Moscow* two ambassadors, *Zewrinski* and *Sapieha*, to take advantage of the czar's distresses, and exact from him advantageous terms. They demanded, " That *Dorofensko* should be put into their hands as a rebel ; that *Kiow* and *Smolensko* should be surrendered ; and that satisfaction should be made them for not joining them with a body of 30,000 men, as had been stipulated by the last treaty : " without considering that the diversions which the *Russians* had made in the *Ukraine* and the *Crim*, had been

of

*Terms of
agreement
between
them.*

of greater service to the crown-army, than the junction of 50,000 men. At length, after some debates, a new treaty was concluded, in which it was agreed: 1. That the truce should be continued for fifteen years, including the time that had elapsed since the last treaty. 2. That the czar should pay to *Poland*, as an equivalent for *Kiow* and *Smolenskow*, 200,000 rubels, half in ready money, and the other half in the ensuing month of *November*. 3. That his czarish majesty should evacuate to *Poland* the towns of *Vielisse* and *Nievel*, situated on the frontiers of *Lithuania*; and that the restitution of some other places, concerning which they could not then agree, should be discussed in the next diet. 4. That all prisoners on both sides should be set at liberty. 5. That a resolution should be taken in the diet, with respect to the succours demanded, and the junction of the armies against the *Turks* and *Tartars*.

1678.
*The Turks
re-enter the
Ukraine,*

*and take
Czeherin.*

*Are obliged
to retire for
want of
provisions.*

THE apprehensions of the *Russians* in regard to the return of the *Turks* were but too well grounded; for they re-entered the *Ukraine*, at the opening of the next campaign, with a force still more formidable than the year before, and a determined resolution to carry *Czeherin*, cost what it would. *Romiadonowski* was sent against them with 400,000 men, and gained some advantages, but could not force them to raise the siege. On the contrary, having made a large breach in the walls, they took the place by assault, and put above 30,000 men to the sword. This so intimidated the *Russians*, that, numerous as they were, they immediately retreated, and the *Turks* pursued them as far as *Bukzin*, harrassing the rear, and defeating several small detachments made purposely to amuse them, till such time as the body of the army got to a place of safety. The *Russian* general fell deservedly into disgrace with the czar, who rightly judged that he might at least have faced, if not defeated the enemy, with his vast army. However, this retreat, shameful as it was, obliged the *Turks* to make an end of the campaign: for being in an enemy's country, without provisions or magazines, they found themselves unable to undertake any thing, and therefore retreated, in their turn, beyond the *Niefter*.

1679.
*Deliberations of the
Polish diet
in regard to
Russia.*

THE *Polish* diet assembled at *Grodno* in the beginning of the year 1679, when the question was put, whether the peace newly concluded with the *Porte*, should be adhered to, as it was not very honourable for *Poland*? or whether it should be broken, and the army of the crown be joined to the forces of the czar, that they might attack the *Turks* together? The emperor's party, the pope's nuncio, and a part of the diet,

or the last : but the *Poles* in general, thinking to act
gly with the czar, and imagining he could not do
t the succours he had demanded, were willing to make
urchase them with the restitution of the places which
ad ceded to *Alexis Michaelowitz*. To this end, their
John Sobieski sent an ambassador to *Moscow*, to make
position. But the czar, knowing what he had to ex-
om his jealous neighbours, answered, that he was re-
not to pay any subsidy to *Poland*, and that he required
; but the junction of forces, that they might act in
against the common enemy, to constrain him to agree
onourable peace with both states.

: *Turks* found no advantage in a war with *Russia* ; for
conquests they could make in the *Ukraine*, were not
a quarter of the expences they were at in bringing
my into that province. The divan, therefore, judged,
would be for the interest of the *Porte* to make peace
e czar ; and the sultan accordingly ordered the khan
ary to offer his mediation to his czarish majesty. The
f the *Porte*, which had just renewed the truce with
eror of *Germany*, for twenty years, was to get rid of
enemies, that she might afterwards fall upon *Poland*
e greater force, and take *Podolia*. *Spendowski*, the
idor of the crown at *Constantinople*, had penetrated in-
and given advice of it to the king his master, who
on requested succours from all the princes of *Christen-*
id particularly from the czar, who, when he found
sought after, imitated the policy of the *Poles*, and of-
join them with a numerous army, on condition that
ould renounce all pretensions to places then in the pos-
of *Russia*. The *Poles* did not reject this proposition :
ired the czar to send them a minister with full powers
late the affair, and settle the time and place of the
of their forces.

: proposals of this minister were very agreeable, but
ompanied with such hard conditions, that it was not
t to perceive he did not desire they should be accepted.
les saw that the *Russians* sought only to amuse them,
t if they had not already made, they were on the point
ing their peace with the *Turks*, and were not willing to
t without finding considerable advantages thereby : and
those who made the judgment were not mistaken ;
czar, declaring that he would prefer a tolerable peace
e *Turks*, to the conditions that were to accompany the
aty of alliance with the *Poles*, actually came to an

agree-

*Behaviour
of the czar
with re-
spect to the
Poles.*

1680.

*Peace con-
cluded be-
tween the
Russians
and the
Türks.*

agreement with the *Porte*. The *Cossacks*, who had put themselves under the *Ottoman* protection, were abandoned, and the grand signior became guarantee of a treaty between the czar and the khan of *Tartary*, by which this last engaged to hinder his subjects from making any inroads into the provinces of *Russia*.

Civil administration of the czar Theodore. *Theodore* had been too much busied with military affairs ever since his accession to the throne, to have time to execute his great designs, for the good of his people, and the embellishment of the city of *Moscow*; towards both which, he, however, did many things. Faithfully attached to the wise maxims of his father, he protected, as he had done, foreign officers whom he drew into his country from all parts, and gave great encouragement to every useful art. He paved the streets of *Moscow*, erected several edifices of stone in that city, instead of the former wooden buildings, and took great pains to have many other cities repaired. He lent money out of the treasury, to be repaid in ten years, and furnished materials to private persons, who were not in a capacity to build such houses in the city as he required. He was a great lover of horses; which proved very advantageous to the empire, by his sending for stone-horses and mares from *Prussia*, and forming several studs, from which a breed was raised, in a short time, sufficient, in some measure, to supply the occasions of the court, as well as of the army. Among other regulations, he also introduced a new police, for the better government of the city of *Moscow*, the streets of which he commanded to be shut up at night, and a watch to be kept there^b.

THINKING it absurd and unjust that any should pretend to be of course intitled to vast distinctions, high honours, and the first employments of the state, merely because they happened to be born with a great name, though they had no sort of merit to support it; he ordered all his nobles to attend him, with their patents and charters of privileges, which he threw into the fire, declaring, that, for the future, their prerogatives should be grounded only on merit, and not upon birth^c. But, laudable as this design might be, it could not be carried into execution. Every country has its nobles; and the distinction annexed to birth seems necessary, in order to preserve a proper subordination, and good order, in a state.

1681. *Theodore*, now freed from the embarrassments of war, thought of marrying, and chose for his bride *Opimia* Russian.

^b STRAHLENBERG, C. V. ^c Idem, *ibid*,

a niece of the bojar *Simon Iwanowitz Sabaroffski* (D).
 nuptials were celebrated with great pomp, in the month
 of *August* 1681: but this young lady dying in the begin-
 of the next year, his chief favourite and privy-coun-
Jafskow, persuaded him, notwithstanding his ex-
 y weak state of health, for this prince had always
 ery sickly, to marry, almost on his death-bed, *Mar-*
Marva Matweowna, the daughter of a newly created
 man, called *Matthias Appraxin*; merely to hinder, if
 he should, the succession of his half-brother *Peter*. The
 marriage-ceremony was performed in the month of *May*
 but was soon followed by a general mourning: for 1682.
 snatched away this excellent monarch, to the inex- and
 e grief of all his subjects, whose welfare he was de- death,
 ed to use his utmost efforts to promote.

Alexowitz had no children, but left two brothers,
 and *Peter*, the first by the same mother as himself, the
 eldest his half-brother; so that most people imagined
 he would have been appointed his successor. But *Theo-*
 having a greater regard for the welfare of his country,
 for a bad custom, which, in spite of all objections, pre-
 vailed, of primogeniture to every other consideration,
 he chose his brother *John*, who was subject to the fallen *after ap-*
 , and weak in understanding, as well as sight, unfit *pointing*
 to guide for the necessities of a state just beginning to *Peter I.*
 free from barbarism, and therefore declared *Peter* his *to be his*
 successor.

princess *Sophia*, third daughter of the emperor *Ambitious*
Michaelowitz by his first wife, leaving her retirement *designs of*
 to her convent, to which an ancient custom had subjected the *the prin-*
 issue of the czars, few of whom ever married, had *cess* So-
 commonly assiduous about her brother *Theodore*, du- *phia.*

illness, and even found means to engross a consider-
 able share in the administration of affairs. Her genius was
 and might have been of great service to the state, had
 been accompanied with an unbounded ambition,
 prompted her to aim at no less than making herself
 mistress of the empire, by endeavouring to set aside the no-
 men of *Peter*, and to substitute in his stead the weak

Crablenberg (1) calls her (2) makes her of the *Polish*
Simionowa, and says family of *Lupropini*, and gives
 of a *Polish* family her the name of *Mary Eupbro-*
irusebetski. *La Combe* *scria.*

(1) C. v. (2) *Revolutions de Russie*, p. 106.

prince *John*, under the shadow of whose name she hoped to govern *Russia*.

Horrid
sedition of
the stre-
litzes.

Theodore was scarcely dead when the nomination of a prince but ten years old to be his successor in the throne, the exclusion of his elder brother, and the intrigues of the princess *Sophia* their sister, excited among the *strelitzes* one of the most bloody rebellions ever known; exceeding the barbarities even of the *Janissaries*, or *Prætorian* guards. On the second day after the funeral of the czar *Theodore*, they ran in arms to the imperial palace at *Moscow*, and began with complaining of nine of their colonels who owed them some arrears of pay. The ministry were obliged to break the colonels, and to give the *strelitzes* the money they demanded. The mutineers then insisted on having these officers delivered up to them, and, of their own authority, sentenced them to suffer the *battogen* (A). The colonels thus treated by their soldiers, were even obliged to thank them for the chastisement they had received; like criminals in the east, who kiss the hand of their judges, after they have been punished. To these thanks, they added a sum of money; which, indeed, was not customary.

WHILE the *strelitzes* began thus to render themselves terrible, the princess *Sophia*, who encouraged them under hand, in order to lead them from one crime to another, convened an assembly of the princesses of the blood, the generals of the army, the *bojars*, the patriarch, the bishops, and even the principal merchants, to whom she represented, that prince *John*, by right of seniority and merit, ought to have the empire; of which she hoped in secret to hold the reins: and upon quitting the assembly, she promised the *strelitzes* an increase of pay, besides making them presents. At the same time, her emissaries inflamed the soldiers against the family of the *Nariskins*, and especially against the two brothers of the young czarina dowager, the mother of *PETER I.* The *strelitzes* were made to believe that one of those brothers, named *John*, had put on the imperial robes, seated himself on the throne, and attempted to frange prince *John*: to which was added, that *Daniel von Gaden*, a German physician (B), had poisoned the czar *Theodore*. At length *Sophia* gave them a list of forty lords, whom she

* VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de l'emp. de Russie sous Pierre le Grand*, p. 97.

(A) For the nature of this punishment, see p. 124. note B.

(B) He was *Theodore's* body-physician.

ed enemies to their corps, and to the state; and as such
clared them worthy of death. There cannot be a stron-
r image of *Sylla's* proscriptions, and of those of the *Ro-*
n triumvirs. *Christian* the Second had renewed these
cking scenes in *Denmark* and *Sweden*; by which we see
it all countries have been subject to the like calamities, in
nes of anarchy and confusion.

THE massacre began with throwing the knezes *Dolgo-*
ki and *Matheoff* out of the windows: the strelitzes re-
ved them upon their pikes, and after stripping them
ked, dragged their bodies to the great square. After this
y rushed into the palace, where meeting with one of the
r *Peter's* uncles, *Athanasius Nariskin*, brother of the
ung czarina, they murdered him in the same manner:
n, forcing the doors of a neighbouring church, where
ee of the proscribed had taken sanctuary, they dragged
em from the altar, stripped them, and stabbed them to
ath with knives. So great was their fury, that a young
d of the family of *Soltikoff*, which they loved, and who
s not in the list of the proscribed, happening to pass by
that time, and one of them mistaking him for *John Na-*
lin, of whom they were in search, they killed him in an
stant. A striking instance of the manner of those times,

that the assassins, upon discovering their error, carried
: body of the young nobleman to his father, that he might
ve it interred; and the unfortunate parent, far from daring
complain, rewarded them for having brought him the
mpled corpse of his son. His lady, his daughter, and the
fe of the deceased, with a flood of tears, reproached him
r his weakness. "Let us wait for an opportunity of be-
ing revenged", said the old man to them. Some of the
diers having overheard the words, they returned quite fu-
us into his apartment, dragged him out by the hair, and
t his throat at his own door.

OTHERS of the strelitzes, who were in search of *Von*
uden, happening to meet that physician's son, asked him,
bere his father was. The young man, trembling, replied
at he did not know: upon which they immediately killed
m. Another *German* physician falling in their way,

You are a doctor, said they to him, and if you have not
poisoned our master *Theodore*, you have poisoned others,
for which reason you deserve death;" and saying this,
they murdered him in an instant.

AT length, having discovered *Von Gaden*, who had dis-
guised himself in a beggar's habit, they dragged him before
se palace. The princesses, fond of the good man, and re-
posing

posing some confidence in his skill, begged hard for his life, assuring the strelitzes, that he was a very able physician, and had taken great care of their brother *Theodore*. The soldiers made answer, that he not only deserved to die, as a physician, but likewise as a forcerer; for that they had found a large toad, dried, in his room, and the skin of a snake. They added, that young *John Nariskin*, whom they had been seeking for two days, must absolutely be delivered up to them; that they were sure he was concealed in the palace; and that they would set fire to it directly, if he was not produced. *Nariskin's* sister, and the other princesses, terrified with these menaces, went to the place where this young nobleman lay concealed: the patriarch heard his confession, and administered to him the viaticum and extreme unction; after which, taking up an image of the virgin *Mary*, which was said to perform miracles, he conducted the youth by the hand, and advanced towards the strelitzes, presenting the image to their view. The princesses, dissolved in tears, encompassed the victim, knelt down before the soldiers, and conjured them, in the name of the holy virgin, to spare their relation's life: but the barbarians dragged him away to the bottom of the stair-case, where, erecting a kind of tribunal, they put him and the physician to the torture. One of the soldiers who could write, drew up an indictment against them; and they were condemned to be cut in pieces (A). They then stuck their heads, feet, and hands, upon the iron spikes of a balustrade. While these glutted their fury in the presence of the princesses, others laid violent hands on every one that was odious to them, or obnoxious to *Sophia*.

John and Peter proclaimed joint sovereigns; and Sophia made co-regent. THIS horrid tragedy ended with proclaiming (B) the two princes, *John* and *Peter*, joint sovereigns, and associating their sister *Sophia* to the government, in quality of co-regent. She then approved of all the crimes of the strelitzes, and not only rewarded them with the forfeited estates of the proscribed; but gave them leave to erect a monument, on which were inscribed the names of the persons they had murdered, who were represented as traitors to their country; and lastly, she gave them letters-patent, by which she thanked them for their zeal and fidelity.

(A) This is the death usually the punishment of ten thousand inflicted on parricides in *China* slices.
and *Tartary*, where it is called

(B) On the 25th of *June* 1682.

SUCH

SUCH were the steps by which the princess *Sophia* in reality ascended the throne of *Russia*, without being declared czarina, and such the first examples that *Peter* the Great had before his eyes. *Sophia* enjoyed all the honours of sovereignty : her bust was upon the public coin ; her hand to all dispatches ; she had the first seat in council, and a power without controul. She had wit at command ; composed verses in her native language ; spoke and wrote extremely well ; and was agreeable in her person. Her ambition alone sullied all these accomplishments.

To make her brother *John* be the more looked upon by 1684. the *Russians*, she singled out a wife for him, in the manner of Marriage which we have already seen several examples. *Paraskowia*, a of the czar young lady of the house of *Soltikoff*, and of the family of the John. nobleman of the same name who had been murdered by the *Strelitzes*, was sent for from the midst of *Siberia*, where her father commanded a fortress, in order to be presented to the czar *John* at *Moscow*. Her beauty triumphed over all the artifices of her rivals, and *John* was married to her in 1684. At every marriage of a czar, it seems as if we were reading the history of *Abasuerus*, or that of the younger *Theodosius*.

In the midst of the nuptial entertainments, the *Strelitzes* made another insurrection, the cause of which, who Singular would think it ? was religion. Had they been mere sol- quarrel liers, they would not have become controvertists : but they about reli- were also citizens of *Moscow*. Whosoever has the knack of influencing the populace by his speeches, is capable of founding a sect : of this we have had instances in all ages ; especially since the passion of dogmatizing became the instrument of ambition, and the means of enslaving weak minds.

Russia had already experienced some disturbances in consequence of the dispute about the sign of the cross, whether it should be made with three fingers, or two. A priest, called *Abakum*, who had been degraded, now broached some new doctrines at *Moscow* in regard to the Holy Spirit, which according to the gospel enlightens all the faithful, and likewise with respect to the equality of the primitive Christians, and the following words of Christ, *Among you there shall neither be first nor last*. Several burghers, and a great many *Strelitzes*, embraced the opinions of *Abakum*, and the new doctrine gained ground. At length these enthusiasts rushed one day into the cathedral, at the time of divine service ; and driving the patriarch and his clergy from thence with stones, devoutly placed themselves in the seats of those ecclesiastics, in order to receive the Holy Ghost. They called

led the patriarch, *the wolf in sheep's clothing*; a title which all sects have liberally bestowed upon one another. The princess *Sophia*, and the two young czars, were immediately informed of these disturbances; and the other strelitzes, who maintained the good cause, were told that the czars and the church were in danger. A party of these strelitzes, and the principal burghers, came to blows with the faction of the *Abukamists*; but, as soon as mention was made of convening a council, the carnage ceased. A council was accordingly assembled directly in a hall of the palace. The convocation was not difficult, all the priests that could be found being summoned. The patriarch and a bishop disputed against *Abakum*; and at the second syllogism, they pelted one another with stones. The council ended with beheading the leader, and some of his faithful disciples, who were put to death by the sole order of the three sovereigns, *Sophia*, *John*, and *Peter* ^b.

Couvanski *conspires against the state.* DURING this time of confusion, *Couvanski*, general of the strelitzes, thinking no reward too great for the services he and his ruffians had done the princess *Sophia*, dared to carry his ambitious views even to the crown; as a step towards which, he audaciously proposed a marriage between his son and the princess *Catharine*, *Sophia's* younger sister. We may readily believe, that *Sophia* was not disposed to give quite so great a proof of gratitude, and that his insolent proposal was treated as it deserved. Incensed at this, he put himself at the head of the devotees, the persecuted *Abukamists*, and also raised a party, composed of the strelitzes and the people, in defence of the cause of God. This conspiracy was of a much more serious nature than the enthusiasm of the dogmatizing priest; for an ambitious hypocrite is sure to carry matters much farther than a simple fanatic. *Couvanski*, disappointed in his former scheme, now resolved to leave nothing unattempted to open his way to the throne; even by murdering the two czars, and *Sophia*, with the other princesses, and all that were attached to the imperial family. The czars and the princesses were obliged to retire to the monastery of the *Trinity* (A). There they were safe, rather from

^b Idem, *ibid.* p. 102, & seqq.

(A) This monastery, about 36 miles from *Moscow*, was at the same time a convent, a palace, and a fortress; like mount *Cassin*, *Corby*, *Fulda*, *Kempten*, and many others belonging to the *Latin* church. It is encom-

passed with deep ditches, and brick ramparts, on which is planted a numerous artillery. The monks were possessed of all the country round about, for the space of 12 miles.

the strength than from the sanctity of the place. From hence *Sophia* negotiated with the rebel, whom she found means to decoy to come half way, where he was seized and beheaded, with one of his sons, and thirty-seven strelitzes who accompanied him.

Punishment of some of the conspirators,

As soon as the body of the strelitzes were informed of this, they flew to their arms, and marched to the convent of the *Trinity*; threatening death and destruction. The imperial family prepared to defend themselves; the bojars armed their vassals; all the gentlemen of the country flocked to the monastery; and *Russia* seemed to be at the eve of a bloody war. The patriarch exerted his rhetoric to appease the strelitzes, and made some impression on them: but when they heard that the other troops of the empire, their implacable enemies, were advancing against them on all sides, their fury was at once succeeded by fear, and their fear by the most abject submission; a change not uncommon with the multitude. Three thousand seven hundred of them, followed by their wives and children, went in procession, with halibout their necks, to that very convent, which, three days before, they had threatened to reduce to ashes. In this condition the unhappy wretches proceeded two and two, carrying a block and a hatchet: and prostrating themselves on the ground, they waited for their punishment. They were pardoned, contrary to their expectation, and returned to *Moscow*, blessing their sovereigns; but still ready, without knowing it themselves, to commit the same crime again upon any other occasion.

and submission of the rest.

THESE convulsions being ended, the state recovered its tranquillity. *Sophia* was still possessed of the chief authority; Peter being held in tutelage, and *John* abandoned to his incapacity. In order to strengthen her power, she shared it with prince *Basil Galitzin*, who was created generalissimo, minister of state, and chancellor. *Galitzin*, descended from the last duke of *Lithuania*, of the house of *Jagellon*, was superior in every respect to any other person in the tempestuous court of *Moscow*: he was not only polite, but magnificent; full of great designs; and learned far beyond any of his countrymen, because he had received a better education. He was master even of the *Latin* tongue, then almost utterly unknown in *Russia*. His active spirit, his indefatigable application, and extensive views for the welfare of his country, would have enabled him to reform the manners of the *Russians*, had he but had time and power equal to his inclination. This is the character given of him by *La Neuville*,

Rise and character of prince Basil Galitzin.

^b Relation de *Moscouie*, p. 55.

at that time the *Polish* envoy in *Russia*; and the eulogiums of foreigners are the least liable to suspicion.

1686.
The Poles
cede Smo-
lenskow
and the
Ukraine
to the Rus-
sians.

THIS minister, after curbing the immoderate power, and consequently the excessive insolence of the *Strelitzes*, by distributing the most mutinous of their corps among the several regiments in the *Ukraine*, in *Casan*, and *Siberia*, wisely brought about a peace with *Sweden* and *Poland*, which last, long the rival of *Russia*, ceded all her pretensions to the vast provinces of *Smolenskow* and the *Ukraine*; in return for which, the czars obliged themselves to make war upon the *Crim Tartars*, and oppose their incursions into *Poland*.

1687.
First em-
bassy of
the Rus-
sians to
France.

TOWARDS the beginning of the next year, the *Russians*, by the advice of *Galitzin*, sent their first embassy to *France*, which had then been twenty years in the zenith of her splendor, by her numerous conquests, by the new institutions and magnificence of *Lewis XIV.* and especially by the improvement of the liberal arts, without which a prince may have external grandeur, but no real glory. *France* had not yet entered into any sort of correspondence with *Russia*: to whole empire she was then so great a stranger, that the academy of inscriptions celebrated this embassy by a medal, as if it had come from *India*. But in spite of the medal, the ambassador *Dolgorucki* miscarried in his negotiation, and even underwent a good deal of uneasiness from the ill conduct of his domestics. It would have been better, says *M. de Voltaire*, to have overlooked their faults. But little did the court of *Lewis XIV.* at that time foresee, that *Russia* and *France* would one day esteem it a considerable advantage to be united in a close alliance.

Russia now enjoyed tranquility at home. She was indeed pent up on the side of *Sweden*, but had began to extend herself towards *Poland*, her new ally. The *Crim Tartars* kept her in perpetual alarms; and a misunderstanding had arisen between her and *China* in regard to their frontiers. But what galled her most of all, and plainly shews that her empire had not yet attained a regular and vigorous administration, was the khan of *Crim Tartary's* (A) continuing to demand

^b Hist. de *Russie*, p. 108.

(A) *Crim Tartary* is the ancient *Taurica Chersonesus*, celebrated in history for the commerce of the *Greeks*, and still more by their fables: a fruit-

ful, but barbarous country; called *Crim* from the title of their first *Khans*, who took this name before the conquest of the sons of *Jengbiz*.

an annual tribute of 60,000 rubels: a humiliation to which the *Turks* had likewise subjected *Poland*.

To wipe of this disgrace, and at the same time fulfil the 1688. new engagement with *Poland*, endeavours were used to unite *Unsuccessful* all the powers of *Europe* against the *Turks*, and a vast *expedition* army was raised to invade the *Crim*. *Galitzin* named several *lords*, as fit to command the expedition; but was answered *Russians* by his secret enemies, of which his encouraging foreigners *against the* had made him many, that none was so capable of it as himself. He would gladly have declined this honour; rightly judging, that he should meet with nothing but obstacles in the enterprize, in spite of all his precautions, and well knowing that he could reap no benefit from the command of a multitude of raw undisciplined peasants: for the *Russian* armies, in those days, had no idea of order and regularity, nor were they clad in uniform, or well armed. It is true, the men were inured to labour and hard living; but they had such an incumbrance of baggage, as is not to be matched, even in our most luxurious camps. He foresaw that his absence would be more prejudicial to the state, than the conquest of the *Crim* could be of service to it or him; and he likewise considered, that his adversaries would not fail to make the most of this opportunity, to ruin him. However, being insisted on, generals were appointed under him, and he set out for the army, after having obtained the princess's leave that his son should officiate as chancellor in his absence.

THE *Russian* commander traversed the dreary deserts of *Artary*, till, that country having been already ravaged, and burnt up by the excessive heat of the sun, there was no possibility of proceeding any farther for want of forage: upon which he led his troops back to the river *Samara*, where he did what, we believe, was never done any where else. He employed 30,000 men in building a town upon the *Samara*, in order to erect magazines for the next campaign. It was begun this year, and finished the next in three months. The houses indeed were of wood, except two of brick; and the ramparts were of turf, but well lined with artillery, and in a good state of defence. Nothing more was done in this ruinous expedition, the miscarriage of which was imputed to the hettman of the *Cossacks*, *John Samuelowitz*, in such a light, that orders were sent from *Moscow* to depose him, and chuse another in his stead. The unfortunate hettman was accordingly seized, and conveyed bound to a tent pitched for that purpose in the general's quarter. The next morning he was brought before *Galitzin*, and confronted by some of the principal *Cossacks*, who, pursuant to the instructions they had received

ceived before hand, charged him with holding intelligence with the khan; and directing him privately to burn all the forage. *Samuelowitz* was banished to *Siberia*, and *Mazeppa* was appointed to succeed him.

THIS *Mazeppa* was a *Polish* gentleman, born in the palatinate of *Podolia*, and had been brought up as one of the pages to king *John Casimir*, in whose court he had acquired some taste for polite literature : but having in his youth an intrigue with the wife of a *Polish* lord, and being discovered, the offended husband caused him to be severely scourged, and afterwards tied naked on a wild, ungovernable horse, which was then turned loose. The horse returned to the *Ukraine*, from whence it had been brought, and carried thither *Mazeppa*, half dead with fatigue and hunger. In this distress, he was succoured by some countrymen, with whom he continued a long time, and signalized himself on many occasions against the *Tartars*. The superiority of his understanding made him much respected among the *Cossacks*; and his reputation increasing daily, *Theodore Alexowitz* had made him prince of the *Ukraine*.

THE *Russian* army, which had now retreated to the river *Marle*, was disbanded by order of the czars; and every general, as well as the inferior officers, and even the private soldiers and strelitzes, received rewards, which *Galitzin* had obtained of his patroness *Sophia*, with a view artfully to appease the murmurs of the troops against him; for they began to be greatly dissatisfied with his conduct. This piece of policy had its desired effect: the prince returned to *Moscow*, was graciously received by the princess, and resumed the direction of affairs, with greater authority than ever.

THE czar *Peter*'s friends and relations, being apprehensive of the designs of *Sophia* and her favourite, began to concert measures for counter-plotting them; and for this purpose they called in the assistance of prince *Boritz Galitzin*, cousin to the prime minister, but despised by him on account of his drunkenness and debauchery. However, the confederates managed their matters so well, that he soon became the favourite of *Peter*. This being accomplished, and the czar's party gathering new strength every day, they came to a resolution to get the command against the *Crim* imposed a second time upon *Basil Galitzin*, in which they likewise succeeded; and this prince having obtained whatever he pleased to demand, all the forces were ordered to be at their rendezvous, on the first of *February* 1689. In *December*, the troops set forwards from all parts, except *Siberia*, which was excused from sending sol-

liers, on account of the war that province then maintained against the *Tartars*.

THE preparations for this campaign were much greater 1689. than for the last, and most of the troops were commanded by the Galitzin's same officers as before. They prudently marched, before the second expedition against the *Tartars* broke, to the other side of the river *Marle*, where the infantry encamped; the cavalry being posted in the towns along its banks. Prince *Galitzin* and the generals pitched their tents on the farther side of that river on the first of *April*, and on the sixth all the forces met at the river *Samara*, which they assailed, after being joined by *Mazeppa*, and in a month's time reached the *Crim*^d. Their heavy baggage and artillery somewhat retarded their marches.

ON their arrival at *Kairka* upon the *Dnieper*, they learnt from some *Tartars*, who were taken prisoners, that the khan was not at *Precop*, but at *Bondgiac*, little expecting so formidable a force to come against him. On the thirteenth of *May*, upon advice from the scouts that the enemy was at hand, they began to prepare for their reception. After making the necessary dispositions, the *Tartars* charged the vanguard commanded by *Schein*, and after some slight skirmishes, fell upon *Iheremetow's* forces, and put them to the rout. The enemy had well nigh carried off the baggage; but prince *Galitzin* sending a reinforcement, the *Tartars* were forced to retire and leave the *Russians* a free passage to *Thorna d'Oliwa*, where they encamped for the conveniency of water. A body of *Tartars* under sultan *Garka*, having taken more prisoners, got from them intelligence, which was carried to the khan at *Kalansbeck* river, two leagues from *Precop*: for upon hearing that the enemy had entered the *Crim*, he had quitted *Bondgiac*, and marched with 4000 horse to defend his dominions. On the 16th the khan removed to *Zelona Dolina* with all his forces, consisting of thirty or forty thousand horse, with which he insensibly surrounded the *Russians*, and obliged them to halt.

As soon as the *Muscovite* cavalry were attacked, they fell into disorder. They however made good use of their baggage, from behind which they fired upon, and killed three or four hundred of the enemy, as well as several of their own people. Sultan *Naradin*, on the other side, charged the *Cossacks* under the *Russian* secretary *Emilian*, who, being ignorant of the art of war, and of a pusillanimous disposition, was unable to withstand the *Tartars*, who broke into the very centre of the *Russian* waggons, and carried off twenty pieces of cannon, with their carriages and horses; and had not the bojar *Kourka*

^d LA NEUVILLE, Relat. de Moſcov. p. 90. & seq.

advanced with his troops, the *Cossacks* would have been quite cut off. *Sheremetow* was attacked a second time by the *Tartars*; but now forced them to retire; and their whole body being at length repulsed, after they had gained some little plunder, the *Russians* marched the next day to *Kalantscheck*, where their army joined, and formed a complete square. Their baggage was surrounded with the cannon and infantry, who carried their pallisadoes on their shoulders, ready to plant. During this march the *Tartars* appeared again, but being afraid to make any farther attempts upon so formidable an army, they withdrew to the defence of *Precop*, the suburbs of which they set on fire, to prevent the enemy from occupying them.

THE *Russians*, crossing the river at *Kalantscheck*, saw from an eminence the flames of *Precop*, towards which they marched on the 16th, and halted within cannon shot of the town; which they purposed to have attacked in the night; when, on a sudden, they received orders to return.

THESE orders were occasioned by prince *Galitzin's* having suffered himself to be imposed upon in the following manner. A *Precopian Nogay*, attending on the khan, having signified to a *Muscovite* of his acquaintance, that the khan was inclined to come to an accommodation, the *Muscovite* undertook to impart the substance of this conference to the general. Having obtained an audience, and informed the prince of all that had passed, *Galitzin* sent a letter in the name of the *Muscovite* to the *Precopian Nogay*, to this effect: "I have related to the general, prince *Galitzin*, what passed between us: he is content to come to an accommodation: it lies upon you to get some persons to be sent to him with the khan's proposals". This letter was transmitted to the khan, and hostages were sent on both sides. The *Russians* demanded, that all the *Russian* slaves should be restored; that the *Tartars* should make no more inroads into the czar's dominions; that they should quit all claim to the annual tribute of 60,000 rubels, which they demanded; and that they should not molest the *Poles*, nor assist the *Turks*. The khan, after keeping the *Russians* in suspense a whole day, sent them word, that he would accept of peace on no other terms, than those he had engaged in with the czars; that he insisted on the yearly tribute; and expected to be paid 240,000 rubels for the arrears of the four last years. The negotiation being thus broke off, not without suspicion of a considerable bribe from the *Tartars*, the *Russian* army, no longer able to lie en-

armed upon the sandy plain, was forced to retreat; and thus ended prince *Galitzin's* second campaign in the *Crim*.

THE *Tartars* afterwards marched to the river *Samara*, and from thence to the *Marle*; whilst *Galitzin* sent couriers to the czars, and to the king of *Poland*, boasting that he had defeated the enemy, and driven them far up into their own country. *Sophia* thereupon ordered public rejoicings throughout the empire, and rewards to be distributed among the army, which was at length disbanded, and the bojar *Valenski* was left at the river *Samara* with 5 or 6000 men. Thus did both these expeditions to the *Crim*, far from procuring honour to the nation, only entail upon it disgrace and disappointment; to which was soon added the ruin of their general.

DURING *Galitzin's* absence, the czar *Peter*, then in his eighteenth year, had married *Ottkefa Federowna*, daughter of the bojar *Feodor-Abrahamowitz Lapuchin*; a step which, though wholly against *Sophia's* inclinations, greatly increased the number of his friends. *Galitzin*, at his return, found all his measures broken by this marriage of the czar, whose consort was soon after with child. *Peter*, having been made acquainted with all that had passed in the *Crim*, would hardly be persuaded by *Sophia* to grant him an audience, which, when at last obtained, produced nothing but reproaches. The princess proposed at the same time an unreasonable liberality; which was to reward the bojars for the good services they had done the state, in the two expeditions against the *Crim*. Though both the czars immediately declared against it, she at length persuaded them to grant her request, and thereupon gave to prince *Galitzin* 1900 peasants houses in several villages, to other commanders 300, and in proportion to all the rest of the officers. Such gifts had never been known before in *Russia*, and plainly spoke the design of the giver.

Galitzin, supported by the princess *Sophia*, now took a most daring step. The hettman of the *Cossacks* had never entered *Moscow* since that nation had been subject to the *Russian* dominions: but *Galitzin*, under pretence of presenting *Mazepa* to the czar, introduced him into the capital, with 500 of his principal officers. He was, indeed, never admitted into the czar's presence: nor would he have been suffered to come within the city-walls, had it not been to favour a design which *Sophia* had formed against the life of her brother *Peter*.

HAVING concerted her measures, she pitched upon *Theodore Bekelavitan*, president of the chamber of the *Strelitzes*, to

The conspiracy is discovered.

be the chief instrument to execute the horrid deed. The czar *Peter* was at *Obrozensko*, a country-seat about three miles from *Moscow*. To this place *Thekelavita* advanced with 600 *strelitzes*; but while he was giving orders, two of them, struck with horror at the thought of shedding their prince's blood, stole privately away to the czar, and informed him of his danger. He immediately sent for the *Nariskins*, his mother's brothers, and consulted them what was to be done? One of these uncles, and prince *Boris Galitzin*, were dispatched to the city, to enquire into the truth of this intelligence. In their way they met *Thekelavita* and his soldiers, and having concealed themselves to let them pass by, they hastened back to save the czar, who had but just time to escape in a coach to the convent of the *Trinity* (the usual refuge of the court, when menaced by the mutinous soldiery), accompanied by his mother, his wife, and her sister, and attended by, a few of his faithful servants. The conspirators, upon their arrival at *Obrozensko*, enquiring for the czar, were told by the *strelitzes* then upon guard, that his majesty was just gone from thence with all imaginable speed; and this indeed was all they knew.

THE princess was not a little concerned at this disappointment; and when the czar, in the evening, sent to upbraid her with the treachery, she absolutely denied the whole affair, pretending that those he had taken for conspirators were only going to relieve the guard, and that she was greatly injured in being thought capable of harbouring so black a design (A). *Peter* then summoned the *bojars* to attend him at the convent of the *Trinity*, ordered the militia to be raised in every town, and having published *Thekelavita's* attempt, was visited by a numerous body of noblemen and gentlemen. *Galitzin* was likewise ordered to attend; but he excused himself on pretence of being withheld by the czar *John*. *Sophia* did all she could to engage the *strelitzes* on her side: but they, notwith-

(A) *La Neuville*, the Polish envoy, who then resided at *Moscow*, and was an eye-witness to what passed, asserts (1) that *Sophia* and *Galitzin* engaged the new chief of the *strelitzes* to sacrifice the young czar to their ambition: and *M. de Voltaire* says (2), that the secret memoirs

entrusted to him by the court of *Russia* affirm that a scheme was actually laid to murder *Peter the First*; and that the blow was upon the point of being struck, by which *Russia* would have been deprived of a prince, from whom she has received a new existence.

(1) *Relation de Moscovie*, p. 116.

(2) *Hist. de Russie*, p. 111.

standing her injunctions to the contrary, marched directly to the monastery, and assured the czar *Peter* of their fidelity.

Sophia then sent two of *Peter's* aunts, his father's sisters, who assured him, that there had been a misunderstanding in the affair, and earnestly besought him not to give credit to any reports which might be maliciously spread to make a breach between him and his sister. But when he had explained to them all the circumstances, and made them sensible that it was really a conspiracy against his life; they burst into tears, averred their own innocence, and protested they would never return to *Moscow*, but live and die with him.

THE princess *Sophia* applied next to the patriarch, and by her tears and entreaties prevailed upon him to interpose in her behalf. He went to the czar *Peter*, and used his utmost endeavours to effect a reconciliation between him and his sister. But when he understood that he himself was to have been taken off, and that the abbot *Sylvester* was to have been made patriarch in his stead, he was greatly shocked at the discovery, and judged it most prudent to remain in the monastery of the *Trinity* till the affair was cleared up. In the mean time a proclamation was published to apprehend the traitors. The princess, now in a worse situation than ever, after having consulted those in whom she had most confidence, and resolved that the abbot *Sylvester* should make his escape, and *Thekelavitau* be secured in the palace, set out in person for the convent of the *Trinity*, accompanied by prince *Galitzin* and the rest of her friends, in hopes of appeasing her brother: but she had not got above half way before a bojar met her, by the czar *Peter's* order, and told her she must go back, for that she would not be received; whereupon, knowing the danger of disobeying, she returned to *Moscow*. The next day, the bojars being met, it was resolved to bring the traitors to justice, and a colonel with 300 men was immediately sent to the imperial palace, to demand *Thekelavitau*, who, after some small resistance on the part of *Sophia*, was at last surrendered with his adherents, loaded with chains, and conducted to the monastery of the *Trinity*, where, being put to the torture, he confessed that he was to have killed the czar, his mother, and her three brothers: upon which he was ordered to a close prison, from whence he wrote to the czar *Peter* all the particulars of the conspiracy.

THE czar, though fully convinced of his sister's barbarity, was unwilling to expose her publicly; but it was with great difficulty that young *Boris Galitzin* could prevent the execution of the prince his cousin. Several others were sentenced

tenced to the extraordinary torture (A), which put them to such exquisite pain, that they immediately confessed their guilt, and discovered their accomplices, who were punished with great severity, according to the custom of *Russia*, where heinous crimes, and rigorous executions, were very frequent. Prince *Galitzin*, with his son and friends, were banished to *Karga*, in the neighbourhood of *Archangel* (B); and all his possessions, which were immense, were forfeited to the crown. The ladies of the prince and his son, were exiled with them, but suffered to take no more than 30 rubels among them all. *Thekelavita* was beheaded the next day, with two strelitzes who were to have been the assassins. The colonel of the detachment of the conspirators was whipped, had his tongue cut out, and was sent to end his days in *Siberia*: five other strelitzes likewise had their tongues cut out, and were sent to the same place to kill fables.

End of the administration of the princess Sophia. WHEN these executions were over, the czar *Peter* ordered *Sophia* to quit the palace, and retire to a convent which she had built at *Dewitz*. He then returned to *Moscow*, and made his entry on horseback, attended by a guard of 18,000 strelitzes; his wife and mother following in a coach. The czar *John* received him at the outer gate of the palace, and after embracing each other with great affection, they retired to their respective apartments.

THUS ended the regency of the princess *Sophia*, who had governed the *Russian* empire for several years; but by endeavouring to get the power into her own hands, she not only lost the authority she had maintained in the name of

(A) A dreadful punishment! inflicted by letting water fall from some height, drop by drop, upon the close-shaved head of the offender, who is fastened so that he cannot possibly stir.

(B) *La Neuville*, who was present at this whole catastrophe, says (1) that *Galitzin's* sentence was pronounced in the following words: "Thou art commanded by the most merciful czar, to repair to *Karga*, a town under the pole, and there to continue the re-

"mainder of thy days. His majesty, out of his excessive goodness, allows thee three pence a day."

There is no town under the pole, as *M. de Voltaire* justly observes (2). *Karga* is in the 62d degree of latitude; only six degrees and a half farther north than *Moscow*; so that the person who pronounced this sentence must have been a very bad geographer. But it is said, that *La Neuville* was imposed upon by a false account.

(1) *Relation de Moscovie*, p. 143.

(2) *Hist. de Russie*, p. 113.

her brothers, but also her liberty ; being kept in confinement, a punishment which a woman of her temper might probably think more than adequate to all her offences, from that time till her death, which did not happen till fifteen years after (A). Some efforts were indeed made by her partizans to re-instate her : but they proved fruitless, as we shall see in the sequel. The *Nariskins*, whom she had taken every opportunity to humble during her administration, now returned to court, and were preferred to the highest dignities : the illustrious families of the *Golwins* and *Dolgoruckis* were honoured with great employments ; and the new favourite, *Boris Galitzin*, was first ordered to retire to his seat in the country, then recalled by the czar, who was fond of him, and afterwards banished with ignominy for the remainder of his life.

FROM this time *Peter* was real sovereign. His brother *John* had no other share in the government, than that of lending his name to the public acts : he led a retired life, and died in 1696.

PETER THE GREAT was tall, and well shaped : he had a noble countenance, eyes that sparkled with vivacity, and a robust constitution, well adapted to all sorts of hardship and bodily exercise : his judgment was sound ; which may be justly deemed the foundation of all real abilities ; and to this solidity was joined an active disposition, which set him upon the most difficult undertakings ^b. But his education was far from being worthy of his genius : it had been spoilt chiefly by the princess *Sophia*, whose interest it was to leave him in ignorance, and to indulge him in those excesses, which, in persons of his rank, age, and circumstances, it had been but too much the custom to overlook. Though but lately married, he was not sufficiently restrained by the solemn ties of wedlock ^c ; and from his feasting and carousing with foreigners, who had been invited to *Moscow* by prince *Galitzin*, no body would have suspected, that he was to be one day the reformer of his country. However, in spite of bad example, and in spite even of his strong propensity to pleasure, he applied himself to the military art, and to civil government : which shewed, even then, that the seeds of greatness were in him.

IT was still less expected, that a prince who had such a dread of water from his infancy, as to be seized with a cold

^b VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de Russie*, p. 115.

^c Idem, *ibid.* p. 116.

(A) She died in 1704.

sweat and with convulsions, even in being obliged to pass over a brook, should become the best mariner in all the north (A). He began to conquer nature by jumping into the water; and his aversion was ever after changed into a prodigious fondness for that element.

ASHAMED of the ignorance in which he had been brought up, he learnt, almost of himself, and without a master, enough of the *High* and *Low Dutch* languages to speak and write intelligibly in both. He looked upon the *Germans* and *Hollanders* as the most civilized nations, because the former had already erected some of those arts and manufactures in *Moscow*, which he was desirous of spreading throughout his empire; and the latter excelled in the art of navigation, which he considered as the most necessary of all.

SUCH were the dispositions of this prince, notwithstanding the follies of his youth. In the mean while his situation was very critical, being obliged to guard against the different factions of the nobility, to check the mutinous temper of the *strelitzes*, and to defend himself against the *Crim Tartars*, with whom he was almost constantly at war. Hostilities had indeed been suspended this year, but the truce was of no long continuance.

DURING this interval, *Peter* was confirmed in the resolution of introducing the liberal arts into his country.

HIS father *Alexis* had formerly the same views, but never met with a favourable opportunity: he transmitted his genius to his son, who had still a clearer idea of these matters than his father, with more vigour, and resolution, to surmount every difficulty.

Alexis had been at great expence in sending for one *Babler*, a shipbuilder and sea-captain, from *Holland*, with a number of carpenters and seamen. These people built a large frigate and yacht upon the *Volga*, with which they fell down that river to *Astracan*: they were to be employed in constructing more vessels, in order to carry on an advantageous trade

(A) The cause of this dread is thus accounted for by *Strahlenberg* (1). When he was about five years of age, his mother went with him in a coach, in the spring-season; and passing over a dam, where there was a considerable water-fall, whilst he lay asleep in her lap, he

was so suddenly awaked, and frightened by the rushing of the water, that it brought a fever upon him; and after his recovery, he retained such a dread of that element, that he could not bear to see any standing water, much less to hear a running stream.

(1) C. vi.

with *Persia*, by means of the *Caspian Sea*. Then happened the revolt of *Stenko-Razin*, who destroyed the two vessels, which he ought to have preserved for his own sake, and murdered the captain: the remainder of the ship's crew fled into *Persia*, and reached some of the settlements belonging to the *East-India* company. A master carpenter, who was a very good shipwright, staid behind in *Russia*, where he lived a long time in obscurity.

As *Peter* was one day walking in the court at *Ismaelhof*, a ^{Beginning} summer-palace built by his grandfather, he perceived, among ^{of his de-} other rarities, an old *English* sloop, almost fallen to pieces. ^{sign to} Upon which he asked *Timmerman*, his mathematical teacher, ^{form a} and a native of *Germany*, how that little boat came to be of a *marine*, different construction from those which he had seen upon the *Moskwa*? *Timmerman* answered, that it was made to go with sails, or with oars. The young prince immediately wanted to make a trial of it: but they were obliged to look out for a person, who could repair and fit it for service; and after a long search, they found this very shipwright, *Brandt*, who was retired to *Moscow*. The *Dutchman* put it in order, and sailed with it on the river *Yauza*, which washes the suburbs of the town.

Peter caused this boat to be removed to a great lake in the neighbourhood of the convent of the *Trinity*; where he made the *Dutchman* build two frigates and three yachts, and piloted them himself. Some time after, *viz.* in 1694, he took a journey to *Archangel*, where he ordered this same *Dutchman* to build him a small vessel, in which he embarked on the frozen ocean, that had never been seen by any sovereign before him. On this occasion he was escorted by a *Dutch* man of war, under the command of captain *Jolson*, and attended by all the merchant-ships in the harbour of *Archangel*. He had already learnt the manner of working a ship; and notwithstanding the eagerness of courtiers in general to imitate the example of their sovereign, he was the only person that learnt this art.

To raise a body of land-forces well disciplined, and fond of the service, was as difficult an undertaking, as to establish ^{and to} a navy. His first essay in navigation upon the above-mentioned lake, before his journey to *Archangel*, had been looked ^{have regular land-} upon as the amusement of a young prince of genius; and his first attempt to form a body of disciplined troops, had likewise the appearance of being only a scheme of diversion. This happened during the administration of princess *Sophia*: but had there been the least suspicion of its becoming a serious

Origin
and first
prefer-
ments of
the cele-
brated M.
Le Fort.

rious affair, the consequence might have proved fatal to him.

HE placed his whole confidence in a foreigner, the celebrated *Le Fort*, of a noble and ancient family of *Piedmont*, transplanted near two centuries ago to *Geneva*, where it has filled the first employments in the state. His parents would fain have brought him up to trade, to which this city, formerly remarkable only for religious controversies, owes its present importance: but his genius prompting him to great undertakings, he quitted his father's house at the age of fourteen, and was four years a cadet in the citadel of *Marfeilles*. From thence he went to *Holland*, and having served for some time as a volunteer, he was wounded at the siege of *Grave* upon the *Meuse*; a very strong town, which the prince of *Orange*, afterwards king of *England*, retook from *Lewis XIV.* in 1674. The expectation of further preferment, and indeed of making his fortune, induced him afterwards to embark, in 1675, in company with a *German* colonel, named *Werstin*, who had obtained a commission from *Peter's* father, the czar *Alexis*, to raise a few troops in the *Netherlands*, and to transport them to *Archangel*. But when he arrived at that port, after a most perilous navigation, the czar *Alexis* was no more; the government had undergone some change, and *Muscovy* was in an unsettled state. Things being thus situated, the governor of *Archangel* suffered *Werstin*, *Le Fort*, and his whole troop, for a long time to languish with want, and even threatened to send them to the extremity of *Siberia*. Every man then shifted for himself. *Le Fort*, being in great necessity, repaired to *Moscow*, where he offered his service to *de Horn*, the *Danish* resident, who made him his secretary. There he learned the *Russian* language; and some time after found an opportunity of being introduced to the czar *Peter*, knowing that it would be of no use to him to be presented to *John* the elder brother. *Peter* took a liking to him, and immediately appointed him a captain of foot. *Le Fort* did not understand much of the military service, nor was he a man of literature, having applied himself deeply to no one particular art or science; but he had seen a great deal, and was capable of forming a right judgment of what he saw: like the czar, he was indebted for every thing to his own genius: besides, he understood the *High* and *Low Dutch* languages, which *Peter* was learning at that time, in hopes that both those nations would facilitate his designs. Finding that he was intirely agreeable to *Peter*, he attached himself to that prince's service: by administering to his pleasures, he became

his favourite; and confirmed this intimacy by his abilities. The czar entrusted him with the most dangerous design a *Russ* *Peter re-*
solves to a-
bolish the
strelitzes.
bolish the
strelitzes.
 The great sultan *Osman* had lost his life, for attempting to reform the *Janizaries*. *Peter*, young as he was, went to work in a much abler manner than *Osman*. He began with forming, at his country-residence of *Preobrazinski*, a company of fifty of his youngest domestics; and some of the sons of bojars were chosen for their officers. But in order to teach those young bojars a subordination, with which they were wholly unacquainted, he made them pass through all the military degrees, setting them an example himself, and serving successively as private centinel, serjeant, and lieutenant of the company. This was a very extraordinary conduct, but of infinite use to the state: for hitherto the *Muscovites* had made war, after the manner of our ancestors at the time of the feudal tenures; when a number of vassals, undisciplined and ill-armed, were led against the enemy by their lords, who had not the least share of experience: a very rude method of waging war; sufficient indeed for acting against the same kind of armies, but of no use against regular troops.

THIS company, which had been raised by *Peter* only, soon increased in numbers, and was afterwards the regiment of *Preobrazinski* guards. Another company, formed on the same plan, became in time the regiment of guards, known by the name of *Semenovskiy*. *Creates now guards.*

THE czar had now a regiment of five thousand men on foot, on whom he could depend; trained by general *Gordon*, a *Scotchman*, and composed almost entirely of foreigners. *Le Fort*, who had seen very little service, yet was qualified for any commission, undertook to raise a regiment of twelve thousand men, and effected his design. Five colonels were appointed to serve under him; and he was made general of this little army, which had been raised as much to oppose the *strelitzes*, as the enemies of the state; to whose great mortification, and to the utter disappointment of all the hopes and expectations of the princess *Sophia*, the czarina was this year delivered of a son, who, according to the *Russian* custom of giving the christian name of the father for the surname of the son, was called *Petrowitz*. *Raises Le Fort to the rank of general. 1690. Birth of the czarewitz Alexis Petrowitz.*

WE ought to observe, which indeed confounds the impertinence of those who pretend that *France* lost very few inhabitants by the revocation of the edict of *Nantes*, that one-third of this army, which was only called a regiment, con-

list of *French* refugees (A). *Le Fort* disciplined his new corps with as much exactness, as if he had followed this exercise all his life.

Peter was desirous of seeing one of those mock fights, which had been lately introduced in times of peace. He caused a fort to be erected, which one part of his new troops were to defend, and the other to attack. The difference on this occasion was, that instead of exhibiting a sham engagement, they fought a downright battle, in which several soldiers were killed, and a great many wounded. *Le Fort*, who commanded the attack, received a considerable wound. These bloody sports were intended to inure the troops to martial discipline; but it was a long time before this could be effected, and not without a great deal of labour and difficulty. In the midst of these military entertainments, the czar did not neglect the navy: and as he had made *Le Fort* a general, notwithstanding this favourite had never borne any commission by land; so he raised him to the rank of admiral, though he had never before commanded at sea. But he knew him to be worthy of both commissions. True it is, he was an admiral without a fleet, and a general without any other troops than his regiment.

Le Fort
made
admiral.

By degrees the czar began to reform the chief abuse in the army, which was, the independence of the bojars, who, in time of war, used to take the field with a multitude of their vassals and peasants. Such was the government of the *Franks*, of the *Huns*, of the *Goths*, and *Vandals*, who indeed subdued the *Roman* empire in its state of decline, but would have been easily destroyed, had they contended with the warlike legions of the ancient *Romans*, or with armies like those of our times.

Admiral *Le Fort* had soon more than an empty title: he employed both *Dutch* and *Venetian* carpenters to build some long-boats, and even two thirty-gun ships, at the mouth of the *Woronetz*, which discharges itself into the *Don*. These vessels were to fall down the river, and to awe the *Crim Tartars*, with whom hostilities had been renewed. These occupations had necessarily rendered the czar somewhat less attentive to foreign affairs than he would otherwise have been. *Germany* attacked by the *Turks*, and *Poland* harassed by the *Crim Tartars*, claimed the performance of his engagements with them against their common enemy; the *Swedes* had renewed their hostilities upon the frontiers of *Russia*;

(A) Extracted by M. de *Voltaire* from general *Le Fort's* manuscripts.

and a dispute had arisen with the *Chinese* about the boundaries of their empire: so that *Peter* was now to determine against which of these powers he should declare war. But before we enter into this detail, it may be right to shew upon what terms he then stood with *China*, and what was the first treaty of peace ever made by that nation.

AFTER passing through *Siberia*, properly so called, and leaving far away to the south a hundred hords of *Tartars*, with white and black *Calmucks*, and *Moguls* of the *Mahometan* and *Pagan* religion, towards the 130th degree of longitude, and 52d of latitude, is the river *Amur* (A), which runs the space of five hundred leagues through *Siberia* and *Chinese Tartary*, and empties itself into the sea of *Kamtshatka*. To the northward, a great chain of mountains extends to the frozen sea beyond the polar circle.

It was in this part of the world ^b, which had hardly been 1691: heard of by other nations, that the *Chinese* and *Russians* disputed about the limits of their empire. The *Russians* were possessed of some forts towards the river *Amur*, within three hundred leagues of the great wall. Several hostilities had been committed by both nations, on account of those forts; till at length they came to a right understanding, with respect to their real interests. The emperor *Cam-Hi*, preferring peace and commerce to an unprofitable war, sent seven ambassadors to *Niptchou*, one of those settlements. The ambassadors had ten thousand men in their retinue, including their escort. This was *Asiatic* pomp: but it is very remarkable, that there had been no instance in the annals of the empire, of an embassy to a foreign power: and what indeed is singular in its kind, the *Chinese* had never concluded a treaty of peace since the foundation of their monarchy. Though twice conquered by the *Tartars*, who were both times the aggressors, they never made war against any na-

Congress
and treaty
between
the Rus-
sians and
the Chi-
nese.

(A) At the mouth of this river, they are said to have fish, of a much larger size than the hippopotamus of the *Nile*, and that the tooth thereof is a much harder and whiter ivory. It is further pretended, that these teeth were formerly a material of traffic, and that they used to be conveyed through *Siberia*; which is the reason that many of

them are still found buried in the fields. This is the most probable account of the fossil ivory, of which we have already made mention; for it seems quite chimerical to pretend that there were elephants formerly in *Siberia*. The *Amur* is stiled the *Black River* by the *Mantchoux-Tartars*, and the *Dragon River* by the *Chinese*.

^b Memoirs of the Jesuits *Pereira* and *Gerbillon*.

tion, except a few hords, which were either quickly subdued, or left to themselves without concluding any treaty. Thus these people, so famous for their knowledge of morality, were strangers to what we call the law of nations, that is, to vague rules of war and peace, to the privileges of foreign ministers, to the formality of treaties, with the obligations from thence resulting; and lastly, to the disputes concerning precedence and point of honour.

BUT the difficulty was to know in what language the *Chinese* could possibly negotiate with the *Russians* in the midst of deserts. This was removed by two jesuits, the one a *Portuguese*, named *Pereira*; the other a *Frenchman*, whose name was *Gerbillon*. They set out from *Pekin* along with the *Chinese* ambassadors, and were the real negotiators. They conferred in *Latin* with a *German* belonging to the *Russian* embassy, who understood this language. The head of the *Russian* embassy was *Golwin*, governor of *Siberia*, who had a more splendid retinue than the *Chinese* themselves, and thereby gave a high idea of the *Russian* empire to a people who looked upon themselves as the only power upon earth. The jesuits fixed the limits of both empires, at the river *Kerbecchi*, near the spot where the treaty was concluded. The country south of that river was adjudged to the *Chinese*, the north to the *Russians*, who lost only a small fort, which happened to have been built beyond the limits. A peace was agreed to; and after some contests, both the *Russians* and *Chinese* swore to it in these terms: "If any of us enters the least thought of renewing the flames of war, we beseech the supreme Lord of all things, who knows the heart of man, to punish the traitor with sudden death."

FROM this form of treaty, signed by the *Chinese* and by christians, we may infer two points of great importance; the first, that those who administer the *Chinese* government, are neither atheists nor idolaters, as they have been so often represented by contradictory implications; the second, that all civilized nations in effect acknowledge the same God, notwithstanding the particular errors they may labour under, from the prejudice of education. The treaty was reduced into *Latin*, and two copies were made of it. The *Russian* ambassadors set their names the first to the copy left in their possession; and the *Chinese* also signed theirs the first, according to the *European* manner of treating between equal powers. On this occasion was observed another custom of the *Asiatic* nations, and indeed of the earliest ages; the treaty was engraved on two large pillars, erected on the spot

spot, to determine the boundaries of the two empires. Three years after this, the czar sent a *Danish* gentleman, *Isbrand Ides*, upon an embassy to *China*; in consequence of which, an advantageous commerce subsisted between the two nations till the rupture in 1722; since which it has been again revived with new vigour.

IT was not so easy to settle matters with the *Turks*: this 1694. even seemed a proper time for the czar to raise himself on Expedition their ruin. The *Venetians*, whom they had long over- of the powered, began to retrieve their losses. *Morosini*, the same Russians who surrendered *Candia* to the *Turks*, was dispossessing them to the Pa- of *Peloponnesus*, whereby he obtained the title of *Peloponne- lus Mæo- sian*, an honour which revived the memory of the *Roman* re- tis. public. *Leopold*, emperor of *Germany*, had gained some advantages over the *Ottoman* forces in *Hungary*; and the *Poles* were at least able to repel the incursions of the *Crim Tartars*.

Peter improved these circumstances, to discipline his troops, and to acquire, if possible, the empire of the *Black Sea*. General *Gordon* marched along the *Don* towards *Asoph*, with his regiment of five thousand men; he was followed by general *Le Fort* with his regiment of twelve thousand; by a body of *Strelitzes* under the command of *Scheremetoff*, and *Schein*, officers of *Prussian* extraction; by a body of *Cossacks*, and by a large train of artillery. In short, every thing was ready for this grand expedition by the end of the year 1694.

THE *Russian* army began its march under the command 1695. of marshal *Scheremetoff*, in the beginning of the summer of *Where* 1695, in order to attack the town of *Asoph*, situated at the they be- mouth of the *Tanais*, or river *Don*, and at the further ex- siege A- tremity of the *Palus Mæotis*, now called the *Zabac Sea*. The soph, a czar was with the troops, but appeared only as a volunteer; first time, being desirous to learn, before he would take upon him to in vain. command. During their march they stormed two forts, which the *Turks* had erected on the banks of the river.

THIS was an arduous enterprize, *Asoph* being very strong, and defended by a numerous garrison. The czar had employed several *Venetians* in building barks like the *Turkish* saicks, which together with two *Dutch* frigates, were to fall down the *Woronetz*; but not being ready in time, they could not get into the sea of *Asoph*. All beginnings are difficult. The *Russians* having never as yet made a regular siege, miscarried in this first attempt.

ONE *Jacob*, a native of *Dantzick*, had the direction of the artillery under the command of general *Schein*; for as

yet they had none but foreign officers belonging to the train, and indeed none but foreign engineers, and foreign pilots. This *Jacob* had been condemned to the *batogs* by *Schein*, the *Prussian* general. These severities were thought necessary at that time, in support of authority. The *Russians* submitted to such treatment, notwithstanding their disposition to mutiny; and after they had undergone that corporal punishment, they continued in the service as usual. Our *Dantzicker* was of another way of thinking, and determined to be revenged: whereupon he nailed up the cannon, deserted to the enemy, turned *Mahometan*, and defended the town with great success. This example shews that the lenity now used in *Muscovy* is preferable to the ancient rigour, and a more effectual method of keeping men to their duty, who by an improvement in their education, have imbibed some notions of honour. At that time it was necessary to treat the lower class of people with great severity; but, since their manners are changed, the clemency of the late empress *Elizabeth* compleated the work, which her august father began to effectuate by the authority of laws. The lenity of this princess was carried to a degree unparalleled in the history of any nation. She promised, that no body should be put to death during her reign; and she kept her word. No sovereign before her ever shewed this regard to the human species. Malefactors are now condemned to serve in the mines, and other public works; a regulation not less prudent than humane, since it renders this punishment of some advantage to the state. In other countries they only know how to put a criminal to death, with the apparatus of an executioner; but are not able to prevent the commission of crimes. The terror of death does not perhaps make such an impression on evil doers, who are generally given to idleness, as the fear of chastisement and hard labour renewed every day.

To return to the siege of *Asoph*, which was now defended by the person, who had before directed the approaches: the besiegers made a vain attempt to storm the town, and after losing a great number of men were obliged to raise the siege.

1696.
Peter be-
sieged *Asoph* a se-
cond time,
and takes
it.

PERSEVERANCE in his undertakings, was the characteristic of *Peter* the Great. In the spring of 1696 he marched a second time, to attack the town of *Asoph* with a more considerable army. About this time died the czar *John*. Though *Peter* never felt any diminution of his authority from his brother, who had only the name of czar; yet he had been under some restraint in regard to appearances.

The

expences of *John's* household were applied, upon that
e's demise, to the maintenance of the army; a very
derable relief to a government, which had not near so
a revenue as at present. *Peter* wrote to the emperor
old, to the states general, and to the elector of *Bran-*
rg, in order to obtain engineers, gunners, and seamen.
likewise took some *Calmucks* into his pay, whose light-
are of very great use against the *Crim Tartars*.

HE most agreeable part of the czar's success, was that
s little fleet, which he had the pleasure to see completely
oped, and properly commanded. It beat the *Turkish*
s that had been sent from *Constantinople*, and took some
em from the enemy. The siege was carried on regu-
, though not entirely after our manner. The trenches
three times deeper than ours, and the parapets were as
as ramparts. At length the garrison surrendered, on
28th of *July*, without obtaining any of the honours of

They were likewise obliged to deliver up the traitor
s.

HE czar immediately began to improve the fortifications
Joseph, with variety of outworks: he likewise ordered a
our to be dug, capable of holding large vessels, with a
n to make himself master of the streights of *Cassâ*, or
Zimmerian Bosphorus, which opens the passage into the
ne or *Black Sea*, places celebrated in history for the ar-
ents of *Mithridates*. He left two and thirty armed
s before *Asoph**, and made all the preparations for fit-
out a strong fleet against the *Turks*, which was to con-
f nine sixty-gun ships, and of one and forty carrying
thirty to fifty pieces of cannon. The principal nobi-
and the wealthiest merchants, were obliged to contribute
e fitting out of this fleet; and as he apprehended that
estates of the clergy ought to bear a proportion in the
ce of the common cause, orders were issued out that
atriarch, the bishops, and the superior clergy, should
money to forward this new expedition, in honour of
country, and for the general advantage of *Christendom*.
likewise obliged the *Cossacks* to build a number of light
s, such as they use themselves, and with which they
it easily infest the whole coast of *Crim Tartary*. The
s were to be alarmed with this great armament, the
that ever had been attempted on the *Palus Mæotis*.
scheme was to drive the *Tartars* and *Turks* for ever out
ie *Taurica Chersonesus*, and afterwards to establish a free

His mari-
time pre-
parations
against the
Turks:

* LE FORT'S Memoirs.

and easy commerce with *Persia* through *Georgia*. This is the very branch of trade which the *Greeks* formerly carried on to *Colchis*, and to this peninsula of *Crim Tartary*, which the czar seemed likely to subdue.

And tri-
umphal re-
turn to
Moscow,

AFTER his successful campaign against the *Turks* and *Tartars*, he was willing to accustom his people to glory, as well as to military toil. With this view, he made his army enter *Moscow* under triumphal arches, in the midst of fireworks and other rejoicings, intended to decorate the solemnity. The soldiers, who had fought on board the *Venetian* gallies against the *Turks*, moved first in procession. Marshal *Scheremetoff*, the generals *Gordon* and *Schein*, admiral *Le Fort*, and the other general officers, took the precedence of their sovereign, who, to shew the nobility, by his own example, that merit ought to be the only road to military preferment, declared, that he had no rank in the army.

THIS triumphal entry seemed in some measure to resemble those of the ancient *Romans*, especially in this, that as the triumphers exposed the captives to public view in the streets of *Rome*, and sometimes put them to death; so, the slaves taken in this expedition followed the army; and *Jacob*, who had betrayed them the year before, was carried in a cart, with the gibbet, to which he was fastened, after he had been broke upon the wheel.

UPON this occasion was struck the first medal in *Russia*. The legend, which was in the language of that country, is remarkable: *PETER THE FIRST, the august emperor of Muscovy*. On the reverse is *Asoph* with these words, *Victorious by fire and water*.

NOTWITHSTANDING this success, *Peter* was very much grieved that all his ships and gallies in the sea of *Asoph* should be built by foreigners. Besides, he had as strong a desire to have a harbour upon the *Baltic*, as upon the *Euxine Sea*.

1697.

He sends
young gen-
tlemen into
foreign
countries,
for their
improve-
ment,

THESE considerations determined him to send some of the young nobility of his empire into foreign countries, where they might improve. In 1697, he sent sixty young *Russians* of *Le Fort's* regiment, into *Italy*, most of them to *Venice*, and the rest to *Leghorn*, in order to learn the art of navigation, and the method of constructing gallies^b: forty more set out by his direction for *Holland*, with an intent to instruct themselves in the art of building and working large ships: others were appointed for *Germany*, to serve in the land-forces, and to learn the military discipline of that nation. At length he resolved to absent himself from his dominions for a few years, the better to learn

^b VOLTAIRE, p. 143, from general *Le Fort's* manuscript,

how to govern them. He could not withstand the temptation of having recourse to his own observation and experience, in order to perfect himself in the knowledge of naval affairs, and of the several arts which he longed to introduce among his subjects. With this view, he purposed travelling *incognito* to *Rome*, through *Denmark*, *Brandenburg*, *Holland*, *Vienna*, and *Venice*. In this tour, *Spain* and *France* were omitted; the former, because his favourite arts were too much neglected in that country; and the latter, because they were, perhaps, cultivated there with too much vanity, and the parade and state of *Lewis XIV.* which had given offence to so many potentates, might not be agreeable to a prince, who intended to travel merely for his improvement, and without any restraint of pomp and ceremony. He was moreover connected with most of the powers, whom he intended to visit, except those of *France* and *Rome*. To which we may add, that he bore a kind of grudge to *Lewis XIV.* for a disregard shewn by that prince to the *Russian* embassy in 1687, which had been more the subject of public discourse, than productive of any advantage; and that he had already espoused the interests of *Augustus* elector of *Saxony*, with whom the prince of *Conti* disputed the crown of *Poland*.

His resolution being taken to visit the several countries and courts before mentioned, as a private gentleman, he ^{and re-} went in the retinue of three ambassadors, in the same man- ^{solves to} ner as he had mingled with his generals, at his triumphant ^{take the} entry into *Moscow*. ^{same step} ^{himself.}

THESE ambassadors were general *Le Fort*, the bojar *Alexis Golowin*, commissary general of war, and governor of *Siberia*, the same who had signed the treaty of peace with the plenipotentiaries of *China* on the frontiers of that empire; and *Vonitzin*, diack or secretary of state, who had been long employed in foreign courts. The chief retinue of this embassy were the four principal secretaries, twelve gentlemen, two pages to each ambassador, and a company of fifty guards with their officers, belonging to the regiment of *Preobrazinski*; the whole consisting of two hundred persons. The czar, reserving to himself only a valet de chambre, a servant in livery, and a dwarf, mixed with the crowd. It was a thing unparalleled in history, either ancient or modern, for a sovereign of five and twenty years of age, to withdraw from his kingdoms, only in order to learn the art of government. His victory over the *Turks* and *Tartars*, the splendor of his triumphant entry into *Moscow*, the multitude of foreign troops attached to his interest, the death

of

of his brother *John*, the confinement of the princess *Sophia* to a cloister, and above all, the general respect shewn to his person, might naturally encourage him to hope, that the tranquillity of his dominions would not be disturbed during his absence. The regency was entrusted to the bojar *Streshneff*, and the knez *Romadonouski*, who were to consult with the rest of the nobility, in matters of importance.

THE troops which had been trained by general *Gordon*, continued at *Moscow*, with a view to awe the capital. The *strelitzes*, who were likely to create a disturbance, were distributed on the frontiers of *Crim Tartary*, in order to preserve the conquest of *Asoph*, and to check the incursions of the *Tartars*. Having thus provided against every incident, he gave a free scope to his passion of travelling, and to his desire of improvement.

THIS journey having been the occasion or pretence of that bloody war, which so long obstructed, but at length contributed to promote, the noble designs of *Peter the Great*; which dethroned *Augustus* king of *Poland*; which bestowed a crown on king *Stanislaus*, and snatched it away from him as it were the next moment; which raised *Charles XII.* king of *Sweden*, to the highest pitch of military glory, during the space of nine years, and reduced him to be the sport of fortune for nine years more; it is proper, before we enter into a particular narrative of these transactions, to give a sketch of the general state of *Europe* at that period.

General
state of
Europe at
that time.

Sultan *Mustapha* the Second was seated on the *Turkish* throne. His administration was impotent and feeble: he made no great efforts, either against *Leopold* emperor of *Germany*, whose arms were successful in *Hungary*; or against the czar, who had lately taken *Asoph*, and threatened to make himself master of the *Euxine* sea; or even against the *Venetians*, who at length possessed themselves of the whole province of *Peloponnesus*.

John Sobieski, king of *Poland*, who immortalized himself by the victory of *Chocsim*, and by the deliverance of *Vienna*, died on the 17th of *June* 1696: this crown was disputed by *Augustus*, elector of *Saxony*, who obtained it; and by *Armand*, prince of *Conti*, who had only the honour of being elected.

Sweden had lately lost (A), but did not much lament, its king *Charles XI.* He was the first sovereign who had ever been really possessed of absolute power in that kingdom; and was father of a prince, in whose reign this power still increased, though it was abolished at his demise. He left the

(A) In April 1697.

crown

crown to his son *Charles XII.* then only fifteen years of age : a circumstance which seemed to favour the czar's designs of extending his dominions towards the gulf of *Finland* and *Livonia*. It was not enough for his purpose to harass the *Turks* in the neighbourhood of the *Black Sea* ; nor could he make any settlements on the *Palus Mæotis*, or towards the *Caspian Sea*, that would answer his schemes of trade, navigation, and power. The glory too, which every reformer ardently wishes to acquire, was not to be obtained, either in *Persia* or *Turky* ; but in our part of *Europe*, where merit and abilities are confined to immortality. In short, *Peter* did not want to introduce either the *Turkish* or *Persian* customs, but ours among his subjects.

Germany was then at war both with the *Turks* and the *French* : but having been supported by her allies, *Spain*, *England*, and *Holland*, against *Lewis XIV.* she was upon the point of concluding a peace ; to which end the plenipotentiaries were just met at *Ryswick*.

SUCH was the situation of affairs, when *Peter* and his ambassadors began their journey in the month of *April 1697*, by the way of *Great Novogorod*. From thence they proceeded through *Esthonia* and *Livonia*, provinces formerly disputed by the *Russians*, *Swedes*, and *Poles*, but at length conquered by the *Swedes*.

THE fertility of *Livonia*, and the situation of *Riga* its capital, were capable of tempting the czar to possess himself of that country : at least, he had the curiosity to desire to see the fortifications of the citadel : but count *d'Alberg*, governor of *Riga*, taking umbrage at this, refused to gratify the *Russian* monarch, and seemed even to set very slight on the embassy. This rude behaviour is said to have incensed *Peter* so much as to make him tell *d'Alberg*, " that he hoped " to see the day when he should be able to refuse the same " thing to the king of *Sweden* himself."

FROM *Livonia* they travelled on to *Brandenburg Prussia* ; part of which was inhabited by the ancient *Vandals*. What is now called *Polish Prussia* was included in *Sarmatia Europæa*. *Brandenburg Prussia* was a poor country, very thinly peopled : yet the elector, its sovereign, who afterwards obtained the title of king, made a most extraordinary and expensive figure on this occasion. He piqued himself upon receiving this embassy in his city of *Königsberg*, with a royal magnificence. The most costly presents were exchanged on both sides. The contrast between the *French* mode of apparel, which the court of *Berlin* particularly affected, and the long *Asiatic* robes of the *Russians*, with their caps adorned with pearls and diamonds,

diamonds, and their scimitars hanging by their sides, must have had a very singular effect. The czar was dressed in the *German* fashion. A *Georgian* prince in his retinue, displayed a different sort of magnificence in the *Persian* habit: he was taken prisoner afterwards at the battle of *Narva*, and died in *Sweden*.

Peter in his heart despised this external pomp; and we could have wished that he had shewn the like contempt for carousing and feasting, a kind of entertainment, in which the *Germans* at that time used to place their whole delight. It was at one of these sumptuous treats, the bane at once of health and morality, that this prince drew his sword against his favourite *Le Fort*: but he expressed the same concern for this short transport of passion, as *Alexander* shewed for the murder of *Clitus*; for he asked that gentleman's pardon. He said that he wanted to reform his subjects; but that he could not as yet reform himself. *Le Fort*, in his manuscript, seems more ready to commend the czar for this general disposition of mind, than to blame him for being hurried away by this impulse of passion.

*He arrives
at Amster-
dam.*

THE ambassadors went through *Pomerania* to *Berlin*; and from thence one part took their route by *Magdeburg*, and the other by *Hamburg*, a town already considerable by means of its extensive commerce, but not so gay and opulent as at present. They then directed their course towards *Minden*, passed through *Westphalia*, and at length arrived by the way of *Cleves* at *Amsterdam*.

THE czar had reached this city fifteen days before the ambassadors: he lodged at first in a house belonging to the *East-India* company, but chose afterwards a small apartment in the yards of the admiralty. He disguised himself in a *Dutch* skipper's habit, and went to the village of *Sardam*, where many more vessels were then built, than at present. This village is equal in populousness and opulence, but superior in neatness, to a great many flourishing towns. *Peter* admired the multitude of workmen constantly employed; the order and exactness observed in their several departments; the prodigious dispatch with which they build and fit out ships; and the incredible quantity of stores and machines for the greater ease and security of labour. He began with purchasing a boat, and made a mast for it himself: by degrees he executed every part of the construction of a ship; and led the same life all the time as the carpenters of *Sardam*; clad and fed exactly like them; working hard at the forge,

the rope-yards, and at the several mills for the sawing of
 er, for the extracting of oil, for the manufacturing of
 r, and for wiredrawing; of all which there is a prodigious
 number around the village. He entered himself as a ^{Enters}
 mon carpenter, and was enrolled in the list of their ^{himself as}
 cmen, by the name of *Peter Michaeloff*. They com- ^{a common}
 ly called him *Master-Peter*, *Peter-bas*; and though they ^{ship-}
 : confounded at first to behold a sovereign their compa- ^{wright at}
 , yet they gradually accustomed themselves to the fight. ^{Sardam.}

WHILST *Peter* was handling the compass and ax at *Sar-*
 , he received a confirmation of the division in *Poland*,
 of the double nomination of the elector *Augustus* and
 prince of *Conti*. Immediately the carpenter of *Sardam*
 nified king *Augustus* to assist him with 30,000 men. From
 shop he issued out orders to his army in the *Ukraine*, which
 been assembled against the *Turks*.

His troops obtained a victory over the *Tartars* (A), in *His troops*
 neighbourhood of *Asophi*; and in a few months after be- ^{obtain a}
 the master of the town of *Or*, or *Orkapi*, which we call ^{victory over}
 cop. For his part he persisted in making himself master ^{the}
 different arts. With this view he frequently went from ^{Tartars.}

Sardam to *Amsterdam*, in order to hear the anatomical lec-
 s of the celebrated *Ruisch*: under this master he made
 improvement, as to perform some chirurgical operations,
 ch in case of necessity might be of use, both to himself, and
 his officers. He likewise studied natural philosophy, un-
 burgomaster *Witsen*, celebrated for his patriotic virtue,
 for the noble use he made of his immense fortune. This
 tleman dispensed his treasure with a most liberal hand,
 a citizen of the world, sending men of abilities, at a
 expence, to all parts of the globe in search of the most
 able curiosities, and fitting out ships for the discovery of
 known countries.

Peter-bas suspended these occupations for a few days, to ^{He pays a}
 a private visit at *Utrecht* and at the *Hague*, to *William* ^{private}
 of *England*, and stadtholder of the *United Provinces*. ^{visit to}
 neral *Le Fort* was the only person present at the inter- ^{king Wil-}
 of these two monarchs. *Peter* assisted next at the ce- ^{liam III.}
 ony of the public entry of his ambassadors, and at their
 ience; when the deputies of the states were presented,
 is name, with six hundred of the finest fables: the states
 turn, besides the usual present of a gold chain and a
 al to each, gave them three magnificent coaches. They
 ived the first visit of all the plenipotentiaries assembled

(A) On the 11th of August 1697.

at the congress of *Ryswick*, except the *French*, to whom they had not notified their arrival, not only because the czar espoused the part of king *Augustus* against the prince of *Conti*; but because king *William*, whose friendship he cultivated, was averse to a peace with *France*.

Sends a ship of his own building to Archangel, and all sorts of artists to Moscow.

UPON his return to *Amsterdam*, he resumed his former occupations; and having finished with his own hands a sixty-gun ship, which he had begun himself, he sent it to *Archangel*; for the *Russians* had then no harbour in the *Baltic*.

HE not only engaged *French* refugees, *Swiss* and *Germans*, to enter into his service; but took care to send all sorts of artists to *Moscow*: not without previously seeing a specimen of their abilities. There are few arts and manual employments, with which he was not acquainted; he took a particular pleasure in rectifying the maps of geographers, who having at that time but a slender knowledge of his dominions, frequently fixed the situation of towns and the course of rivers at a venture. He drew a draught himself of the communication between the *Caspian* and *Black* seas, which he had projected some time before, and commissioned M. *Bruch*, a *German* engineer, to carry into execution: this draught is still preserved. The junction of these two seas was indeed a less arduous task, than that of the ocean and the *Mediterranean*, which had been executed in *France*; yet people were frightened at the very idea of joining the sea of *Asoph* and the *Caspian*. There seemed to be a stronger reason for the czar to make new settlements in that part of the world, as fresh hopes arose from his successes.

His troops gain another victory over the Tartars & Turks.

His troops, commanded by general *Schein* and prince *Dolgorucki*, gained another victory in the neighbourhood of *Asoph*, over the *Tartars*, and even over a body of janizaries, whom sultan *Mustapha* had sent to their assistance. This success rendered the czar more respectable to those, who had lately condemned him for quitting his dominions, in order to learn the mechanic arts in *Amsterdam*. They perceived that the weighty concerns of the sovereign did not suffer by the amusement of the traveller, philosopher, and artist.

1698.

Peter continued his employments of ship-builder, engineer, geographer, and physician, till the middle of *January* *England*; 1698, when he embarked for *England*, in his ambassador's retinue. King *William* sent his yacht to meet him, with a convoy of two men of war.

where he perfects himself in the art of ship-building,

IN *England* the czar followed the same manner of life as at *Amsterdam* and *Sardam*. He took lodgings near the king's yard at *Deptford*, and employed almost his whole time in gaining further instruction. The *Dutch* carpenters had only taught

the practical part of shipbuilding ; but in England the art by fundamental principles ; the builders in the country working by plan and rule, and according to the usual proportion. He soon became master of the method and was capable of reading lectures upon it himself. He took to build a ship according to the *English* method of construction, and it proved a prime sailor. Captain *Perry*, an engineer, who attended him from *London* to *Russia*, after he came there was not so much as a single article belonging to shipbuilding, from the casting of cannon to the making of the tools, what he minutely observed, and set his hand to, as he came into the king's yards. His attention was directed to watch-making ; an art which had already been brought to great perfection in *England*, and he himself thoroughly master of the principles on which it was conducted.

He endeavored to cultivate his friendship, king *William* permitted him to take a number of *English* artificers into his service, as he had done in *Holland* ; but beside the artificers, he also had some mathematicians, whom he could not so easily procure from that republic. He contracted for this purpose with Mr. *Ferguson*, a Scotchman, and a good mathematician. This was the man who introduced the arithmetic of accounts into the exchequer in *Russia*, where at that time they made use only of the *Tartar* method of calculation, with balls strung upon a wire ; a method which took the place of writing, but was perplexing and imperfect. After the calculation, there was no method of ascertaining to obtain a certainty of there being no mistake. The cyphers, which we now use, were not introduced into Europe till the ninth century, by the *Arabs* ; and the empire did not receive them till many ages after : it was the fate of all the arts, to be slow in their progress round the globe. *Ferguson* was accompanied by two mathematicians from *Christ-church* hospital ; and this was the beginning of the marine academy, founded some years before by *Peter the Great*. He observed and calculated with *Ferguson*. *Perry* the engineer, though greatly respected by the czar for not having been sufficiently recognized, acknowledges that this prince had studied astronomy, understood the motions of the heavenly bodies, the laws of gravitation, by which they are directed. It was so evidently demonstrated, and before the great time, so little known ; this force, by which all things gravitate towards each other, and which retains their orbits, was already familiar to a sovereign of *Russia*.

The History of Russia

Russia, when other nations amused themselves with chimerical vortexes; and when *Galileo's* ignorant countrymen were commanded by teachers as ignorant as themselves, to believe the earth immoveable.

Perry set out upon his journey, in order to effect the junction of rivers, and to construct bridges and sluices. The czar's plan was to open a communication, by means of canals, between the ocean, the *Caspian*, and the *Black Sea*.

We ought not to omit that the *English* merchants, headed by the marquis of *Carmarthen* (A), gave him 15,000*l.* for leave to import tobacco into *Russia*. This branch of commerce had been prohibited by the patriarch from an ill-judged severity; for the *Russian* church looked upon smoking as an unclean and sinful action. *Peter*, who knew better things, and who, among his other projects, was meditating the reformation of the church, introduced the use of this commodity into his dominions. Whilst here, he frequently went to church, to observe the order of our established religion; and sometimes to the meeting-houses of the quakers, and other sectaries, in the time of their service. He seemed greatly pleased with the armoury in the *Tower*, and also with the manner of coining money. He was carried into both houses of parliament when they were sitting: and was twice or thrice prevailed upon to go to a play; tho' he seemed to have no great relish for theatrical diversions. He always dressed in the *English* taste, sometimes like a gentleman, and sometimes like a sailor; used to go abroad with few or no attendants, and whenever he found himself gazed upon by the populace, he always quitted the place where he was. He likewise went to see the university of *Oxford*; and once paid a visit to the archbishop of *Canterbury* at his palace at *Lambeth*.

BEFORE he departed from *England*, king *William* entertained him with a spectacle worthy of such a guest, that of a mock sea-fight; which pleased him so greatly, that he declared, he thought an *English* admiral a much happier man than the czar of *Muscovy*. Little was it then imagined, that the czar would one day fight real battles on this element against the *Swedes*, and obtain victories on the *Baltic*. His *Britannic* majesty likewise made him a present of the *Royal Transport*, a most beautiful yacht, which he generally used

(A) The czar was particularly pleased with this nobleman, because he was a great lover of maritime affairs, frequently rowed and sailed with him on the water, and gave him the information he could concerning shipping.

for his passage over to *Holland*. Peter went back to *Holland* on board this vessel, in the end of *May* 1698, and took with him three captains of men of war, five and twenty captains of merchant ships, forty lieutenants, thirty pilots, thirty surgeons, two hundred and fifty gunners, and upwards of three hundred artificers. This colony of ingenious men in the several arts and professions, sailed from *Holland* to *Archangel* on board the *Royal Transport*; and from thence were sent to the different places, where their service was necessary. Those whom he engaged at *Amsterdam*, took the rout of *Narva*, at that time subject to *Sweden*.

WHILE the czar was thus transporting the arts and manufactures from *England* and *Holland* to his own dominions, the officers whom he had sent to *Rome* and *Italy*, succeeded so far as also to engage some artists in his service. General *Scheremetoff*, who was at the head of his embassy to *Italy*, took the tour of *Rome*, *Naples*, *Venice*, and *Malta*; while the czar proceeded to *Vienna* with the other ambassadors. He was willing to observe the military discipline of the *Germans*, after having seen the *English* fleet, and the dock-yards in *Holland*. But it was not the desire of improvement alone that induced him to make this tour to *Vienna*: he had likewise a political view; for the emperor of *Germany* was the natural ally of the *Russians* against the *Turks*. Peter saw *Leopold* incognito, and the two monarchs stood the whole time of the interview, to avoid the trouble of the court ceremonials.

DURING his stay at *Vienna*, there happened nothing remarkable, except the celebration of the ancient feast of *landlord* and *landlady*, which *Leopold* thought proper to revive upon the czar's account, after it had been disused during his whole reign. The manner of making this entertainment, to which the *Germans* give the name of *Wurtschafft*, is as follows. The emperor is landlord, and the empress landlady: the king of the *Romans*, the archdukes, and the archduchesses, are generally their assistants: they entertain people of all nations, dressed after the most ancient fashion of their respective countries. Those who are invited as guests, draw lots for tickets; on each of which is written the name of the station, and the character they are to represent. One has a ticket for a *Chinese* mandarin, another for a *Tartarian* mirza, another for a *Persian* sarrap, or a *Roman* senator: a princess may happen to draw lots for a gardener's wife, or for a milk-woman; and a prince may act the peasant or soldier. They have dances suited to these different characters; and the landlord and landlady with their family wait at table. Such is the old custom: but on this occasion, *Joseph* king of the *Ro-*

mans, and the countess of Traun represented the ancient Egyptians; the archduke Charles and the countess of Walsein were dressed like the Flemings in the reign of Charles the Vth; the archduchess Mary Elizabeth and count Traun were in the habit of Tartars; the archduchess Josephina and the count of Workla appeared in a Persian dress; the archduchess Mariamne and prince Maximilian of Hanover acted the part of North Holland peasants. Peter assumed the habit of a Friesland boor, and in this character, was addressed by every body, at the same time that they talked to him of the great czar of Muscovy^c. These indeed are minutenesses; but whatever revives the memory of ancient customs, is, in some measure, worthy of being recorded.

And receives the news of a rebellion in his dominions.

Peter was ready to set out from Vienna, in order to finish his improvements at Venice, when he received news of a rebellion which had lately broke out in his dominions. Before he set out upon his travels, he had guarded, as far as human foresight could direct, against every accident that might happen, and had even provided the means for suppressing an insurrection: but his very endeavours to serve and aggrandize his country, proved the cause of this.

THESE disturbances were owing partly to some old bojan, pertinaciously fond of their ancient customs, and partly to the clergy, who looked upon the present innovations as sacrilegious. Upon this the old friends of princess Sophia began to shew their heads. A sister of her's, who was confined to the same monastery, is said to have been very active in blowing the coals. It was represented on all sides, that the nation was in the utmost danger of being over-run with foreigners, under pretence of improving their manners^d; and, which one would hardly expect, the permission which the czar had given to import tobacco into his dominions, notwithstanding the prohibition of the clergy, proved one of the strongest motives to rebellion. Superstition, which sheds its baleful influence over all the world, and yet is the delight of the vulgar, quickly spread itself from the common people of Russia to the strelitzes, who had been scattered on the frontiers of Lithuania: they assembled, to the number of about 10,000, and marched in a body towards Moscow, with an intent to place Sophia on the throne, and for ever to exclude the czar, who had violated the laws and customs of his country, by presuming to travel for instruction among foreign nations: but their pretence was, the pay then due to them. There

^c VOLTAIRE, p. 163. from the MSS. of Petersburg and of Le Fort.

^d VOLTAIRE, p. 167. from Le Fort's MSS.

gency sent to them, with offers not only of all the arrears they demanded, but of six months pay in advance, if they would return to their duty; to which they answered, that they would not listen to any proposals till they had consulted their friends at *Moscow*, and were absolutely certain whether the czar was alive or dead. This threw the whole city into the utmost consternation: every one remembering the havock made by these inhuman wretches in their former rebellion, and dreading the consequences of their present disposition; to prevent which, as much as possible, general *Gordon* was ordered to put himself at the head of his army, chiefly composed of veterans, and commanded by foreign officers. He met the rebels near the *Jerusalem* monastery, about forty miles from *Moscow*, and sent several persons of distinction to treat with them: but they still persisted in their resolution of going to *Moscow*, and declared, that if he opposed their passage, they would dispute it with him, though he had double their number of men. Upon this *Gordon* ordered some cannon to be fired over their heads, to frighten them; but the shot doing no execution, the priests who were among them magnified this incident into a miracle, and persuaded them, that as they were engaged for the honour of God, and the defence of their religion, the shot of the enemy had no power to hurt them. Trusting to this, and quite mad with enthusiasm, they gave a great shout, and ran furiously to the onset, which was very sharp for near two hours, at the end of which the rebels, seeing by the slaughter of 3000 of their men killed on the spot, that there was no miracle in the case, laid down their arms. *Gordon* then, imitating the Roman decimation, hanged up every tenth man, and carried the rest prisoners to *Moscow*: but this advantage, obtained by a foreign general over the standing troops of the nation, among whom were several of the citizens of *Moscow*, contributed still more to inflame the minds of the people.

To pacify these troubles, the czar, laying aside his design of going to *Venice*, and from thence to *Rome*, at both which places great preparations were made for his reception, immediately set out privately for *Vienna*, passed through *Poland*, where he had an interview with king *Augustus*, with whom he entered into measures against the *Suedes*, in order to extend his own power towards the *Baltic*, and arrived at *Moscow* (A) before any one there knew of his having left *Germany*.

The regency endeavoured in vain to pacify the rebels.

Who are defeated, and surrender.

Peter arrives unexpectedly at Moscow.

^c PERRY'S State of Russia, p. 180.

(A) In September 1698.

Example-ry punishment of the strelitzes. THE first thing he did was to reward the troops, who had defeated the strelitzes: the next being to chastise the offenders, the prisons were filled with those unhappy wretches. As their crime was great, so was their punishment. Their chiefs, with several officers, and priests, were condemned to death; some were broke upon the wheel, and two women were buried alive. Two thousand strelitzes were executed; part of whom were hanged at the gates of the walls that encompass the city; and others were dispatched in different manners: their bodies were exposed two days (A) on the high roads, especially about the monastery, where the princesses Sophia and Eudocia resided. Monuments of stone were erected on this occasion, with an inscription setting forth the crime, and the punishment. A great number, who had their wives and children at Moscow, were banished with their families; some into Siberia, others to the kingdom of Astracan, and others to the country about Asoph. By this step their punishment was at least of some service to the state; for they helped to cultivate and improve a large tract of waste land.

If the czar had not seen a necessity for making so dreadful an example, he would perhaps have employed in public works, some of those strelitzes, whom he ordered to be put to death, and who thereby were utterly lost, both to him, and to the community; for the life of a subject ought to be considered as a very tender point, especially in a country, where the article of population calls upon the utmost attention of the legislator: but his design was utterly to subdue and confound the spirit of the people, by the terror and multitude of executions. The intire corps of the strelitzes, whose number none of his predecessors

Who are broke, and their name abolished for ever. § VOLTAIRE, p. 168; from Perry's state of Russia, p. 183. and from Le Fort's MSS.

(A) So says M. de Voltaire (1), from Le Fort's Memoirs. But captain Perry says (2) that these executions being performed in the depth of winter, their bodies were immediately frozen: those who were beheaded were ordered to be left in the same posture as when their heads were cut off, in ranks upon the ground, with their heads lying by them; and those which were hanged round the three walls of

the city were left hanging the whole winter, to the view of the people, till the warm weather began to come on in the spring, when they were taken down, and buried together in a pit, to prevent the infection of the air. This author adds, that there were other gallowses placed on all the public roads leading to Moscow, where other numbers of these rebels were

(1) p. 163, (2) p. 184.

cessors had dared even so much as to reduce, was broke for ever, and their very name abolished. This great revolution was effected without the least opposition, because he had taken the several steps preparatory to it. *Osman*, the Turkish sultan, was deposed, as we have already observed, in the same century, and strangled, only for having hinted to the janissaries, that he intended to diminish their number. *Peter* was more successful, because his measures were better concerted. Out of that whole corps of the *strelitzes*, he left only a few feeble regiments, from whom there was no longer any danger to be apprehended : though they still preserved the spirit of mutiny, so as to revolt once more in *Astracan* in the year 1705 ; but this insurrection was soon quelled.

EQUAL to the severity which *Peter* exerted on this particular emergency of state, was his humanity upon the loss he sustained some time after, of his favourite *Le Fort*, who was snatched away by an untimely fate, at the age of forty-six (A). He did him the honour of a funeral, that vied with the magnificence shewn at the obsequies of mighty sovereigns. He assisted in person at the procession with his pike in his hand, behind the captains, and in the rank of lieutenant, which he had submitted to in that general's regiment, with a view that the nobility might learn from thence to pay a due respect to merit, and to military subordination.

AFTER the decease of *Le Fort*, it appeared plainly, that the alterations in the state were not owing to that general, but had been originally all contrived by the czar. It is true, he had been confirmed in his resolutions by conversing with *Le Fort* ; but he planned his schemes himself, and executed them entirely without that officer's aid or assistance.

As soon as he had suppressed the *strelitzes*, he established regular regiments on the German footing : he gave short habits and uniforms to the soldiers, instead of the cumbersome long coats, which they used to wear before ; and at the same time, they were taught a more regular exercise.

THE *Preobrazinski* guards were already formed : they took their name from that original company of fifty men, whom the young czar had trained in his retreat at *Preobrazinski*, at the time when his sister *Sophia* governed the state : the other regiment of guards was also established.

As he had passed through the lowest degrees in the army himself, he ordered that the sons of his bojars and knezes should serve in the capacity of common soldiers before they commenced officers. He sent some of the young nobility on

(A) He died on the 12th of March 1698.

board his fleet at *Woronetz* and towards *Asoph*, where he obliged them to serve their apprenticeship to the navy. None durst refuse to obey a master, who had deigned to set so extraordinary an example. Both the *English* and *Dutch* helped to equip this fleet for sea, to construct sluices, to establish docks for careening his ships, and to resume the grand work of joining the *Don* and the *Volga*, which had been dropped by *Brackel* the *German*. From that time he set about the several reformations in his council of state, in the revenue, in the church, and even in society itself.

*Reforms
the state of
his fi-
nances ;*

THE revenue had been hitherto administered nearly in the same manner as in *Turky*. Every bojar paid a stipulated sum for his lands, and raised it upon his dependants or bondsmen. But the czar appointed burghers and burgomasters for his receivers, who were not powerful enough to claim the privilege of paying into the public treasury only just what they pleased. This new administration of the revenue was what cost him the most trouble ; and he was obliged to try several methods, before he could bring it to bear *.

*The
church ;*

THE reformation of the church, which in all other countries is looked upon as a dangerous attempt, proved an easy task to him. The patriarchs, as well as the *strelitzes*, had sometimes combated the imperial authority ; *Nicon* with insolence ; *Joachim*, one of *Nicon's* successors, with subtlety and cunning. The bishops had arrogated to themselves the power of the sword, so far as to condemn people to death, and to other corporal punishments ; a privilege contrary to the spirit of religion, and to the subordination of government : but this authority, notwithstanding that it had been usurped several ages ago, was taken from them. The patriarch *Adrian* happening to die at the end of this century, *Peter* declared he should have no successor.

THIS dignity was entirely abolished ; and the great income of the patriarchal see was united to the public revenue, which stood in need of this addition. The czar did not let himself up for head of the *Russian* church, as the kings of *Great-Britain* have done in regard to the church of *England* ; yet he made himself absolute master of the clergy, because the synods no longer presumed to disobey a despotic sovereign, nor to dispute the orders of a prince who knew so much more than themselves.

WE need only to cast an eye on the preamble of the edict concerning his ecclesiastical regulations, published in 1724,

* PERRY's state of *Russia*, p. 191. and VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de Russie*, p. 173.

he convinced that he behaved as master and legislator; We should think ourselves guilty of ingratitude to the most High, if, after having reformed the military and civil order, we neglected the spiritual ^f, &c. For these reasons, following the example of the most antient kings, who are famed for piety, we have taken care to publish some wholesome regulations for the clergy." It is true, he convened a synod in order to see his laws carried into execution; the members of the synod were to begin their ministry by taking an oath; the form of which had been written and read by the czar himself. This was an oath of submission and obedience; couched in the following terms ^g: "I swear fidelity and allegiance as servant and subject to my natural and true sovereign, and to his august successors, whom he shall please to nominate; by virtue of the incontestable power for that purpose, of which he is possessed: I acknowledge him to be the supreme judge of this spiritual college; I swear by the all-seeing God, that I understand and mean this oath, in the full force and sense; which the words convey to those who read, or hear it." This oath is much stronger than that of the supremacy in England. The Russian monarch was not indeed one of the members of the synod; but he dictated their laws: he did not touch the center; but he directed their hands that held it.

WHILE he was waiting for the completion of this great work, he thought that as his dominions were but ill peopled, the celibacy of the monks was contrary to nature, and to the public good. The ancient usage of the church of Russia is, that the secular priests shall marry at least once; nay, they are obliged to do it: and formerly, when the priest lost his wife, ceased to be in the sacerdotal order. But a multitude of dissipated young men and women, who make a vow to be useless to the public, and to live at other people's expence, appeared in his eye a dangerous institution. For which reason he ordained, that none should be admitted to a monastic life, till they were fifty years old; that is, till they were of an age when this temptation scarce ever seizes them: and he further prohibited them from receiving any person, of what sex soever, invested with a public employment ^h.

THIS regulation has been repealed since his time, because the government has thought proper to shew greater conde-

^f CONSETT, Present state and regulations of the church of Russia, p. 1. and VOLTAIRE, Hist. de Russie, p. 174.

^g CONSETT, ubi supra, p. 6. VOLTAIRE, p. 174.

^h Autores sup. cit.

sension to the monasteries : yet the patriarchal see has never been restored ; but the great revenues of that high dignity are appropriated to the payment of the troops.

THESE alterations were at first productive of some complaints ; a certain priest declared in writing, that *Peter* was antichrist, because he would have no patriarch ; and as the czar encouraged the typographical art, it helped to spread a multitude of libels against him. But on the other hand, there started up a priest, who replied that it was impossible for the czar to be antichrist, because the number 666 was not to be found in his name, and he had not the sign of the beast. These murmurs were soon silenced. *Peter*, in reality, gave more to the church, than he took from her ; for by degrees he rendered the clergy more regular and more learned. He founded three colleges at *Moscow*, in which the students are instructed in different languages ; and where the youth designed for the church are obliged to study.

ONE of the most necessary reformati^ons, was the abolition, or at least the mitigation of the three lents ; an ancient superstition of the *Greek* church, no less pernicious to the persons employed in the public service, and especially to the soldiers, than the old one of not fighting on the sabbath day had been to the *Jews*. Accordingly the czar granted, at least to his troops and to his workmen, a dispensation from observing these lents ; in which, though the people were not permitted to eat, yet it was customary for them to get drunk. He even dispensed with their abstaining from flesh-meat on fish-days ; and the chaplains, both in the sea and land-service, were obliged to set the example, which they did without any reluctance.

The calendar;

THE calendar was an object of importance. The regulation of the year was anciently made in all countries by the heads of religion, not only on account of the festivals, but because in former times scarce any but priests understood astronomy. The *Russians* began their year the first of *September* : but *Peter* ordained that from thenceforward the year should commence, as in this part of *Europe*, on the first of *January*. This alteration took place in the year 1700, at the opening of the century, which he ordered to be celebrated by a jubilee, and by other grand solemnities. The vulgar admired how the czar could be able to change the course of the sun. Some obstinate people being persuaded that God had created the world in the month of *September*, continued to observe the old way of reckoning ; but the alteration took place in all the public offices, in the court of chancery, and soon after throughout the empire. *Peter* did not introduce the

Gregorian

Gregorian calendar, because it was rejected by the *English* mathematicians: yet sooner or later all countries will be obliged to receive it.

EVER since the fifth century, the period in which the *Russians* were first made acquainted with the use of letters, they wrote on rolls, either of bark or parchment, and afterwards of paper; and the czar was obliged to publish an edict, commanding them to conform thenceforward to our manner of writing.

THE reformation became general. Marriages before that time were performed after the custom of *Turky* and *Persia*; where they do not see the bride till the contract is signed, and they cannot fly from their word. This custom may do well enough among people where polygamy is established, and the women are confined: but it cannot be suitable to countries, where the men are obliged to be satisfied with one wife, and where divorces are seldom allowed.

THE czar strove to accustom his subjects to the manners and usages of the nations among whom he had travelled, and from whom he had received the several masters, who were then employed in instructing his people.

IT was fit the *Russians* should not be dressed in a different manner from those who were teaching them the arts and sciences; because the aversion to foreign nations is too natural to mankind, and too much encouraged by a difference of dress. The habit of ceremony, which at that time was somewhat like the *Polish*, the *Tartarian*, or the old *Hungarian* dress, was, as we have already observed, very noble; but the cloaths worn by the burghers and the lower sort of people, were like those jackets, plaited round the waist, which are still given to the poor in some of the *French* hospitals. In general, the robe was the habit worn by all nations, as it required less fashion and art. For the same reason it was customary for people to let their beards grow. The czar found no difficulty in introducing our mode of dress, and the custom of shaving among his courtiers: but the people were more stubborn; so that he was obliged to lay a tax on long coats, and beards. Patterns of cloaths were hung up at the gates of towns; and those who refused to pay, were obliged to have their garments and beards shortened. All this was done with great gaiety; and this circumstance alone prevented insurrections.

IT has ever been the attention of legislators to promote sociability: but for this end, it is not sufficient to live together in towns; there must be a polite intercourse, which sweetens all the bitterness of life. The czar introduced those assemblies,

assemblies, which the *Italians* call *Ridotti*. To these *assemblies* he invited ladies with their daughters, dressed according to the mode of the southern nations of *Europe*; nay, he published regulations for these little entertainments. Thus even the civilizing of his subjects was his own work; with the help of time.

To render these innovations more agreeable, he abolished the word *Golui, Slave*, which the *Russians* made use of whenever they had occasion to speak to the czar, and in presenting petitions: he ordered them to substitute in its stead the word *Rabb*, which signifies *Subject*. This alteration did not diminish their obedience; and yet was likely to conciliate their affection. Every month was productive of some change, or new institution. He carried his attention so far, as to order posts to be erected on the high-road from *Moscow* to *Woronetz*, as military columns from west to west, that is, at the distance of seven hundred paces; and he took care to have a kind of caravanseras, or public inns, constructed at every twentieth west.

*Institutes
the order
of St. An-
drew.*

WHILE he thus directed his attention to the general advantage of his people, as well as of the merchants, and travellers, he determined to render his court somewhat more brilliant: for though he was an enemy to magnificence in his own person, he thought it necessary in those about him. For this end he founded (A) the order of *St. Andrew*, in imitation of the several institutions of that kind, with which all the courts of *Europe* abound. *Golowin*, successor to *Le Fort* in the dignity of high admiral, was the first knight of this order. The honour of being admitted a member, was looked upon as a considerable reward. It is a badge they carry about them, that commands the veneration of the populace; it is a mark of honour that costs the sovereign nothing; and it flatters the vanity of his subjects, without adding to their power. These useful innovations were received with great applause by the most sensible part of the nation; and the grumblings of those who adhered to the ancient customs, were silenced by the acclamations of all men of sound judgment.

*1699.
Concludes
an advan-
tageous
truce with
the Turks.*

WHILE *Peter* was thus beginning a new creation in the interior part of his dominions, he concluded an advantageous truce with the *Turks*, which enabled him to extend his territories on the other side. *Mustapha* the Second, who had been defeated by prince *Eugene* at the battle of *Zenta*, in 1697,

(A) On the 10th of September 1698.]

having

having also been stripped of the *Morea*, by the *Venetians*, and finding himself unable to defend *Afoph*, was obliged to make peace with his victorious enemies : this peace was concluded at *Carlowitz* (A), between *Peterwaradin* and *Salankamen*, places grown famous by his defeats. *Temeswar* was made the boundary of the *German* possessions, and of the *Ottoman* dominions. *Caminiek* was surrendered up to the *Poles* ; the *Morea* and some towns in *Dalmatia*, which had been taken by the *Venetians*, remained in their hands for some time ; and *Peter the First* continued in possession of *Afoph*, and of a few forts constructed in its neighbourhood. The czar could not pretend to extend his dominions on the side of the *Turks*, as their whole force would be now united against him, whereas before it had been divided. His maritime schemes were too vast for the *Palus Mæotis*. The settlements on the *Caspian* sea would not admit of a fleet of men of war : he therefore turned his views towards the *Baltic*, without relinquishing the navigation of the *Dni* and the *Volga*.

BUT now an interesting scene was opening on the frontiers of *Sweden*. One of the principal causes of all the revolutions which happened from *Ingria* as far as *Dresden*, and *Sweden*. 1700. *Affairs of* which laid so many countries waste during the space of eighteen years, was the abuse of the supreme power, under *Charles XI.* king of *Sweden*, father of *Charles XII.* The fact cannot be too often repeated, for it nearly concerns all princes and nations ¹. The greatest part of *Livonia*, with all *Estonia*, had been ceded by *Poland* to *Charles XI.* king of *Sweden*, who succeeded *Charles X.* during the treaty of *Oliva* : it was ceded in the customary manner, reserving to the inhabitants the continuance of all their privileges. But these being little regarded by *Charles XI.* *John Renold Patkul*, a *Livonian* gentleman, repaired to *Stockholm*, in 1692, at the head of six deputies of the province, in order to lay the strongest, and, at the same time, the most respectful remonstrances of the people before the throne (B) : instead of an answer, the six deputies were

¹ VOLTAIRE, *hist. de Russie*, p. 185.

(A) On the 26th of January, 1699.

(B) *Norberg*, chaplain and confessor of *Charles XII.* says in his history, “ that he had the “ insolence to complain of oppression, and that he was con-

“ demned to lose both his honour and life.” This is talking like the priest of despotism. He should have reflected, that it is impossible to bereave a citizen of his honour, for doing his duty.

Patkul im- committed to prison, and *Patkul* was condemned to lost
prisoned at both his honour and life. But he lost neither ; for he made
Stock- his escape out of prison, and remained for some time in the
holm. country of *Vaud* in *Switzerland*. As soon as he heard that
Makes his *Augustus*, elector of *Saxony*, had promised, upon his acce-
escape. sion to the throne of *Poland*, to recover the provinces wrest-
 ed from that kingdom, he hastened away to *Dresden*, in or-
 der to represent the facility of recovering *Livonia*, and of
 dispossessing a young king, only in his eighteenth year, of the
 conquests of his ancestors.

Flies to
Augustus
king of Po-
land,

and forms
a league
between
him, the
king of
Denmark,
and the
czar, a-
gainst Swe-
den.

At the same time, the czar *Peter* was meditating a scheme
 to make himself master of *Ingria* and *Carelia*. These pro-
 vinces formerly belonged to the *Russians* ; but the *Swedes* had
 conquered them at the time of the false *Demetrius* ; and
 preserved them since by treaties. Another war and new trea-
 ties might restore them to *Russia*. *Patkul* went from *Dresden*
 to *Moscow*, and having excited the two monarchs to avenge
 his cause, he cemented a close union between them, and for-
 warded their preparations for invading the several territories
 situated to the east and south of *Finland*.

At this very time, *Frederic IV.* the new king of *Den-*
mark, entered into a league with the czar and *Augustus*, a-
 gainst the young king of *Sweden*, who seemed likely to be
 overpowered. *Patkul* had the pleasure of besieging the
Swedes in *Riga*, the capital of *Livonia* ; on which occasion
 he acted as major-general in the *Polish* service.

Peter lays
siege to
Narva.

THE czar marched an army of about sixty thousand men to-
 wards *Ingria*. True it is, that in this great army there were
 hardly more than twelve thousand disciplined troops, whom
 he had trained to war himself ; these were his two regiments
 of guards, and a few others : the remainder consisted of an
 ill-armed militia, with some *Cossacks* and *Circassian Tartars* ;
 but he had a hundred and forty-five pieces of cannon. He
 laid siege to *Narva* (A), a small town in *Ingria*, with a com-
 modious harbour ; and there was the greatest probability,
 that the place would be taken in a very short time.

Charles
XII.
marches to
the relief
of the
place.

ALL *Europe* knows how *Charles XII.* who at that time
 was not quite eighteen years of age, withstood his numerous
 enemies, and attacked them all successively ; how he made a
 descent upon *Denmark*, and finished the war with that crown
 in less than six weeks ; how he sent succours to *Riga*, and
 raised the siege of that town ; and how he marched over ice
 and snow in the month of *November*, against the *Russians*
 who had laid siege to *Narva*.

(A) On the 1st of October.

THE czar, confident of taking the town, was gone to *Nogorod* (A), in order to proceed from thence to an interview with the king of *Poland*. He was attended by his favourite *Menzikoff*, at that time lieutenant in the company of artillery belonging to the regiment of *Preobrazinski*, and afterwards raised to the dignity of prince and field-marshal; a man whose extraordinary fortune deserves a more particular description in another place.

Peter left the command of his army, with instructions for the siege, to the duke of *Croy*, whose family was originally from *Flanders*, and who had lately entered into the czar's service. Prince *Dolgorucki* was commissary of the army. The jealousy between these two chiefs, and the absence of the czar, were in part the cause of the unparalleled defeat at *Narva*. *Charles XII.* having landed his troops at *Pernau* in *Livonia*, in the month of *October*, marched northwards towards *Reval*, and defeated in that neighbourhood an advanced body of *Russians*. From thence he continued his march, and beat another. The fugitives flew back to their main army, and spread consternation in the camp. Yet they were now in the month of *November*; and the town of *Narva*, though unskilfully besieged, was upon the point of surrendering. The young king of *Sweden* had not with him quite nine thousand men; and could bring no more than ten pieces of cannon against the *Russian* entrenchments, which were lined with one hundred and forty five. According to all the relations of that time, and to all historians without exception, the *Russian* army amounted to eighty thousand fighting men. The memoirs with which *M. de Voltaire* has been furnished, say sixty^b, and others forty thousand. Be that as it may, certain it is, that *Charles* had only nine thousand; and that his is one of the several instances which evince, that the greatest victories have been frequently obtained by inferior armies, ever since the battle of *Arbela*.

Charles was not in the least afraid to attack so great a force with his small corps; but availing himself of a violent storm of snow and wind, which blew full in the front of the enemy, he attacked their entrenchments (B) with the aid of a few inferior pieces of cannon advantageously posted. The *Russians* had not time to recover themselves in the midst of that cloud of

* VOLTAIRE, Histoire de *Charles XII.*
Hist. de *Russie*, p. 190.

^b VOLTAIRE,

(A) He set out on the 18th of *November*.
17 November 1700.

(B) On the 30th

valour of *Charles XII.* He deferred his interview with *Augustus*, to apply a speedy remedy to the disordered state of his affairs. The troops that had been in different quarters rendezvoused at *Novogorod*, and marched from thence to *Pleskow*.

AFTER so signal a defeat, it was as much as the czar could do to stand his ground: I know very well, said he, that the *Swedes* will have the advantage of us a considerable time, but they will teach us at length to beat them.

1701.
Peter re-
pairs his
losses.

HAVING provided for the present emergency, and ordered recruits to be raised on every side, he repaired with all expedition to *Moscow*, to forward the casting of cannon. All his artillery had been taken before *Narva*; and as he wanted metal, he had recourse to the bells of the churches, and of the religious houses. This shewed him to be free from superstition, yet was no sign of profaneness or irreligion. Out of those bells were formed a hundred large cannon, with one hundred and forty-three field-pieces, from three to six pounders, besides mortars, and cohorns; and the whole was forwarded to *Pleskow*. In other countries, the sovereign commands, and his subjects execute his orders; but here the czar was obliged to see every thing done himself. While he was making these preparations, he entered into a negotiation with the king of *Denmark*, who engaged to assist him with three regiments of foot, and three of cavalry; an engagement which that monarch durst not observe.

His inter-
view and
agreement
with Au-
gustus
king of
Poland.

As soon as this treaty was signed, he returned with the greatest dispatch to the seat of war; and had an interview (A) with king *Augustus*, at *Birzen* on the frontiers of *Courland* and *Lithuania*. His business was to confirm that prince in his resolution of maintaining the war against *Charles XII.* and to prevail on the *Polish* diet to engage in this quarrel. It is well known, that the king of *Poland* is no more than the head of the republic. The czar had the advantage of being always obeyed; but the kings of *Poland*, and *England*, and at present the king of *Sweden*, are obliged to treat with their subjects. *Patkul*, and a few *Poles* in the interest of their king, were present at those conferences. *Peter* promised to assist them with subsidies, and with an army of twenty thousand men. *Livonia* was to be restored to *Poland*, upon a supposition that the diet would act in conjunction with their king to recover that province: but fear had a stronger influence, on the determinations of the diet, than the czar's proposals. The *Poles* were under an apprehension

(A) On the 27th of February 1701.

aving their liberties restrained by the *Saxons* and *Russians*; at the same time they had a greater dread of *Charles XII.* ce the majority determined not to serve their king, that not to fight. The court-party were exasperated against contrary faction; in short, the king's proposal of recovery a considerable province, that had been wrested from *Poles* was productive of a civil war throughout the king-

The czar therefore had but a weak ally in *Augustus*, the *Saxon* troops afforded him but very little assistance. terror did *Charles XII.* inspire on every side, that *Peter* obliged to depend entirely upon his own forces.

PETER travelling with the utmost expedition from *Moscow* to *Courland*, in order to confer with *Augustus*; the czar ned back with equal speed from *Courland* to *Moscow*, to ard the performance of his promise, in consequence of h he immediately ordered prince *Repnin* to march a body of four thousand men towards *Riga*, upon the s of the *Duna*, where the *Saxon* troops were en- shed.

PETER rapid success of the *Swedes*, increased the general *Charles* of their arms. *Charles* having passed the *Duna*, in *XII. passes* it of the *Saxons*, who were advantageously posted on the the *Duna*: site bank, obtained a complete victory: he followed *defeats the* blow by making himself master of all *Courland*; and *Saxons*: advancing with his victorious army into *Lithuania*, to and con- quers rate the *Polish* faction, who had declared against *Au-* *Courland.*

Peter still pursued his great designs. General *Patkul*, *Peter con-* had been the life and soul of the conferences at *Birzen*, *sinues his* had lately entered into his service, shewed his zeal in armaments iding him with *German* officers; and in disciplining his ps; in short, he was a second general *Le Fort*, and fi- ed what the other began. The czar had horses always y on the frontiers to bring the officers, and even the mon soldiers, whether *Germans*, *Livonians*, or *Poles*; : came to serve in his armies; and took particular care of y thing relative to their arms, cloaths, and subsistence.

In the confines of *Livonia* and *Esthonia*, and west of the rince of *Novogorod*, lies, as we observed before, the it lake of *Peipus*: from the south side of *Livonia*, it re- es the river *Velika*; and to the northward, it sends forth river *Naivova*, which washes the walls of the town of *va*, in whose neighbourhood the *Swedes* obtained their fa- s victory. This lake is upwards of thirty leagues in th; in some places twelve, and in others fifteen in dth. Here it was of the utmost importance for the *LOD. HIST. VOL. XXXV. E e czar*

*Builds a
fleet upon
the lake
Peipus.*

czar to maintain a fleet, in order to prevent the *Swedish* vessels from insulting the province of *Novogorod*; to be within a proper distance for making a descent upon their coasts; and especially to train up a number of seamen. During the year 1701, *Peter* caused a hundred and fifty half-galleys, each carrying about fifty men, to be built on this lake, and other vessels were fitted out for war upon the *Ladoga Sea*. He directed the building of these vessels himself, and set all his new sailors immediately to work. Those who had served in 1697 upon the *Palus Mæotis*, were now employed in the neighbourhood of the *Baltic*. Yet he frequently made excursions to *Moscow*, and to the other provinces, in order to establish the regulations already begun, or to introduce new improvements.

1702:
*Under-
takes the
junction of
the Baltic,
Caspian,
and Eux-
ine Seas.*

PRINCES who have employed their peaceful days in public foundations, are mentioned in history with honour; but that *Peter*, just after the unfortunate battle of *Narva*, should undertake the junction of the *Baltic*, *Caspian*, and *Euxine Seas*, is what crowns him with more real glory, than he could ever have derived from the most signal victory. It was in 1702, that he began to dig that deep canal, which was intended to unite the *Don* and the *Volga*. Other communications were to be carried on by the help of lakes, from the *Don* to the *Duna*, which empties itself into the *Baltic*, in the neighbourhood of *Riga*: but this latter project seemed to be still at a great distance, for *Peter* was far from having *Riga* in his possession.

*Establishes
several
manufac-
tures.*

Charles continued to ravage *Poland*, while *Peter* was introducing from thence and from *Saxony*, shepherds with their flocks of sheep, in order to have wool fit for the manufacturing of good cloth: he erected linnen and paper manufactories: by his order great numbers of blacksmiths, braziers, armourers, and founders, with other artificers, were invited from abroad: and workmen were employed to dig into the mines of *Siberia*. Thus at the same time he endeavoured to enrich, and to defend his dominions.

Charles, eager to prosecute his victories, left a sufficient number of forces, as he imagined, upon the frontiers of the czar's dominions, to defend the provinces subject to *Sweden*. He was now determined to dethrone king *Augustus*, and then to pursue the czar with his victorious arms as far as *Moscow*.

THIS year there happened some little skirmishes between the *Russians* and *Swedes*, in which the latter were not always victorious; and even when they had the advantage, the *Russians* were learning the art of war. Within a twelve-month after the battle of *Narva*, the czar's troops were so

improved in the military discipline, that they obtained a victory over one of the best generals belonging to the Twelfth.

was at *Pleskow*, from whence he sent out numerous regiments on all sides to attack the *Swedes*. The *Russians* were victorious under the command of a general of their nation. *Scheremetow*, by a judicious manœuvre, surprised several out-parties of *Schlippenbach*, the Swedish general, in the neighbourhood of *Dærpt*, on the frontiers of *Livonia*; and at length obtained a victory over the general. The *Russians* took four colours, for the first time, over the *Swedes*; which was then thought a considerable

loss. After, the Swedish and Russian fleets had several engagements on the lakes of *Peipus* and *Ladoga*; where they had the same advantage as by land, that of discipline and practice. Yet the *Russians* were sometimes successful on board their half-gallies; and in a general action upon the lake of *Peipus* (A), field-marshal *Scheremetow* made himself master of a Swedish frigate.

By means of this lake, the czar kept all *Livonia* and *Esthonia* in constant alarm; his gallies frequently transported overboard regiments to make a descent in those provinces: if they did not prove favourable, they were reembarked; if they did any advantage, they improved it. The *Swedes* were defeated in the neighbourhood of *Dærpt*, while their arms were prosperous every where else.

In these engagements, the *Russians* were superior in every other quarter, he did not give himself any uneasiness about the czar's success: but he should have considered that the numerous forces of his rival were improving every day in discipline, and might soon be a match for the veterans.

As the two nations were thus engaged by sea and land towards *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Esthonia*, the czar received intelligence (B), that a Swedish fleet was sailed to the north with a view to destroy *Archangel*: upon which he set fire to that city; and the public was surprised to hear that the relief upon the banks of the Frozen ocean, when every one expected him to be at *Moscow*. He put the town into a state of defence, prevented the *Swedes* from landing, drew up a line of a citadel called the *New Dwina*, laid the first

(A) In May, 1702. (B) In July, 1702.

stone, returned to *Moscow*, and from thence to the seat of war.

Conquests of the Russians in Ingria and Livonia. Charles was advancing into *Poland*, while the *Russians* were making conquests in *Ingria* and *Livonia*. Marshal *Scheremetow* marched against the *Swedish* forces commanded by *Schlippenbach*, and obtained a victory over that general near the little river *Embac*, taking sixteen colours, and twenty pieces of cannon from the enemy. *Norberg* says, this engagement happened on the first of *December* 1701; but the journal of *PETER THE GREAT* fixes it to the 19th of *July* 1702^b.

They take Marienburg, and in it the person who afterwards became the empress Catharine. The *Russian* general continued his march, and laying the whole country under contribution, made himself master of the little town of *Marienburg*, situated on the confines of *Livonia* and *Ingria*. There are several places of this name in the north of *Europe*; but this, though it no longer exists, is more celebrated in history than all the rest, on account of the empress *Catharine*.

THIS little town having surrendered at discretion, the *Swedes*, either through inadvertency or design, set fire to the magazines. The *Russians*, provoked at this behaviour, destroyed the town, and carried off all the inhabitants. Among the prisoners was a young woman, a native of *Livonia*, who had been educated by Mr. *Gluck*, the minister of the place: this is the very person who afterwards became the sovereign of those who had taken her captive, and who governed *Russia* by the name of the empress *Catharine*.

THERE had been instances, before this, of private persons raised to the throne: nothing was more common in *Russia*, and in all the *Asiatic* kingdoms, than marriages between sovereigns and their subjects: but that a poor stranger, who had been discovered amidst the ruins of a plundered town, should become the absolute sovereign of that very empire into which she was led captive, is an incident, which fortune and merit have never before produced in the annals of the world.

THE czar's arms were equally successful in *Ingria*; for the *Russian* half-gallies on the lake *Ladoga*, obliged the *Swedish* fleet to retire to *Kexholm*, situated at the other extremity of this great lake: from thence they might observe the siege of *Notteburg*, which general *Scheremetow* had undertaken by order of the czar. This was an enterprise of much greater importance than people imagined; as it might open a communication with the *Baltic*, the constant aim of *Peter the Great*.

^b VOLTAIRE, p. 206.

Notteburg was a very strong town, situated on an island in the lake *Ladoga*, which it entirely commands; so that whoever possesses this place, must of course be master of the river *Neva*, which disembogues itself not far from thence to the *Baltic*. The *Russians* battered the town, night and day, from the 18th of *September* to the 12th of *October*; and at length having made three breaches, gave the assault. The *Swedish* garrison were reduced to a hundred men, in a condition to bear arms: yet what is very extraordinary, they made a stand, and obtained an honourable capitulation upon the breach (A). Colonel *Schlippenbach*, the governor, would not surrender the town, but upon condition of being permitted to send for two *Swedish* officers from the nearest post, in order to examine the breach, and to inform the king his master, that eighty-three soldiers, all that remained of the garrison, besides a hundred and fifty-six sick and wounded, did not surrender to an entire army, till it was impossible for them to make a longer resistance, or to preserve the town. This instance alone shews, what sort of an enemy the czar had to contend with; and how necessary it was for him to use his utmost efforts in disciplining his troops. He distributed some gold medals among his officers, and gave rewards to all the common soldiers; except to a few, who were punished for running away from an assault: their comrades spit in their faces, and afterwards shot them to death, mixing ignominy with their punishment. The fortifications of *Notteburg* were repaired, and its name was changed into that of *Schlusselfburg*: *Schlusfel*, in the German, signifying a key, for this place is the key of *Ingria* and *Finland*. The first governor was *Menzikoff*, now grown a very good officer, and who merited this honour by behaving most gallantly during the siege. This example was an encouragement to merit, undistinguished by birth.

AFTER this campaign of 1702, *Peter* resolved that *Scheremetow*, and the officers who had signalized themselves under his command, should make a triumphant entry into *Moscow*. All the prisoners taken in this campaign marched in the train of the victors: before them were carried the *Swedish* colours and standards, with the flag taken on board the frigate in the lake *Peipus*. *Peter* assisted in the preparations for this triumphal pomp, as he had shared in the victories, which were celebrated with such magnificence. So splendid a procession was designed to inspire his troops with noble emulation; otherwise it would have been an idle

Peter and his victorious troops make a triumphant entry into Moscow.

(A) On the 16th of *October* 1702.

show. Charles disdained every thing of this kind, and held the *Russians*, with their triumphs, and all their efforts, in the utmost contempt, ever after the battle of *Narva*.

1703.

Where he
continues to
reform the
manners of
his people.

THE short stay which the czar made at *Moscow* in the beginning of the next winter, was employed in seeing his new regulations executed, and in improving the civil, as well as military government. Even his very diversions were calculated to promote the new manner of life, which he was now introducing among his subjects. With this view, he caused all the bojars and ladies to be invited to the marriage of one of his jesters; and gave his commands that every body should be dressed in the ancient fashion. Dinner was served up just in the same manner as had been practised in the sixteenth century. There had been formerly a superstitious custom of not lighting a fire on a wedding-day, even in the severest frost: this custom was strictly observed at the present entertainment. The *Russians* used to drink no wine, but only mead, and brandy; and now he would suffer no other liquor: in vain did the guests complain of this treatment; he answered them in a jocular manner, "Your ancestors did so; and surely ancient customs are always the best." This kind of raillery contributed greatly to the reformation of such as were apt to prefer the past to the present times; at least it discouraged their complaints. Some other nations stand in need of the like correction.

Establishes
a printing-
house;

public
schools;

an hospi-
tal;

and sever-
al manu-
factures.

Prepara-
tions a-
gainst the
Turks,

BUT a more useful establishment was that of a printing-house, with the *Russian* and *Latin* types, which had been brought from *Holland*. They began with printing some *Russian* translations of books of morality and polite literature; while *Ferguson* opened schools for teaching geometry, astronomy, and navigation.

ANOTHER foundation no less useful than necessary, was that of a large hospital: not one of those houses which encourage idleness, and perpetuate the misery of the people; but such as the czar himself had seen at *Amsterdam*, where both old men and children are employed at work, and every body is of some use to the public.

HE likewise established several manufactures; and after he had set his people to work at the different trades and professions which he had lately introduced into *Moscow*, he made an excursion to *Woronetz*. Here he gave orders for building two eighty-gun ships, with long empty chests, exactly closed, and fixed under the ribs, for the easier floating of the vessel.

* Taken by VOLTAIRE, (p. 212.) from the journal of *Peter the Great*.

over the bars and shoals, of which there are many in the neighbourhood of *Ajoph*; a contrivance very like that of the *Dutch* to get over the *Pampus*.

AFTER preparing every thing for an expedition against the *Turks*, he flew back to the frontiers of *Sweden*, and visited the ships which he had directed to be built in the dock-yards of *Olonitz*, between the lakes *Ladoga* and *Onega*. In this town he had erected some forges and founderies for the making of arms: so that the place was filled with the bustle of military preparations, while *Moscow* began to flourish in the arts of peace. *Olonitz* is become more famous since that time, by the discovery of a mineral spring. From thence he went to *Schlusselfburg*, in order to improve its fortifications.

WE have already taken notice, that he had thought proper to pass through all the military degrees: he had been a lieutenant of bombardiers under prince *Menzikoff*, before this favourite was made governor of *Schlusselfburg*; and now he took the rank of captain, and served under marshal *Scheremetow*.

NEAR the lake *Ladoga*, and not far from the river *Neva*, stood a very important fortress named *Nianz* or *Nyenschantz*. It was of the utmost importance for the czar to make himself master of this place, in order to secure his conquests, and to prosecute his other designs. He was obliged to lay siege to it by land, and at the same time to prevent its receiving any succours by water. *Peter* undertook to transport troops in small barks, and to watch the *Swedish* convoys; while *Scheremetow* had the care of the trenches. The citadel surrendered (A): and two *Swedish* vessels came too late to relieve it; for they were both taken by the czar. *Peter's* journal, communicated to M. de *Voltaire*^b, makes mention, that "as a reward for his service, the captain of bombardiers was created a knight of the order of St. *Andrew*, by admiral *Golowin*, first knight of the order."

AFTER the reduction of this fort, he resolved to build the city of *Petersburg*, at the mouth of the *Neva*, upon the gulf of *Finland*.

KING *Augustus's* affairs were in an unprosperous way: the successive victories of the *Swedes* in *Poland* had encouraged his enemies in their opposition; and even his friends prevailed on him to dismiss a body of twenty thousand *Russians*, which his army had been reinforced. The motive they alleged was, that this sacrifice would deprive the malecontents

^b Hist. de *Russie*, p. 215.

(A) On the 12th of May 1503.

Peter-
burg
founded,

of any pretext for joining the king of Sweden : but enemies are disarmed by force, and encouraged by indulgence. Those twenty thousand men, disciplined by *Paskul*, did very great service in *Livonia* and *Ingria*, while *Augustus* was losing his dominions. This reinforcement, and especially the possession of *Nyenschantz*, enabled the czar to found his new capital.

It was in the desert and marshy spot of ground before mentioned, which communicates but one way with the continent, that he laid the foundation of *Petersburg* (A), in the sixtieth degree of latitude, and the forty-fourth and a half of longitude. The ruins of some of the bastions at *Nyenschantz*, served for the first stones of this foundation. He began with erecting a small fort in one of the islands, which now stands in the midst of the city. The *Swedes* took no umbrage at this settlement, formed in a morass, and inaccessible to vessels of burden : but how great was their surprize, when they saw the fortifications advanced, a town raised, and the little island of *Cronslot*, situated over against it, changed, in 1704, into an impregnable fortress, under the cannon of which even the largest ships may safely ride at anchor !

An enterprise of this nature seemed to require peaceful times, yet was executed in the hurry and confusion of war ; workmen of every sort were called together from *Moscow*, from *Astracan*, from *Casan*, and the *Ukraine*, to assist in the building of this city. Neither the difficulty of the ground, which he was obliged to drain and to raise, nor the distance of materials, nor the unforeseen obstacles which constantly arose in every branch of labour, nor lastly, the mortality which carried off a prodigious number of workmen, could shake the fixed resolution of the founder of this metropolis. In the space of five months a new town rose out of the ground. It is true, it was no more than a cluster of huts (B), with two brick-houses, surrounded by ramparts ; but this was sufficient for a beginning ; time and perseverance accomplished the rest. *Petersburg* had not been founded above five months, when a *Dutch* vessel came to trade there (C) : the captain received some presents for his encouragement ; and the *Dutch* soon learnt the way to this harbour.

(A) *Petersburg* was founded on *Whitsunday*, the 27th of *May* 1703.

(B) The first building that was erected, was a low hut, made only with plank and joists, to shelter the czar from the weather, whilst he superin-

tended the works. In this he lived during that time ; and it is still preserved in memory of the great undertaking, inclosed with a wooden gallery raised upon a wall about four feet high.

(C) In *November* 1703.

WHILE

WHILE *Peter* was directing the foundation of this colony, he took care to render it inaccessible to the enemy, by making himself master of all the neighbouring posts. A Swedish colonel, named *Croniort*, having stationed his men on the river *Sestra*, from whence he threatened the growing town; *Peter* marched up to him with the two regiments of guards, defeated the colonel's detachment, and obliged him to repass the river (A). When he had thus provided for the security of the town, he repaired to *Olonitz* (B), to order a number of small vessels to be put upon the stocks, and returned to *Petersburg* on board a frigate, which had been built by his direction, together with six transports for present use, till the others could be finished.

EVEN at this very juncture, he lent a helping hand to the *Peter sends* king of *Poland* (E), by sending him a reinforcement of 12,000 *assistance* foot, and three hundred thousand rubels in money. We to the king have already taken notice, that his annual revenue did not of *Poland*. exceed five millions of rubels; a sum which the expence of his fleet, of his armies, and of his new establishments, was sufficient to exhaust. He had fortified *Novogorod*, *Pleskow*, *Kiow*, *Smolensko*, *Asoph*, and *Archangel*, much about the same time. He had been likewise employed in founding a capital. Yet he was still able to assist his ally with men and money. We read in *Cornelius le Brun*, a Dutch traveller, who was at that time in *Russia*, and with whom the czar *Peter* would converse very freely, as was his custom with all foreigners, that the czar himself assured him of his having three hundred thousand rubels in his coffers, after all the charges of the war were defrayed.

To secure his new colony of *Petersburg* against any insult, he founded the coast himself, and fixed the spot on which the fort of *Cronslot* was to be erected: after making a model of it in wood, he employed prince *Menzikoff* to carry it into execution. From thence he set out for *Moscow* (F), to pass the winter in that city, and gradually establish the several regulations and changes, which he had made in the laws, manners, and customs of *Russia*. He likewise put his finances into new order; after which he expedited the works undertaken on the river *Woronetz*, at *Asoph*, and in a harbour which he was building upon the *Palus Maotis*, under the fort of *Taganrok*. *Builds the citadel of Cronslot.*

(A) On the 9th of July
1703.
(B) In September.

(E) In November.
(F) On the 5th of November 1703.

THE

The Turks **THE** *Porte*, alarmed at these preparations, sent an ambassador to him (H) with complaints; to which he made answer, that he was as much a sovereign in his own dominions, as the grand signior was in *Turky*; and that it could be no violation of the peace, to render *Russia* respectable on the *Euxine* sea.

He defeats the Swedes on the lake Peipus. UPON his return to *Petersburg* (I), finding the new citadel of *Cronstot*, whose foundations had been laid in the sea, entirely finished; he provided it with numerous artillery. In order to establish himself in *Ingria*, and to wipe off the disgrace received before *Narva*, he esteemed it necessary to make himself master of that city. While he was making the preparations for the siege, a small fleet of *Swedish* brigantines appeared on the lake *Peipus*, to oppose his designs. The *Russian* half-gallies went out to meet them, a brisk engagement ensued, and the whole *Swedish* squadron, carrying ninety-eight pieces of cannon, was taken. After this victory, the czar besieged *Narva* by sea and land; and what is very extraordinary, he laid siege at the same time to *Dærpt* in *Esthonia*.

Lays siege to Narva and Dærpt.

WHO would imagine that there had been an university at *Dærpt*? Though founded by *Gustavus Adolphus*, it never acquired any fame, as a seat of learning. *Dærpt* is known only by these two sieges. *Peter* went incessantly from one to the other, to forward the attacks, and to direct the different approaches.

Dærpt taken by a stratagem.

Schlippenbach, the *Swedish* general, was at that time in the neighbourhood of *Dærpt*, with about two thousand five hundred men. The garrison expected every moment he would attempt to throw succours into the town. But *Peter* prevented this design by a stratagem, worthy of more frequent imitation. He ordered *Swedish* uniforms, colour, and standards, for two regiments of infantry, and one of cavalry. The pretended *Swedes* attacked the trenches, and the *Russians* feigned a retreat; the garrison were thereby deluded to make a sally (L); the mock combatants joined their forces, and fell upon the *Swedes*, one half of whom were killed, and the other half got back to the town. *Schlippenbach* came up soon after with an intent to relieve it, but was entirely defeated. At length *Dærpt* was obliged to capitulate (M), just as *Peter* was going to order a general assault.

(H) In January 1704.

(I) On the 30th of March.

(K) In April.

(L) On the 27th of Jan.

1704.

(M) On the 23d of July 1704

At

AT the same time the czar received a considerable check on the side of his new city of *Petersburg*; which did not however hinder him from going on with the buildings, nor from pressing the siege of *Narva*. We have already taken notice, that he had sent a supply of men and money to king *Augustus*, whom *Charles* was stripping of his crown; but both these aids proved ineffectual. The *Russians* having joined the *Lithuanians*, who adhered to *Augustus*, were entirely routed in *Courland* and by *Lewenhaupt*, the *Swedish* general (N). Had the victors directed their efforts towards *Livonia*, *Estonia*, and *Ingria*, they might have demolished the czar's new works, and baffled all his grand designs. *Peter* was every day undermining the outwall of *Sweden*, and *Charles* did not seem to regard him; being engaged in a pursuit, less advantageous to his people, but more glorious to his arms.

ON the 12th of *July* 1704, only a single colonel, at the *Stanislaus* head of a *Swedish* detachment, had obliged the *Polish* nobility to proceed to the nomination of a new king, on the field of election, called *Kolo*, in the neighbourhood of *Warsaw*. The cardinal-primate, and several bishops, submitted to the will and pleasure of a *Lutheran* prince, notwithstanding the menaces and excommunications of the supreme pontiff: in short, they were obliged to yield to a superior force. Every one knows the manner in which *Stanislaus Leczinsky* was elected; and how *Charles XII.* caused him to beacknowledged as sovereign, by a considerable part of the *Polish* nation. Yet *Peter* would not abandon his abdicated ally, but grew more liberal of his succours, as that prince became more unfortunate: and while his rival busied himself in making sovereigns, he employed his time in beating the *Swedish* generals in *Estonia*, and *Ingria*; and in forwarding the siege of *Narva*, where things were now ready for an assault. There were three famous bastions, at least their names were such, being called *victory*, *honour*, and *glory*. The czar carried them sword-in-hand. The besiegers forced their way into the town (O), where they fell immediately to plunder, and committed the most horrid barbarities; a practice but too common at that time, both with the *Swedes* and *Russians*.

Peter set an example on this occasion, capable of conciliating the affections of his new subjects. Seeing his men intent on slaughter and pillage, he run from place to place to stop their fury, and rescued several women out of their barbarous hands. After killing two of the brutes, who refused to obey his orders, he entered the town-house, whither

(N) On the 31st of *July*. (O) On the 20th of *August* 1704.

great numbers of the citizens were retired for shelter; and there laying his sword, reeking with blood, upon a table, "My sword, said he, is not stained with the blood of the inhabitants, but with that of my own soldiers, which I have shed to save your lives."

*Rise of
prince
Menzikoff,*

Peter being now master of all *Ingria*, conferred the government of that province on *Menzikoff*, giving him at the same time the title of prince, and the rank of major-general. The pride and prejudice of other countries might find fault with a sovereign for raising a pastry-cook's boy to the post of general and governor, and to princely dignity; but *Peter* had accustomed his subjects not to be surprised at seeing him prefer men of abilities, to persons who had nothing to recommend them but their high birth. *Menzikoff* happened, by a lucky accident (A), to emerge from his original obscurity, when he was very young; and to be placed in the czar's family, where he learnt several languages, and qualified himself both for the cabinet and for the field: having had the art of ingratiating himself with his master by his wit and humour, he strengthened his interest by more important services. He used all possible diligence in forwarding the works at *Petersburg*; where by this time the czar had erected a great number of houses, of stone and brick, with an arsenal and magazines, and had likewise finished the fortifications. The palaces were not raised till some time after.

(A) *Menzikoff*'s parents were vassals of the monastery of *Cosmopoli*: at the age of thirteen he went to *Moscow*, and was taken into the service of a pastry cook. His employment was singing ballads, and crying puffs and cakes about the streets. One day, as he was following this occupation, the czar, happening to hear him, and to be diverted with one of his songs, sent for him, and asked him if he would sell his pies and his basket? The boy answered, that his business was to sell his pies, but he must ask his master's leave to sell his basket: yet as every thing belonged to his prince, he needed only to lay his commands upon him. This an-

swer was so, agreeable to the czar, that he immediately ordered him to come to court, where he gave him at first a mean employment; but being every day more pleased with his wit, he thought fit to place him about his person, and to make him groom of his bed-chamber, from whence he gradually raised him to the highest preferments. He was tall and well-shaped. At his first coming into the czar's service, he enlisted in *M. LeFort*'s company, and acquired under that general's instruction, such a degree of knowledge and skill, as enabled him to command armies, and to become one of the bravest and most successful generals in *Russia*.

No

No sooner was *Peter* settled in *Narva*, than he made an offer of further succours to the king of *Poland*, who had been lately dethroned: he engaged to supply him with a fresh body of troops, besides the reinforcement of 12,000 men, which he had already sent to that prince. Accordingly he gave orders (A) for general *Repnin* to march from the frontiers of *Lithuania* with 6000 horse and 6000 foot. All this while he did not lose sight of his colony of *Petersburg*: the buildings went on; the navy was improving; and ships and frigates were upon the stocks at *Olonitz*: these he took care to see finished, and brought them himself into the harbour of *Petersburg* (B).

sends farther succours to Augustus.
Continues the building of Petersburg and his

It was generally his custom, upon his return to *Moscow*, to make a triumphant entry. In this manner did he revisit his capital the present year (C), from whence he made only one excursion, to assist at the launching of his first ship of eighty guns, upon the *Woronetz*; the dimensions of which he himself had drawn the preceding year.

As soon as the season approached for opening the campaign in *Poland*, he made haste to join the army, which he had assembled on the frontiers of *Lithuania*, in order to assist his ally, the *Swedes* had fitted out a fleet, which threatened the destruction of his new settlements of *Petersburg* and *Cronstot*. This squadron consisted of 22 ships of war, carrying from fifty-four to sixty-four guns each, besides six frigates, two bomb-ketches, and two fire-ships. The land-forces on board the transports, made a descent in the little island of *Kotin*. But a *Russian* colonel, named *Tolboguine*, having caused his regiment to lie flat on their bellies, while the *Swedes* were landing, ordered them to rise up of a sudden; and they made so brisk and regular a fire, as obliged the enemy to retreat (D) in the utmost confusion to their ships, abandoning their dead, with the loss of three hundred prisoners.

1705. Peter sets out for Courland.
The Swedes threaten Petersburg.

In the mean time, the *Swedish* fleet hovered still upon the coast, and threatened *Petersburg*. The land-forces made another descent, and met with the like repulse. A body of troops were advancing at the same time by land from *Wyburg*, under the command of *Meidel*, the *Swedish* general; and had taken their route by *Schlusselfburg*. This was the

(A) On the 19th of August 1704.

(B) On the 11th of October 1704.

(C) On the 30th of December.

(D) On the 17th of June 1705.

but are
repulsed.

most formidable attack that *Charles XII.* had yet made against the territories, either conquered, or created by *Peter the Great.* But the *Swedes* were repulsed on every side, and *Petersburg* was saved.

THE czar, on the other hand, was marching towards *Courland*, and wanted to penetrate as far as *Riga.* His plan was to make himself master of *Livonia*, while *Charles* completed the reduction of *Poland* under the obedience of the new king. *Peter* continued still at *Wilna* in *Lithuania*; and marshal *Scheremetow* was approaching towards *Mittaw*, the capital of *Courland*: but there he met with *Lewenbaupt*, a general celebrated for many victories. The two armies engaged at a place called *Gemauers-hoff*, or *Gemauers.*

They de-
feat the
Russians
at Ge-
mauers.

IN matters depending on experience and discipline, the *Swedes*, though inferior in number, had always the advantage: the *Russians* were entirely defeated, and lost all their artillery (E). However, *Peter* still retrieved his losses, and even converted them to his advantage.

Peter I.
takes Mit-
taw.

AFTER the battle of *Gemauers*, he marched a large army into *Courland*, sat down before *Mittaw*, made himself master of the town, and laid siege to the citadel, which he took by capitulation (F).

Remark-
able in-
stance of
the great
reforma-
tion of the
Russian
troops.

THE *Muscovites* at that time were famed for distinguish- ing their successes by rapine and plunder, a practice of too great antiquity in all nations: but *Peter* had so changed the custom at the taking of *Narva*, that the *Russian* soldiers now appointed to guard the vaults in the castle of *Mittaw*, the usual burying-place of the great dukes of *Courland*, found that the bodies of those princes had been dragged out of their tombs, and stripped of their ornaments, refused to undertake the charge, till they had sent for a *Swedish* colonel to examine the place; who gave them a certificate, attesting that the troops of his own nation had committed the outrage.

Rebellion
of the stre-
litzes at
Astracan
rebell.

A REPORT which was spread throughout the *Russian* empire, that *Peter* had been totally defeated at the battle of *Gemauers*, did him more mischief than the loss of the town. The remainder of the ancient *strelitzes*, in garrison at *Astracan*, emboldened by this intelligence to revolt, murdered the governor of the town. *Peter* was obliged to send marshal *Scheremetow* with a body of forces, to quell the insurrection and punish the ringleaders.

EVERY thing seemed now to conspire against the success of *Peter's* good fortune and valour; the forces near the

(E) May 28, 1705. (F) On the 24th of September 1705.

Denmark; the rebellion of the ancient *strelitzes*: the murmurings of a people sensible of the restraint, but not of the utility of the late reformation; the disaffection of the nobility for being subjected to military discipline; and lastly, the exhausted state of the revenue, were circumstances extremely discouraging: yet he was no way dispirited. He soon quelled the revolt: then providing for the security of *Ingria*, and making himself master of the citadel of *Mittaw*, in spite of the victorious *Lewenhaupt*, who had not a sufficient force to oppose him, he found himself at liberty to march an army through *Samojitia* and *Lithuania*.

PETER had now shared with *Charles XII.* the glory of *Peter* triumphing in *Poland*. He advanced as far as *Tikoczin*, where a second he had an interview with king *Augustus*, whom he endeavoured to comfort under his misfortunes, promising to avenge his cause. At the same time he made him a present of a few standards, which *Menzikoff* had taken from the troops of his rival. From thence they went to *Grodno*, the capital of *Lithuania*, and staid there till the 15th of *December*. At their parting, *Peter* presented him both men and money; and, according to custom, after having made a very difficult and laborious campaign, went to spend part of the winter at *Moscow*, to encourage the arts and sciences there, and give vigour to his new laws.

HE was no sooner returned to his capital, than he received advice, that *Charles XII.* had carried all before him, and was advancing towards *Grodno*, in order to attack the *Russian* forces. King *Augustus* had been obliged to fly from *Grodno*, and to retire precipitately towards *Saxony*, with four regiments of *Russian* dragoons; a step which both weakened, and discouraged the army of his protector. *Peter* found all the avenues to *Grodno* occupied by the *Swedes*, and his troops dispersed.

WHILE he was assembling his scattered forces with great difficulty in *Lithuania*, the celebrated general *Schulemburg*, in whom *Augustus* had placed his last hopes, and who afterwards acquired such glory in the defence of *Corfu* against the *Turks*, was in full march towards *Great Poland*, with about twelve thousand *Saxons*, and six thousand *Russians*, drawn from the body of troops, with which the czar had entrusted that unfortunate prince. *Schulemburg* expected, with some reason, that he should be able to save *Augustus* from ruin: he perceived that *Charles XII.* was employed on the side of *Lithuania*; and that there was only a body of ten thousand *Swedes* under *Renschild*, to interrupt his march. He therefore advanced with confidence towards the frontiers of *Silesia*.

sia, the usual passage from Saxony to Upper Poland. Upon his arrival in the neighbourhood of a little town, called *Frauenstadt*, on the frontiers of that kingdom, he met marshal *Renschild*, who was come to give him battle.

The
Swedes
obtain a
great vic-
tory over
the Sax-
ons.

A French regiment in the Saxon army, who had been taken prisoners at the famous battle of *Hochstet*, and obliged to serve under king *Augustus*, had the care of the artillery: being not only admirers of the heroism of *Charles XII.* but dissatisfied with their Saxon masters, they laid down their arms, as soon as they beheld the enemy (A), and desired to be admitted into the service of the king of Sweden, with whom they continued to the end of the war*. This was only a prelude to a complete victory: out of the whole Russian army, hardly three battalions were saved; every soldier that escaped was wounded; and as no quarter was granted, the remainder were all slain. *Norberg* the chaplain pretends, that the Swedish word at this battle was, *in the name of God*; and that of the Muscovites, *kill all*: but it was the Swedes that slaughtered all in the name of God. The czar himself assures us in one of his manifestos (B), that many of his soldiers who had been taken prisoners, as well Russians,

Their bor-
rid cruelty
after the
victory.

as Cossacks and Calmucks, were murdered in cold blood, three days after the battle (C). The irregular troops of both armies had accustomed the generals to these cruelties: greater were never committed in the most barbarous ages. *M. de Voltaire* says that he had the honour of hearing the following anecdote from king *Stanislaus* himself. That in one of the skirmishes, which frequently happened in Poland, a Russian officer, who had been his friend, came after the defeat of the corps under his command, to put himself under his protection; and that *Steinbock*, the Swedish general, shot him dead with a pistol, while he held him in his arms.

THE Russians had now lost four pitched battles with the Swedes, without reckoning the other victories of *Charles XII.* in Poland. The czar's forces at *Grodno* were in danger of a greater disgrace, and of being entirely encompassed by the

* VOLTAIRE, hist. de *Charles XII.* & hist. de *Russie*, p. 234.

(A) On the 6th of February, 1706.

(B) Published in the Ukraine in 1709.

(C) *La Motraye* says that this was done by the express command of *Charles XII.* who was

within 18 miles of *Frauenstadt* where this battle was fought, and who was a little piqued that *Renschild* should have obtained such a victory without his having any share in it.

emy; but he fortunately assembled the several parts of his army, and even strengthened them with new reinforcements. Being obliged to provide at the same time for these cities and for the preservation of his conquests in *Ingria*, he ordered his troops to march eastward, under the command of prince *Menzikoff*, and from thence southward as far as now.

WHILE his men were upon their march, he repaired to *blusselburg*, from thence to *Narva*, and to his colony of *Petersburg*, and put those places in the best posture of defence. From the *Baltic* he flew to the banks of the *Dnieper* (A), in order to march back into *Poland* by the way of *Kiow*; his constant aim being to prevent *Charles* from reaping any benefit by his victories. At this very time he had been meditating a new conquest, that of *Wyburg*, the capital of *Carelia*, on the gulph of *Finland*. Accordingly he laid siege to it (B), it met with a disappointment; for succours arrived at a seasonable juncture, so that he was obliged to desist from his enterprise. His rival, *Charles XII.* did not acquire a single province by gaining so many victories. At that time he was in pursuit of *Augustus* in *Saxony*: intent upon humbling him, and crushing him with his whole weight; but not at all solicitous about recovering *Ingria*, which had been wrested from him by a vanquished enemy.

THE terror of *Charles's* arms was spread through *Upper Poland*, *Silesia*, and *Saxony*. King *Augustus's* whole family, his mother, his wife, his son, and the principal nobility of the country, were retired into the heart of the empire. *Augustus* now sued for peace, chusing to surrender himself to the discretion of his conqueror, rather than into the arms of his elector. He was negotiating a treaty, which stripped him of the crown of *Poland*, and covered him at the same time with ignominy. This treaty he was obliged to conceal from the *Russian* generals, under whose protection he was at that time in *Poland*; while *Charles* was prescribing laws in *Leipsic*, and trampling upon his electorate. His plenipotentiaries had already signed the fatal convention (C), by which he not only resigned the crown of *Poland*, but promised never more to assume the title of king: at the same time, he acknowledged the regal dignity of *Stanislaus*, renounced the alliance of the czar, his benefactor; and to complete his humiliation, engaged to deliver up into the hand of *Charles XII.* by *Renold Patkul*, the czar's ambassador, and general in

(A) In *August* 1706. (B) In *October*.

(C) On the 14th of *September* 1706.

and basely
gives up
Patkul.

the *Russian* service, who had been fighting in his defence. Some time before this, he had ordered *Patkul* to be arrested upon false suspicions, contrary to the law of nations; and now he violated this law again, by surrendering him to his enemy: Much better would it have been for him to have died sword-in hand, than to sign such a treaty; a treaty which not only robbed him of his honour, and of his crown, but likewise endangered his liberty; because he was then at the mercy of prince *Menzikoff* in *Polsania*, and the few *Sarm* troops he had with him were paid by the *Russians*.

OPPOSITE to prince *Menzikoff*'s quarters, lay encamped a *Swedish* army, reinforced by the *Poles* in *Stanislaus*'s interest, and commanded by general *Meyerfeldt*. The prince not knowing that *Augustus* was in treaty with the enemies of *Russia*, proposed to attack them: and *Augustus* durst not refuse.

The battle was fought (A) in the neighbourhood of *Kalish*, in the palatinate belonging to *Stanislaus*. This was the first time that the *Russians* gained a pitched battle against the *Swedes*; and the whole honour was owing to prince *Menzikoff*: four thousand of the enemy were killed, and two thousand five hundred and ninety eight taken prisoners.

Unaccountable
behaviour
of Augustus.

It is difficult to comprehend how *Augustus* could be prevailed upon after this battle, to ratify a treaty, which deprived him of the whole benefit of so signal a victory. But *Charles* was triumphant in *Saxony*, where his very name intimidated his enemies: besides, *Augustus* had little expectation of being steadily supported by the *Russians*: in short, the *Polish* party in his enemy's interest were so strong, and *Augustus* himself was so ill advised, that he signed this fatal convention. Neither did he stop here: he wrote to *Finckstein*, his envoy, a letter more shameful than the treaty itself, in which he begged pardon for having obtained a victory, "protesting that the battle was fought against his will; that the *Russians*, and the *Poles*, his adherents, had obliged him to it; that with this design, he had made some movements to abandon *Menzikoff*; that *Meyerfeldt* might have beaten him, had he made a proper use of the opportunity; that he would deliver back all the *Swedish* prisoners, or break with the *Russians*; in short, that he would give the king of *Sweden* all proper satisfaction," for having dared to betray his troops.

THIS whole affair is most extraordinary and unaccountable, and yet exactly true^b. When we reflect, that, with all the

^b VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de Russie*, p. 240.

(A) On the 19th of November 1706.

weakness

Augustus was one of the bravest princes in Europe, who perceived, that the loss or preservation, the rise or fall of empires, are intirely owing to firmness of mind. Other circumstances completed the misfortunes of *Poland* elector of *Saxony*, and plainly shewed the rich *Charles* made of his success. The first was his *Augustus* to write a letter of congratulation to the *Stanislaus*: the second was terrible; he even commanded to deliver up *Patkul*, the czar's ambassador, into his hands. All Europe knows, that this minister was broken alive upon the wheel at *Casimir*, in the *Patkul*. September 1707. *Norberg* acknowledges, that the order for his execution were written with *Charles's* own

hand. He is not a civilian in Europe, nay there is not a slave, who does not shudder with horror at this barbarous act of injustice. The first crime of this unfortunate man, was his having made a humble representation of the rights and privileges of his country, at the head of six *Livonian* gentlemen, who had been deputed by the whole state: he was condemned for fulfilling the first of duties, that of serving his country according to her laws. So unjust a sentence fully proved him to be a man of right, which all mankind derive from nature. The right of chusing his country. As he was the ambassador of the greatest monarchs in the whole world, his person was sacred. The laws of nature and nature violated upon this occasion by the law of the land. The splendour of high achievements used to cover such cruelties; but now they are an indelible military glory.

Augustus was now triumphing at *Altranstadt*, in the neighbourhood of *Leipsic*. The protestant princes of the empire came from all sides to yield homage to him, and to sue for peace. Ambassadors from most of the powers in Europe sought his alliance. The emperor *Joseph* paid an implicit obedience to his will. *Peter* then perceiving, that he had renounced his protection, and the *Polish* throne, a part of the nation had acknowledged *Stanislaus*, listened to the proposal made to him by *Yolkova*, of a third king.

Several palatines were proposed at the diet of *Lublin*: *Poland* the rest prince *Ragotski* appeared upon the list, the who had been long detained in prison in his youthful point of view. The emperor *Leopold*, and who was his competitor for the *Hungarian* throne, after he had recovered his liberty. three kings negotiation was pushed very far, and *Poland* was upon at a time.

the point of having three kings at a time. Prince *Ragotski*, not being able to succeed, *Peter* was inclined to confer the crown on *Siniaufski*, grand general of the republic, a man of power and interest, and head of a third party, that would neither acknowledge the dethroned king, nor the person elected by the contrary faction.

In the midst of these disturbances, there was, according to custom, some talk of peace. *Besseval*, the French envoy to the court of Saxony, endeavoured to bring about a reconciliation between the czar and the king of Sweden. The French government had a notion, that if *Charles* made peace with the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, he might possibly turn his arms against the emperor *Joseph*, with whom he was offended, and to whom he had prescribed very severe terms, during his stay in Saxony. But *Charles* made answer, that he would treat with the czar in the city of *Moscow*. Upon this occasion it was that *Peter* said; "My brother *Charles* wants to act the part of *Alexander*, but he shall not find me a *Darius*."

THE *Russians* were still in Poland, and even at *Warsaw*, while the person who had been raised to the Polish throne by *Charles XII.* was hardly acknowledged by that nation. In the mean time *Charles* was enriching his troops with the spoils of Saxony.

Charles
XII.
leaves
Saxony.

AT length he began his march (A) from his head quarters at *Altranstadt*, with an army of forty five thousand men; a force which it was very unlikely that his enemy should be able to resist, since he had been entirely defeated by only eight thousand *Swedes* at *Narva*.

Pays an
extraordi-
nary visit
to king Au-
gustus.

WHILE the *Swedish* troops were passing near the walls of *Dresden*, *Charles* paid an extraordinary visit to king *Augustus* (B); a visit, which according to *Norberg*, posterity will always admire; at least they will read the account of it with some surprise: for it was certainly running a great risk to trust himself in the hands of a prince, whom he had stripped of his kingdom. From thence he continued his march through *Silesia*, and at length re-entered Poland.

Marches
through
Poland.

THIS kingdom had been entirely ravaged by war, ruined by factions, and exposed to all sorts of calamities. *Charles* was advancing through *Masovia*, and chose the worst road he could take. The inhabitants fled into the morasses, being determined at least to make him purchase his passage. Six thousand peasants deputed one of their body to speak to him: this was an old man, of a very extraordinary size

(A) On the 22d of August 1707. (B) On the 27th of August.

zure, clad in white, and armed with two carbines. dressed his discourse to *Charles*; but as the *Swedes* did not fully understand what he said, they made no scruple to act in the presence of their king, and in the middle of an angry dispute. The peasants in a rage immediately withdrew, and took to their arms. The *Swedes* seized on as many as they could find, and obliged them to hang one another; the king is obliged to tie the cord about his neck himself, and to be his own executioner. All their habitations were reduced to ashes. This fact is mentioned by *Norberg*, who was an eyewitness; so that we can neither reject his testimony, nor being struck with horror at such cruelty.

THE king arrived within a few leagues of *Grodno* in *Lithuania*, and received intelligence, that the czar had fixed his headquarters in that city; upon which he hurried away (A) with eight hundred of his guards, and marched directly to the city. A German officer, named *Mulfels*, who had the command of a body of troops at one of the gates of the city, making no doubt, upon seeing the king of *Sweden*, that he was followed by his army, immediately left the gate open. The alarm was instantly spread all over *Grodno*; every one imagined the enemy's whole force had entered the city; the few *Russians* who attempted to make a stand, were cut to pieces by the *Swedish* guards; and all the officers of the czar, that a victorious army had made themselves masters of the place. *Peter* retreated beyond the ramparts; *Charles* planted a guard of thirty men at the very gate, which the czar had just retired to.

AMONGST this confusion, the *Jesuits* college having been allowed for the accommodation of the king of *Sweden*, as the most honest structure in *Grodno*, some of those fathers related to the czar by night, and acquainted him with the whole truth. *Peter*, with about 2000 men, immediately marched to *Grodno*, and forced the *Swedish* guard; an engagement ensued in the streets, and in the public squares; at length the king's army arrived. The czar was then obliged to give way, and to leave the city of *Grodno* in the hands of the victor, who spread a general panic throughout the whole kingdom of *Poland*.

CHARLES having augmented his forces in *Livonia* and *Prussia*, *Peter* had great reason to be afraid, not only for his conquests on the side of *Lithuania*, but for his ancient terri-

* VOLTAIRE, Hist. de Russie, p. 246.

(A) On the 6th of February 1708.

tories, and even for *Moscow* itself. It was therefore necessary for him, by all means, to provide for the security of those provinces, which lay at so great a distance from each other. *Charles* could make no very rapid progress by marching eastward through *Lithuania*, in the depth of winter, and in a swampy country, afflicted with a mortality, which had been spread by poverty and famine from *Warsaw* as far as *Minski*. *Peter* quartered his troops at the fords of the rivers; strengthened the principal posts, where the enemy were to pass; and did every thing in his power to stop their progress: after which he returned in all haste to *Petersburg* (A), in order to put things in a good posture of defence on that side of his dominions.

THOUGH *Charles* was triumphant in *Poland*, yet he made no acquisition of territory: but *Peter*, by employing his new fleet, by landing his troops in *Finland*, by taking and dismantling the town of *Borgau* (B), where he seized on a very considerable booty, was procuring real advantages to himself, and greatly distressing his enemy.

Charles
XII. advances towards
Russia.

His intrepid passage
of the river Warbitz.

THE king of *Sweden*, after having been detained by continual rains in *Lithuania*, at length reached the little river *Berezine*, within a few leagues of the victor; he threw a bridge over the river in sight of the enemy, defeated the detachment that guarded this passage, and arrived at *Hollowzin* upon the *Warbitz* (C). Here the czar had posted a considerable body of men, to stop the impetuosity of the *Swedes*. The little river *Warbitz* is no more than a brook in very dry weather; but then it was a deep rapid stream, swelled with incessant rains. Farther on was a morass, behind which the *Russians* had thrown up an entrenchment for above a quarter of a league, defended by a large ditch, and with a parapet lined with artillery. Nine regiments of horse, and eleven of foot, were advantageously posted in these lines; and the passage of the river was thought to be impracticable.

THE *Swedes*, according to the custom of war, got their pontons ready, and erected batteries to favour their passage: but *Charles* did not wait for the pontons; his military ardor would never suffer the least delay. *M. de Voltaire* says^d, that marshal *Schwerin*, who had long served under that

^d Hist. de Russie, p. 249.

(A) On the 8th of April 1708. (B) On the 21st of May. (C) In the Russian language *Bibitsch*.

prince, assured him several times, that one day the king observing his generals very busy about the order of battle, as they were just upon the point of engaging the enemy, reprimanded them in the following words; "When will you have done with these trifles?" and saying this, he advanced at the head of his guards: such was his behaviour also on this memorable day.

He threw himself into the river, followed by his regiment of guards. So numerous a body of men broke the force of the current; but the soldiers were up to their shoulders in water, and could not make use of their firelocks. Had the artillery of the parapet been well served, and the infantry but levelled their pieces in a proper manner, not a single Swede would have escaped.

The king, after wading through the river (A), passed the morass on foot. As soon as the Swedish army had surmounted these difficulties, within sight of the Russians, they drew up in order of battle, and attacked the entrenchments seven times. The Russians did not give way till the seventh attack; and then they lost but twelve field-pieces, and twenty-four cohorts, even by the testimony of the Swedish historians. *Where he defeats the Russians.*

It was therefore evident, that the czar had at last succeeded in disciplining his troops; and while Charles reaped so much glory from the victory of *Hollowzin*, he might easily have seen, what dangers he must encounter, in adventuring upon an expedition to countries so remote, where there was no possibility of marching but in small bodies, through woods and morasses; and where he should be obliged to fight his way every step: but the Swedes, being habituated to conquest, had no apprehension of danger or fatigue.

Charles at length reached the banks of the *Dnieper*, in the neighbourhood of a small town called *Mobilo* (B). There he was to learn, whether he should march eastward towards *Moscow*, or southward towards the *Ukraine*. His troops, his friends, his enemies, expected he would direct his course towards the capital of *Russia*. Which way soever he determined, *Peter* was following him from *Smolenskow* with a powerful army. Little was it expected, that he would chuse the road towards the *Ukraine*. So strange a resolution was Treachery occasioned by *Mazeppa*, hett-man of the *Cossacks*, a man seventy years of age, who, having no children, should natu-zeppa.

(A) On the 25th of July it, though they write it *Mogilow*. 1708.

(B) So the Russians pronounce

rally have chosen to end his days in quiet; and ought, from a sense of gratitude, to have been attached to the czar, to whom he owed his present greatness: but whether he had really some reason to complain of that prince; or whether he was dazzled with the lustre of *Charles's* exploits; or whether, in fine, he was aiming at independence, he betrayed his benefactor, and entered into a private confederacy with the king of *Sweden*; flattering himself that he should prevail on the whole nation of *Cossacks* to revolt.

Charles was confident of subduing the *Russian* empire, as soon as his victorious bands could be joined by so warlike a nation. From *Mazeppa* he was to receive provisions and ammunition, with whatever artillery he should have occasion for: besides these powerful succours, he was to be joined by an army of seventeen or eighteen thousand men, who were upon their march from *Livonia*, under the command of general *Lewenhaupt*, with a prodigious quantity of provisions and military stores. He did not inquire whether the czar was ready to fall upon that army, and to deprive him of so considerable a reinforcement: neither did he inform himself, whether *Mazeppa* was in a condition to fulfil his engagements, or was a person of such weight and interest, as to be able to change the principles of a whole nation, who seldom take any council but their own; or whether, in short, he should find resources for his army, in case he met with any disaster: as to these matters, he seemed quite easy; and if *Mazeppa* should happen to deceive him, or be unable to perform his promise, he depended on the bravery of his troops, and on his own good fortune. The *Swedish* army therefore advanced beyond the *Dnieper*, towards the *Dezna*, and between these two rivers he expected *Mazeppa*. The roads were excessive bad, and the flying parties of the *Russians* rendered his march extremely dangerous.

Charles XII. crosses the Dnieper, Skirmish between his troops and the Russians.

Menzikoff, at the head of some regiments of horse and dragoons, attacked the king's vanguard (A), threw them into confusion, and killed a number of men; though with the loss of many more of his own. *Charles* rode up to the field of battle, and repulsed the *Russians*; yet not without great difficulty, and being long exposed to the danger of losing his life, by fighting with a party of the enemy's dragoons, by whom he was surrounded. All this while there was no news of *Mazeppa*; and provisions began to grow scarce. The *Swedish* soldiers seeing their king a partaker of all their perils and distresses, were not dispirited: but

(A) On the 11th of September 1708,

though

though they admired his courage, they could not help condemning his conduct.

THE order which the king had sent to *Lewenhaupt*, for marching with the utmost diligence, and joining him with the convoy, was delivered twelve days too late; a great space of time at so critical a conjuncture. At length *Lewenhaupt* began his march. *Peter* suffered him to pass the *Dnieper*; but as soon as the *Swedes* had got between this river and the lesser streams in that neighbourhood, he crossed the *Dnieper* after him, and attacked the *Swedish* general with his united force; the different corps of the *Russians* having followed at equal distances from one another. The battle was fought between the *Dnieper* and the *Soeza*.

PRINCE *Menzikoff* was upon his return with that same body of cavalry, which had distinguished itself in the engagement with *Charles XII.* he was followed by general *Baur*; and the czar himself commanded the flower of his army. The *Swedes* imagined they had been engaged with forty thousand *Russians*; and this was the general opinion for a long time, founded on the accounts received from them. But *M. de Voltaire* says ^b, that according to the memoirs communicated to him by the court of *Petersburg*, *Peter* had no more than twenty thousand men, on that memorable occasion; a number not greatly superior to that of the enemy. But his vigour, his patience, his perseverance, together with the firmness of his troops, animated by his presence, determined the fate, not of that only, but of three different days, during which the action was successively renewed.

At first the *Russians* attacked the rear of the *Swedish* army (A) near the village of *Lefnau*, from which this battle takes its name. The first shock was bloody, without being decisive; *Lewenhaupt* retired to a wood, and preserved his baggage: the next day, the czar being determined to drive the *Swedes* out of the wood, the action was renewed with more bloodshed, and with greater success. *Peter*, perceiving his troops in disorder, cried out to the rear-guard to fire upon the fugitives, and upon himself likewise, if he should be so cowardly as to turn his back. The *Swedes* were repulsed, but not thrown into confusion. At length, having received a reinforcement of four thousand dragoons, he fell upon the enemy a third time; when they retired towards a small town

^b Hist. de Russie, p. 256.

(A) On the 7th of October 1703.

called

called *Prospock*, where they were attacked once more : from thence they marched towards the *Dezna*, and were closely pursued. Yet they were never entirely broke ; but lost upwards of eight thousand men, seventeen pieces of cannon, and forty-four colours. The czar took fifty-six officers prisoners, with very near nine hundred common soldiers : and the great convoy of provisions, which had been designed for *Charles's* army, fell into the hands of the conqueror.

THIS was the first time that the czar in person gained a pitched battle against an enemy, who had distinguished themselves by so many victories over his troops : he returned thanks to God for this success, upon hearing that general *Apraxin* had likewise obtained an advantage in *Ingria*, within a few miles of *Narva* ; an advantage indeed less considerable than the victory of *Lesnau* ; but this concurrence of fortunate circumstances enlivened his hopes, and infused fresh vigour into his army. *Charles* received this disagreeable intelligence, just as he was going to pass the *Dezna* in the *Ukraine*.

Mazeppa
joins
Charles
XII.

AT length *Mazeppa* joined the king of *Sweden*. He had engaged to bring with him 20,000 men, and a prodigious supply of provisions ; but appeared with no more than two regiments, and rather as a fugitive who applied for succours, than as a prince that came to assist an ally. He had indeed begun his march with very near 16,000 men, to whom he at first declared, that he intended to lead them against the king of *Sweden* ; that they would have the glory of stopping that hero upon his march ; and that the czar would be under an eternal obligation to them for so signal a piece of service. But upon his arrival within a few leagues of the *Dezna*, he made them acquainted with his real design. They received the proposal with indignation, and refused to betray a monarch, of whom they had no reason to complain, for the sake of a *Swede*, who was marching with an armed force into their country, and who, after his retreat from thence, would be no longer able to afford them protection ; so that they must be abandoned to the discretion of the angry *Russians*, and of the *Poles*, once their lords, and always their enemies. The result was, that they returned to their respective homes, and acquainted the czar with the defection of their chief. There remained with *Mazeppa* no more than two regiments, whose officers were in his own pay. However, he was still master of some fortresses in the *Ukraine*, and particularly of *Bathurin*, the place of his residence, and considered as the capital of the *Cossacks*, situated near the forests on the *Dezna*, but at a great distance from the field of battle, where *Peter* had defeated *Lewenhaupt*. A body of *Russian* troops was al-

ways

ways quartered in those parts. The czar detached *Menzikoff* from the army, and he arrived there by a very long circuit. *Charles* could not guard all the passes; neither indeed was he acquainted with them all: he had neglected to make himself master of the important post of *Starodub*, which leads directly to *Bathurin*, by a forest near thirty miles long, through which the *Dezna* directs its course. The enemy had always the advantage of him, by their knowledge of the country. *Menzikoff* found no difficulty to push forward with prince *Galitzin*; upon their appearing before *Bathurin*, the town was taken (A) almost without resistance, plundered, and reduced to ashes. The Russians made themselves masters of a magazine designed for the king of Sweden, and of *Mazeppa's* treasures. The Cossacks chose another hettman, named *Skoropasky*, who was approved by the czar: and to make the people more sensible of the enormity of the treason, by some external form, the archbishop of *Kiow*, and two more prelates, were ordered to excommunicate *Mazeppa* and hang in public: after which he was hanged in effigy; and some of his accomplices were broke upon the wheel.

The Russians take Bathurin; and hang Mazeppa in effigy.

Charles was still at the head of about twenty-five, or twenty-seven thousand Swedes; who were joined by the shattered remains of *Lewenhaupt's* corps, together with two or three thousand men, under the command of *Mazeppa*. As he had always flattered himself with the hopes of making the whole province of *Ukraine* declare in his favour, he crossed the *Dezna*, at some distance from *Bathurin*, and in the neighbourhood of the *Dnieper*; although he was encompassed by the Russian troops, part of whom pursued his rear-guard, while the rest were drawn up on the opposite side of the river, in order to obstruct his passage. He directed his march through a country that was quite desolate, the villages having been all destroyed and burnt. The cold was so extremely intense in the month of *December*, that upon a particular march, near two thousand men dropped down dead in his presence. The czar's troops suffered less, because they had greater resources; but the Swedes, being almost naked, were more exposed to the inclemency of the weather. In this deplorable situation, count *Piper*, the Swedish chancellor, who always gave his master the most prudent advice, entreated him to halt, and to pass at least the severest part of the winter, in a small town of the *Ukraine*, called *Romna*, where he might entrench himself, and get a supply of provisions by means of *Mazeppa*: but *Charles* made answer, that it was

Distressed situation of Charles XII. in the Ukraine.

(A) On the 17th of November 1708.

beneath

beneath his dignity to shut himself up in a town. *Piper* then begged him to repass the *Dezna* and the *Dnieper*; to march back into *Poland*; to put his troops into quarters of refreshment, of which they stood so greatly in need; to get a reinforcement of *Polish* light horse, which was absolutely necessary to support the king he himself had raised to the throne, and to check *Augustus's* party, who were beginning to raise their heads. The king replied, that this would be the same thing as flying before the czar; that the season would grow milder: that he must subdue the *Ukraine*, and march on to *Moscow*^b.

1709.
Where he
marches
forward
in a desert
country.

THE *Russian* and *Swedish* armies were detained some weeks in a state of inaction, by the intenseness of the cold in the month of *January* 1709: but as soon as the troops were able to wield their arms, *Charles* attacked the several little posts, with which the enemy intended to obstruct his march. He was obliged to send detachments on every side in search of provisions; that is, to rob the poor peasants, for above fifty miles round, of their necessary subsistence. *Peter*, with great composure, observed his motions, while the *Swedish* army was mouldering away.

It is impossible for the reader to trace the *Swedes* in their progress through this desolate country. Many of the rivers, over which they passed, are not to be found in maps: neither is it to be supposed, that geographers are as well acquainted with that part of the world, as with *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*. Of all the liberal arts, geography stands the most in need of improvement. For the ambition of princes has hitherto been more diligent in destroying than in surveying the face of the globe. Let us therefore be contented with knowing, that *Charles* at length crossed the *Ukraine* in the month of *February*, after burning all the villages upon the road, except some few that had been set on fire already by the *Russians*. Advancing south-east, he reached those sandy deserts, bordered by mountains, which separate the *Nogay-Tartars* from the *Don-Cossacks*: eastward of which are the altars of *Alexander* (B). *Charles* was therefore on the other side of the *Ukraine*, in the road which the *Tartars* take to *Russia*: but when he had penetrated so far, he was obliged to turn back for want of provisions. The inhabitants retiring with their cattle into caverns, would sometimes struggle hard with the soldiers, who wanted to deprive them

^b NORBERG, tom i. p. 263, & VOLTAIRE, Hist. de Russie, p. 262.

of their sustenance: in revenge, as many of those poor peasants as could be found, were put to death; which, according to the *Swedish* phrase, was the right of war. The reader will judge of the *Swedes* on this occasion, by the following letter of *Charles's* own hand-writing to one of his colonels: "Colonel, I am glad you have taken the peasants, who carried off a *Swedish* soldier: as soon as they are convicted of the crime, they must be punished with death, pursuant to the exigency of the case." *Charles's* chaplain, *Norberg*, gives us this^e, as a proof of his master's strict regard to justice. Such are the sentiments of humanity shewn by a king's confessor! but if the peasants of the *Ukraine* had been able to hang the regimented peasants of *East-Gotland*, who imagined they had a right to march into so distant a country, in order to plunder those poor people of the few provisions, that were intended to keep their wives and children from starving, would not these *Ukrainians* have had equal reason to extol their justice^f.

Mazeppa was a long while negotiating with the *Zaporavians*, or *Zaporog-Cossacks*, who are settled on both the banks of the *Dnieper*, and part of whom inhabit the islands situated in that river. These are the people, who, as we observed before (A), have neither wives nor families, and subsist entirely by plunder. During the winter they collect a store of provisions, which they sell in the spring to the little town of *Pultowa*; the rest are scattered along the villages to the right and left of this river. The collective body of the nation choose a particular hettman, who is subordinate to the officer of that name in the *Ukraine*. The person then at the head of the *Zaporavians*, had an interview with *Mazeppa*, when a horse's tail and a club were carried as ensigns of honour, before each of those barbarians.

Mazeppa treats with the *Zaporog-Cossacks*, gages them in the service of *Charles*.
XII.

IN order to give some idea of this hettman, and of his subjects the *Zaporavians*, it may not be beneath the dignity of history to mention in what manner the treaty was concluded. *Mazeppa* gave a grand entertainment, in a service of plate, to the *Zaporavian* hettman and his principal officers. As soon as those chiefs were intoxicated with brandy, they swore upon the *Evangelists*, that they would furnish *Charles* with men and provisions. After which they carried off the plate, and all the furniture used at table. But the steward pursued them close, and endeavoured to make it appear, that this behaviour was inconsistent with the doctrines of the gos-

^e Tom ii. p. 279. ^f VOLTAIRE, p. 264.

(A) Page 18, 19, 20.

pel, by which they had sworn. The domestics wanting to recover the plate, the *Zaporavians* assembled in a body, and went to *Mazeppa*, complaining of the unparalleled affront done to a set of brave fellows; at the same time desiring, that the steward should be delivered up to them, in order to be dealt with according to justice. Their demand being complied with, the *Zaporavians*, in pursuance of their laws, fell upon the poor man; and after they had kicked him about like a foot-ball, plunged a knife into his heart.

SUCH were the new allies, whom *Charles XII.* was obliged to receive. Part of them were formed into a regiment of about two thousand men: the remainder marched in separate bodies against the czar's *Cossacks* and *Calmucks*, who were dispersed in those quarters.

THE little town of *Pultawa*, with which these *Zaporavians* carry on a trade, abounded with provisions, and might have served *Charles* as a place of arms. It is situated on the river *Worskla*, near a chain of mountains, which command it on the north; the east-side is a vast desert; but that to the westward is more fruitful and populous. The *Worskla* empties itself into the *Dnieper* about fifteen leagues lower down. From *Pultawa*, there is a passage northward thro' the defiles, which communicate with the road to *Moscow*; a passage commonly used by the *Tartars*. It is of very difficult access; and the czar's precaution had rendered it almost impervious: yet nothing appeared impossible to *Charles*; and he depended upon marching to *Moscow*, after he had made himself master of *Pultawa*. With this view he laid siege to that town in the beginning of *May*.

*Charles
lays siege
to Pulta-
wa.*

*Peter's
prepara-
tions to
meet him.*

THERE it was that *Peter* expected him. He had disposed his different detachments, so as to be all ready to join, and to march in a body against the besiegers: he had visited the countries which surround the *Ukraine*, namely, the duchy of *Severia*, watered by the *Dezna*, a river of some depth, even in this neighbourhood, and already celebrated by his late victory; the country of *Bolcho*, in which the *Occa* has its source; the deserts and mountains leading to the *Palus Maotus*; and lastly, he had been in the neighbourhood of *Asoph*, where he caused the harbour to be cleansed, new vessels to be built, and the citadel of *Taganroc* to be repaired: in short, he had employed the whole time since the battle of *Derna*, in preparing for the defence of his dominions.

As soon as he heard that the *Swedes* had laid siege to this town, he assembled all his troops. His horse, dragoons, infantry, *Cossacks*, and *Calmucks*, advanced from their several quarters: his army was well-provided with artillery and ammunition,

munition, as well as with provisions and medicines ; so that in this respect he had greatly the advantage of his rival.

On the 15th of *June 1709*, he appeared before *Pultawa*, with an army of about sixty thousand men. The river *Worskla* was between him and *Charles*. The besiegers were to the north-west, the *Russians* to the south-east.

PETER ascended (A) the river above the town, fixed his bridges, marched over with his whole force, drew a long line, and intrenched himself in a single night, within view of the enemy. *Charles* might then easily have judged, whether the person whom he held in such contempt, and depended upon dethroning at *Moscow*, understood the art of war. This disposition being made, *Peter* posted his horse betwixt two woods, and covered them with several redoubts, lined with artillery ; after which he went to reconnoitre the enemy's camp (B), in order to form the attack.

THIS battle was to decide the fate of *Russia*, *Poland*, and *Sweden* ; and of two monarchs, on whom all the eyes of *Europe* were fixed. Most nations, attentive to these weighty concerns, were ignorant of the actual situation of both princes ; but knowing only that *Charles XII.* had begun his march from *Saxony* at the head of a victorious and formidable army ; and that he was in full pursuit of his enemy, no body made the least doubt but he would cut the *Russians* to pieces ; and that as he had given laws to *Denmark*, *Poland*, and *Germany*, so now he would dictate conditions of peace in the *Cremelin* of *Moscow*, and make a new czar, after having made a new king of *Poland*. *M. de Voltaire* says * he has seen letters from several ministers to their respective courts, confirming this general opinion.

IN this critical situation of the two rivals, the consequence was not the same with regard to the public. Had *Charles* perished on that memorable day, it could only have been said, that there was an end of a great hero, who had so often and so wantonly exposed his life. The *Ukraine*, and the frontiers of *Lithuania* and *Russia*, would not have been laid waste any longer ; and *Poland* would, together with her tranquillity, have recovered her lawful king, who had been lately reconciled to the czar his benefactor. *Sweden*, though exhausted of men and money, might have found some circumstances of consolation under her heavy loss : but had the czar been cut off, the public would have been for ever

* Hist. de *Russie*, p. 270.

(A) On the 3d of *July*.

(B) On the 6th of *July*.

deprived

deprived of his grand undertakings, so useful to mankind; and the greatest empire in the world would have relapsed into the chaos from which it had formerly emerged.

Charles
wounded
in a skir-
mish.

The battle
of Pulta-
wa.

SEVERAL skirmishes had happened under the walls of *Pultawa*, between the *Swedish* and *Russian* detachments. In one of these *Charles* was wounded (A) by a shot from a carbine, which shattered the bone of his heel. He underwent the incisions of the surgeon with his usual fortitude; but was obliged to keep his bed for some days. In this situation he was informed, that *Peter* intended to attack him. Thinking it inconsistent with his glory to wait for the enemy in his entrenchments, he drew out his troops, and was carried himself in a litter. *Peter the Great* acknowledges in his own journal, sent to *M. de Voltaire* by the court of *Petersburg*^f, that the *Swedes* made such a vigorous attack upon the redoubts, which covered his cavalry, that, in spite of all his resistance, and of a continual fire from his cannon, they became masters of two of those redoubts. Some writers say, that the *Swedish* infantry, upon this first success, imagined they had got the day, and cried out *victory*. *Norberg* the chaplain, who was at some distance from the field of battle, among the baggage (which indeed was his proper place) pretends, that this is a calumny: but whether the *Swedes* cried out victory, or not, certain it is, they were not victorious. The fire from the other redoubts did not at all abate; and the *Russians* on every side defended themselves with a firmness equal to the vivacity of the assailants. They made no irregular motion. But the czar drew up his army with great readiness and order, before the intrenchments.

THE troops were soon engaged on every side. *Peter* acted as major general; the right wing of the *Russians* was commanded by general *Baur*; the left by *Menzikoff*; and the center by *Sheremetow*. The action lasted two hours. *Charles*, with a pistol in his hand, went from rank to rank, carried by some of his body guards in a litter, till one of those troopers was killed by a cannon-ball, and the litter was shattered in pieces. He then ordered his men to carry him upon pikes; for it is difficult to believe, let *Norberg* say what he will, that in the heat of so bloody an engagement, they could find another litter ready to their hands. *Peter* received several shot in his cloaths and in his hat. Both princes were in the midst of the fire during the whole action. At length,

^f *Histoire de Russie*, p. 272.

(A) On the 27th of June.

er a warm dispute of two hours, the Swedes gave way on the Russian side, and fell into confusion; so that Charles was obliged to retire with precipitation before an enemy, whom he had hitherto held in great contempt. This very hero was mounted on horseback in the flight, though he had been unable to keep his saddle in the heat of the engagement; but necessity made him exert himself almost beyond his strength: his retreat he suffered the most exquisite pain, which was increased by his concern for this irreparable defeat. The Russians reckoned nine thousand two hundred and twenty-four Swedes killed in the field; besides two or three thousand prisoners, chiefly cavalry, taken in the action.

IN this precipitate flight, Charles was attended by only fourteen thousand men, with very little cannon, ammunition, or provisions. He directed his march southward towards the Dnieper, between the rivers Worskla and Psol, in the country of the Zaporavians. Beyond the Dnieper are extensive deserts, leading to the frontiers of Turkey. Norberg writes, that the victors durst not pursue Charles: yet he acknowledges, that Menzikoff appeared (A) on the eminences with ten thousand horse, and a considerable train of artillery, while the king was passing the Dnieper. Fourteen thousand Swedes surrendered themselves prisoners of war to these ten thousand Russians. This fatal capitulation was signed by general Lewenhaupt, who thereby delivered into the power of the czar, those Zaporavians that had fought for his king, and had the misfortune of being in this fugitive army. The chief persons taken prisoners in the battle, and by the capitulation, were count Piper the first minister, with two secretaries of state, and two of the cabinet; field-marshal Renschild; the generals Lewenhaupt, Schlippenbach, Rozen, Stakelber, Creutz, and Hamilton; with three general-aid-de-camps, the auditor general of the army, fifty-nine staff-officers, five colonels, among whom was the prince of Wirtemberg; sixteen thousand nine hundred and forty-two soldiers, and subaltern officers: in short, including the king's domestics, and other attendants upon the army, no less than eighteen thousand seven hundred and forty six Swedes fell that day into the hands of the conqueror; and if we add the nine thousand two hundred and eighty killed in battle, and near two thousand that passed the Dnieper in the king's retinue, it appears plainly, that twenty-seven thousand effective men were under Charles's command on that memorable day (B). He set out from Saxony

(A) On the 12th of July.

the Great, written by the pre-

(B) The memoirs of Peter tended bojar Ivan Nestefuranoi

OD. HIST. VOL. XXXV.

G g

(Jean

ony with forty-five thousand men; and *Lewenhaupt* brought upwards of sixteen thousand with him from *Livonia*: but this flourishing army was no more. Out of a numerous artillery, he had been obliged to leave the greatest part behind him, in his march through morasses; so that he saved only eighteen brass cannon, two mortars, and twelve cohorns. With so inconsiderable a force did he undertake the siege of *Pultawa*, and ventured to attack an army provided with a formidable train of artillery. Hence he is said to have distinguished himself more by his bravery, than by his conduct, since his departure from *Germany*. On the side of the *Russians*, there were only fifty-two officers, and twelve hundred and ninety-three common soldiers killed: which shews that the czar made a better disposition of his troops than *Charles*; and that the fire of the *Russians* was infinitely superior to that of the *Suedes*.

*The czar
endea-
vours to
call him.*

THE memoirs of a foreign minister to the court of *Russia*, say, 'that as soon as *Peter* was informed of *Charles's* resolution to take refuge in *Turky*, he wrote a friendly letter to him, desiring he would not take so desperate a step, but rely upon his sacred word, rather than venture himself in the hands of the natural enemy of Christendom. He assured him upon his honour, that he would not detain him prisoner; but all their differences should be accommodated by a reasonable peace.' The letter was carried by an express as far as the river *Bog*, which separates the desarts of the *Ukraine*, from the territories of the grand signior: but as the messenger did not reach that place till *Charles* had entered *Turky*, he brought it back to his master. The same minister adds further, that he had this account (A) from the very person charged with the letter. *M. de Voltaire* thinks 'the anecdote not at all improbable, tho' he has not met with it in *Peter's* journal, or in any of the papers intrusted to him. What is of greater importance with respect to this battle, was its being the only one, out of such a vast number, which have embued the earth with blood, that instead of contributing to the destruction, has rather promoted the happiness of the human

*Happy
consequen-
ces of the
battle of
Pultawa.*

• VOLTAIRE, *Hist. de Russie*, p. 277.

• Page 278.

(*Jean Rousset*), and printed at *Amsterdam* in 1730, say, that the king of *Sweden*, before he passed the *Dniester*, sent a general officer to make proposals of peace to the czar. The four volumes of these memoirs

are either untruths and absurdities, or a compilation of gazettes.

(A) This fact is also mentioned in a letter printed below the anecdotes of *Russia*, p. 23.

species,

species, since it gave the czar an opportunity to civilize so considerable a part of the world. Upwards of two hundred pitched battles have been fought in *Europe*, since the beginning of this century, to the present year. The most signal, and the most bloody victories, have been attended with no other consequences, than the reduction of a few provinces, yielded afterwards by treaties, and recovered by other battles. Armies of an hundred thousand men have often encountered in the field: but the most violent efforts have been attended with weak and transient successes; and the mightiest causes have been productive of trifling effects. There is no instance in modern history of a war, from which any public benefit arose, equivalent to the mischief it has occasioned: but from the battle of *Pultawa*, the greatest empire upon earth has derived its present prosperity.

IN the mean while, all the *Swedish* generals were presented to the conqueror; who ordered their swords to be returned, and invited them to dinner. Every body must have heard, that upon drinking to those officers, he said, "To the health of my masters in the art of war;" but most of his masters, at least all the subaltern officers, and the common soldiers, were quickly sent into *Siberia*. There was no cartel settled between the *Russians* and *Swedes*: the czar indeed had proposed one before the siege of *Pultawa*; but *Charles* rejected the offer, and his troops soon felt the ill effects of his inflexible temper. It was this unseasonable obstinacy, *Charles* that occasioned all his misfortunes in *Turkey*; and a series of XII. takes adventures, more becoming an *Orlando Furioso*, than a wise *Belier* prince. For as soon as he arrived at *Bender*, he was advised among the to write to the grand vizir, pursuant to the custom of the *Turks*: *Turks*: but he thought it beneath his dignity. The like obstinacy set him successively at variance with all the ministers of the *Porte*: in short, he knew not how to accommodate himself either to time or place (A).

THE first advice of the battle of *Pultawa*, produced a general revolution in *Poland*, *Saxony*, *Sweden* and *Silesia*. When *Charles* was in all his glory, he obliged the emperor *Joseph* to eject the *Catholics* out of a hundred and five

(A) *La Motraye*, in the relation of his travels, has given us a letter from *Charles* XII. to the grand vizir; but this letter is forged, as are most of the ac-

counts of that mercenary writer (1): for *Norberg* himself confesses that the king of *Sweden* would never consent to write to the grand vizir.

(1) *Voltaire*, *Hist. de Russie*, p. 281.

churches, in favour of the *Silefians* of the confession of *Augsburg*; but the *Catholics* repossessed themselves of the *Lutheran* temples, as soon as they were informed of the king of *Sweden*'s defeat. The *Saxons* now determined to be revenged of a prince, who in the height of his prosperity had plundered that electorate, according to their accounts, of twenty-three millions of crowns. The king of *Poland* (A), their elector, immediately protested against an extorted abdication; and being now reconciled to the czar, he shewed an impatience to re-ascend the *Polish* throne. *Sweden*, in the greatest consternation, for a long time imagined her king to be dead; so that the senate, under this uncertainty, were incapable of coming to any resolution.

Peter re- *Peter* determined to make the best use of his victory; and
stores Au- therefore ordered marshal *Scheremetow* to march into *Livonia*,
gustus to on the frontiers of which province this general had so often
the crown distinguished himself. A large body of cavalry, command-
of Poland: ed by prince *Menzikoff*, was dispatched with the utmost expedition, to second the efforts of the inconsiderable number of forces that had been left in *Poland*; to encourage the nobility who adhered to *Augustus*; to expel his competitor, who was now considered as a rebel; and to disperse a few *Swedish* troops still remaining in that kingdom, under the command of general *Craffau*.

Peter soon after set out himself in person, passed through *Kiow*, and the palatinates of *Chelm*, and *Upper Volhina*, and at length arrived at *Lublin*. where he concerted matters with the general of *Lithuania*: after this he reviewed (B) the crown troops, who took the oath of allegiance to king *Augustus*: from thence he proceeded to *Warsaw*; and at *Thorn* enjoyed the most glorious of triumphs, that of receiving the thanks of a king, whom he had restored to his crown (C). There he concluded a treaty against *Sweden*, with the kings of *Denmark*, *Poland*, and *Prussia*. Their design was now, to recover from *Charles* all the conquests of *Gustavus Adolphus*. *Peter* revived the ancient pretensions of *Russia*, to *Livonia*, *Ingria*, *Carelia*, and part of *Finland*; *Denmark* laid claim to *Scania*; and the king of *Prussia* to *Pomerania*. Thus the unprosperous valour of *Charles XII.* shook the whole edifice, that had been erected by the successful bravery of *Gustavus Adolphus*. The *Polish* nobility flocked from all sides to renew their oath of allegiance to king *Augustus*, or ask pardon for their desertion; in short,

(A) On the 8th of *August* 1709.

(B) On the 18th of *Septem-*

(C) *October* 7.

ber 1709.

almost the whole kingdom acknowledged *Peter* for their protector.

A revolution so unexpected, and supported by so formidable an alliance, was a prodigious shock to *Stanislaus*; who finding himself unable to oppose the victorious arms of the czar, had no other choice to make but that of resigning the crown: accordingly he published a writing, called *Universal*, wherein he declared himself ready to abdicate, if the republic required it. *Which Stanislaus resigns.*

Peter, having settled his affairs with the king of Poland, and ratified the treaty with Denmark, set forward directly, to finish his negotiation with the king of Prussia. It had not been yet the practice for sovereigns to perform the functions of their own ambassadors: *Peter* was the first who introduced this custom; but few have followed his example. *The czar, in person, makes a treaty with the king of Prussia.* The elector of Brandenburg, the first king of Prussia, had an interview with the czar at *Marienwerder*. This was a small town built by the Teutonic knights in the western part of Pomerania, and on the borders of Prussia, which had been lately created a kingdom. The country indeed was poor, and of small extent; yet whenever the new king made a tour to it, he appeared with the utmost magnificence. With this splendor he received the czar *Peter*, when, on a former occasion, that prince withdrew from his imperial dominions, to search for knowledge and instruction in foreign countries. But the conqueror of Charles XII. was now entertained in a more pompous manner. *Peter* concluded only a defensive treaty with him (A), which afterwards completed the ruin of Sweden. Not a moment was lost: for the czar, after having proceeded with the utmost dispatch in his negotiations, contrary to the custom of ministers, who are apt to spin them out to too great a length, immediately joined his army (B) before Riga, the capital of Livonia. He began with bombarding the town, and fired the three first bombs himself: then, knowing that it must certainly fall, he formed a blockade; and set out for his city of *Petersburg*, in order to forward the new buildings and the fleet; and having laid the keel of a fifty-four gun ship with his own hands (C), he returned to *Moscow*. Here he amused himself with the preparations of a triumph to be exhibited in that capital; the works were under his direction, the disposition was entirely his own, and he even had his share in the labour. *Lays siege to Riga. Visits his buildings and fleet at Petersburg. And repairs to Moscow.*

(A) October 20, 1709.

(B) On the 11th of November.

(C) On the 3d of December.

1710.
Where he
triumphs.

THE year 1710 (A) was ushered in with this solemnity, so necessary to his subjects, whom it inspired with ideas of grandeur; and so agreeable to a people, who had been apprehensive of seeing their capital in possession of those very *Swedes*, that were now led through it in triumph. The artillery of the vanquished, their colours, and standards, their king's litter, the soldiers, officers, general, and ministers of the captive *Swedes*, all on foot, moved in solemn procession under seven magnificent arches, attended with the ringing of bells, with the sound of trumpets, with volleys discharged from a hundred pieces of cannon, and with the acclamations of an immense multitude of people. The victors on horseback, with the generals at their head, and *Peter* in his rank of major general, closed the procession. At each triumphal arch stood the deputies of the several orders of the state; and at the last was a chosen band of young noblemen, the sons of bojars, in a *Roman* dress, who presented the victorious monarch with a crown of laurel.

The czar's
ambassa-
dor arrest-
ed at Lon-
don.

THIS public festival was succeeded by another ceremony, that afforded no less satisfaction than the former. In the year 1708 happened an accident, the more disagreeable to the *Russians*, as *Peter* was at that time unprosperous in war. *Matueof*, his ambassador to the court of *London*, having obtained an audience of leave of queen *Anne*, was arrested for debt, in the public street, by two bailiffs, at the suit of some tradesmen, and obliged to give in bail. The plaintiffs asserted that the laws of commerce were of a superior nature to the privileges of ambassadors: on the other hand *Matueof*, and all the other foreign ministers who espoused his cause, maintained that their persons ought to be sacred. *Peter*, by his letters to queen *Anne*, strongly insisted upon satisfaction: but she could not comply with his desire (B); because, by the laws of *England*, the creditors had a right to sue
cause

(A) January 1.

(B) The czar, says the preface to lord *Whitworth*'s account of *Russia*, who had been absolute enough to civilize savages, had no idea, could conceive none, of the privileges of a nation civilized in the only rational manner, by laws and liberties. He demanded immediate and severe punishment of the offenders: he

demanded it of a princess, whom he thought interested to assert the sacredness of the persons of monarchs, even in their representatives; and he demanded it with threats of wrecking his vengeance on all *English* merchants and subjects established in his dominions. In this light the menaces were formidable: otherwise, happily, the rights of a whole people were
more

their just demands; and there was no law to exempt foreign ministers from being arrested for debt. The murder of *Jul*, the czar's ambassador, who had been executed the preceding year, by order of *Charles XII.* was in some measure an encouragement to the people of *England*, not to regard a character so grossly abused. The other foreign ministers, residing then in *London*, were obliged to be bound *Matueof*; and all that the queen could do in favour of the czar, was to prevail on the parliament to pass an act, whereby it was no longer lawful to arrest an ambassador for

so sacred here than the person of foreign ministers. The same memorials urged the queen with the satisfaction she herself had extorted, not only the boat and servants of the earl of *Manchester* had insulted at *Venice*. That had broken through their fundamental laws to content the queen of *Great Britain*. A noble picture of government, when a monarch that forces another nation to invade its constitution, dare not take his own! One may imagine with what difficulty our treaties of state must have laboured through all the ambages of phrase in *English*, *French*, *Italian*, and *Russ*, to explain the *Muscovite* ears and *Muscovite* understandings, the meaning of arguments, pleadings, precedents, juries, and verdicts; and impatient *Peter* must have listened to promises of a hearing term! With what astonishment must he have beheld a queen, engaging to endeavour to prevail on her parliament to pass an act to prevent such outrage for the future! It honours does it not reflect the memory of that princess on an arbitrary emperor, even to appease him the

dared not to put the meanest of her subjects to death uncondemned by law! "There are," says she, (1) in one of her dispatches to him, "insuperable difficulties with respect to the ancient and fundamental laws of the government of our people, which we fear do not permit so severe and rigorous a sentence to be given, as your imperial majesty at first seemed to expect in this case: And we persuade ourselves, that your imperial majesty, who are a prince famous for clemency and exact justice, will not require us, who are the guardian and protectress of the laws, to inflict a punishment upon our subjects, which the law does not empower us to do." Words so venerable and heroic, that this broil ought to become history, and be exempted from the oblivion due to the silly squabbles of ambassadors and their privileges. If *Anne* deserved praise for her conduct on this occasion, it reflects still greater glory on *Peter*, that this ferocious man had patience to listen to these details, and had moderation and justice enough to be persuaded by the reason of them.

(1) *Motley's life of Peter I, Vol. II. p. 57.*

Queen
Anne
sends an
embassy to
the czar
on that
occasion.
And gives
him the
title of em-
peror.

debt: but after the battle of *Pultawa*, it became necessary to give a more public satisfaction to that prince. The queen, by a formal embassy, made an excuse for what had passed. Mr. *Whitworth* (A), who was pitched upon for this ceremony, opened his speech with the following words, "Most high and most mighty emperor." He told the czar, that the queen had imprisoned the persons, who had presumed to arrest his ambassador; and that the delinquents had been rendered infamous. This was not true; but the acknowledgment was sufficient; and the title of emperor, which the queen had not given him before the battle of *Pultawa*, plainly shewed the degree of estimation, to which he was now raised in *Europe*. This title had been already granted him in *Holland*, not only by those who had been his fellow workmen in the dock-yards at *Sardam*, and seemed to interest themselves most in his glory; but even by the chief persons in the state, who unanimously stiled him emperor, and celebrated his victory with rejoicings in the presence of the *Swedish* minister.

He takes
Elbing;

THE reputation which the czar had gained by the victory of *Pultawa*, was greatly increased by the diligence with which he improved it. He began with laying siege to *Elbing*, a Hanse town of *Royal Prussia* in *Poland*, in which the *Swedes* had still a garrison of nine hundred men. The *Russians* scaled the walls, entered the town, and the garrison surrendered prisoners of war (B). This was one of the great magazines of *Charles XII*. The besiegers found in it an hundred and eighty three pieces of brass cannon, with a hundred and fifty-seven mortars. The czar having immediately removed (C) from *Moscow* to *Petersburg*, embarked under his new fortrefs of *Cronslot*, scoured the coast of *Carelia*, and, though he met with a violent storm, arrived with his fleet before *Wiburg*, the chief town of *Carelia* in *Finland*; while his land-forces advanced over frozen morasses.

Wiburg;

The capital of *Livonia* was once more closely blocked up (D); and upon making a breach, the garrison of *Wiburg*, consisting of about four thousand men, surrendered upon terms; but could not obtain the honours of war, for they were made prisoners contrary to the capitulation. *Peter* complained of several infractions of this kind on the part of the enemy; and promised to set these troops at liberty, as soon as the *Swedes* should give him proper satisfaction:

(A) He was created lord
Whitworth by king *George I*.

(C) *April 2*.

(B) On the 11th of *March*

(D) On the 23d of *June*.

1710.

but in this affair they were obliged to consult the king, who was still inflexible; in consequence of which the soldiers whom he might have set free, remained in captivity. Thus king William III. arrested marshal Boufflers in 1695, notwithstanding the capitulation of *Namur*. There are many instances of such violations of treaties, though it were to be wished that there never had been any.

AFTER the taking of this capital, the siege of *Riga* was carried on in form, and with great vigour. The river *Duna*, which washes the north side of the town walls, being frozen over, it was found necessary to break the ice. A mortality that had raged for some time in those parts, got among the besiegers, and swept away nine thousand men; yet the siege was not at all slackened. The garrison made a very good defence, and obtained the honours of war (A). It was agreed in the capitulation, that all the *Livonian* officers and soldiers should remain in the service of *Russia*, as natives of a country which had been dismembered from that empire, and usurped by the ancestors of *Charles XII*: but the *Livonians* were restored to the privileges, of which they had been stripped by the late king of *Sweden*, and all the officers entered into the *Russian* service. This was the noblest satisfaction the czar could take for the murder of his ambassador *Patkul*, a *Livonian*, who had been put to death for defending those very privileges. The garrison, which at first consisted of 12,000 men, was reduced to about 5000 when they surrendered. Soon after, the citadel of *Pennamunde* was taken; and in the town and fort the besiegers found a most numerous artillery.

BEFORE the *Russians* could be intire masters of *Carelia*, it was necessary they should have possession of the strong town of *Kexholm* on the lake of *Ladoga*, situated in an island, and considered as almost impregnable: it was bombarded some time after, and soon obliged to surrender (B). The island of *Oesel* in the sea bordering upon the north of *Livonia*, was subdued with the same rapidity (C).

ON the side of *Esthonia*, a province of *Livonia* towards the north and on the gulph of *Finland*, stand the towns of *Pernau* and *Revel*; the reduction of which was still wanting to complete the conquest of *Livonia*. *Pernau* surrendered (D) after a siege of a few days; and *Revel* did the same (E), before a single cannon had been fired on the town. But the *Swedes* found means to elude the conqueror, at the very time they were surrendering themselves prisoners of war; for

(A) On the 15th of July 1710. (B) Sept 19. (C) Sep. 23
(D) Aug. 25. (E) Sept. 19.

some lia.

some ships of their nation having entered the harbour by night, the garrison, and most of the citizens embarked; so that the besiegers were surprized to find the place deserted. When *Charles XII.* gained the battle of *Narva*, little did he imagine that his troops would one day have occasion for the like stratagems.

Stanislaus flies to Pomerania, and Augustus resumes the government of Poland. IN *Poland*, *Stanislaus*, finding his party quite demolished, took shelter in *Pomerania*, a province which still continued in the hands of *Charles XII.* *Augustus* resumed the government; and it was difficult to determine, who had acquired most glory, *Charles* in dethroning him, or *Peter* in restoring him to his crown.

Sweden depopulated by the plague. THE subjects of the king of *Sweden* were still more unfortunate than himself: the mortality which had made such havoc over all *Livonia*, penetrated into *Sweden*, where it swept away thirty thousand inhabitants in *Stockholm* only: it laid waste those provinces, that had been already too much depopulated; for during the space of ten years successively, most of the able bodied men had quitted their country to attend their sovereign, and had perished in his service.

Singular treaty against Charles XII. *Charles's* unlucky star pursued him also in *Pomerania*. His troops having retired into this province from *Poland*, to the number of eleven thousand men; the czar, the kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia*, the elector of *Hanover*, and the duke of *Holslein*, entered into a confederacy to render this army useless, and to oblige general *Craffau*, who commanded it, to submit to a neutrality. The regency of *Stockholm*, hearing no news from their king, thought themselves very happy, in the midst of a mortality, that ravaged the city, to sign this treaty, which seemed at least to remove the horrors of war from one of their provinces. The emperor of *Germany* favoured this extraordinary convention. It was stipulated, that the *Swedish* army then in *Pomerania*, should not march out of this province to defend their monarch in any other part of the world: nay, it was resolved in the *German* empire, to raise an army, with a view of seeing this most singular treaty executed. The reason of this was, that the emperor, being then at war with *France*, hoped to make the *Swedish* army enter into his service. This whole negotiation was carried on, while *Peter* was subduing *Livonia*, *Esthonia*, and *Carelia*. *Charles XII.* who had been employing every engine at *Bender*, to prevail on the divan to declare war against the czar, received this news as one of the severest strokes of fortune. He could not bear that his senate at *Stockholm* should pretend to tie up the hands of his army: and upon this occasion

To which his own capital accedes.

sion it was, that he wrote them word, he would send one of his boots to govern them.

THE Danes were now preparing to make a descent upon *All Europe*; so that every nation in *Europe* was engaged in war. *Spain, Portugal, Italy, France, Germany, Holland, and England*, were still contending about the succession of *Charles II.* king of *Spain*; and all the northern powers were united against *Charles XII.* There wanted only a quarrel with the *Ottoman* empire, for every village in *Europe* to be a flame. This quarrel happened, merely through the jealousy of the *Turks*, at the time when *Peter* was in the zenith of his prosperity.

IN the mean time the king of *Sweden* had been treated with great splendor and magnificence by the grand signior, and assured that he should be conducted to *Moscow* at the head of 200,000 men; but count *Tolsty* the czar's envoy at the *Porte* managed his matters so well, and was so greatly respected by the sultan, that this design was no longer talked of: he even ventured to demand old *Mazeppa* to be delivered up to him, as *Charles* had demanded the unfortunate *Patrickul*, and would possibly have succeeded therein, had not the death of *Mazeppa* put an end to that affair. What mortified *Charles* more than any thing, was to hear that count *Tolsty* was served at his table by *Swedes* who had been made prisoners at the battle of *Pultawa*, and that great numbers more were daily sold as slaves in the public markets. But the grand vizir, who was strongly in the *Russian* interest, being deposed soon after, affairs took a different turn, and the sultan was prevailed upon, notwithstanding the remonstrances of count *Tolsty*, to allow *Charles* a considerable body of troops to reconduct him into *Poland*.

THE new vizir at the same time embraced every opportunity of affronting the czar in the person of his envoy, and particularly in giving the *French* ambassador the preference. It was customary on the promotion of a grand vizir, for all the foreign ministers to request an audience of congratulation: count *Tolsty* was the first who demanded that audience; but was answered that the precedence had been constantly given to the ambassador of *France*; whereupon *Tolsty* informed the vizir, that he must be deprived of the pleasure of waiting on him at all; which being maliciously represented as expressing the utmost contempt of his person, and the khan of *Tartary* being at the same time instigated to make several heavy complaints against the conduct of the *Russians* on the frontiers, count *Tolsty* was immediately committed to the castle of the *Seven Towers*, war was declared against the *Russians*, and the grand vizir, having

Charles XII. meets with great encouragement in Turkey.

The Russian envoy affronted at Constantinople.

The Turks declare war against the czar.

1711.

made

Who aug-
ments his
forces.

made the necessary dispositions, put himself at the head of a numerous army at *Adrianople*, and advanced to the *Danube*.

THOUGH the czar could not be properly informed of the transactions at *Constantinople* on account of the imprisonment of his minister, yet he learnt so much from private hands, as to be ready to take the field before the *Turks*. He dispatched admiral *Vander Cruys*, with a considerable reinforcement, for the protection of *Asoph*; and leaving the command of his army to prince *Menzikoff*, he set out from *Petersburg* to *Moscow*, where he ordered such powerful levies to be made, that his army was soon augmented to 100,000 men. He likewise entered into a treaty with *Apakas Taquin*, prince of the *Calmuc Tartars*, to furnish him with 25,000 men, for which the czar was to pay him 100,000 ducats.

The Tar-
tars take
the field.

IN the mean time the khan of *Tartary*, at the head of 150,000 men, his son with 50,000, and the palatine *Potoczki* at the head of 10,000, composed of *Poles*, *Swedes*, *Hungarians*, *Wallachians*, and *Cossacks*, began their hostilities on the side of *Asoph*; and having defeated a body of 5000 *Russians*, they advanced to *Izinnis*, ravaging the country round about. But their irruptions in the *Ukraine* were attended with still worse consequences; for they seized on *Wolno*, *Mahivoloda*, *Noivivoloda*, *Mercovi*, *Ternocka*, and several other places, and penetrated as far as the river *Samara*, where they burnt 150 vessels; but the snow obliging them to retire, they marched towards *Precop* with 12000 slaves, and a considerable booty: *Potocky*, together with sultan *Galga*, the khan's eldest son, afterwards marched along the *Dnieper*, and penetrated as far as *Niemirov* beyond *Braclov*, from whence, after raising contributions, they retired to *Bialowcerkiow*, which they besieged, and made themselves masters of the town, after three assaults, attended with the loss of a considerable number of their men: but the citadel held out till the arrival of prince *Galitzin*, who having killed above 500 of the enemy, obliged *Potocky* to retreat with the loss of all his slaves and booty.

IN the mean time the grand vizir, who was no great adept in the art of war, advanced so slowly in his preparations, that his army was not ready to take the field till the latter end of *April*. But the czar, being informed that the grand signior was equipping a powerful fleet in the *Black Sea*, gave immediate orders to do the same: however, the waters of the *Dnieper* being so low that the large ships became useless, nothing was done on either side.

WHILE these great preparations were making, most of the christian powers interposed their mediations to prevent the prosecution of this war, and to persuade the king of *Sweden*,

Sweden to conclude a peace; but he, imagining that by the assistance of the *Turks* he should yet triumph over his enemies, refused to listen to any proposals of a pacific nature.

ABOUT this time the grand signior being informed that *Cantemir Brancovan*, prince of *Walachia*, held a secret correspondence ^{electd} with the czar, and had promised to revolt to him with 30,000 ^{prince of} men, caused him to be deposed, and *Demetrius Cantemir* to *Walachia*. be elected in his room; with a promise that no tribute should be demanded of him, nor any sum be paid on his entrance upon his new principality, as had been usually done: but *Cantemir*, soon finding that the *Turks* paid no manner of regard to these promises, resolved to go over to the czar; and having the direction of building a bridge over the *Danube*, ^{Revolts to} at the expence of the *Turks*, he retarded the work as much ^{the czar.} as possible, to give the czar an opportunity of arriving there before it was finished. But *Peter*, entertaining too great a diffidence of *Cantemir's* sincerity, and relying upon the promises of *Brancovan*, delayed his march too long to hinder the *Turks* from passing that river.

IN *June*, the czar arrived at *Jazy*, the capital of *Moldavia*, where prince *Cantemir* joined him, and where he expected the provisions promised him by *Brancovan*; but after ^{The czar} waiting several days without effect, and having some other ^{reduced to} great ^{straits.} assurances of *Brancovan's* treachery, he saw his error in giving such credit to him, but too late; being now in a country without provisions, magazines, or the least hopes of assistance; for tho' *Cantemir* continued firm, yet the *Moldavians* would not adopt his system, nor afford any succours to his ally.

As soon as the grand vizir was informed of the czar's being at *Jazy*, he immediately decamped, and having crossed ^{Is sur-} the *Danube*, advanced against the *Russians*, on the borders ^{rounded by} of the *Pruth*, with an army three times more numerous than theirs. The czar, however, having disposed his troops ^{the Turks} behind a line of chevaux de frise, made so strong and regular ^{on the bor-} a fire upon the enemy, that all their endeavours to break in upon him proved ineffectual, and night coming on, they were obliged to retire out of the reach of the czar's artillery. The next morning the battle was renewed, and the *Turks* employed the whole day in attempting to force the *Russian* lines, but without success: on the third day, general *Poniatowski*, seeing the distressed situation of the *Russians*, and that there was no possibility for them to escape, being surrounded on all sides, advised the vizir to reduce them by famine; and this advice he would most certainly have followed, had not the czarina *Catharine*, who insisted upon follow-

ing

Where he is saved by the empress Catharine, ing the czar in this dangerous expedition, hit upon an expedient to prevent it. She prevailed upon her husband to send a letter to the vizir, with proposals of peace, which she accompanied with a very considerable present of money and jewels; this stratagem had so good an effect, that the vizir was very willing to come to an accommodation, and accordingly a treaty was concluded, which, though greatly to the advantage of the *Ottoman Porte*, saved the czar from the inevitable necessity of surrendering at discretion. During this negotiation an incident happened which greatly redounds to the honour of the czar: the first demand of the grand vizir was, that prince *Cantemir* should be delivered up, and the czar was strongly pressed by those about him to yield to it; but he peremptorily refused, saying, "I can resign to the *Turks* all the country as far as *Curzka*, because there are hopes of recovering it again; but I will by no means violate my faith, and deliver up a prince who hath abandoned a principality for my sake; because honour once forfeited can never be retrieved." After the treaty was concluded, the vizir sent several waggons of provisions to the *Russian* army, who decamped in good order, with drums beating, and colours flying, after an expedition which had cost the czar some millions in money and jewels, and upwards of 20,000 men.

and concludes a peace.

WHEN the news of this treaty reached *Constantinople*, the grand signior was so well pleased, that he ordered public rejoicings to be made for three days, and expressed his approbation of the vizir's conduct, by the most gracious reception, and several valuable presents. However, the king of *Sweden*, and his party, inspired him with such sentiments, that this peace was twice broken, and as often renewed, in the space of a few months.

Returns to his own dominions.

THE treaty was no sooner concluded, than the czar quitted the borders of the *Pruth*, and returned towards his own dominions, in order to take from the *Turks* all subject of complaint, and to prevent their opposing his designs in the north; leaving to his generals the conduct of his troops that were to cross *Poland*, who having joined general *Baur*, entered *Pomerania*, with an intent to form the blockade of *Stralsund*. The czar went to *Carelsbad*, to drink the waters of that place, for the recovery of his health; which having done with good success, and concluded a negotiation with *M. Kameke*, whom the king of *Prussia* had sent thither to meet him, he departed from thence to *Torgau*, in order to be present at the nuptials of the czarowitz his son with the princess of *Wolfenbuttle*.

THE czarowitz had arrived there two days before, and the queen of Poland had made great preparations for the wedding; which, however, was solemnized with very little ceremony, on the 25th of October. This was, strictly speaking, a marriage of convenience, or rather necessity; and a most deserving young lady, who merited a much better fate, was made the unhappy sacrifice. The czarowitz, from his fond attachment to vicious pleasures, had not the least inclination to marry, nor the smallest degree of regard for the princess proposed to him. The indolence of his temper, the irregularity of his conduct, and his great aversion to foreigners, had created in the czar so bad an opinion of him, that he frequently hinted, that unless he soon gave some tokens of amendment, he must expect to have his crown shaved, and be thrust into a convent: the sole reason, therefore, that induced him to marry, was to prevent the danger he was in of forfeiting his succession to the crown.

A few days after these disagreeable nuptials were celebrated, the new married couple took the rout of *Wolfsbuttle*, and the czar set out for *Elbing*, where he arrived, with the czarina, on the 8th of November. But the French and Swedish factions, which now prevailed at the *Porte*, soon made it necessary for the czar to return to his own dominions; and therefore departing from *Elbing*, he passed thro' *Koningsbourg*, *Memel*, *Riga*, and *Reval*; at all which places he was received with great marks of affection and esteem: and having given the necessary orders for the reparation of the garrisons, and the cultivation of the country, he at length arrived at *Petersburg*, whither all the royal family had come to meet him.

THE czar being now in peaceable possession of *Livonia*, The czar and that province having formerly been looked upon as a fief of the empire, he offered to accept the investiture of it from the emperor *Charles VI.* provided he might be admitted a prince of the empire, and be allowed to send a minister to the general diet; and as the partiality with which the French ambassador had behaved to the Russians at *Constantinople* had extremely irritated the czar against that nation, he likewise offered to furnish his imperial majesty with 25,000 men, to assist him in his designs against *France*. But these offers were declined; the emperor alledging, that though the czar was then master of *Livonia*, yet the restitution of it might become an article in some future treaty with *Sweden*; and that if this duchy should become a fief of the empire, it would be obliged to take part in all the quarrels that might happen in *Poland*. This, however, was no more than a plausible

plausible pretext ; the emperor being certainly afraid of having so powerful a member in the college of princes, afterwards plainly appeared : for when *Livonia* was ceded to the czar by treaty, tho' he repeated this request, he could not obtain it.

THE czar had actually given orders to his generals on the side of the *Black Sea*, to demolish the fortifications of *Taganroc* and *Afoph*, and was sincerely disposed to fulfil the late treaty in every other particular ; but some fresh advices from 1712. *Turky* made it necessary to suspend the farther execution of these designs. The grand vizir, when this treaty was signed, had agreed that the king of *Sweden* should quit the *Porte* in *Ottoman* territories : and indeed he did all in his power to perform this agreement ; but *Charles* and his faction endeavoured to be before-hand with the vizir, and to persuade the sultan that he had betrayed the interest of the empire. The vizir, having intelligence of these designs, not only placed a guard upon all the roads between *Bender* and *Constantinople*, but gave the king to understand, that it was expected he should immediately depart : and upon *Charles*'s returning him a very haughty answer, the vizir immediately stopt his daily pension, and quartered a detachment of his army at *Bender* as a guard upon him. But this face of affairs was soon after changed ; for *Charles* having found means to inform the *French* ambassador of his situation, that minister made such good use of his interest with the sultan, that the vizir was soon afterwards deposed and banished, and the bashaw *Jusuf*, aga of the janissaries, appointed in his stead.

1712. THIS new vizir, in concert with the khan of *Tartary*, *The Turks* persuaded the sultan to declare war again with the czar ; and accordingly circular letters were wrote to all the vizirs and bashaws of the empire, to assemble their forces, and repair to the imperial camp at *Issaktze* on the *Danube*. The *Russian* hostages at the *Porte*, perceiving this new war ready to kindle, endeavoured to prevent it ; and, in several conferences with the vizir, assured him, that the czar had already begun, and was determined to proceed in the execution of the late treaty : and the vizir having insisted on the immediate surrender of *Afoph*, and the demolition of *Taganroc*, which was accordingly done, a fresh negotiation was begun between the two powers ; but, by the machinations of the *French* and *Swedish* factions, it was not concluded till April following.

The czar is On the 20th of *February*, the czar's marriage with the *publicly* czarina *Catharine*, which had been declared in private before, was publicly solemnised at *Peterburg* with great magnificence ; *Catharine.*

niscence; and on the 16th of April a new treaty of peace between the *Turks* and *Russians* was concluded. This treaty consisted of eight articles. By the first, the czar was obliged to withdraw his forces from *Poland* within thirty days, and not to return thither on any pretence, except the king of *Sweden* should return to his own dominions, join with the *Poles*, and attack *Muscovy* on that side. By the second article, the *Porte* was at liberty to procure the king of *Sweden's* return to his dominions, at such time, and in such manner, as the grand signior should think proper; but in case he should march thro' the *Russian* territories, the *Turkish* troops that attended him should commit no ravages or other acts of hostility. By the subsequent articles of this treaty it was stipulated, that the czar should remain in possession of *Kiow* and the *Ukraine*, with their ancient liberties, and renounce all pretensions to the country of the *Cossacks* on this side the *Dnieper*. That no fortrefs should, for the future, be erected between the two frontiers of *Asoph* and *Cirasnki*; nor at *Camenski* or *Savar*: and that the peace should continue twenty-five years.

THIS treaty was concluded and signed on both sides with great appearances of sincerity; and the sultan communicated the contents of it to the king of *Sweden* by letter; but that prince, being prepossessed with an opinion, that the influence of the *English* and *Dutch* ministers had chiefly contributed to the conclusion of the treaty, talked of it in a very indifferent manner, and soon after induced the sultan to break it.

IN the mean time prince *Menzikoff*, at the head of 36,000 men, had marched into *Pomerania*, in order to join the *Danes* and *Saxons*, which having done, 10,000 of the *Russians* formed the blockade of *Stetin*, and the others lay before *Stralsund*, which was also, in some measure, blocked up by and. Soon afterwards the czar, the czarina, and the czarowitz, arrived in *Pomerania*, where *Peter* had several conferences with king *Augustus* on their future operations, in which it was agreed to make a previous attack upon the island of *Rugen*, because, by being masters of that place, they should hinder the *Swedes* from throwing any succours into *Stralsund*, and must therefore render it impossible for that city to hold out. In consequence of this resolution, the two monarchs went to reconnoitre the island, and gave orders to their generals to make the necessary preparations for executing this enterprise: but the *Swedes* having, in the mean time, landed 10,000 men on the island, it was judged most prudent to postpone the attack to a more favourable opportunity; and the czar, having left king *Augustus* to command the army, went a second time to *Carelsbad*, to drink the celebrated

Visits the king of Prussia at Berlin. waters of that place, from whence he paid a visit to the king of Prussia at Berlin.

Cessation of arms between the Swedes and Augustus. DURING the czar's absence, count *Steinbock*, who commanded in *Rügen*, headed a detachment of his forces at *Stralsund*, and from thence marched to *Mecklenburgh*, where he levied most exorbitant contributions, under pretence that the inhabitants had furnished the enemies of Sweden with forage, and other provisions, in the two preceding campaigns. Mean while *Augustus*, with his troops, marched toward *Gustrow*, which he surprised, and waited there till the *Danes* should join him, with an intent to attack count *Steinbock*, who, having but a small tract of land to subsist on, began to consider the danger of his situation, and the consequences of hazarding a battle with an army greatly superior to him in numbers, and therefore proposed a cessation of arms for three months; to which *Augustus* too readily agreed.

The czar departs from Berlin. THE news of this transaction reached the czar while he was at Berlin, and proved very disagreeable to him, as he began to suspect *Augustus* of carrying on a private treaty with the Swedes: this induced him to make all possible haste to *Mecklenburgh*, to join the king of *Denmark*; who, being equally jealous of *Augustus's* conduct, had, by precipitate marches, advanced as far as *Gadobusch*: but, before this junction could be accomplished, the Swedes fell upon the Danish army, and, though they occupied a very advantageous situation, and had been joined by a body of Saxon troops, entirely defeated them.

The Swedes defeat the Danes.

After this action, the Saxons, who had taken no part in it, immediately joined the Russians, that they might together be able to oppose the victorious Swedes, who, it was more than probable, would take the rout of *Pomerania*, to penetrate into *Poland*, and facilitate the return of their monarch; but *Steinbock*, instead of making that way, which seemed by far the most eligible, advanced towards *Jutland*, in order to take up his quarters in *Holslein*, pursuant to the instructions he had received from the regency at *Stockholm*. The czar, thereupon, deliberated some time whether he should attack *Steinbock* on his march: but finding this design attended with some difficulties, he continued his rout to *Pomerania*; where, in concert with the king of *Denmark*, he agreed to open the next campaign with the attack of *Rügen*, and the siege of *Stralsund*.

The Turks break the peace,

IN the mean time new troubles were daily fomenting in Turkey, where the French and Swedish ministers, who could by no means relish the late peace, endeavoured to persuade the sultan, that it was extremely prejudicial both to his honour and his interest. In consequence of these cabals, *Grudziński*, at the

ad of 4000 men, was ordered to make an irruption into *and enter* *l*; and accordingly penetrated as far as *Pisdry*, then Poland, led by general *Baur*'s regiment of *Russians*, command-general *Gordon*, who, not being in the least apprehensive *where they* any hostilities from that quarter, were entirely cut to *gain some* *advan-* Another party of *Grudziński*'s detachment marched *tages*, *udrin*, beyond *Poznania*, where the *Russians* had a ma-; which was guarded by 300 men; who, after an ob-*defence*, were at last obliged to surrender. As soon *eral Baur* was informed of this irruption, he left *Pome-* and flew with all speed to *Poznania*, where, hastily assem-*a body of 4000 Russians*, and being joined by eight *unies of the crown army*, he attacked *Grudziński*, and *him to retire in great confusion*. *Baur* pursued him *but are* *day and night*, and at last came up with him at *Kruter-* *defeated*; whereupon he and his officers immediately retired into, and the abandoned troops surrendered themselves with-*position*.

is infraction of the treaty afforded the czar just grounds *The czar* *complaint*, and induced marshal *Sheremetow* to publish a *remem-* *oration*, wherein he warmly remonstrated against this *strates* *est violation of the late peace*, and against the conduct *nobility of Cracovia, Saradia, and Calish*, who had fa-*d the invasion*, and assisted the enemies of his master; *oncluded with giving notice to the Poles*, that if they *it behave with more moderation*, or took the least step *our of Stanislaus or the Swedes*, the czar would imme-*y re-enter Poland with all his troops*. This the king of *n and his party did not fail to make good use of*; *exclaiming against the czar*, who, said they, had first *the treaty by still keeping an army in Poland*, and pur-*some Cossacks quite into the Turkish territories*. Here *but to no* *great debates arose in the divan*; and the sultan, suf-*purpose*. *himself to be prevailed upon by the khan of Tartary*, *rench ambassador*, and the *Swedish minister*, seemed in-*de to break the peace on that single pretence*; though it *not be denied but that the czar had punctually observed* *eaty in every other respect*.

HE sultan, however, was desirous of being satisfied whe-*he czar had really any forces in Poland or not*, and for *purpose sent an Aga into that kingdom*, to make the *enquiries*; but this officer being entirely in the *Swet-* *terest*, made such a report as he was instructed to do. *Sultan having about this time private intelligence of the* *vizir's being bribed to the Russian party*, immediately *ed him*, and gave the seal to *Selyman bashaw*; after

*The Turks
declare
war a-
gainst the
czar.*

which, thinking he had sufficient grounds to justify his conduct, he declared war against the czar, and ordered the two *Muscovite* ambassadors, and all their retinue, to be imprisoned in the castle of the *Seven Towers*. Orders were likewise dispatched to all the bashaws to assemble their troops with the utmost expedition; and the sultan, with his whole court, removed to *Adrianople*, in order to put himself at the head of his army. He was scarcely arrived there, when he was informed that a solemn embassy from king *Augustus* and the republic of *Poland*, consisting of near 300 persons, with the palatine of *Massovia* at their head, was coming to him. Being now determined to conduct king *Charles* into *Sweden* in a very grand manner, and to place *Stanislaus* on the throne of *Poland*, he ordered the whole embassy to be seized on the road, and conducted to prison.

*An accom-
modation
takes place.*

NOTWITHSTANDING these vigorous preparations, *Ali-Comourgi*, the sultan's favourite, being in the czar's interest, and king *Augustus* having, by a secret correspondence, brought over the khan of *Tartary*, public affairs seemed to take a different turn; and they having convinced the sultan, that the aga, whom he had sent into *Poland*, had been bribed by the *Swedish* faction to make a false report, he seemed disposed to hearken to proposals of accommodation. After several negotiations, the czar's plenipotentiaries undertook, that their master's troops should really evacuate *Poland*. On the other hand, the sultan agreed, that the king of *Sweden* should be immediately sent out of the *Turkish* dominions; but stipulated, that the *Russian* and *Polish* ambassadors should be responsible for the safety of his person, and that he should raise no commotions in his passage. The serasquier of *Bender* was thereupon ordered to acquaint the king of *Sweden* with this resolution, and to signify to him, that his immediate compli-

*The king of
Sweden
refuses to
depart
from Tur-
ky.*

ance with it was expected. *Charles*, determined not to depart, told the bashaw, he must first have wherewithal to pay his debts, and provide for his journey; and the bashaw asking how much would be requisite; the king replied at random, a thousand purses (A). The bashaw, having informed the *Porte* of his demand, had twelve hundred purses remitted to him, but with express orders not to deliver them until the moment of the king's departure: but *Charles*, and his treasurer *Groteusen*, having found means to prevail upon the bashaw to deliver the money, he still persisted in his resolution of continuing where he was. The khan of *Tartary*, who was to conduct him on his journey, had received the same orders as the bashaw, with respect to delivering the money; so that both of them were obliged to write to the *Porte* in

(A) About 100,000l. sterling.

their

their own exculpation. Hereupon they received a positive order to drive *Charles* out by force, or to bring him dead or alive to *Adrianople*; but he continuing obstinate in his resolution, they were obliged to put their orders in execution, and this occasioned the famous action of *Bender*, wherein the king of *Sweden* exhibited greater proofs of rashness than bravery, by opposing an army of 26,000 men, with only the officers of his household, and about 300 *Swedes*, as we have related more particularly in the history of *Sweden*. His unaccountable behaviour at Bender.

THESE negotiations with the *Turks*, did not however impede the military operations in the *Swedish* provinces in *Germany*. The *Saxon* troops made several motions, as well to inclose the *Swedes*, as to facilitate the junction of the *Danes* and *Russians*; and the czar pursued general *Steinbock* as far as *Altena*, which place he had laid in ashes, in revenge for the *Danes* having destroyed *Stade*. From thence he sent general *Bour* with 4000 men to attack a body of *Swedes* who defended the bridge of *Hollingstadt*. The *Swedes* made an obstinate resistance; but at length the *Russians* drove them back into the village, took several of them prisoners, and afterwards destroyed the bridges. *Steinbock* began now to be sensible of his error in taking the route of *Holstein*, and in order to prevent still worse consequences, he intended to re-pass the *Eyder* and get into *Pomerania*; but receiving intelligence that the *Russian* cavalry was in full march against him, he changed his design, and intrenched himself between *Fredericstadt*, *Husum*, and *Tonningen*. The czar, unwilling to lose the present favourable opportunity, put himself at the head of 5 batallions of his guards and a few dragoons, and on the 12th of *February* attacked the *Swedes* in the intrenchments they had thrown up before *Fredericstadt*: the contest was warm, and for a long time doubtful; but at length the *Swedes* were obliged to retire to the main body of the army, and the garrison of the town fled with great precipitation. Operations in Germany.

THE czar continued the pursuit; and after taking part of their baggage with about 300 prisoners, returned to *Fredericstadt*, where he remained all that night, with an intent to attack the whole army as soon as he could be properly reinforced: but *Steinbock* being apprehensive of this, obtained leave to march his army into *Tonningen*, which immediately put an end to the campaign; it not being a proper season of the year either to besiege or bombard the place. The *Russian* troops went into quarters, which were so pro-

perly chosen, that they could easily prevent the *Suedes* from passing the *Eyder*.

The czar sets out for Russia. THE czar's presence being now become necessary at home, he left the command of the army to the king of *Denmark*, assuring him that he was going to find employment for the *Suedes* on the side of *Finland*; and having in his journey had interviews with the elector of *Hanover*, and the king of *Prussia*, he at length arrived at *Riga*, where he found the czarina delivered of a princess, to whom he gave the name of *Maria Petrowna*. After a short stay there, the czar set out for *Petersburgh*, and having assembled a fleet of about 300 ships, he embarked in the beginning of *May* with 13,000 men, and landed at *Helsingfors* on the coast of *Finland*. A body of *Swedish* troops under the command of general *Lubecker*, were posted there; but not daring to oppose the czar's landing, they contented themselves with setting fire to the barracks, and retiring to *Abo*. *Peter*, not thinking himself strong enough to attack them there, established a large magazine at *Bergo*, and soon afterwards returned to *Petersburg*, to get a sufficient reinforcement to enable him to push his conquests in that province.

Equips a great fleet, makes a descent on Finland, WHILE the czar was thus employed, the vice-admiral put to sea with an intent to destroy some *Swedish* ships that lay before *Helsingfors*, and greatly obstructed the czar's communication with his army by water: but the admiral's ship striking on a sand, he was obliged to set it on fire to prevent its falling into the hands of the enemy; and the other captains having also managed but badly, the enterprise proved unsuccessful. This however did not deter the czar from returning with his reinforcement. He put to sea with twenty frigates, and sailed in quest of the *Swedish* squadron; but being informed that they were so advantageously posted as to render it difficult to attack them with any probability of success, he readily abandoned this design, and proceeded to join his army which was then at *Schrendo*, about five leagues from *Helsingfors*. The *Russians*, being now augmented to 20,000 foot, and 4000 horse, provided with a good train of artillery, forced the passage of *Carelsflow* (A), which was defended by 800 *Suedes*, and in a few days after arrived at *Abo*, which they found totally abandoned. A large quantity of provisions which the enemy had left behind was of service to the *Russian* troops: but what the czar esteemed a great booty, was a considerable num-

(A) In the beginning of *September*,

ber of books, which he immediately sent to the library he was forming at *Petersburg*, whither he himself repaired soon after, leaving orders with his generals to follow the *Swedish* army which had retired to *Thavaustus*.

THOUGH this was not a place of any great strength, the *Swedes* defended it for some time very bravely, and after quitting it, and throwing some of their artillery in the water, they took possession of *Pulkona*. The *Russians* still continued the pursuit; but on reconnoitring this post, and considering the great difficulty of forcing it, they endeavoured to attack the enemy in their rear. To this purpose they made several floats of timber, got together all the boats and pontoons they could, and with about 7000 men, commanded by general *Apraxin*, *Butterlin*, and *Czernichev*, crossed several deep morasses which the *Swedes* had deemed impassable. The *Swedish* general *Arnfeldt*, having notice of their design, sent a detachment to oppose their passage; but a thick fog aiding their operations, they luckily accomplished it. Prince *Galitzin* then attacked the *Swedish* horse, and after an obstinate engagement the *Russians* were driven back almost into the water; but their other wing charged the enemy's infantry with such fury that they were obliged to retire: by this time the remainder of the *Russians* were come up, when they altogether returned to the fight, and having driven the *Swedes* from their entrenchments, obliged them to retreat with great precipitation to *Norest* and *Tamersfort*. This victory cost the czar a great number of men; and the season of the year being now pretty far advanced, he ordered *Thavaustus* to be properly fortified, to prevent the enterprizes of the *Swedes*, till he should have a better opportunity of pursuing his conquests in that country.

WHILE the *Russians* were thus employed in *Finland*, the troops in *Holstein* and *Pomerania* were equally successful. The king of *Denmark* had blocked up *Tönningen*; and general *Steinbock*, after maintaining himself there as long as possible, was at last forced, thro' hunger and want, to surrender himself and his troops prisoners of war. The *Danes* had likewise, in conjunction with the *Russians* and *Saxons*, made themselves masters of the isle of *Rugen*, with very little loss, and were now preparing to form the siege of *Stralsund*. On the other hand, prince *Menzikoff* had for some time blocked up *Stetin* with an army of 24,000 men; but as the king of *Prussia* seemed very desirous of having that town, the prince and he came to an agreement that *Stetin* and the rest of *Upper Swedish Pomerania* should be sequestered into his hands. The czar was not satisfied with this treaty at first: but the

king of *Prussia* gave him such good reasons for it, that soon afterwards acquiesced.

Fruitless

congress at Brunswick.

THE emperor and the other belligerent powers at last agreed to hold a congress at *Brunswick*, and the regency of *Stockholm* had also consented to send plenipotentiaries to treat of a general peace; but the czar, who desired nothing more ardently than such a peace as might confirm his conquests, foreseeing the little success that this important undertaking was like to be attended with, and adhering to the well known maxim of making peace sword-in-hand, took all necessary measures during the winter to pursue his designs upon *Finland*.

Petersburgh

peopled and improved.

IN the mean time *Peter* was very assiduous in establishing his new city of *Petersburgh*. He had transplanted thither upwards of 1000 families from *Moscow*, and offered very great advantages to all foreigners who would settle there: he likewise published an order thro' all his dominions, declaring that all goods which had been usually sent to *Arbangel*, should, for the future, be sent to *Petersburgh*, paying the accustomed duties; and at the same time, the more effectually to secure and increase the trade and commerce of his subjects, he published a declaration, that if the regency of *Sweden* should stop any vessels coming to his dominions, he would prevent all ships from entering any of their ports; to which end he ordered a great number of gallies to be equipped at *Cronstot*, *Petersburgh*, *Reval*, and other places.

1714.

PRINCE *Galitzin* continued to harass the *Swedes* after the battle of *Pulkona*, and drove them from place to place, till he had laid the greatest part of *Finland* under contribution. At length their general, *Arnfeldt*, having recruited his army with a great number of peasants, entrenched himself near *Lapplar*, within a quarter of a mile of the *Wasa*. There the

The Rus-

sians com-

pleat the

conquest of

Finland.

Russians attacked him again, and the *Swedes* sustained the first onset so bravely, that the assailants were repulsed; but they no sooner rallied and returned to the charge, than the peasants took to their heels, and drew most of the *Swedish* soldiers after them. By this victory the czar became master of the whole province of *Finland*; soon after which he published a manifesto, setting forth, that as he had often proposed an equitable peace to *Sweden*, and that crown had continually rejected his offers, they could blame no body but themselves, for any part of their calamities.

IN the beginning of *June*, colonel *Schubajoff*, governor of *Wiburg* in *Finland*, was ordered with a detachment of 1000 men, and a sufficient train of artillery, to attack *Nyssa*, the capital fortress of the province of *Savolaxia*. In obedience

pliance to this order he appeared before the place on the 8th Nyflot at-
of June, and posted his troops on a little island called *tacked,*
Malm, from whence he drove a body of *Swedes* who had
lodged themselves there to dispute his passage. Having erec-
ted proper batteries, he began on the 20th to fire upon the
works, and continued so to do till the 28th, when, a suffi-
cient breach being made, he summoned the *Swedish* gover-
nor to surrender; but this last, considering that the approach
to the town was defended by a very rapid stream which ran
close by the walls, declared he would hold out till the last
extremity; but when he saw the *Russians* preparing floats for
passing the river, and that they seemed determined to con-
quer the place, whatever it might cost them, he at last *and taken;*
agreed to a capitulation, and the next day surrendered the
place.

THE *Swedes* being apprehensive that the *Russians* would
make a descent upon the isle of *Oeland*, sent admiral *Wal-*
rang to oppose them. The forces under his command gain-
ed several advantages on the coast of *Abo*, where they sunk
some *Russian* vessels, took about 200 prisoners, and seized on
the port of *Teuerivin*. The *Russian* fleet was then at *Reval*,
and consisted of 30 ships of the line, several frigates, and
yachts, and about 100 galleys, which the *Swedes* intended
to destroy in the port: but the czar, who acted as rear-ad-
miral, receiving intelligence of this design, desired admiral
Apraxin to send him with 25 galleys to reconnoitre the enemy,
which he accordingly did, and observed the *Swedish* admiral
Walrang, with six ships of the line and three frigates, station-
ed on the coast, and the vice-admiral *Lillis* with several bomb-
vessels steering towards the south-west, in order to accom-
plish the destruction of the *Russian* fleet at *Reval*. The
czar sent immediately notice of this to his admiral, who
thereupon joined him early the next morning.

AFTER some deliberation, it was resolved to detach twenty
galleys under the commodore *Ismaiowitz*, to endeavour to
pass behind the enemy's fleet as near the coast as they could.
This was immediately executed, tho' the *Swedish* admiral
kept a very hot fire upon them all the time; but the galleys
were at such a distance, that the enemy's shot could not hurt
them. Fifteen other galleys steered the same course imme-
diately after, with the like success; upon which *Walrang*
made a signal for the vice-admiral to return and join him:
but the *Russians*, determined to force their way through the
enemy's fleet, bore down upon them, with such good or-
der and success, that they lost but one galley in this hazar-
dous

dous enterprize, which had the misfortune to touch and stick upon a sand.

The Russian fleet obtains a victory over the Swedes, ALL the fleet having thus passed, commodore *Ismaiowitz* gave notice that he had blocked up the enemy's rear admiral *Ehrenschill*; whereupon admiral *Apraxin* drew his ships in order of battle, summoned the *Swedes* to surrender, and upon his refusal, attacked him so briskly that the *Russians* obtained a complete victory; the *Swedish* admiral, and all his ships being taken or destroyed.

and take the island of Oeland.

THE first consequence of this victory was the taking of the island of *Oeland*, where the czar landed with 16,000 men. He intended likewise to transport thither his forces which were encamped near *Abo*, in order to attack *Stockholm*; but the season of the year not permitting him to execute so important an enterprise, he took the route of *Reval*, and from thence returned to *Petersburg*, where he made a triumphant entry. Soon after, the czar went on board his own sloop, where he hoisted the flag of a vice admiral, and having received the compliments of the nobility on this occasion, he accepted of a magnificent entertainment at the palace of prince *Menzikoff*; and after dinner took particular notice of his prisoner *M. Ehrenschill*, saying to the company present, "Here you see a brave and faithful servant of his master, who hath made himself worthy of the highest reward at his hands, and who shall always have my favour as long as he is with me, tho' he has killed me many a brave *Russian*. I forgive it you," (added he to the admiral with a smile) and "you may depend on my good will."

The king of Sweden returns to Stockholm,

SUCH was the situation of affairs when *Charles XII.* returned to his dominions, where he was complimented by all the neighbouring princes, who were desirous to bring him, if possible, to listen to terms of peace: but he declined giving any answer to their proposals, which were, that he should confirm the treaty for the sequestration of *Stetin*, and forbear all hostilities against the *Danes* and *Saxons* in the empire; whilst his *Prussian* majesty would engage on his part, that the kings of *Poland* and *Denmark* should not attack *Swedish Pomerania*. His silence herein was looked upon as a plain indication of his intending to renew the war in *Lower Saxony*, in order to recover the dutchy of *Bremen* which the king of *Denmark* had lately ceded to the elector of *Hanover*, and to restore the ducal house of *Holstein*; in the prosecution of which design he was assisted with money by the *French*, and with troops by the landgrave of *Hesse Cassel*, on account of his son's having married the princess *Ulrica Eleonora*.

and rejects all proposals of peace.

HEREUPON

HEREUPON the king of *Prussia* assembled his forces, in order to be in readiness to secure *Stetin*, and preserve the peace of *Lower Saxony*, in concert with the house of *Brunswick* and other princes interested therein : while on the other hand the czar declared, that as he had withdrawn his troops from *Pomerania* upon the pressing instances of the king of *Prussia*, he was now determined to send a powerful army to assist his allies in reducing the fortrefs of *Stralsund* and *Wismar*, and driving the *Swedes* entirely out of *Germany*, unless king *Charles* would accept the propositions which had been made to him.

WHILE these military preparations were carrying on, the great reputation of the czar brought an ambassador to his court from the khan of the *Uzbek Tartars*, who arrived at *Petersburg* on the 27th of *May*. The next day he had an audience, and after the accustomed ceremonies he opened his commission, which consisted of three articles : first, that his prince and master, the khan *Hadgi Mabemet Bahadir*, rejoiced at the success of his czarish majesty, and recommended himself to his protection. Secondly, that he desired the czar would enjoin his vassal the *Tartarian* khan *Ajuga* to live in peace and good neighbourhood with him ; instead of which he seemed inclinable to stir up the *Tartars*, of *China*, and others his neighbours against him ; and for which he offered to furnish the czar with 5000 soldiers who should be always ready to march, when and where he pleased. And thirdly, as a farther testimony of his friendship for the czar, he offered him a free passage through his dominions for the yearly caravans to *China*, and proposed to enter into a treaty of commerce with him. This last article was particularly advantageous to the *Russians*, as their caravans had hitherto been obliged to traverse the whole extent of *Siberia*, and took up a year in their journey ; whereas, by this permission, they might accomplish it through good roads, in about four months.

AFTER the audience, the czar invited the ambassador to dine with him the next day at *Cronslot*, and directed his great chancellor, the count *Golostkin*, to accompany him on board a snow, while the czar went in his own yacht, called the *Casbarine*. They accordingly set sail early in the morning with a gentle breeze ; but had not proceeded above two leagues, when, by the unskillfulness of the *Russian* captain, the snow got among the flats, and soon after struck on the sand. The mariners worked incessantly till seven in the evening in order to get her off, but a violent storm which arose rendered their attempts utterly ineffectual ; and the storm continuing,

tinuing, all their boats were beat to pieces, and every one looked upon their destruction as inevitable. Towards morning, however, the tempest abated, and the vessel being towed gently out of the flats, came at last to an anchor, to the infinite satisfaction of the ambassador, who had never beheld such a scene before, and also of the czar himself, who during the whole night had expressed great concern for him.

The czar
makes
great im-
provements
at Peters-
burg.

ABOUT this time a scheme was proposed for building a bridge over the *Neva*, in order to join *Petersburg* with the continent of *Ingria*, to which there was no passage but with boats and oars : but the czar was so far from approving this project, that he even prohibited the use of oars, and strictly ordered that no person should cross that river but with sails. Though this order was the occasion of many lives being lost, yet it answered the great designs of the czar, in teaching his subjects the art of navigation, whether they would or not. He employed a great part of his time this year, in fortifying the citadel, erecting public edifices, and making many other improvements in his new city of *Petersburg* : he ordered that all the houses should be built with bricks and covered with tiles ; and, to procure the best artificers from all parts of *Europe*, he offered them their houses rent free, and an absolute exemption from all kind of taxes for fourteen years.

Institutes
the order of
St. Catharine,

TOWARDS the latter end of this year, he instituted the new order of *St. Catharine*, in honour of his royal consort, and to perpetuate the memory of her love to him in his distressed condition on the banks of the river *Pruth*. He invested her with full power to bestow it on such of her own sex as she should think proper. The ensigns of this order are, a broad white ribband wore over the right shoulder, with a medal of *St Catharine* adorned with precious stones, and the motto, *Out of love and fidelity*.

1715.
and re-
forms
many ab-
uses in the
state.

THE czar now made it his study to discover the causes of several disorders, which, during his absence, had crept into the public administration, whereby his army had suffered greatly, many thousands of his artificers were reduced to the greatest misery and distress, the trade and commerce of his dominions had very sensibly decayed, and his revenues were in the utmost confusion. To this end, in the beginning of the year 1715, he established a grand court of inquisition under the direction of general *Dolgorucki*, which affected most of the great men in the kingdom, who were now obliged to render a very strict account of their conduct. The great admiral *Apraxin*, prince *Menzikoff*, M. *Korsakoff* vice governor of *Petersburg*, M. *Kikin* president, and M. *Sinawin* first commissioner of the admiralty ; *Welkonski* and *Aponchin*, two of the

the principal senators, with an incredible number of other officers of inferior rank, were summoned to the tribunal. *Apraxin*, *Menzikoff* and *Bruce*, alledged in their defence, that as the commands of his majesty, and the exigencies of public affairs, had obliged them to spend the greatest part of their time in the field, they were so far unable to account for the conduct of their unfaithful servants, that they were almost wholly ignorant of the transactions of their own private families; and as this excuse appeared very probable, the czar, out of personal esteem for them, punished them only in their purses, by mulcting them severely for the faults that had been committed in their several departments. The rest of the delinquents, whose conduct could not be justified, underwent much greater punishments; *Korsakoff* publicly suffered the knout; *Wolkonski* and *Apouchin* did the same, and had besides red-hot irons drawn across their tongues: some, of an inferior rank, were chastised with batoags, and others were banished into *Siberia* and other remote places, after forfeiting their estates. This severity was productive of very beneficial consequences, and shewed the czar to be a man of no less genius and sagacity in discovering the corruption of his ministers, than of justice in punishing them for it, and love to his subjects in preventing the bad effects of its longer continuance.

THE armies having now taken the field, the king of *Prussia* published a manifesto to justify the sequestration of *Swedes and disst Pomerania*, and the march of his army to prevent the danger that threatened his new dominions, and the whole *German empire*. In the mean time the count de *Croissy* arrived at *Berlin*, to offer the *French king's* mediation for reconciling the differences between the king's of *Prussia* and *Sweden*; which the czar being informed of, declared that he would not on his part accept of any other mediation for the peace of the north, than that of the king of *Great Britain*, and the states general. Hereupon the *French king's* offer was rejected, and each party prepared for a vigorous prosecution of the war.

THE northern allies having sent their forces into *Pomerania*, the czar, towards the latter end of *June*, sailed with his fleet towards *Gotland*, with an intent to shut up the passages from *Stockholm* into that province, in which he happily succeeded: for the army that was in *Finland*, having made a shew of marching to the north of *Sweden*, the troops in the neighbourhood of *Stockholm* remained near the capital, which greatly facilitated the czar's operations. Having accomplished this design, the *Russian* fleet sailed about the middle

middle of September from *Gotland* to the coasts of *Sundermânia*, and landed 15,000 men at *Jevel*, about eight leagues from the *Swedish* army, whilst a body of horse from *Finland* went round the *Bothnic* gulph, to penetrate into the northern provinces of *Sweden*, which put the whole kingdom into a terrible consternation. Mean while the czar dispatched general *Sheremetow* with 15,000 men into *Pomerania*, in order to strengthen the allied army, and put an end to the tedious siege of *Stralsund*, which accordingly surrendered about the latter end of *December*; the king of *Sweden* having narrowly escaped being taken, by getting off in a small bark, with only ten persons, and landing at *Isted* in *Scandinavia*, from whence he went to *Carelsroon*, where he continued all the winter, making new levies to reinforce his army. Prince *Galitzin* had likewise great success in *Finland*, having surpris'd the fortress of *Ula*, and obliged the *Swedish* troops to pass the *Kimi* and *Torne*; so that there remained but about 400 *Swedes* in the whole province, and they were shut up in the castle of *Cajaneberg*, situated on an inaccessible rock.

*Stralsund
surrenders
to the czar.*

THE czar having returned to *Petersburg* from his naval expedition, devoted his whole attention to the finishing the fortifications and improvements of that city. On the 22d of *October* he had the satisfaction of seeing a son born to the czarowitz: but the joy on this happy occasion was soon damped by the death of the amiable and illustrious prince's that bore him; for what with the brutal behaviour of her husband, and the unskilful treatment of those who attended her, she languished about six days after her delivery, and then died; having taken a very tender and affectionate leave of the czar, and recommended her two infant children to his care and protection. The day after her interment, the czarina *Catharine* was also safely delivered of a prince; and the public rejoicings on this occasion were celebrated for eight days successively with the utmost splendor and magnificence.

*The wife
of the
czarowitz
delivered
of a son.*

*The czar-
rina deli-
vered of a
prince.*

1716. In the beginning of the next year, the czar, being apprehensive the *Tartars* might, at the instigation of the *Turks*, intermeddle in the affairs of *Poland*, thought proper, by way of precaution, to order general *Wiesbach*, with six regiments of dragoons, to march to *Woronetz* on the *Don*, in order to watch their motions. On the 14th of *January*, the czarina dowager *Murava Matweowna*, relict of the late czar *Theodore Alexowitz*, died at *Petersburg*, and was buried with great funeral pomp: on which occasion the czar first abolished the ancient custom of immoderate weeping and vociferous lamentation. She had indeed been generally reported dead for many years; because she never stirred from her apartments

after

after the premature death of her consort, to whom she had been married but one month, and was seldom seen by any but her own servants.

THE *Swedes* having repassed the *Baltic* after the loss of *Stralsund*, and threatened to make the king of *Denmark's* dominions the seat of the northern war, the czar found his presence necessary in *Lower Saxony* in order to concert measures for the assistance of that prince; and having accordingly set out from *Petersburg* with the czarina his consort in the beginning of *February*, they arrived at *Dantzick* on the 29th of that month, where they continued till the latter end of *April*. While the czar remained in this city, he concluded a marriage between the princess *Catharine* his niece, and duke *Charles Leopold* of *Mecklenburg Schwerin*, which was solemnised on the 19th of *April* with great pomp and splendor. A few days after, the czar set out for *Königsberg*, the capital of *Prussia*, where he gave audience to the famous *Persian* ambassador who had lately arrived there from *France*. During the czar's absence from *Dantzick*, he ordered certain articles to be exhibited to the magistrates of that city, prohibiting all commerce between them and *Sweden*, and insisting on their furnishing him with four privateers of twelve guns and fifty men each, and maintaining them during the war, or paying him 200,000 rixdollars in money. These articles met with great opposition: but the czar signified, that, unless they were agreed to, he should declare against the city, and treat its inhabitants as enemies. However, by the mediation of the king of *Poland*, the rigour of these articles was mitigated to a prohibition of all commerce with *Sweden* during the war, the payment of 100,000 rixdollars, and the maintenance of four ships which his *Polish* majesty undertook to furnish. This matter being settled, the czar set out for *Stetin*, whither the king of *Prussia* had gone privately to meet him, in order to confer on the present situation of affairs in the north, and particularly on the side of *Denmark*. These two princes agreed in opposing the progress of the *Swedish* arms in the dominions of the *Danes*, but did not think proper to assist the king of *Denmark* to make conquests on the *Swedes*, because, as they were already so much weakened by the loss of *Finland*, *Livonia*, and *Pomerania*, it was to be feared that, in case any further attempts should be made against them, other powers would arm in their defence. From *Stetin* the czar went to *Stralsund*, and from thence he passed into *Mecklenburg*, where the allies had pushed the siege of *Wismar* with so much vigour, that it at last capitulated. He had formed a design of putting the duke of *Mecklenburg* in possession

possession of that fortress, that the *Russians* might thereby always have a safe retreat for their ships on that side of the *Baltic Sea*; and had actually ordered a body of twenty-six hundred troops to advance that way: but before they could arrive, the place surrendered, and the czar's intention was defeated; which so greatly chagrined him, that from hence may be dated the epoch of several memorable events, and particularly the misunderstanding that afterwards happened between him and the court of *Hanover*.

Soon after, the czar had an interview with the king of *Denmark* at *Hamburg*, when it was agreed to make a descent upon *Schonen*, in order to oblige the king of *Sweden* to quit *Norway*, into which kingdom he had already penetrated with an army of twenty thousand men, and was advancing with all expedition to *Christiana* the capital. The czar seemed very forward in this expedition, and having promised to join the *Danish* fleet at *Copenhagen*, he assembled forty-five gallies, and a body of eight hundred men. Taking the command of the fleet upon himself, he sailed for *Lubeck*, and arrived in the road of *Copenhagen* on the 17th of *July*. The king of *Denmark* received the czar and czarina with great magnificence, and during their stay there, which was near three months, entertained them with all manner of diversions. About this time the *English* and *Dutch* squadrons under the command of Sir *John Norris*, and real admiral *Grave*, arrived at *Copenhagen*; whereupon several councils were held, in which it was proposed that they should join the *Russian* and *Danish* fleets in the intended attack upon *Schonen*, and that the czar should have the chief command of the expedition. These proposals being agreed to, the czar hoisted his imperial flag on the 16th of *August*, and after receiving a royal salute from the whole fleet on this occasion, he gave the signal for sailing: but being soon afterwards informed that the *Swedish* fleet was gone to *Carelsroon* for provisions, he returned again to *Copenhagen*. Hereupon several councils of war were held, in which every necessary disposition for this important enterprize was settled, and the troops ordered to hold themselves in readiness to embark; when, on a sudden, these orders were countermanded, and this grand project, which had for some time been the general object of speculation, was laid aside; the czar having declared that he thought the season too far advanced to attempt it, and that it would be more advisable to postpone it till the ensuing spring. This strange alteration in the czar's sentiments and conduct could not fail of being highly disagreeable to the king of *Denmark*, who immediately published a memorial, stating the
several

*The czar
arrives at
Copenha-
gen.*

*His con-
duct there.*

several facts and circumstances relating to this intended expedition, and flatly charging the czar with being the sole occasion of its delay; to which *Peter* did not think fit to make any answer; but having reembarked his forces, and given *He de-* them orders to march through *Pomerania* into *Poland*, he *parts* took his leave of the *Danish* court, and proceeded with the *from* czarina to *Lubeck*. *thence.*

THE czar's behaviour in this affair appears at first fight very unaccountable, as the enterprize was certainly well projected, and, had it been carried into execution, must have reduced the king of *Sweden* to the necessity of making peace upon such terms as the allies should propose: but as we have already seen how far he intended to act in behalf of the king of *Denmark* by the conference between him and the king of *Prussia* at *Stetin*, so he was induced to act in this manner from a still stronger motive. Baron *Goertz*, who was now *Projects of* become the prime minister and chief favourite of the king *baron* of *Sweden*, had projected a strange revolution in the affairs of *Goertz.* *Europe*, by concluding a separate peace between the czar and that prince, upon a plan so extremely flattering to their ambition that they could neither of them resist it. As *Goertz* was sensible that the czar could not be brought into this scheme without being permitted to keep all the provinces he had conquered on the north-east sides of the *Baltic*, that minister endeavoured to persuade the king his master, that he would be amply recompensed for the loss of those places which he was not then in any condition to recover, by having the honour to replace *Stanislaus* on the throne of *Poland*, setting the crown of *England* on the head of the pretended son of *James II.* and restoring the duke of *Holslein* to the possession of his inheritance; in short, that there was scarce any enterprize, however arduous, which might not be undertaken and accomplished by the united forces of *Russia* and *Sweden*. As the height of *Charles's* ambition was to become sole arbiter of *Europe*, nothing could be more plausible for attaining that point than the present scheme; and as the czar had lately taken great disgust at the allies on account of his disappointment in the affair of *Wismar*, *Goertz*, with the assistance of prince *Menzikoff*, and doctor *Areskine* the czar's physician, found it not difficult to bring this monarch into his project; though *Peter* afterwards took great pains to clear himself of any such imputation.

DURING these transactions, the affairs of *Poland* fell into *Intestine* great confusion: a new confederacy was set on foot by *Gu-* *broils in* *szki* lieutenant of the palatine of *Sandomir*, who insisted *Poland.* upon the dismissal of the *Saxon* troops, and declared they would

*The czar
is chosen
mediator,*

would listen to no accommodation till that was done obliged *Augustus* to request the mediation of the czar having appointed prince *Dolgorucki* for that purpose, and several skirmishes between the contending parties, brought them to a treaty, and several congresses were to compromise the differences, but to no purpose. then sent general *Ronne* into *Poland*, with a considerable number of troops, to support that party which should seem inclinable to peace. But the arrival of these troops only to create fresh disturbances, the *Poles* positively declaring that they would not enter into any treaty, till prince *Dolgorucki* should order the *Russian* forces to retire out of the kingdom; to which he answered, that these troops should march into *Poland* in consequence of an agreement made at *Dantzick*, that the czar should be at liberty to send into *Poland*, in order to act against such as should disturb publick tranquillity; and that as the *Poles* had chosen the czar for a mediator, it did not become them to prescribe to him, but they ought to conform themselves to the measures as he should think most expedient for the establishment of peace, which he advised them to do without farther delay; promising, that, so soon as this was done, he would immediately order the *Russian* troops to withdraw. To this the confederates replied, that a mediator ought not to make use of arms, but rather to hear with patience the allegations of the contending parties, and to endeavour to reconcile them. They were then given to understand, that though what they had alledged might be true with respect to private parties, yet that princes were generally adopted far different maxims; and *Dolgorucki* declared in plain terms, that his master's troops should continue in *Poland* till a treaty was actually concluded and signed. Hereupon several warm debates arose, and the deputies of the confederacy absolutely refused to proceed any farther in the treaty, until the prince should put an order into their hands for the retreat of the *Russians*; which he declined to do, the conferences broke up: But by the interposition of the imperial ambassador and the pope's nuncio, the contending parties met again the next day, when after much altercation, the deputies were prevailed upon to desist from their demand, and to accept a declaration from *Augustus* that he would use his utmost endeavour with the czar for the retreat of his forces immediately after the conclusion of the peace. Prince *Dolgorucki* then communicated a plan for the suspension of arms; but it not being approved of, king *Augustus* declared he would immediately set out for the army. *T*
resolution

resolution alarmed the confederates, who, after some difficulty, agreed to the suspension, which was accordingly published. These previous obstacles being thus removed, the and at negotiation went on a pace, and it was at length agreed by last ac- all parties, that the king might, if he pleased, be out of the commodates kingdom for three months in the year; that the Saxon ministers the disse- should no ways intermeddle with, or concern themselves in the affairs of Poland; that the king might keep a Saxon guard, who were not to exceed the number of twelve hundred men, and to be maintained at his own expence; that the commander of this guard should take an oath of fidelity to the king and the republic; and that no foreign troops should be brought into the kingdom, nor the Saxon guard be augmented by any new levies on any pretence whatsoever. Thus these intestine commotions, which had subsisted so long, were at last amicably adjusted, and the Poles promised themselves a lasting series of tranquility from this treaty of pacification.

FROM Lubeck the czar proceeded to *Hamburg*, and from thence to the *Hague*, where he continued till the 4th of 1717: April. During this time a discovery was made in *England* of the intrigues of baron *Goertz* and count *Gyllemburg*, in order The czar goes to the Hague, to excite a rebellion in *Great Britain*, in favour of the pretender to that crown. *Gyllemburg* was arrested at *London*, and *Goertz* at the *Hague*, and by their papers which were seized, it appeared that the project was to have been executed in *March*, and that the king of *Sweden* was to make a descent in *England* with ten thousand foot, four thousand horse, a large train of artillery, and a sufficient quantity of arms for twelve thousand men more: it likewise appeared that the czar had been made acquainted with this design by the means of doctor *Areskine* his physician, and that the *Swedes* were in great hopes of procuring his assistance. This last part of the discovery occasioned the czar to send a long memorial to the court of *Great Britain*, wherein he endeavoured to remove the suspicions which that court had entertained of his conduct in this affair, and gave them the strongest assurances of his friendship; and as there was no positive proof to contradict this memorial, the king of *Great Britain* contented himself with answering it in general terms: though it cannot be denied that if the enterprize had not been so opportunely discovered, the czar would, in all probability, have been very deeply concerned in it.

FROM *Holland*, the czar set out for *France*; not so much to gratify his curiosity and boundless thirst after knowledge, as and from thence to to accomplish certain political views which he entertained at *France*.

Where he concludes a league of friendship with Lewis XIV.

this time, it must be confessed ; and which were not strictly agreeable to his engagements with his allies. To this purpose he offered to send a numerous army into the heart of the empire, if the *French* king would pay him certain large subsidies for so doing : but however agreeable this proposal might be to the court of *France*, they found it impracticable, without breaking the treaty of alliance concluded with *Great Britain* so lately as the 4th of *January* in this year ; and therefore it was rejected. But before the czar's departure from *Paris*, he entered into a treaty of friendship with *France*, wherein the king of *Prussia* was included, and in consequence of which the czar promised to withdraw his forces from *Mecklenburg*. King *George I.* notwithstanding what had passed in relation to the *Swedish* conspiracy, was very desirous of preserving a good understanding with the czar, and therefore ordered admiral *Norris* and Mr. *Whitworth* to wait upon him at *Amsterdam*, in his return from *Paris*, to assure him that his intention of withdrawing his troops out of the empire had afforded his *Britannic* majesty great satisfaction, and that he was willing to resume the treaty of commerce which had lately been proposed, and to facilitate the conclusion of it to the utmost of his power. But the czar having, as a preliminary article, insisted on a *British* squadron of 15 men of war being sent to act against the *Swedes*, under the order of the *Russian* admirals, which the court of *Great Britain* did not think proper to comply with, the proposed treaty was no farther proceeded in.

A cessation of arms between the czar and the king of Sweden.

SOON after the czar's return to *Amsterdam*, baron *Goertz* was set at liberty, and had several conferences with the *Swedish* resident at *Lutphen*, who was admitted with great secrecy to an interview with the czar and his minister at *Loo* ; and having undertaken to accommodate the differences between the *Russians* and the *Swedes* within three months, the czar engaged to suspend all operations against the king of *Sweden* for that time.

The czar returns to Petersburg. Great disorders in the administration.

THE czar, being now resolved to return home, departed from *Amsterdam*, and having passed through *Berlin* and *Danzick*, and settled several affairs there, he arrived at *Petersburg* on the 17th of *October*, after an absence of sixteen months. Here he found the popular clamour so loud against the public administration, that he devoted the whole of his time to enquire into, and redress the several disorders which had arisen in his absence, and assisted at the senate every morning by four o'clock, to hear and examine the accusations and defence of the parties concerned : but finding that a great length of time would necessarily be taken up in the conviction of those

those who stood accused of male-administration, and that their crimes in general were of a much blacker nature than what he at first imagined, he established an extraordinary court of justice for the trial and punishment of these offenders, which was directed to pronounce sentence without favour or partiality, and to ground its decisions upon the known principles of equity and common sense.

IN the month of *December*, *M. Webber*, the *British* resident, arrived at *Petersburg*, and signified to the *Russian* ministry, that the king his master could not help being alarmed at the czar's interview with baron *Goertz* at *Loos*, and at the appearances of his having employed that nobleman to procure a separate peace with the king of *Sweden*. They, at first, stiffly denied the interview; but, by a chain of concurring circumstances, were at length obliged to acknowledge it. About this time the duke of *Ormond* arrived at *Petersburg*, with one *Jernigan*, an *English Roman catholic*. His design was, not only to negotiate a marriage between the pretender to the crown of *England*, and the princess *Anne Petrowna*, one of the czar's daughters; but also to procure a peace between the czar and the king of *Sweden*, that the latter might be more at leisure to turn his thoughts on settling the pretender in the throne. These views were, however, both frustrated; the one by *Goertz's* procuring the princess for the duke of *Holstein*, and the other by *Charles's* refusing the duke of *Ormond's* admission into *Sweden*, in quality of the pretender's minister.

IN *January* 1718, an express arrived from the *Ukraine*, *Irruption* with advice, that the *Cuban Tartars* were marching in of the *Cu-* great numbers towards the frontiers of *Russia*: whereupon the ban necessary orders were given for opposing them; and the grand *Tartars*. signior, to remove all suspicion of his conniving at this irruption, sent the czar a letter, written with his own hand, wherein he promised, that in case these robbers should be defeated, and take refuge in his dominions, he would drive them out by fire and sword, as a proof of his readiness to discharge, in every respect, the obligations he owed to so faithful a neighbour. Some time before this, the czar had sent *Unsuccessful* prince *Alexander Bekowitz*, at the head of 3000 men, to take ful expe- possession of a river in the *Caspian* sea, where he had been told dition to there was plenty of gold-dust, and to discover certain mines the *Caspi-* in the mountains of *Great Tartary*. His troops landed with- an sea. out opposition: but, upon their penetrating farther into the country, the *Tartars* and *Calmucks* assembled to the number of 50,000, and refused the czar's presents; though they promised to supply the *Russians* with water and provisions, of which they were in great want, on condition that they should

separate, and return home. Injudiciously trusting to his promise, they began their march in separate bodies; immediately after which, the enemy fell upon them, thus weakened by famine, and divided by stratagem, and destroyed both the prince, and all his men.

*Proceed-
ings a-
gainst the
czarowitz
Alexis.*

WHEN the news of this misfortune reached the czar, it was not doubted but that, stimulated by revenge, he would take the first opportunity of punishing the barbarians; and accordingly great preparations were made for that purpose: but this, and all other undertakings, were suspended for a while, to make way for an affair which the czar had more at heart than any other thing, and which may be looked upon as one of the most extraordinary events that has been recorded in history. This was, to enquire into the crimes, and to punish the disobedience of his son and heir apparent, the czarowitz *Alexis*, who, during his absence, had left *Russia*, and thereby incurred the penalty of the law, which made it high treason for any one to travel into foreign parts, without the czar's permission. While the sieur *Tolstoy* was dispatched to *Naples*, where the czarowitz then was, in order to bring him back to *Moscow*, *Peter* thought proper to publish the following declaration, setting forth his reasons for proceeding in so extraordinary a manner, and justifying his conduct in an affair of so uncommon and delicate a nature.

*The czar's
declara-
tion.*

' *PETER* I. by the grace of God, czar and emperor of *Russia*, &c. to all our faithful subjects, ecclesiastical, military, and civil, of all the states of the *Russian* nation. It is notorious and well known to the greatest part of our faithful subjects, and chiefly to those who live in the places of our residence, or who are in our service, with how much care and application we have caused our eldest son *Alexis* to be brought up and educated; having given him for that purpose, from his infancy, tutors to teach him the *Russian* tongue and foreign languages, and to instruct him in all arts and sciences, in order not only to bring him up in our christian orthodox faith of the *Greek* profession, but also in the knowledge of political and military affairs, and likewise in the constitution of foreign countries, their customs and languages; that, thro' the reading of history, and other books in all manner of sciences, becoming a prince of his high rank, he might acquire the qualifications worthy of a successor to our throne of *Great Russia*. Nevertheless we have seen with grief, that all our attention and care for the education and instruction of our son proved ineffectual and use-
' less,

' less, seeing he always swerved from his filial obedience, shew-
 ' ing no application for what was becoming a worthy suc-
 ' cessor, and slighting the precepts of the masters we had ap-
 ' pointed for him; but on the contrary, frequenting disorderly
 ' persons, from whom he could learn nothing good, or that
 ' would be advantageous and useful to him. We have not
 ' neglected often to endeavour to reclaim and bring him back
 ' to his duty, sometimes by caresses and gentle means, some-
 ' times by reprimands, sometimes by paternal corrections.
 ' We have more than once taken him with us into our army
 ' and the field, that he might be instructed in the art of
 ' war, as one of the chief sciences for the defence of his coun-
 ' try; guarding him, at the same time, from all hazard of
 ' being hurt, and preserving his person out of regard to
 ' the succession, tho' we exposed ourself to manifest perils
 ' and dangers. We have at other times left him at
 ' *Moscow*, putting into his hands a sort of regency in the
 ' empire, in order to form him in the art of government,
 ' and that he might learn how to reign after us. We have
 ' likewise sent him into foreign countries, in hopes and
 ' expectation, that, seeing in his travels governments so well
 ' regulated, this would excite in him some emulation, and
 ' an inclination to apply himself to do well. But all our
 ' care has been fruitless, and like the seed of the doctrine
 ' fallen upon a rock; for he has not only refused to follow
 ' that which is good, but even is come to hate it; without
 ' shewing any inclination, or disposition, either for military
 ' or political affairs, hourly and continually conversing with
 ' base and disorderly persons, whose morals are rude and
 ' abominable. As we were resolved to endeavour by all
 ' imaginable means to reclaim him from that disorderly course,
 ' and inspire him with an inclination to converse with per-
 ' sons of virtue and honour, we exhorted him to chuse
 ' a consort among the chief foreign houses, as usual in other
 ' countries, and hath been practised by our ancestors the
 ' czars of *Russia*, who have contracted alliances by marriages
 ' with other sovereign houses; and we left him at full liberty
 ' to make a choice. He declared his inclinations for the
 ' princess, grand-daughter of the duke of *Wolffenbuttle* then
 ' reigning, sister-in-law to his imperial majesty the emperor
 ' of the *Romans* now reigning, and cousin to the king of
 ' *Great Britain*; and having desired us to procure him that
 ' alliance, and permit him to marry that princess, we readily
 ' consented thereunto, without any regard to the great ex-
 ' pence which was necessarily occasioned by that marriage:

' but, after its consummation, we found ourselves disappointed
 ' of the hopes we had, that the change in the condition of
 ' our son would produce good fruits, and change in his bad
 ' inclinations; for, notwithstanding his spouse was, as far
 ' as we have been able to observe, a wife sprightly princefs,
 ' and of a virtuous conduct, and that he himself had
 ' chosen her, he nevertheless lived with her in the greatest
 ' difunion, while he redoubled his affection for lewd people;
 ' bringing thereby a disgrace upon our house in the eyes of
 ' foreign powers to whom that princefs was related; which
 ' drew upon us many complaints and reproaches. Our frequent
 ' advices and exhortations to him, to reform his conduct, proved
 ' ineffectual; and he at last violated the conjugal faith, and
 ' gave his affection to a prostitute of the most servile and low
 ' condition, living publickly in that crime with her, to the
 ' great contempt of his lawful spouse, who soon after died;
 ' and it was believed that her grief, occasioned by the dis-
 ' orderly life of her husband, hastened the end of her days.
 ' When we saw his resolution to persevere in his vicious
 ' courses, we declared to him, at the funeral of his consort,
 ' that if he did not for the future conform to our will, and
 ' apply himself to things becoming a prince, presumptive
 ' heir to so great an empire, we would deprive him of the
 ' succession, without any regard to his being our only son,
 ' (our second son was not then born); and that he ought not
 ' to rely upon his being such, because we would rather chuse
 ' for our successor a stranger worthy thereof, than an un-
 ' worthy son; that we could not leave our empire to such a
 ' successor, who would ruin and destroy what we have, by
 ' God's assistance, established, and tarnish the glory and hon-
 ' our of the *Russian* nation, for the acquiring of which we
 ' had sacrificed our ease and our health, and willingly ex-
 ' posed our life on several occasions; besides, that the fear
 ' of God's judgment would not permit us to leave the govern-
 ' ment of such vast territories, in the hands of one whose
 ' insufficiency and unworthiness we were not ignorant of. In
 ' short, we exhorted him in the most pressing terms we could
 ' make use of, to behave himself with discretion, and gave
 ' him time to repent and return to his duty. His answer to
 ' these remonstrances was, that he acknowledged himself
 ' guilty in all these points; but alledging the weakness of
 ' his parts and genius, which did not permit him to apply
 ' himself to the sciences, and other functions recommended
 ' to him, he owned himself incapable of our succession, and
 ' desired us to discharge him from the same. Nevertheless,

we

' we continued to exhort him with a paternal affection, and
 ' joining menaces to our exhortations, we forgot nothing
 ' to bring him back to the right way. The operations of
 ' the war having obliged us to repair to *Denmark*, we left
 ' him at *Petersburg*, to give him time to return to his duty,
 ' and amend his ways : and afterwards, upon the repeated
 ' advices we received of the continuance of his disorderly life,
 ' we sent him orders to come to us at *Copenhagen*, to make the
 ' campaign, that he might thereby the better form himself.
 ' But, forgetting the fear and commandments of God, who
 ' enjoins obedience even to private parents, and much more
 ' to those who are at the same time sovereigns, our paternal
 ' cares had no other return than unheard-of ingratitude ; for
 ' instead of coming to us as we ordered, he withdrew with
 ' large sums of money, and his infamous concubine, with
 ' whom he continued to live in a criminal course, and put
 ' himself under the protection of the emperor ; raising against
 ' us, his father and his lord, numberless calumnies and false
 ' reports, as if we did prosecute him, and intended, without
 ' cause, to deprive him of our succession ; alledging moreover,
 ' that even his life was not safe if he continued with us, and
 ' desiring the emperor not only to give him refuge in his domi-
 ' nion, but also to protect him against us by force of arms.
 ' Every one may judge, what shame and dishonour this conduct
 ' of our son hath drawn upon us and our empire, in the face
 ' of the whole world : the like instance is hardly to be found
 ' in history. The emperor, tho' informed of his excesses,
 ' and how he had lived with his consort, sister-in-law to his
 ' imperial majesty, thought fit, however, upon these pressing
 ' instances, to appoint him a place where he might reside ;
 ' and he desired farther, that he might be so private there,
 ' that we might not come to the knowledge of it. Mean
 ' while his long stay having made us fear, out of a tender and
 ' fatherly affection for him, that some misfortune had be-
 ' fallen him, we sent persons several ways to endeavour to
 ' get intelligence of him, and after a great deal of trouble
 ' we were at last informed by the captain of our guard, *Alex-
 ' ander Romanzoff*, that he was privately kept in an imperial
 ' fortress at *Tyrol* : whereupon we wrote a letter, with our
 ' own hand, to the emperor, to desire that he might be sent
 ' back to us : but notwithstanding that the emperor acquainted
 ' him with our demands, and exhorted him to return to us,
 ' and submit to our will, as being his father and lord ; yet
 ' he alledged, with a great many calumnies against us, that
 ' he ought not to be delivered into our hands ; as if we had
 ' been his enemy and a tyrant, from whom he had nothing
 ' to

' to expect but death. In short, he persuaded his imperial
 ' majesty, instead of sending him back at that time to us,
 ' to remove him to some remote place in his dominions,
 ' namely, *Naples in Italy*, and keep him there secretly in the
 ' castle under a borrowed name. Nevertheless, we having
 ' notice of the place where he was, did thereupon dispatch to
 ' the emperor our privy-counsellor *Peter Tolstoy*, and the cap-
 ' tain of our guard aforesaid, with a most pressing letter, re-
 ' presenting how unjust it would be to detain our son, con-
 ' trary to all laws divine and human, according to which pri-
 ' vate parents, and with much more reason those who are
 ' besides invested with a sovereign authority as we are, have
 ' an unlimited power over their children, independently of
 ' any other judge; and we set forth on one side, the just and
 ' affectionate manner with which we had always used our
 ' son, and on the other, his disobedience; representing in
 ' the conclusion, the ill-consequences and animosities which
 ' the refusal of delivering up our son to us might occasion, be-
 ' cause we could not leave this affair in that condition. We
 ' at the same time ordered those we sent with that letter, to
 ' make verbal remonstrances even in more pressing terms,
 ' and to declare that we should be obliged to revenge, by all
 ' possible methods, such detaining of our son. We wrote
 ' likewise a letter to him with our own hand, to represent to
 ' him the horror and impiety of his conduct, and the enormi-
 ' ty of the crime he had committed against us his father, and
 ' how God threatened in his laws to punish disobedient
 ' children with eternal death: we threatened him, as a father,
 ' with our curses, and, as his lord, to declare him a traitor
 ' to his country, unless he returned, and obeyed our com-
 ' mands; and gave him assurances, that if he did as we de-
 ' sired, and returned, we would pardon his crime. Our en-
 ' voys, after many solicitations, and the above representa-
 ' tion made by us in writing, at last obtained leave of the
 ' emperor to go and speak to our son, in order to dispose him
 ' to return home. The imperial minister gave them at the
 ' same time to understand, that our son had informed the em-
 ' peror that we prosecuted him, and that his life was not safe
 ' with us, whereby he moved the emperor's compassion, and
 ' induced him to take him into his protection; but that the
 ' emperor, taking now into his consideration our true and
 ' solid representations, promised to use his utmost endeav-
 ' ours, to dispose him to return to us; and would more-
 ' over declare to him, that he could not in justice and
 ' equity refuse to deliver him to his father, or have any
 ' difference with us on that account. Our envoys
 ' upon

upon their arrival at *Naples*, having desired to deliver to him our letter, written with our hand, sent us word that he did refuse to admit them; but that the emperor's viceroy had found means, by inviting him to his house, to present them to him afterwards much against his will. He did then indeed receive our letter, containing our paternal exhortation, and threatening our curse, but without shewing the least inclination to return; alledging still a great many falsties and calumnies against us, as if, by reason of several dangers he had to apprehend from us, he could not and would not return; and boasting that the emperor had not only promised to defend and protect him against us, but even to set him upon the throne of *Russia*, against our will, by force of arms. Our envoys perceiving this evil disposition, tried all imaginable ways to prevail with him to return: they intreated him; they expatiated by turns upon the graciousness of our assurances towards him, and upon our threats in case of disobedience, and that we would even bring him away by force of arms; they declared to him, that the emperor would not enter into a war with us on his account, and many other such like representations did they make to him. But he paid no regard to all this, nor shewed any inclination to return to us; until the imperial viceroy, convinced at last of his obstinacy, told him in the emperor's name, that he ought to return, for that his imperial majesty could not by any law keep him from us, nor, during the present war with *Turky*, and also in *Italy* with the king of *Spain*, embroil himself with us upon his account. When he saw how the case stood, fearing he should be delivered up to us whether he would or not, he at length resolved to return home, and declared his mind to our envoys and to the imperial viceroy: he likewise wrote the same thing to us, acknowledging himself to be a criminal, and blame worthy. Now although our son, by so long a course of criminal disobedience against us, his father and lord, for many years, and particularly for the dishonour he hath cast upon us in the face of the world, by withdrawing himself, and raising calumnies against us, as if we were an unnatural father, and for opposing his sovereign, hath deserved to be punished with death; yet our paternal affection inclines us to have mercy upon him; and we therefore pardon his crimes, and exempt him from all punishment for the same. But considering his unworthiness, and the series of his irregular conduct above described, we cannot in conscience leave him after us the
succession

' succession to the throne of *Russia* ; foreseeing that by his
 ' vicious courses, he would entirely destroy the glory of our
 ' nation and the safety of our dominions, which, through
 ' God's assistance, we have acquired and established by in-
 ' cessant application ; for it is notorious and known to every
 ' one, how much it hath cost us, and with what efforts we
 ' have not only recovered the provinces which the enemy
 ' had usurped from our empire, but also conquered several
 ' considerable towns and countries, and with what care we
 ' have caused our people to be instructed in all sorts of civil
 ' and military sciences, to the glory and advantage of the
 ' nation and empire. Now, as we should pity our states and
 ' our faithful subjects, if, by such a successor, we should throw
 ' them back into a much worse condition than ever they were
 ' yet ; so, by the paternal authority, in virtue of which, by
 ' the laws of our empire, any of our subjects may disinherit
 ' a son, and give his succession to such other of his sons as
 ' he pleases ; and, in quality of sovereign prince, in conside-
 ' ration of the safety of our dominions, we do deprive our
 ' said son *Alexis*, for his crimes and unworthiness, of the suc-
 ' cession after us to our throne of *Russia*, even though there
 ' should not remain one single person of our family after us.
 ' And we do constitute and declare successor to the said
 ' throne after us, our second son *Peter*, tho' yet very young,
 ' having no successor that is older. We lay upon our said
 ' son *Alexis* our paternal curse, if ever at any time he pre-
 ' tends to, or reclaims, the said succession ; and we desire our
 ' faithful subjects, whether ecclesiastics or secuiars, of all
 ' ranks and conditions, and the whole *Russian* nation,
 ' in conformity to this constitution and our will, to
 ' acknowledge and consider our said son *Peter*, appointed by
 ' us to succeed, as lawful successor, and agreeably to this
 ' our constitution, to confirm the whole by oath be-
 ' fore the holy altar, upon the holy gospel, kissing the cross.
 ' And all those who shall ever at any time oppose this our
 ' will, and who from this day forward shall dare to consider
 ' our son *Alexis* as successor, or to assist him for that purpose,
 ' declare them traitors to us and their country. And we
 ' have ordered that these presents shall be every where pub-
 ' lished and promulgated, to the end that no person may pre-
 ' tend ignorance. Given at *Moscow*, the third of *February*
 ' 1718. Signed with our hand, and sealed with our seal.

' PETER.'

On the 11th of February the czarowitz was brought to *Moscow*, and the same evening waited on his father, with whom he had a long conference. The next day, a great council was held; and on the 14th, early in the morning, the guards and all the garrison of *Moscow* surrounded the castle, and an order was issued to all the czar's ministers, bojars, and counsellors, to repair to the great hall of the castle, and to the prelates to assemble in the cathedral at the tolling of the great bell. The unhappy prince was then conducted to the hall, and being come in his father's presence, threw himself in tears at his feet, and presented a writing containing a confession of his crimes. This the czar delivered into the hands of baron *Schaffiroff* the vice-chancellor, and raising up his son, asked him, what was his request? *Alexis* replied, that he only implored his majesty's mercy to save his life. The czar granted this; but at the same time told him, that as he had deprived himself of all hopes of succeeding to the crown, he ought solemnly to renounce the same: to which he answered, that he was ready to conform himself to the czar's pleasure. The czar then questioned him concerning the motives of his disobedience, and who had advised him to elope out of the kingdom; and upon the prince's whispering the czar in the ear, they both retired into an inner chamber, where it is imagined he made a discovery of the persons who had persuaded him to that rash action. The czar and czarowitz having returned into the hall, the latter signed an instrument, by which he declared himself incapable of governing, and renounced all right to the crown (A); whereupon the foregoing manifesto

and re-
nounces the
succession.

(A) This renunciation was couched in the following terms:

' I, the undersigned, declare upon the holy gospel, that, on account of the crimes I have committed against his czarish majesty, my father and sovereign, as set forth in his manifesto, I am, through my own fault, excluded from succeeding to the throne of *Russia*. Therefore I confess and acknowledge that exclusion to be just, as having merited it by my own fault and unworthiness; and I hereby

' oblige myself, and swear in the presence of almighty God, in Unity of nature, and Trinity of persons, as my supreme judge, to submit in all things to my father's will, never to set up a claim or pretension to the succession, or accept of it under any pretext whatever; acknowledging my brother *Peter Petrowitz* as lawful successor to the crown. In testimony whereof I kiss the holy cross, and sign these presents with my own hand.

' ALEXIS.'

was

was read aloud in the midst of the assembly, and the right of succession thereby vested in *Peter* was publicly recognized, and confirmed by an oath (A) taken by all the ministers and grantees then present, and ordered to be taken by every individual subject in the empire; after which the assembly was dismissed, and the czar retired to the castle.

It was generally thought, that this formal renunciation of the succession would have been the only punishment inflicted on this unhappy prince: but the czar, having some reason to suspect that he had been fomenting discord and division between him and his subjects, in order to excite them to a rebellion in his own favour; thought it necessary, for his own safety and the publick welfare, to make some farther enquiry into the motives of his conduct; and therefore declared to him, that if he would truly and faithfully discover the particular circumstances of his elopement, who were his advisers, and every thing that related to it, and give a full answer in writing to such questions as he should propose, without the least disguise, restriction, or reserve, he would freely pardon him: but that if such discovery was not full and open, and all his accomplices particularly named, the promise of pardon should be void and of no effect. This the czarowitz solemnly engaged to do; and accordingly, a few days after, the following questions were put to him.

(A) The form of this oath was as follows: 'I swear before Almighty God, and upon his holy gospel, that whereas our most gracious sovereign the czar *Peter Alexowitz*, has caused circular letters to be published thro' his empire, to notify that he has thought fit to exclude his son prince *Alexis Petrovitch* from the throne of *Russia*, and to appoint for his successor to the crown his second son the prince royal *Peter Petrovitch*; I do acknowledge this order and regulation made by his majesty in favour of the said prince *Peter Petrovitch*, to be just and lawful, and entirely conform and submit myself to the same; promising always to acknowledge the said prince royal *Peter Petrovitch* for his lawful successor, and to stand by him on all occasions, even to the loss of my life, against all such as shall presume to oppose the said succession; and that I never will, on any pretence whatsoever, assist the prince *Alexis Petrovitch*, nor in any manner whatsoever contribute to procure him the succession. And this I solemnly promise by my oath upon the holy gospel, kissing the holy cross thereupon."

Quest. I. Was there any premeditated design in the answer *His examination.* you gave to the letter you received from me upon the inter-
ment of your wife, or in your reply to what I afterwards
wrote (B) upon the same subject? And as you always de-
sired

(B) As these letters and answers afford the most striking evidence of the czar's prudence and the prince's insincerity, and will convey to the reader a clear idea of the grounds and motives of this extraordinary transaction, we have inserted the following translation of them. The first letter from the czar to his son, is dated the 27th of *October* 1715, and displays a noble spirit of religion, with the most ardent desire of leaving a successor who should perpetuate his name and glory to future ages.

' Son, (says the czar to him)
' you cannot be ignorant of what
' is known to all the world, that
' our people groaned under the
' oppression of the *Swedes*, be-
' fore the beginning of this pre-
' sent war. By the usurped pos-
' session of many of our mari-
' time ports, so necessary to our
' state, they cut us off from all
' commerce with the rest of man-
' kind; and we saw, with deep
' regret, that they had even cast
' a mist over the eyes of persons
' of the greatest discernment,
' who tamely brooked their fla-
' very, and made no complaints
' to us. You know how much
' it cost us at the beginning of
' this war, to make ourselves
' thoroughly experienced, and
' to stand our ground in spite of
' all the advantages which our
' irreconcilable enemies gained
' over us. The Almighty alone
' has conducted us by his hand,
' and conducts us still. We

' submitted to that probationary
' state with resignation to the will
' of God, not doubting but it
' was he who made us pass thro'
' it: he has accepted our sub-
' mission; and the same enemy,
' before whom we were wont to
' tremble, now trembles before
' us. These are effects which,
' under God's assistance, we owe
' to our labour, and those of our
' faithful affectionate sons, and
' *Russian* subjects. But while I
' survey the successes with which
' God has blessed our arms, if
' I turn my eyes on the poste-
' rity that is to succeed me, my
' soul is pierced with anguish;
' and I have no enjoyment of
' my present happiness, when I
' carry my views into futurity.
' All my felicity vanishes away
' like a dream, since you, my
' son, reject all means of ren-
' dering yourself capable of go-
' verning well after me. Your
' incapacity is voluntary; for
' you cannot excuse your-
' self from want of genius:
' it is inclination alone you
' want. Far less can you plead
' the want of bodily strength,
' as if God had not furnished
' you sufficiently in that respect:
' for though your constitution
' be none of the strongest, it
' cannot be reckoned weak.
' Yet you will not so much as
' hear of warlike exercises; tho'
' it is by those means we are ri-
' sen from that obscurity in
' which we were buried, and
' have made ourselves known to
' the

fired to go into a convent, both by your letters and discourse, when I took leave of you before my departure from *Petersburg*, and it is now clear that all this was the effect of dissimu-

‘ the nations about us, whose
 ‘ esteem we now enjoy. I am
 ‘ far from desiring you to che-
 ‘ rish in yourself a disposition to
 ‘ make war for its own sake,
 ‘ and without just reasons: all
 ‘ I demand of you is, that you
 ‘ would apply yourself to learn
 ‘ the military art; because, with-
 ‘ out understanding the rules of
 ‘ war, it is impossible to be qua-
 ‘ lified for government. I might
 ‘ set before your eyes many ex-
 ‘ amples of what I propose to
 ‘ you; but shall only mention
 ‘ the *Greeks*, with whom we are
 ‘ united by the same profession
 ‘ of faith. Whence came the
 ‘ declension of their empire, but
 ‘ from the neglect of arms?
 ‘ Sloth and inaction have sub-
 ‘ jected them to tyrants, and
 ‘ that slavery under which they
 ‘ have long groaned. You are
 ‘ much mistaken, if you ima-
 ‘ gine it is enough for a prince
 ‘ that he have good generals to
 ‘ act under his orders: No, my
 ‘ son; it is upon the chief him-
 ‘ self that the eyes of the world
 ‘ are fixed; they study his in-
 ‘ clinations, and easily slide into
 ‘ the imitation of his manners.
 ‘ My brother, during his reign,
 ‘ loved magnificence in dress,
 ‘ and splendid equipages, and
 ‘ horses richly caparisoned; the
 ‘ taste of his country was not
 ‘ much formed that way; but
 ‘ the pleasures of the prince
 ‘ soon become those of the sub-
 ‘ jects, who are readily led to
 ‘ imitate him both in the objects
 ‘ of his love and disgust. If
 ‘ people are so easily disengaged
 ‘ from things that are only for
 ‘ pleasure, will they not be
 ‘ still more prone to forget, and
 ‘ in process of time wholly
 ‘ to lay aside the use of arms,
 ‘ the exercise of which grows the
 ‘ more irksome the less they are
 ‘ habituated to them? You have
 ‘ no inclination to learn the pro-
 ‘ fession of war; you do not ap-
 ‘ ply yourself to it; and conse-
 ‘ quently will never know it.
 ‘ How then will you be able
 ‘ to command others, and to
 ‘ judge of the rewards which
 ‘ those subjects deserve who do
 ‘ their duty, or of the punish-
 ‘ ment due to such as fall short
 ‘ of obedience? You must judge
 ‘ only by other people’s eyes;
 ‘ and will be considered as a
 ‘ young bird, which, reaching
 ‘ out its beak, is as ready to re-
 ‘ ceive poison as proper nou-
 ‘ rishment. You say, the infirm
 ‘ state of your health makes you
 ‘ unfit to bear the fatigues of
 ‘ war: but that is a frivolous
 ‘ excuse. I desire you not to un-
 ‘ dergo the fatigues of that pro-
 ‘ fession, though it is there that
 ‘ all great captains have begun;
 ‘ but I wish you had an inclina-
 ‘ tion to the military art; and
 ‘ reason may give it you, if you
 ‘ have it not from nature. Had
 ‘ you once this inclination, it
 ‘ would occupy your thoughts
 ‘ at all times, even in your
 ‘ hours of sickness. Ask those
 ‘ who remember my brother’s
 ‘ reign: his state of health
 ‘ was much more infirm than

your:

diffimulation; tell me with whom you contrived it, and who are those that know you acted only with a design to deceive me?

THE

‘ your’s; he could not manage
 ‘ a horse of never so little met-
 ‘ tle, nor hardly mount him;
 ‘ yet he loved horses, and per-
 ‘ haps there never will be in the
 ‘ country finer stables than his.
 ‘ Hence you see, that success
 ‘ does not always depend upon
 ‘ personal labour, but upon the
 ‘ inclination. If you think that
 ‘ there are princes, whose affairs
 ‘ fail not to succeed, tho’ they
 ‘ go not to the war in person,
 ‘ you are in the right; but if
 ‘ they go not to the field of bat-
 ‘ tle, they have however an in-
 ‘ clination to go, and are ac-
 ‘ quainted with the military art.
 ‘ For instance, the late king of
 ‘ *France* did not always take the
 ‘ field himself; but we know
 ‘ to what degree he was a lover
 ‘ of war, and how many glo-
 ‘ rious exploits he performed
 ‘ therein; which made his cam-
 ‘ paigns be called the theatre
 ‘ and school of the world. The
 ‘ bent of that prince’s mind was
 ‘ not turned to military affairs
 ‘ only, he had also a taste for
 ‘ the polite arts, for manufac-
 ‘ tures, and other institutions,
 ‘ which have made his king-
 ‘ dom more flourishing than any
 ‘ other. After all these remon-
 ‘ strances which I have laid be-
 ‘ fore you, I return to my first
 ‘ subject, which immediately
 ‘ concerns yourself. I am a
 ‘ man, and consequently must
 ‘ die: to whom shall I leave
 ‘ the care of finishing what by
 ‘ God’s grace I have begun,
 ‘ and of preserving what I have in
 ‘ part recovered? To a son who,
 ‘ like that slothful servant in the
 ‘ gospel, buries his talent in the
 ‘ earth, and neglects to improve
 ‘ what God has committed to
 ‘ his trust. How often have I
 ‘ reproached you for your sul-
 ‘ lenness and indocility? I have
 ‘ been obliged to chastise you
 ‘ on that account. For those
 ‘ several years past, I have hard-
 ‘ ly spoke to you, because I al-
 ‘ most despair of bringing you
 ‘ back to the right way; dis-
 ‘ couraged and disheartened by
 ‘ the fruitlessness of all my en-
 ‘ deavours. You loiter on in
 ‘ supine indolence; abandon-
 ‘ ing yourself to shameful plea-
 ‘ sures, without extending your
 ‘ foresight to the dangerous con-
 ‘ sequences which such a con-
 ‘ duct must produce both to your-
 ‘ self and the whole state: you
 ‘ confine yourself to the govern-
 ‘ ment of your own house, and
 ‘ in that station you acquit your-
 ‘ self very ill; *St. Paul* has told
 ‘ us, *he that knows not how to*
 ‘ *govern his own house, how*
 ‘ *shall he be able to rule the*
 ‘ *church of God?* In like man-
 ‘ ner I say to you, since you
 ‘ know not how to manage your
 ‘ domestick affairs, how can
 ‘ you be able to govern a king-
 ‘ dom? I am determined, at last,
 ‘ to signify to you my final pur-

The History of Russia.

THE czarowitz answered : I communicated the letters I received from your majesty after the interment of my wife, to *Alexander Kikin* and *Nicephorus Wajenski*, and consulted both of

‘ pose ; being willing, however,
 ‘ to defer the execution of it for
 ‘ a short time, to see if you will
 ‘ reform ; if not, know that I
 ‘ am resolved to deprive you of
 ‘ the succession, as I would lop
 ‘ off an useless branch. Do not
 ‘ imagine, that because I have
 ‘ no other child but you (a),
 ‘ I mean by this only to inti-
 ‘ midate you : I will most cer-
 ‘ tainly execute my resolution ;
 ‘ and God requires it of me.
 ‘ For, since I spare not my own
 ‘ life for the sake of my coun-
 ‘ try and the welfare of my
 ‘ people, why should I allow an
 ‘ effeminate prince to ascend
 ‘ the throne after me, who
 ‘ would sacrifice the interest of
 ‘ the subjects to his pleasures ?
 ‘ and should he be obliged to
 ‘ expose his life in their behalf,
 ‘ would leave them to perish, ra-
 ‘ ther than redress their grie-
 ‘ vances. I will call in a meer
 ‘ stranger to the crown, if he be
 ‘ but worthy of that honour,
 ‘ sooner than my own son, if he
 ‘ is unworthy. PETER.’

To this letter the czarowitz re-
 ‘ plied : Most gracious sovereign
 ‘ and father, I have read the letter
 ‘ which your majesty sent me of
 ‘ the 27th of *October* 1715, af-
 ‘ ter the interment of my wife ;
 ‘ and all the answer I can make
 ‘ to it is, that if your majes-
 ‘ ty is determined to deprive me

‘ of the succession to the crown
 ‘ of *Russia*, on account of my
 ‘ inability, your will be done,
 ‘ I even request it of you very
 ‘ earnestly ; because I judge not
 ‘ myself fit for government. My
 ‘ memory is greatly impaired ;
 ‘ and without memory there is
 ‘ no possibility of managing af-
 ‘ fairs. The powers both of my
 ‘ body and mind are much wea-
 ‘ kened by the diseases to which
 ‘ I have been incident, and I am
 ‘ thereby incapacitated for the
 ‘ rule of so great a people. Such
 ‘ a charge requires a man far
 ‘ more vigorous than I am. For
 ‘ these reasons I am not ambiti-
 ‘ ous to succeed you (whom God
 ‘ preserve through a length of
 ‘ years) in the crown of *Russia*,
 ‘ even though I had no brother,
 ‘ as I have one at present, whom
 ‘ I pray God to preserve. As
 ‘ little will I for the future set up
 ‘ any claim to the succession ; so
 ‘ the truth of which I solemnly
 ‘ swear, taking God to be my
 ‘ witness ; and in testimony
 ‘ thereof I write and sign these
 ‘ presents. I put my children
 ‘ into your hands ; and for my-
 ‘ self I ask no more of you than
 ‘ a bare maintenance during my
 ‘ life, leaving the whole to
 ‘ your pleasure.

‘ Your humble servant,

‘ and son, ALEX.’

(a) This letter was written about 8 days before the birth of *Peter Petrowich*, the czar's second son,

of them in particular. It is possible they might confer with each other; but they were consulted separately. They advised me to renounce the succession; and even to demand

Peter soon penetrated through the disguise his son had assumed; and therefore, on the 19th of January 1716, he wrote him the following letter, which he intitled his *last admonition*; and in which, as well as the former, we with pleasure observe the commendable usage of making pertinent applications from the Sacred Writings. 'My sickness has hindered me till now from answering your's, and explaining to you my final intention. You speak of the succession, as if I stood in need of your consent in the disposal thereof. I reproached you with the aversion you had to business, and signified to you that I was highly dissatisfied with your conduct in general: but as to these particulars, you have given me no answer. Your silence is a declaration that you have no mind to reform, and that my paternal exhortations make no impression upon you: wherefore I resolve to write to you this once, for the last time. If you despise the advices I give you while I am alive, what regard will you pay to them after my death? David has said, *Every man is a liar*; but though you had the inclination at present to be true to your promises, yet a corrupt priesthood will be able to turn you at pleasure, and force you to falsify them. As they are at present deprived of those

' places of honour, of which
' they have rendered themselves
' unworthy by their lewdness
' and immorality, they have
' no dependence but upon you;
' and the warm side which you
' shew to them already, makes
' them hope that you will one
' day alter their condition for
' the better. Have you ever
' weighed the obligations which
' you owe to me, as your father,
' who have given you your
' being, and neglected nothing
' for your education? Have
' you shared with him the pains
' and anxieties which he has
' endured for you since you
' arrived at the age of maturity?
' You censure and condemn most
' laudable actions, the sole aim
' of which is the good of my
' people, undertaken at the
' expence of my health: whence I
' have ground to conclude, that,
' instead of watching for their
' preservation, you will be their
' destroyer, if you survive me. It
' is my duty to prevent this calamity,
' by obliging you to form other
' sentiments; since I cannot bear
' that you should live like an amphibious
' animal, that is neither fish
' nor flesh; for I cannot otherwise
' define the kind of life which
' you lead. Take your choice;
' either endeavour to make yourself
' worthy of the throne, or embrace
' a monastic state. My health
' begins to decay: wherefore

mand a discharge from it, on account of my bad health. I was also desirous of so doing myself; and therefore wrote sincerely, without artifice or disguise. For why should I take a burthen upon me that I am not able to bear? They also advised me to retire into a convent as the surest way of avoiding the succession, and to inform you of such my intention; even though, as I have already declared, I should have no design to put it in execution: but as you had given me time to consider of it, I was in hopes by that means to delay it. Not long after your departure from *Petersburg*, *Alexis Kikin* took a journey to *Carlsbad* with an intention to seek a place for me, of which I expected to have notice from him, as I was then meditating my escape. Before I sent my answer to your majesty, I was with prince *Basil Nokolimowitz Dolgorucki* and count *Frederick Matuewitz Apraxin*, whom I desired, whenever your majesty spoke to them concerning me, to persuade you to deprive me of the succession, and suffer me to spend the rest of my days in privacy and retirement; and they both promised me they would. When I had sent the letter, prince *Basil* came to me in your majesty's name, and desired me to shew him what I had written: I accordingly read it to him, and he answered, "I have spoken of you to your father, and I believe he will deprive you of the succession, for he seems satisfied with the letter." I do not remember whether ever I shewed the letter to *Frederick Matuewitz*; but I wrote it in concert with *Kikin* and *Nicephorus*, and sent them copies of it, sealed up by *Basil Barikoff*; because, as *Kikin* lived at a distance, I had not always an opportunity of conversing with him; besides that he informed me there were spies from your court to observe who came to visit me. As to *Barikoff*, I cannot say whether he knew the purport of the letter he carried: at

"fore I am impatient to know your resolution. I expect your answer, either in writing or by word of mouth; and if you afford me no satisfaction in these points, I will shew you no regard, but treat you as a common malefactor. PETER."

To this the czarowitz returned an answer in the following terms:

"Most gracious sovereign and father, Yesterday morning I received your letter of the 19th of this month. My indisposition hinders me from writing to you at large; but I am willing to embrace the monastic state, and I beg your gracious consent thereto."

"Your servant, and unworthy son, ALEXIS."

"lest

least I never told him; but ordered him to carry them privately to *Kikin*, who, after he had corrected, always returned them. I also consulted with *Kikin* and *Nicephorus* upon my second letter to your majesty; but without sending it to them, (so far as I remember), because the time was short. I only know, that, before I wrote the letter, *Kikin* came to me, and advised me to retire into a convent, as did likewise *Nicephorus*, saying, "If there is no other expedient, send for your confessor, and tell him, that you are forced to retire into a monastery; and let him tell this to the archbishop of *Resan*, that it may not be thought you are shaven for any crime." Accordingly I followed their advice; and having spoken to my confessor *George*, arch-priest of the cathedral, he assured me that he would tell the archbishop of it at a proper time. I afterwards asked him whether he had performed his promise, and he answered me, no; whereupon I desired him not to mention it at all. I know not what view *Nicephorus* had in advising me to act in this manner; but the confessor knew nothing of my conferences with *Kikin*, nor did I ever enter into any deliberations with him. After sending this second letter, I wrote one to my confessor *James*, and another to *John Kikin*, informing them that I was going to be forced into a convent, and desired them to give the person who carried the letter a certain sum of money out of what they had of mine in their hands: I do not remember the sum, but I said to the girl who waited on me, and whom I sent with the letters, "If I die, (for I was then sick) carry my two letters to the persons they are directed to, and they will give you some money." She kept these letters in a small cabinet; but knew nothing of those I received from your majesty, or of my answers to them. When I made my escape, I took this girl with me by artifice, telling her I was only going to *Riza*, and having carried her farther, made her believe, as I did the rest of my attendants, that I had orders to go to *Vienna* to form an alliance against the *Ottoman Porte*, and that I was obliged to travel privately, lest the *Turks* should have notice of my design. Lastly, those who had any farther knowledge of my aforesaid letter to your majesty, were the princes *Uriga*, *Yuriewitz*, and *Truebeskoi*, and the czarowitz of *Siberia*: but they never saw the letter itself. Prince *Truebeskoi* asked me about three weeks after, "What letter was that your father gave you when I was present? Were the contents good or bad?" Whereupon I told him the substance of it, and of my answer. "You do well," said he,

"not to lay claim to the succession: there are crosses and afflictions in the midst of grandeur and riches." The *Siberian* asked me, "what letters were those which *Makaraſſ* brought you? we all know the contents of them." I owned it to him, and gave him a sum of money to pay my mistress for her subsistence when I should retire into the convent; but took it from him again a few days after. The persons who knew of this were, *Nicephorus Vassenski*, *John Afsonassief*, and the confessor *George*; but I do not remember that I ever mentioned the letters to the confessor: at least he knew nothing of my escape.

Quest. II. Did they not in their discourse, during my great illness at *Petersburg*, express an earnest desire to join with you in case I should die?

Ans. I never heard any body speak upon that subject whilst you was ill.

Quest. III. How long is it since you formed the project of your escape, and with whom did you concert it? for as you acted so suddenly in this affair, it may be presumed to have been premeditated a long time. Declare openly the whole matter, with whom, and in what place, whether by word of mouth, or letter, or what other channel. Farther, by whose counsel did you write the aforesaid fraudulent letter by the way? who assisted you in it, and for what reason did you write it? and have you not wrote besides to some other person during your absence?

Ans. I have frequently and at different times discoursed with the said *Kikin*, and especially before I received your letters, and returned my answer to them. The purport of our discourse was, that if I once arrived in any foreign country, wheresoever it was, I should continue there to live at ease, and be absent from business. I was not however very busy in executing this project; but when I set out from *Carlsbad*, *Kikin* said to me, "When you are recovered, write to your father, and tell him you are still to take medicines till the spring: then you may go into *Holland*, and after that into *Italy*, and thus you may continue absent two or three years." From *Carlsbad* I wrote to him, to know whether I should proceed in the manner we had agreed upon; and he made me this answer, "How can you do it without your father's permission? you have cause to fear lest he should be angry: write to him, and ask his leave: but do not forget your own business." I could not understand what he meant by these words; and when I had changed my resolution of going into *Holland*, and was come back to *Petersburg*, I found

I found he had been condemned to banishment ; but as he was not under any arrest, I had an opportunity of discoursing with him ; when he asked me if any person had been with me from the court of *France* ? I answered, No. He then told me, I was much in the wrong not to have held a correspondence with that court, and retired thither ; for that the king of *France* was a prince of a great soul, and would willingly have protected me. I asked him what he meant by those words in his letter “ do not forget your own business ? ” To which he answered, “ I meant that you should have retired into *France*, but durst not write plainly to you, and “ you might have guessed at my meaning.” As to my actual escape, I never consulted with any body about it ; but having received your letter from *Copenhagen*, and finding I was at liberty to leave *Russia*, I formed a resolution in consequence of the above mentioned discourse with *Kikin*, of retiring either to the emperor or to the republic of *Venice*, or *Switzerland*, but never communicated my design to any body ; any farther than informing the elder *Afonassief*, that I was determined to fly to one of these places, without saying which of them. I never before had any conversation with them upon this subject, nor was there ever any consultation held concerning it. None of my domesticks had the least notice of my escape, except those I have before named. When I met *Kikin* at *Libau*, I asked him, whether he had found me out a place. To which he answered, “ Yes, I would “ have you go to *Vienna* to the emperor, he will not deliver you up.” I then asked him what I should do if any body was sent to meet me at *Dantzick* or *Konigsberg* ? “ Escape,” said he, “ alone, by night ; or at least take but “ one servant with you ; let what will become of the baggage “ and the rest : but if they should send two persons to you, “ feign yourself sick, and make one of them go before, “ whilst you escape with the other.” As to the fraudulent letter, it was, by *Kikin*’s advice, written from *Libau*, and dated from *Konigsberg*, that it might not be suspected he had any hand in it ; for I saw him there publicly : it was given to prince *Chakoffski*, captain in the regiment of *Semenow*, with orders to send it by the post : but he knew nothing of my affairs ; and the design of writing this letter was, to prevent any person from being sent after me. By *Kikin*’s advice, I wrote a letter to *John Afonassief*, desiring him to follow me, having left information with the postmaster of *Dantzick* whither he should come. The reason of my

writing this letter was upon *Kikin's* persuasions, that if *Affonassief* removed from *Petersburg*, the matter could not be discovered, since nobody was privy to any intended escape but them two. I do not remember the name of the place where I directed *Affonassief* to join me; but *Kikin* proposed my desiring him to shew the letter to prince *Menzikoff*, by which means no information could be made against himself. He farther prevailed upon me to write a letter of thanks to prince *Basil* for his kindness, which he undertook to deliver; but I do not know whether he did or not. Before my departure, prince *Menzikoff* asked me, where I would leave my mistress? to which I answered, that I intended taking her with me as far as *Riga*, and then to send her back: but he told me I had much better take her with me: and such indeed was my real intention; but I did not even acquaint her with it, that not the least hint of my design might transpire. After this, I took leave of *Kikin*, who desired me to inform both him and *Affonassief* how I proceeded on my journey, saying no more than that I had safely passed *Dantzick* without danger from the confederates. I accordingly wrote to both of them in that manner, from *Stargard*; and to remove all suspicion, I also wrote to others in the same terms, particularly to *Nicephorus Vassenski*, *Theodore Dubrowski*, the czarowitz of *Siberia*, and *Nariskin*; though none of them knew of my flight, but *Kikin* and *Affonassief*. These letters were sent to prince *Galitzin* at *Riga*, that he might forward them to *Petersburg*: but I know not whether they were received, because nobody wrote to me in answer to them. After these, I wrote no more letters to *Russia*, except from *Courland* and *Livonia* about some private affairs, and to *Dubrowski* concerning certain books and other moveables of mine in his custody. I recollect that *Kikin* farther said to me, 'If your father sends any one to persuade you to return, do not comply: he will cause you to be beheaded.' Upon which I told him, I was glad he had found out a place for me; and asked him how I should have got off if my father had not ordered me to come to him? To which he replied, 'You should have offered to go to him of your own accord, and by that means you might have escaped.'

Quest. IV. Did you receive any letters during your absence, or hold correspondence with any person directly or indirectly? or have you conversed in any, and what other manner? Had you no news at all from *Russia*? or did you know any thing of public affairs, so far as related to you and me?

Ans.

Ans. Whilst I was upon the road in my flight, I had no news of public or any other affairs in *Russia*, either in writing or by word of mouth, directly or indirectly, except advice from count *Schonben* at *Ehrenberg*; that as intimation had been given of my being amongst them, I ought to lie private and concealed; and at another time, when *Weselowski* spoke of me at *Vienna*. I cannot call to mind to which of these two letters there was subjoined a copy of another from *Bleyer*, importing, that certain enquiries had been made among my domestics concerning my departure, and that there was a mutiny in the army of *Mecklenberg*, particularly in the regiment of guards, which was chiefly composed of nobility, who had formed a design against the czar's life, and talked of sending the czarina and her son to the place where the old czarina was, in order to bring her to *Moscow*, and place her son upon the throne, when he should be found, it not being known what was become of him. This letter was left behind with my other papers. I also received another letter from count *Schonben* upon the subject of my journey from *Naples*. I never wrote to any person in cyphers during my absence; nor did I ever receive any news, except what I have now mentioned, and the printed gazettes.

Quest. V. When, where, and why, was the *Greek* priest with you?

Ans. There was no *Greek* priest with me at any time since my departure from *Petersburg*, till the arrival of messieurs *Tolstoy* and *Romanzow* at *Naples*.

Quest. VI. Discover, at least the substance of the letter which the imperialists forced you to write upon this occasion, if you cannot repeat it verbatim; and who obliged you to write it, when, and where? who of your followers had any knowledge of it? to whom did you deliver it? did you take any minutes of it, and did the imperialists compel you to write it or no?

Ans. The secretary of count *Schonben*, whose name was *Kiel*, when I was conducted to *Naples*, forced me to write letters to the senate and the archbishops, saying, it was highly necessary that I should write to them, because it had been reported by some that I was dead, and by others that I was taken and carried to *Siberia*: accordingly I wrote to the senate, and the two archbishops of *Rostou* and *Konditz*, to the following effect: 'I believe that you and every one else have been much surprized at my departure, unknown to
'the

‘all the world. The ill treatment I have received, even to the design of being confined in a convent, has obliged me to it: but God has procured me the opportunity of retiring at a distance. I am under the protection of an eminent person,’ for I was not permitted to name him, ‘till it shall please God to recall me. In the mean time I beg of you not to forget me, and if any of those who are desirous of wiping me out of the memory of men, should report that I am dead, or raise any other injurious rumour concerning me, give no credit to it, and disabuse others; for I both live and am in good health, thanks be to God and my benefactors who protect me, and who have also promised not to forsake, but to assist me in all my necessities. I am, whilst I live, full of good wishes for you and the whole country.’ This I think was the substance of the letter, but I do not exactly remember it word for word; for as they would not suffer me to take a copy of it, I have only the letter as I began to write it; but it was finished on another paper. When I had done writing it, I gave it to the secretary, who said he was going to *Vienna*, and I was sent to the castle of *St. Elme*. Upon my arrival at *Vienna*, I addressed myself to count *Schonben*, to demand protection: he said, he would go to the emperor and know his will; but desired me in the mean time to take care that *Weselowski* did not see me. Upon his return, he told me, that the emperor was not yet come to any resolution, but had desired him to confer with prince *Eugene* and count *Staremborg* upon this subject. It was afterwards resolved to protect and send me to some fortress: the count assuring me, that the emperor would not forsake me, and whenever there should be occasion, would assist me in the recovery of the throne by force of arms. I told him, I did not ask so much, but only that the emperor would grant me his protection.

Quest. VII. Declare to us, and discover whatever hath any relation to this affair, tho’ it be not here expressed, and clear yourself as if it were at confession; for if you conceal any thing that shall by any other means be afterwards discovered, do not impute the consequence to me, since you have been already told, that in such case the pardon granted you should be null and void.

Ans. I will tell every thing that has any relation to this affair. At my departure from *Petersburg*, Prince *Menzikoff* gave me a thousand ducats; and when I took my leave of the senators, they gave me 2000 rubles; I also borrowed of *Ilia Isaiew* five thousand ducats in specie, and two thousand

in current silver. But neither prince *Menzikoff*, the senators, or *Ilia Iſaiew*, knew any thing of my escape, as I told them I was going to *Copenhagen* to attend you; and upon that supposition they gave me the money. What I farther heard at different times, and from different persons; which may be material to mention, is as follows: I have heard the czarowitz of *Siberia* say, ‘*Michael Samarin* has told me, that in a little time things will be changed with you. Do not forget me when you are in your prosperity; for all that *Samarin* says comes to pass.’ The czarowitz also told me in *March* 1716, that on the 1st of *April* there would be a change: and when I asked him what change? he said, ‘Either the czar will die, or *Petersburg* be overthrown; for I have seen it in a dream.’ When the time was elapsed, I asked him why nothing had happened! He said, ‘It may fall out some years hence on that day: I did not say it would be this year; but only take notice of the 1st of *April*: as to the year I know nothing of it.’ When *Nicephorus Wafenski* came from *Moscow* to *Thorn*, he told me he had heard *Alexander Sergief* say, that ‘the czar would not live above five years;’ and when I was in the neighbourhood of *Stetin*, prince *Basil Dolgorucki* said to me, ‘If the czarina was not with the czar, we could not live for the severity of his temper; and that he would be the first to betray him at *Stetin*.’

NOTWITHSTANDING the important condition upon which this confession was made, it was far from being sincere; as it appeared from the papers of the czarowitz which had been seized, and from the examination of several of his accomplices, that he had omitted many things of great consequence, and actually formed a design of usurping the throne even in his father’s life-time. It must be observed, that this unhappy prince and his father were by no means formed for living together: the one was of a prodigious enterprising genius, and sought nothing but the glory and grandeur of his empire; the other was absorbed in effeminacy, and terminated all his wishes in voluptuous enjoyments. The czar finding all his efforts of reformation fruitless and ineffectual, began to look upon his son as an enemy, who would absolutely destroy the power and elevation of the empire, and defeat the intent of all his industry and labour; and the czarowitz, on the other hand, seeing it impossible to pursue his manner of life, without the greatest opposition from such a father, imbibed the most unfavourable sentiments of him. These two great personages being thus at variance, would gladly

gladly have got rid of each other. The father, in whose hands the power was, thought himself justified in the exercise of it, and sought only to save the appearances of humanity under the colour of justice.

*The trial
of the czar-
owitz.*

To this purpose he established a high court of justice for the trial of his son, which being opened on the 13th of June 1718, the czar addressed himself to the assembly in the following manner : ‘ Though the flight of the czarowitz *Alexis*, and a part of his crimes, be already known to the world by the manifesto published at *Moscow* on the 3d of February ; yet there are now discovered such unexpected and surprising attempts, as plainly shew with what baseness and villainy he endeavoured to impose upon us his sovereign and father, and what grievous perjuries he hath committed against Almighty God, to prevent an enquiry into his bad practices, or a discovery of his pernicious intrigues ; all which shall now be laid open before you, with perspicuity and order.’ Accordingly the several letters from the czar to the czarowitz, and his answers to them, his several confessions, and the examinations of divers persons who were his accomplices, having been read to the court, the czar thus resumed his speech : ‘ You have now heard a very ample narrative of the almost unprecedented crimes whereof my son is guilty, and which he has committed against his father and sovereign : though, according to all laws, civil and divine, and especially those of this empire, which grant an absolute jurisdiction to fathers over their children, (even fathers in private life,) we have a full and unlimited power to judge our son for his crimes according to our pleasure, without asking the advice of any person whatsoever ; yet, as men are more liable to prejudice and partiality in their own affairs ; than in those of others, and as the most eminent and expert physicians rely not on their own judgment concerning themselves, but call in the advice and assistance of others ; so we, under the fear of God, and an awful dread of offending him, in like manner make known our disease, and apply to you for a cure ; being apprehensive of eternal death, if, ignorant perhaps of the nature of our distemper, we should attempt to cure ourselves ; and the rather, as in a solemn appeal to Almighty God, I have signed, sworn, and confirmed a promise of pardon to my son, in case he should declare to me the truth. And tho’ he has violated this promise by concealing the most important circumstances of his rebellious designs against us ; yet that we may not in any thing swerve from our obligations

s tions, we pray you to consider this affair with seriousness
 and attention, and report what punishment he deserves
 without favour or partiality either to him or me; for
 should you apprehend that he deserves but a slight punish-
 ment, it will be disagreeable to me. I swear to you by
 the great God and his judgments, that you have nothing
 to fear on this head. Neither let the reflection of your be-
 ing to pass sentence upon the son of your prince have any
 influence on you, but administer justice without respect of
 persons, and destroy not your own souls and mine too by
 doing any thing which may injure our country, or upbraid
 our consciences in the great and terrible day of judgment.
 The czar afterwards addressed himself to the clergy who
 were assembled at *Petersburg* on this occasion, to the same
 purpose as he had harangued the senators; adding, 'Tho'
 his affairs fall not within the verge of the spiritual, but of
 the civil jurisdiction, and we have this day referred it to
 the impartial decision of the secular court; yet, remember-
 ing that passage in the word of God, which requires us on
 such occasions to consult the priests and elders of the church
 in order to know the will of heaven, and being desirous of
 receiving all possible instruction in a matter of such impor-
 tance; we desire of you, the archbishops, and the whole
 ecclesiastical estate, as teachers of the word of God, not
 to pronounce judgment in this case, but to examine and
 give us your opinions concerning it according to the sacred
 oracles, from whence we may be best informed what pu-
 nishment my son deserves; and that you will give it us in
 writing under your hands; that being properly instructed
 herein, we may lay no burthen upon our conscience. We
 therefore repose our confidence in you, that, as guardians
 of the divine laws, as faithful pastors of the Christian
 flock, and as well affected towards your country, you
 will act suitable to your dignity; conjuring you by that dig-
 nity, and the holiness of your function, to proceed with-
 out fear or dissimulation.'

In consequence of these declarations, both the ecclesiastical and secular assemblies proceeded in this great business; the one to search the scriptures of the *Old and New Testament*, the constitution of the empire, and the military laws, for pertinent authorities that might be applied to the present case, in order to judge what pains and penalties the *czarowitz* had deserved; and the other, to examine the legal evidence which arose against him from his own confession, and the depositions that had been taken in the course of this affair.

' plices, but also capital circumstances relating to his own
 ' transgressions ; particularly his rebellious design of usurp-
 ' ing the throne even in the life-time of his father ; flatter-
 ' ing himself that the populace would declare in his favour :
 ' all which hath since been fully discovered by the informa-
 ' tions taken in the criminal process. Thus it is evident,
 ' from the whole conduct of the czarowitz, that he was not
 ' disposed to wait till the succession should come to him accord-
 ' ing to equity, and the order of nature which God has es-
 ' tablished ; but intended to take the crown off the head of
 ' his father, while living, and set it upon his own, not only by
 ' a civil insurrection, but by the assistance of a foreign army
 ' which he had actually requested. The czarowitz has here-
 ' by rendered himself unworthy of the clemency and pardon
 ' promised him by the emperor his father ; and since the laws
 ' divine and ecclesiastical, civil and military, condemn to
 ' death without mercy, not only those whose attempts a-
 ' gainst their father and sovereign have been proved by testi-
 ' monies and writings ; but even such as have been convict-
 ' ed of an intention to rebel, and of having formed a base
 ' design to kill their sovereign, and usurp the throne ; what
 ' shall we think of a rebellious design, almost unparalleled
 ' in history, joined to that of a horrid parricide, against him
 ' who was his father in a double capacity ; a father of great
 ' lenity and indulgence, who brought up the czarowitz from
 ' the cradle with more than paternal care and tenderness ;
 ' who earnestly endeavoured to form him for government,
 ' and with incredible pains, and indefatigable application, to
 ' instruct him in the military art, and qualify him to succeed
 ' to so great an empire : with how much stronger reason does
 ' such a design deserve to be punished with death. It is
 ' therefore with hearts full of affliction, and eyes streaming
 ' with tears, that we, as subjects and servants, pronounce
 ' this sentence ; considering that it belongs not to us to give
 ' judgment in a case of so great importance, and especially
 ' to pronounce sentence against the son of our most precious
 ' sovereign lord the czar. Nevertheless, it being his plea-
 ' sure that we should act in this capacity, we, by these pro-
 ' sents, declare our real opinion, and pronounce this
 ' sentence of condemnation with a pure and christian con-
 ' science, as we hope to be able to answer for it at the just,
 ' awful, and impartial tribunal of Almighty God. We sub-
 ' mit, however, this sentence, which we now pass, to the
 ' sovereign power, the will, and merciful revisal of his czar-
 ' isth majesty, our most merciful sovereign.

THIS sentence was signed by all the members of the court, to the number of an hundred and eighty; and on the sixth of July it was read to the czarowitz. The next day, early in the morning, advice was brought to the czar, that the violent agitation of the czarowitz's mind, joined to the terrors of approaching death, had thrown him into violent convulsions: about noon, another messenger arrived, with an account, that the prince's life was in great danger; and a few hours afterwards a third came to inform the czar, that the prince, being past all hopes of surviving the evening, earnestly desired to see him. Hereupon the czar, with some of his principal courtiers, repaired to the fortress where the czarowitz was confined. The prince, upon sight of his father, burst into tears, and earnestly besought him to remove the curse he had laid upon him at *Moscow*, to forgive him all his heavy crimes, to impart to him his paternal blessing, and to cause prayers to be put up for his departing soul. The czar returned a very pathetic answer; and, after representing to him in few words the heinousness of his crimes, he pardoned and blessed him in so moving a manner, that the whole company melted into tears. About five in the evening, a fourth messenger was sent to the czar, to inform him, that the prince begged to see him once more; but just as the czar was upon the point of complying with this last request, another messenger arrived, with advice that the prince was dead. *He dies in prison.*

THOUGH it may be reasonably imagined that the czar was but moderately afflicted at this event, considering the insupportable load of anguish which must have wrung his soul every time he reflected on the unworthiness of his successor; yet he was not wanting in performing his funeral obsequies with due pomp and solemnity. He ordered the body to lie in state two days in the church of the Holy Trinity, from whence it was removed to the new church of the citadel, and interred in the imperial tomb there; the czar and czarina, with all their court, and the principal nobility of the empire, being present at the funeral.

THE sudden death of this unhappy prince occasioned much speculation, and various reports were spread concerning it; *Various opinions concerning his death.* some affirming that the czar sent him a poisonous draught, and strictly charged the person who carried it, to see that it was taken; while others went still further, said that the czar obliged him to read his own sentence in open court, and that the paper being poisoned, the fumes ascended to his brain and occasioned his death: but surely the great caution with which he proceeded in this affair, the many instances of his paternal affection to him, even when he was

fair. Accordingly, the clergy, a few days after, laid before the senate several extracts from the holy scriptures, and the particular laws and constitutions of the empire (A), which being duly considered, they, on the 24th of *June*, pronounced the following sentence:

Sentence pronounced against him.

‘By virtue of an express ordinance issued by his *Czarish* majesty, and signed with his own hand, on the 13th of *June*, for the judgment of the czarowitz *Alexis Petrovitch*, in relation to his crimes and transgressions against his father and sovereign; the undernamed ministers, senators, estates military and civil, after having assembled several times in the regency chamber of the senate of *Peterburg*, and having heard read the original writings and testimonies given against the czarowitz, as also his majesty’s ad-

(A) The particular passages in holy writ cited on this occasion were, *Levit. xx. 1, 9. Deut. xxxi. Matt. xx. 1. Mark vii. 9. Rom. i. 28. Ephes. vi. 1.*

Those from the constitutions of the empire were as follows:

‘If any person, by any ill design, forms any attempt against the health of the czar, or does any thing to his prejudice, and is found inclined to execute his pernicious designs; let him be put to death, after he is convicted thereof.’ *Stat. i.*

‘In like manner, if any one, during the reign of his *Czarian* majesty, through a desire to reign in the empire of *Russia*, and put the czar to death, shall begin to raise troops with this pernicious view; or if any one shall form an alliance with the enemies of his *Czarian* majesty, or hold a correspondence with them, or assist them to arrive at the government, or raise any other disorder; if any one declares it, and the truth be found out upon such declaration, let the traitor suffer death upon conviction

‘of the treason.’ *Stat. 2.* From the military laws the following citations were made: chap. 3. art. 19. ‘If any subject raises men, or takes up arms against his *Czarian* majesty; or if any person forms a design of taking his majesty prisoner, or killing him; or if he offers any violence to him; he and all his abettors and adherents shall be quartered, as guilty of treason, and their goods confiscated.’ To which article the following explanation was added; ‘They also shall suffer the same punishment, who, though they have not been able to execute their crime, shall be convicted of inclination and desire to commit it; and likewise, those who shall not have discovered it when it came to their knowledge.’ Chap. 26. art. 37. ‘He who forms a design of committing any treason, or any other matter of the like nature, shall be punished with the same capital punishments as if he had actually executed his design.’

monitory

• monitory letters to that prince, and his answers to them
 • in his own hand-writing, and other acts relating to the
 • process; and likewise the criminal informations, declara-
 • tions, and confessions of the czarowitz, partly written
 • with his own hand, and partly delivered by word of mouth
 • to his father and sovereign, before the several persons un-
 • der named, constituted by his *Czarish* majesty's authority
 • to the effect of the present judgment; do acknowledge
 • and declare, that, though according to the laws of the
 • *Russian* empire, it belongs not to them, the natural sub-
 • jects of his *Czarish* majesty's sovereign dominions, to take
 • cognizance of an affair of this nature, which for its im-
 • portance, depends solely on the absolute will of the sove-
 • reign, whose power, unlimited by any law, is derived from
 • God alone; yet, in submission to his ordinance who hath
 • given them this liberty, and after mature reflection, ob-
 • serving the dictates of their consciences without fear, flat-
 • tery, or respect of persons, having nothing before their eyes
 • but the divine laws applicable to the present case, the ca-
 • nons and rules of councils, the authority of the holy fa-
 • thers and doctors of the church; and taking also for their
 • rule the instructions of the archbishops and clergy assembled
 • at *Petersburg* on this occasion, and conforming themselves
 • to the laws and constitutions of this empire, which are
 • agreeable to those of other nations, especially the *Greeks*
 • and *Romans* and other Christian princes; they have una-
 • nimously agreed and pronounced the czarowitz *Alexis Pe-*
 • *trowitz* to be worthy of death for his aforesaid crimes, and
 • capital transgressions, against his sovereign and father, he be-
 • ing his *czarish* majesty's son and subject: And that, not-
 • withstanding the promise given by his *czarish* majesty to
 • the czarowitz, in a letter sent by *M. Tolstoy* and captain
 • *Romanzoff*, dated from *Spaw* the 10th of *July* 1717, to par-
 • don his elopement if he voluntarily returned; yet he hath
 • forfeited and rendered himself unworthy of that pardon,
 • by renewing and continuing his former transgressions, as is
 • fully set forth in his majesty's manifesto of the 3d of *Febru-*
 • *ry* in this present year. And altho' his majesty did, upon
 • the arrival of the czarowitz at *Moscow*, and his humbly
 • confessing his crimes, and asking pardon for them, take
 • pity on him, and promise him pardon if he would de-
 • clare without reserve or restriction all his designs, and
 • who were his advisers and accomplices; yet the answers
 • and confessions of the czarowitz were delivered without
 • any sincerity; he not only concealing many of his accom-
 • plices

conduct, and to lay the blame of the war wholly upon the Swedes; whose queen replied, that the allegations therein con-

‘ a new affront offered us in
 ‘ person, and by the wicked
 ‘ and crafty designs formed a-
 ‘ gainst our life when we passed
 ‘ through the city of *Riga* by
 ‘ count *d’Alberg*, governor-ge-
 ‘ neral of that city, and by
 ‘ the insolent refusal made by
 ‘ the court of *Sweden* to give
 ‘ us the satisfaction we demanded
 ‘ on that occasion. And tho’
 ‘ the war was afterwards com-
 ‘ menced to revenge the in-
 ‘ jury done to us, yet we al-
 ‘ ways signified our desire of
 ‘ peace with that crown, but
 ‘ never could obtain any nego-
 ‘ tiation to be set on foot for
 ‘ that purpose until last year;
 ‘ when we were informed by se-
 ‘ cretary *Preys*, general *Welling*,
 ‘ and baron *Goertz*, of his *Swed-
 ‘ ish* majesty’s pacifick inclina-
 ‘ tions: and the isle of *Oeland*
 ‘ being proposed as a proper
 ‘ place for holding the con-
 ‘ gress, we immediately con-
 ‘ sented to it, and disposed our
 ‘ faithful ally the king of *Prus-
 ‘ sia* to do the same; and
 ‘ though we also invited our
 ‘ other allies so to do, we
 ‘ could not persuade them to
 ‘ send their ministers to the
 ‘ congress. Notwithstanding
 ‘ which, we sent thither, in the
 ‘ beginning of the year 1718, our
 ‘ ministers, who, in the treaty
 ‘ with the *Swedish* plenipoten-
 ‘ tiaries, granted such favour-
 ‘ able conditions to that crown,
 ‘ as, in spite of his majesty’s
 ‘ known inclination for war,
 ‘ made such an impression upon
 ‘ him, that a solemn peace
 ‘ would in a short time have
 ‘ been concluded on both sides,
 ‘ and a more strict alliance be-
 ‘ tween the two crowns, had
 ‘ not the conferences been in-
 ‘ terrupted by his fatal death.
 ‘ To set the sincerity of our in-
 ‘ tentions in a still clearer light,
 ‘ be it known, that though we
 ‘ had agreed to no cessation of
 ‘ arms with his *Swedish* majesty,
 ‘ and were consequently at li-
 ‘ berty to carry on the war:
 ‘ and tho’ we were last summer
 ‘ in a condition to embark with
 ‘ an army of thirty thousand
 ‘ men, and to land in the very
 ‘ heart of *Sweden*, for which
 ‘ we had the fairest opportunity,
 ‘ the *Swedes* having made no
 ‘ preparations either by sea or
 ‘ land to resist us; yet we wil-
 ‘ lingly desisted from all such
 ‘ enterprizes, because we would
 ‘ not give the *Swedish* nation
 ‘ any ground to say, that under
 ‘ the colour of a negotiation for
 ‘ peace, we had ruined their
 ‘ kingdom; it being our sincere
 ‘ intention not only to establish
 ‘ a lasting peace and amity with
 ‘ that nation, but also to pro-
 ‘ cure them perpetual advan-
 ‘ tages in commerce equal to
 ‘ those of our own nation.
 ‘ And although we had very
 ‘ particular advice both of the
 ‘ death of his *Swedish* majesty,
 ‘ and of the disorders occasioned
 ‘ by the election of her present
 ‘ majesty; yet we forbore tak-
 ‘ ing the least advantage of
 ‘ those intestine broils, and
 ‘ gave strict orders to our forces
 ‘ that were assembled at *Alb*,
 ‘ to undertake nothing against
 ‘ the *Swedes*, in firm expecta-
 ‘ tion

contained were entirely groundless, calculated to make impressions upon, and to breed discord and discontents among her

tion that the new regency, and all good patriots of that kingdom, would use their utmost endeavours to advance the safety and prosperity of their country, by renewing the negotiations, and concluding a speedy peace. We therefore gave the strongest assurances of our inclination for peace to count *Gyllembourg*, her present majesty's plenipotentiary, who gave us the like assurance by word of mouth as her majesty did in writing, and that baron *Lillienfjeld* should be sent to the congress as first plenipotentiary, in the room of baron *Goerts*, by the beginning of *April*, in order to renew the conferences and conclude a peace. And this we had the less reason to doubt, since, notwithstanding the great inclination which the late king of *Sweden* always had for war, most of the conditions between us were actually agreed upon in his lifetime; but though we staid till *June* without committing the least hostilities, those assurances on the part of *Sweden* were not made good, nor could we expect they would be, after the declaration which count *Gyllembourg* had, by her majesty's order, presented to our minister, by which it sufficiently appeared that her majesty's design was rather to continue the war than conclude a peace, since she demanded the restitution of almost all the provinces which we have conquered during the war,

and not only refused to send a minister to *Oeland*, but threatened to break off the congress. The *Swedes* have likewise entered into particular negotiations with other powers from whom she need fear no danger in time of war, nor reap any profit in time of peace, and threatens by their assistance to take every hostile measure against us. Perceiving, therefore, the dangerous designs of that crown, we find ourselves obliged (after invoking the divine assistance) to have recourse to arms, and to invade the dominions of *Sweden*, not with a view to conquer or take any more of her provinces, but only to obtain the desired peace, which we wish for on the same conditions as before; but instead of demanding any thing farther, are ready to yield up some of the conquests already in our hands. We therefore declare, that in case the crown of *Sweden* shews no inclination to peace, we shall then be obliged to undertake and continue (by God's assistance) the most vigorous war even in the heart of that kingdom; and in that case, we protest before God and the world, against all the calamities which may thereby happen to the *Swedish* subjects, and especially against the innocent blood which must unavoidably be shed in the prosecution of such our design; charging the same wholly upon those who, by passion or interest, have

her subjects, who, she persuaded herself, were fully convinced of her inclinations to procure the safety and repose of her kingdom by a good peace; but that what had hitherto prevented it was, that by the conditions proposed to her, the czar referred to himself all his conquests except *Finland*, and upon that footing offered to enter into friendship with her, although he himself had first undertaken the war, and even while the negotiations for peace were going on, had burnt and plundered many places, as well before as after the arrival of the plenipotentiary *Osterman*, with a design to depress the courage of her subjects: she therefore left them to judge what they were to expect from the proximity of such a neighbour, who was even then penetrating into the very heart of the kingdom with his furious arms; and whether it would not be more honourable for them, as brave patriots, to follow the steps of their valiant ancestors, than suffer themselves to be amused by the vain promises of an enemy, and draw upon themselves a yoke, which, in the end, would prove more insupportable than death itself.

The czar makes a destructive descent on Sweden;

It must be confessed that it was high time for the *Swedes* to defend themselves against an enemy who had planned, and was in the actual execution of a most destructive expedition; for admiral *Apraxin* had burnt and destroyed no less than six principal towns, eleven brick palaces, and one hundred and nine of wood, belonging to the chief nobility, eight hundred and twenty-six villages and hamlets, three mills, ten magazines, two mines of copper, and five of iron. Major-general *Lesly* likewise reduced to ashes two towns and twenty-five castles, five hundred and thirty-five villages and hamlets, forty mills, sixteen magazines, and nine mines of iron, to save only one of which the *Swedes* offered in vain three hundred thousand rix-dollars. All the corn and cattle which the enemy could not carry off were destroyed; and eighty thousand bars of iron were thrown into the sea, besides what they put on board their ships.

'endeavoured to hinder the conclusion of a peace between us. And we have ordered this our manifesto to be published and made known to all the subjects of that crown, that they may take such salutary methods as may best conduce to the warding off the impending ruin, but which cannot be done without concluding a

peace with us. In the mean time, as on our part we have ever been, so we still are ready and willing to conclude such peace on reasonable conditions, and to order all hostilities immediately to cease. Given on board of our fleet in the month of *July*, 1719.

'PETER.'

THE czar's design in all this devastation was only to bring *but re-Sweden* to conclude a peace upon his own terms; for which *news the* purpose he sent *Osterman* in a public character to the court *proposals of Stockholm*; but the regency, not thinking proper to admit *for peace,* him into the capital till they were informed of his errand, sent deputies to meet him within two miles of that city, to enquire into the nature of his instructions. They found that, agreeable to the projected peace of *Oeland*, the czar demanded nothing less than the absolute surrender of *Esthonia, Ingria, and Carelia*, with the towns of *Reval, Wyburg, Narva, and Kexholm*, and the cession of *Livonia* for forty years; in return for which he only offered to restore the province of *Finland*. These propositions being rejected with scorn, the congress of *which are Oeland* broke up, the ministers retired, and the *English* squadron, which had remained till then in the road of *Copenhagen*, sailed towards the ports of *Sweden*, but found that the *Russian* fleet had retired to their own harbours eight days before. The occasion of this retreat was generally imagined to be owing to the approach of the united fleets of *Great Britain and Sweden*; but the czar, in order to obviate such a conjecture, which reflected greatly upon the glory of his arms, published a very long and circumstantial account of that step, endeavouring to shew that it was not owing to any dread or apprehension of the approach of his enemies that he withdrew his ships, but at the pressing instances of the queen of *Sweden*, joined to the advanced season of the year, which suspended his operations, and rendered it necessary to bring back his forces into his own ports.

ON the eighth of *September*, Mr. *Berkeley*, son of Lord *Berkeley* of *Stratton*, set out from *Stockholm* with letters from Lord *Carteret* and admiral *Norris*, to the czar, and offers of his *Britannick* majesty's mediation for a peace between him and the queen of *Sweden*: but when Mr. *Berkeley* shewed these letters to the *Russian* plenipotentiaries before their departure from *Oeland*, they would neither undertake to deliver them to the czar, nor give Mr. *Berkeley* a passport to *Petersburg* for that purpose. General *Bruce* took upon himself to answer the letter from Lord *Carteret*, to whom he represented, that the contents thereof, and of the letter from Sir *John Norris*, were of so singular a nature, and so little agreeable to the *Rupture* friendship and alliance which still subsisted between his czarish *between* majesty and the king of *England*, that he could not possibly *the czar* comply with his desire, until he had first received the czar's *and the* orders on that head. Hereupon the sieurs *Jeffries* and *Weber*, *king of* the *British* ministers at *Petersburg* were immediately ordered *Great* to leave that city and retire to *Dantzick*. This being looked *Britain.*
upon

upon as a sufficient indication of the disposition of the court of *London*, and the czar being likewise informed that admiral *Norris* had received orders to join the *Swedish* fleet, and oppose the future operations of the *Russians*, *Peter* caused all the *English* merchants in his dominions to be arrested, and threatened to confiscate their effects, if the *British* nation should declare war against him. At the same time *Weselowski*, the *Russian* resident at *London*, presented a very warm memorial to that court, charging king *George I.* with a notorious violation of treaties, and a manifest breach of friendship. His majesty answered this writing, both as king of *Great Britain* and as elector of *Hanover*, in such a manner, as drew from the resident a reply couched in such disrespectful terms, and filled with so many injurious reflections upon the *British* ministry, that he was ordered to depart out of the kingdom.

A. D.

1720.

Great preparations of the czar.

WITH the new year, the czar began to make extraordinary preparations for the ensuing campaign, as he saw himself reduced to the necessity of maintaining the war alone against *Sweden*, who was supported by an *English* fleet, favoured by the kings of *Prussia* and *Denmark*, and ready to make peace with *Poland*. He therefore assembled a very considerable army on the side of *Finland*, and intended to sail with a powerful fleet to make himself master of the *Bothnic* gulph.

The Poles demand satisfaction for damages done them by the Russians.

IN the mean time the palatine of *Mazovia* arrived at *Petersburg*, as ambassador from the republic of *Poland*, to demand satisfaction for certain damages done to the provinces of that kingdom by the marches and counter-marches of the *Russian* troops, and the heavy contributions, and other exactions, they had made on the inhabitants. The czar, who had some pretensions on *Poland*, which he did not chuse to relinquish, and who, on the other hand, was sensible of the interest which the emperor took in the affairs of king *Augustus*, was obliged to act with great caution in this matter, lest the *Poles* should unite with *Sweden* against *Russia*, and insist upon the restitution of *Courland* and *Livonia*: he therefore left the conduct of this important negotiation to prince *Dolgorucki*, who had long been his ambassador in *Poland*, and who gave the deputies of the diet to understand, that the czar his master was very willing to enter into an union and good understanding with the republic: but desired to know, first, whether the letters that were sent in answer to his were approved of by them; for that they were couched in such terms as looked like a declaration of war: and secondly, whether the treaty concluded at *Vienna*, between the emperor and the king of *Poland*, was made with the consent of the republic. He afterwards demanded, that the city of *Dantzick* should be obliged to exe-

cute

ente the treaty made with the regency, by which she was obliged to furnish a certain number of frigates to join the naval forces of the czar. To the first question the deputies answered, that when the public deliberations were transferred from *Grodno* to *Warsaw*, it was resolved, that the king, the primate in the name of the senators, and the grand marshal in the name of the nobility, should write to the czar in the manner they had done: that these letters contained nothing like a declaration of war; but only a necessary remonstrance, that if the *Russian* troops still continued in the kingdom, contrary to the repeated promises of their being recalled, the republic would be obliged to take proper measures to prevent the intestine ruin of so many provinces: that they were bound to protect the city of *Dantzick*, which the czar had laid under such heavy contributions: and that they could explain themselves no otherwise, in regard to the affairs of *Courland*, than by representing the ancient right of the crown, which they were resolved to maintain. To the second question it was briefly answered, that the republic had no knowledge of the treaty concluded at *Vienna*; and, as it was made since the diet of *Grodno*, they could have no share in it: but that if the king, as elector of *Saxony*, had concluded any particular treaty, he had a right so to do, without rendering any account to the republic. And as to the czar's demand relating to the city of *Dantzick*, the deputies observed, that as the kings of *Poland* had always left them in the full possession of their liberties and privileges, and as the republic had maintained no naval force, nor ever obliged the subjects of maritime towns to arm any vessels for them, they could not oblige the citizens of *Dantzick* to make any armament for the czar; and that if this was implied by any particular treaty with that city, there had been already great difficulties on that article, which ought to be examined. To these answers of the deputies, the *Russian* ambassador made a very short and categorical reply, telling them, that his master could by no means renounce his pretensions to *Courland*, nor yield up *Livonia* to the republic; that the city of *Dantzick* must execute the convention made with the *Russian* generals; and that the council of finances should examine into what was due from the czar to the republic, and from the republic to the czar.

DURING these transactions, a treaty of peace between *Prussia* and *Sweden* was signed at *Stockholm*; another treaty in favour was carrying on between *Sweden* and *Denmark*; and the queen of the of *Sweden*, by an act of singular generosity, resigned her crown *Sweden* to the hereditary prince of *Hesse-Cassel*, her royal consort. The king of *Great Britain* also, being as firmly united with the

the regent of *France* as with the court of *Sweden*, had engaged the former to pay to the *Swedes* the subsidies that were due to them from the most Christian king; so that at the time when *Sweden* was at the lowest ebb of credit, she received six hundred thousand crowns from the court of *France*, and assurances that the subsidy should be regularly paid for the future. This succour, joined to those of *England* and *Hanover*, excited fresh courage in the drooping *Swedes*, and shewed the czar, that he was not to expect peace but by force; wherefore he redoubled his efforts to get into the field before his enemy.

As soon as the season of the year would permit, the *English* fleet weighed anchor from *Copenhagen*, and arrived in the *Sound*, to support the mediation which his *Britannic* majesty had again proposed, in order to bring about a reconciliation between the czar and the new king of *Sweden*: but the czar was still as averse to this offer as before, and chose rather to enter into an immediate treaty with that prince himself, than to accept the mediation of any power whatever. An opportunity soon offered to pave the way for such a treaty: the *Swedish* minister to the court of *Petersburg*, sent to notify the accession of the new king to the throne, taking occasion to assure the czar, in a short speech which he made at his first audience, that the king his master earnestly desired to conclude a firm and lasting peace with him, and to maintain a constant friendship and good neighbourhood; the czar, in his answer, expressed the same inclinations; but detained the *Swedish* minister some time at *Petersburg*, to let him see the vast preparations that were making for a vigorous prosecution of the war.

The Russian fleet defeated them at sea;

ON the seventh of *August* the *Swedish* vice-admiral in the *Baltic*, approaching with his squadron to reconnoitre the *Russian* fleet commanded by prince *Galitzin*, and apprehending it to be less powerful than it really was, ordered an attack to be made, which proved very unsuccessful; the aggressors being obliged to retire with the loss of four frigates, one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon, and nine hundred men killed, wounded, and taken prisoners. The czar celebrated this victory by a naval triumph at *Petersburg*, caused a medal to be struck to perpetuate the glory of the action, presented prince *Galitzin* with a sword set with diamonds, and distributed a large sum of money among the officers and sailors, who had given such signal proofs of their valour. Nor were his land-forces less active, or less successful; for they burnt the new town of *Uma* in *Swedish Lapland*; and penetrating into that country, destroyed forty-one villages, with a great number of magazines, storehouses, and other buildings.

and ravaged Swedish Lapland.

During

DURING these hostilities, the czar, in order to return the compliment he had received from the king of Sweden, sent for a peace general Romanzoff to Stockholm, to congratulate that prince on his accession to the throne, and assure him that his czarish majesty had always entertained the highest esteem for his person, and earnestly wished to find him as much disposed to peace as he himself was. Besides this commission, M. Romanzoff had instructions, if he found a favourable opportunity, to propose an exchange of prisoners, and a suspension of arms; but though the court of Sweden did not seem willing to close with either of these overtures, yet the talents which M. Romanzoff was master of, made count Horn, the Swedish prime minister, so sensible of the czar's pacific disposition, that prince Misserki, who succeeded him, found very little difficulty in obtaining the cartel, which had formerly been refused. In short, the Swedes were at length convinced of the czar's sincerity in his repeated offers of peace, as he could have no reason to dissemble in that respect, at a time when his arms were victorious, and he was continually gaining advantages over them. The truth is, that Peter's greatness of soul was not to be confined within the common maxims of state-policy: he plainly perceived, that, in the midst of his conquests, his subjects wanted peace, and therefore resolved to procure it; justly thinking, that there could be no meaner in suing for what would confer happiness even upon his enemies. He therefore accepted the mediation proposed by France; and plenipotentiaries were appointed on both sides to meet at Nyssadt, where a peace was concluded, by which Livonia, Esthonia, Ingria, and Carelia, were ceded to Russia (A).

WHILE

(A) In the fourth article of this treaty it is expressly stipulated, ' That the crown of Sweden shall yield and give up to the Russian empire for ever, as lawful conquests, the provinces of Livonia, Esthonia, and Ingria; a part of Carelia, together with the district of Wiburg, and the towns and fortresses of Riga, Dunamunde, Pernau, Reval, Dorpat, Narva, Wiburg, Kexholm; and all the towns, forts, harbours, places, districts, and coasts, belonging to the said provinces; with the islands of Oesel, Dagoe, and Moen, and all the other islands lying off the frontiers of Courland towards the coasts of Esthonia, Livonia, and Ingria, on the east side of Reval, and in the road of Wiburg, as they were possessed by the crown of Sweden.' And in the ninth and tenth articles, his czarish majesty engages, on his side, ' to preserve and maintain the inhabitants of all ranks and degrees in Livonia, Esthonia, and the island of Oesel, (or Oeland) and

Peace prolonged
with the
Turks.

Farther
reforma-
tions in
the state.

WHILE this negotiation was carrying on, *Peter* received the agreeable news that his minister at *Constantinople* had changed the last treaty concluded with the *Porte* into a treaty for a perpetual peace, the ratifications of which he immediately dispatched. About the same time he took occasion to examine into several disorders that had crept into his treasury, and made such a reformation therein, as produced an annual saving of upwards of one hundred thousand rubles. In this interval also the general tariff was prepared, which was afterwards established in all the ports of *Russia*. But nothing engaged his care and attention so much as the intended communication between the river *Volga* and the *Baltic* sea, by means of the canal already began below *Ladoga*, which, falling into the *Caspian* sea, afforded him hopes of opening a trade with *China*, *India*, and *Persia*, and of supplying those nations with *European* commodities. For this purpose he sent several able mathematicians to take an exact survey of the *Caspian* sea, of which they brought back a chart, shewing its form to be very different from all former representations of it. *Peter* afterwards sent this chart to the royal academy of sciences at *Paris*, where it was gratefully received, and ordered to be preserved among their choicest archives.

BOTH the *Russians* and the *Swedes* had been so long distressed by the late bloody war, that they were equally glad to see it ended, and seemed to vie with each other in their rejoicings on this happy occasion. The czar immediately set at liberty all the *Swedish* prisoners, with leave to such as chose it to enter into his service, in the same rank as they had held among the troops of their own country. To others, who liked better to return home, he gave such strong recommendations for that valour and fidelity which he had been a witness to, as procured them an affectionate reception. He then appointed a day of public thanksgiving, which was observed

‘ and also the towns, magistra- ‘ the evangelical (Lutheran) re-
‘ cies, companies, and trades ‘ ligious, with the churches and
‘ in the said provinces, in the ‘ schools, and all the endow-
‘ constant and unmolested en- ‘ ments, &c. thereto belong-
‘ joyment of all the rights, pri- ‘ ing, to remain and continue
‘ vileges, customs, and jurif- ‘ on the same footing as under
‘ dictions; which they were in ‘ the *Swedish* government; with
‘ possession of under the domi- ‘ a proviso, that the professors
‘ nion of *Sweden*; and that in ‘ of the *Greek* religion shall
‘ these ceded countries he shall ‘ likewise enjoy an entire li-
‘ be so far from offering any ‘ berty of conscience, and the
‘ violence to the consciences of ‘ free exercise of their religion
‘ the inhabitants, as to permit ‘ in the provinces.’

by

by all ranks and degrees of people with the greatest solemnity and devotion. In the morning of that day, the czar and czarina, with all the court, attended divine service in the great cathedral; where, after the Liturgy, the treaty of peace was publickly read in the presence of all the foreign ministers: after which the senate advancing in a body, count *Golofkin*, the great chancellor, made a speech to the czar, and desired he would be pleased to accept the title of *Peter the Great, The czar Father of his Country, and Emperor of all Russia*. The czar, at first, modestly declined this honour; but at the repeated instances of the senate he accepted it: whereupon the whole assembly echoed their applause in repeated acclamations; and the public rejoicings at *Petersburg*, on this occasion, continued for fifteen days. The vice-chancellor, baron *Schaffiroff*, soon afterwards notified this new title to all the foreign ministers at the court of *Petersburg*; and orders were likewise dispatched to all the *Russian* residents at foreign courts to the same purpose: so that, in a short time, the czar was acknowledged *Emperor of Russia* by all the *European* powers, except the king of *Denmark*.

THE peace of *Nystadt* having removed all obstacles to *Peter's* design of transferring the principal mart of his empire from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*, he now renewed the orders he had formerly given for that purpose; and to put a stop to all complaints from the merchants, on account of their being forced to change their settlements, he ordered the commissioners of trade to prepare convenient storehouses and habitations for them in that city. This regulation was followed by another of a very different nature, but well worthy the singular piety of that great monarch; who, being convinced of the many evils that ever accompany error and superstition, and of the great advantages which emanate from the pure fountain of true religion, ordered the holy Scriptures to be fully translated into the *Russian* language, and sold at a low price to the people; at the same time expressly commanding all the clergy in his dominions to preach no doctrine but what was agreeable to those Scriptures.

HAVING made these and some other very useful and necessary regulations, his imperial majesty resolved to share part of the public joy with his faithful subjects at *Moscow*, and to enter this his ancient city in triumph. Accordingly, on the twenty-first of *December*, he set out from *Petersburg*, with the empress and the whole court, attended by all the foreign ministers, and the principal nobility of the kingdom; and on the twenty-ninth of the same month made a most magnificent entry into *Moscow*, at the head of the *Preobazinski* guards,

followed by the lieutenant-colonels prince *Menzikoff* and *M. Buterlin*, the second regiment of guards, and the four regiments of *Ingria*, *Astracan*, *Le Fort*, and *Bouturfski*. He was received under a general discharge of the artillery; and after passing through the first triumphal arch, he was complimented at the second by the archbishop of *Novogorod*, at the head of the clergy: at the third he stopt a considerable time, to satisfy the curiosity of the populace, who expressed every possible demonstration of joy; and at the fourth he was received by the whole body of the magistrates and merchants, whom he very graciously assured of the continuance of his favour and protection.

A. D.
1722.

NOTWITHSTANDING the feasts, balls, and other public diversions that were made on this occasion, *Peter* was no ways inattentive to the affairs of the state; but held frequent councils thereon: and being desirous, as his second son *Peter-Petrowitz* was dead, to settle the succession on a prince who would follow his maxims, and prosecute the great designs which he had begun for civilizing his people, he ordered public notice to be given, on the twenty-third of *February*, to all his subjects inhabiting the city of *Moscow*, to repair the next day to the *Castle-church*; which they having done, printed papers were delivered to them all, signifying, "That it was his imperial majesty's pleasure, that every man should swear, and give under his hand, that he would not only approve the choice his majesty should make of a successor, but acknowledge the person he should appoint as emperor and sovereign." An order was likewise published a few days after at *Petersburg*, requiring the magistrates, and all other persons, to subscribe the same declaration; and all the grantees of the empire were commanded, on pain of death and confiscation, to repair to *Moscow* by the latter end of *March* for that purpose, except those inhabiting *Astracan* and *Siberia*, who, living at too great a distance, were excused from giving their personal attendance, and permitted to subscribe before their respective governors. This oath was readily taken by all ranks and degrees of the people, who were well assured that their emperor would make choice of one who was every way worthy of the succession, and capable of supporting the dignity intended for him: but they were still in the dark as to the identical person, though it was generally believed to be prince *Nariskin*, who was nearly related to the emperor, and allowed to have all the qualities requisite for his successor: but a little time shewed them, that this conjecture was groundless.

The people swear to approve his choice of a successor.

PETER, having so far settled this important point, began to prepare for new conquests, which the late peace with Sweden, and certain troubles that now arose in the East, gave him a fair opportunity to make. Several Russian merchants having been robbed and massacred by the *Lesgians*, a people of *Persia*; and the Russian caravan from *China* having been treated in the same manner by the *Usbecks*, who were the allies of *Myrr-Maghmud*, known in *Europe* by the name of *Myrr-Weis*, and who had raised himself to absolute power by obliging his prince, *Schah Hussein IV.* to declare him his prime minister and protector of *Persia*; the emperor thought proper to complain of these outrages by his ambassador, who, upon his entering *Persia*, found that kingdom in the utmost confusion. He therefore went directly to the camp of *Myrr-Maghmud*, of whom he obtained an immediate audience, and declared to him the subject of his commission; remonstrating, that as his troops, joined with the *Usbecks*, had, without any reason, plundered and massacred the subjects of *Russia*, the emperor his master could not help looking on such violence as contrary to the law of nations, and therefore demanded a proper satisfaction.

To these remonstrances the rebel returned a very insolent answer; advising the czar, if he intended to send any more caravans to *China*, either to make an alliance with the *Tartars*, and stipulate for the liberty of passing through their country, or to escort his caravans with a good body of troops; for that he could not prescribe laws to the *Usbecks*, his allies. Peter was no sooner informed of this answer, than he sent orders to all the eastern provinces of the empire to assemble his troops; and having armed the *Cossacks* and *Calmuks*, he ordered several barks, gallies, and other vessels, to be built at *Astracan*, and along the *Volga*, for an intended expedition into the *Caspian* sea. It was not the contempt shewn by *Myrr-Maghmud* in sending back the ambassador, nor the massacre of the *Russians* in *Persia*, that alone excited Peter to this undertaking, though they were powerful incentives to it; but the design of establishing an extensive and useful commerce, which he had always considered as the basis of his power and grandeur, and which was the chief motive of all his enterprizes. It was with this view that he built the city of *Petersburg*; with this view that he kept the provinces of *Livonia* and *Carelia*; with this view that he travelled over the greatest part of *Europe*; and with this view that he founded the coasts of the *Caspian* sea.

BEFORE his imperial majesty left *Moscow*, to set out on this expedition, he was attacked by a violent fit of the cholic, a

Peter sets
out on an
expedition
against
Persia.

disease he was frequently subject to; and apprehending it might be attended with fatal consequences, he caused his will, which he had written intirely with his own hand, and wherein he had particularly named his successor, to be lodged among the archives of the empire: he likewise changed the presidents of several of the colleges, established a council of regency, in which prince *Menzikoff* presided, and made many other necessary regulations. At length, having recovered from his indisposition, he set out with the empress from *Moscow*, on the twenty-fourth of May for *Colomna*; the grand admiral *Apraxin*, lieutenant-general *Buterlin*, prince *Trubetskoi*, the hospodar *Demetrius Cantemir*, and the privy counsellor *Tolstoi* being gone before.

The Turks
are alarm-
ed at his
prepara-
tions.

THE *Turks* being informed of the great military preparations that were making at *Astracan* and throughout all the eastern provinces of the *Russian* empire, took umbrage at them; the bashaws who commanded on the frontiers of *Persia*, in *Gurgistan* or *Georgia*, sending advice to the porte, that the emperor of *Russia* had formed a design of subduing the last mentioned province, and of making himself master of the *Caspian Sea*; in which case upwards of four hundred thousand muskumans must inevitably fall into slavery. The grand vizir having communicated these advices to the *Russian* minister at *Constantinople*, sent an aga to his imperial majesty to dissuade him from the enterprize: but *Peter* took care to satisfy both the *Turks* and the *Persians*, of his real designs, in a manifesto which he published and distributed along the borders of the *Caspian Sea*, wherein he declared, "That he came not upon the frontiers of *Persia* with an intention of reducing any of the provinces of that kingdom to his obedience; but only to maintain the lawful possessor of them on his throne; and to defend him powerfully, together with his faithful subjects, against the tyranny of *Myrr-Maghmad*, and to obtain satisfaction from him and his *Tartars* for the robberies and mischiefs which they had committed in the *Russian* empire." Besides, the unfortunate *Schah-Hussein* had sent three successive expresses to his imperial majesty, imploring his assistance on terms too advantageous to the *Russians* for so wise a prince as *Peter* to refuse.

Over
whom he
gains several
advan-
tages.

IN the course of this expedition, the rebel *Myrr-Maghmad* did every thing in his power to oppose the designs of the *Russians*: he engaged the neighbouring *Tartars* to harraß them in their march, and advanced himself towards *Ghilom*, with a strong body of troops: but the generals whom the czar left at *Derbent*, having assembled such of the *Calmucks*, *Cossacks*, and *Tartars* as were near, and supporting them with the regular

troops, fell with such fury upon the wearied army of the rebels, that they were soon put to flight. This victory was followed by the surrender of the towns of *Derbent*, *Terki*, and *Baku*, the most considerable places on the coasts of the *Caspian-Sea*, together with the provinces of *Dagestan* and *Schirvan*. *And makes considerable conquests.*

THE power of the *Russians*, in subduing so great a part of the country, began somewhat to dismay *Myrr-Magbmud*. He had a great many enemies in the heart of the kingdom, who now saw through the veil of his hypocrisy; and the *Persians*, always faithful to their kings, could not forgive him his behaviour to *Hussain*, whose fate they were still ignorant of: some said he was dead; others, that he was concealed in a strong castle; and some, that he had been taken prisoner. In short, this rebel perceiving that he could no longer confide in the *Tartars*, who disapproved of his ambitious designs, endeavoured to procure the assistance of the *Turks*; for which *Myrr-Magbmud* ap-
 plies to the *Turks* for assistance. purpose he sent an ambassador to *Constantinople*, to remonstrate that both the glory and religion of the mussulmans were interested in opposing the *Russian* conquests; that as they had already subdued so considerable a part of *Persia*, it was not likely they would stand still in the midst of such success, but would certainly carry their arms into *Georgia*, where there were several Christian princes who would assist them in order to withdraw themselves from the dominion of the *Turks*; and lastly, that he had been credibly informed, that the *Russians* had entered *Persia* at the desire of *Hussain*, who had promised to yield to them whatever they should conquer on the borders of the *Caspian-Sea*. The *Persian* ambassador acquitted himself extremely well of this commission; especially as he was loaded with magnificent presents for the *Turkish* ministers. The janissaries had for a long time breathed nothing but war; the musti was a professed enemy to the *Russians*; and old *Dowlet Gerbai*, who was just seated on the throne of *Crim-Tartary*, longed for an opportunity of shewing the hatred he bore to *Peter*: in short, none but the grand vizir were pacifically inclined, and he durst not express himself openly, for fear of irritating the opposite party.

UPON the strength of these representations all imaginable preparatives were made for declaring war against the *Russians*, and in the mean time an ambassador was sent to the czar, to be informed of his real designs, and whether he intended to extend his conquests any farther than the *Caspian-Sea*; to which *Peter* answered, that the porte had already approved of his having recourse to arms for the insults offered, and the injuries done to him and his subjects by the rebel *Myrr-Magbmud*, and his allies: that he had undertaken nothing.

*But are
pacified by
the medi-
ation of
the French
ambassa-
dor.*

against the dominions of the grand signior ; but was sincerely disposed to a faithful observance of the last treaty of peace between them. Though this answer was pretty well received at first, yet to comply with the importunities of the prince of *Dagestan*, who had lately thrown himself under the protection of the porte, the grand signior caused a manifesto to be published, threatening to declare war against the czar if he did not immediately restore that prince to the possession of his dominions ; and in order to shew that this was his real intention, he endeavoured to sound the inclinations of the emperor of *Germany*, concerning a war with the *Russians*, and whether in that case he was under any engagement to take up arms in their favour. The emperor *Charles* did a very seasonable service to the *Russian* monarch on this occasion, by assuring the *Turk* that his interests were so strongly united with those of *Peter*, that if he was attacked he should be obliged to march with an army to his assistance ; and the grand vizir, who, as we have observed before, was very averse to a war against the *Russians*, made good use of his declarations, by endeavouring to moderate the precipitancy of those who had already prepared for that event : but even this would not have been sufficient to counterpoise the scale in favour of the *Russians*, had not the *French* ambassador, *M. de Bonac*, interposed his good offices to prevent the impending rupture. This minister represented to the sultan, that he had no just ground of complaint against the emperor of *Russia*, since it was with his approbation that he had marched to the frontiers of *Persia*, to revenge such insults as no sovereign prince could suffer with impunity ; that he had done nothing to infringe the treaty of peace subsisting between him and the sublime porte ; that the prince of *Dagestan* was a tributary of *Persia*, and a partizan of *Myrr-Maghmut*, and had not claimed the protection of the porte till after he was driven out of his country for his infidelity ; and lastly, that if the porte took any umbrage at the emperor *Peter's* conquests in that kingdom, he was sincerely disposed not to push them any farther, though he had already a considerable body of troops assembled on the frontiers, to succour *Schah-Hussain*, his ally, who had implored his assistance against a faithless and rebellious subject.

THESE assurances seemed to satisfy the divan, and they appeared inclinable to suspend the commencement of hostilities upon the immediate restitution of *Derbent*. But while the necessary negotiations were carrying on for that purpose, the people of *Ghilan*, a province of *Persia*, bordering on *Schirvan*, and the *Caspian-Sea*, had implored the protection of *Russia*, and of their own accord submitted to his imperial majesty.

majesty. This news, which was transmitted to *Constant nople*, by the astonished bashaws, who commanded in the neighbouring provinces, had well nigh overturned all that *M. de Bonac* had been endeavouring to accomplish: but an ambassador arriving at the same time from the dethroned *Schah-Husseïn*, to implore the protection of the porte, against the usurper *Myrr-Maghmut*; and the *Russian* ambassador having confirmed the assurances given by the *French* minister, the Porte not only banished all thoughts of a war against *Russia*, but soon made use of the preparations for that purpose against *Persia* itself, looking upon this as a favourable opportunity to recover what they had formerly possessed beyond the *Euphrates*.

PETER, upon his return to *Moscow*, after an absence of twelve months, found that many disorders had crept into the administration of public affairs; and that several of the principal members of the regency, which he had established, were *The vice-guilty* of the most atrocious crimes. The chief of those was *chancellor* one of his great favourites, the vice-chancellor *Schafiroff*, who *Schafiroff* being publicly tried, was convicted of having given his brother *condemned* a character and appointments unknown to the emperor and *to death*. the senate; of signing and issuing orders without the consent of the senate, or even causing them to be registered; of having, by his own authority as director of the posts, augmented the postage of letters, and reserved the money to himself; of having concealed two hundred thousand ducats in specie, and jewels to the value of forty thousand more, belonging to prince *Gagarin*, though he himself had signed the emperor's order, commanding every one to discover what they knew of the effects of that criminal; and lastly, of having used opprobrious language to some of the senators in full senate, which was forbid on pain of death.

FOR these offences baron *Schafiroff* was condemned to lose *But as-* his head; but at the instant when this sentence was on the *terwards* point of being executed, the emperor was pleased, on account *banished* of his former services, to change it into that of perpetual banishment into *Siberia*, and confiscation of all his effects.

AFTER this and some other examples were made to prevent the like offences, for the future, the emperor set out from *Moscow* for *Petersburgh*, where he had no sooner arrived than he took care to inspect into the condition of his navy; and having found several ships that had been taken from the *Swedes* in the last war, he distributed them among the cities of *Petersburg*, *Riga*, *Revel*, and *Wyburg*, that they might be constantly employed in trade: and to accustom his people to navigation, he ordered that twelve men should be constantly kept in pay on board each ship, eight of whom were to be *Peter's* *care to im-* *prove his* *marine,*

nished by himself, and the other four by the magistrates, who were to maintain the whole number: but in case any of these ships should be lost, or become unfit for service, the magistrates were to provide a new ship in lieu thereof, of the same kind and burthen.

Affairs of Sweden.

THE states of *Sweden* having assembled about this time, to regulate several important affairs of their government, his imperial majesty advised the duke of *Holstein* to send M. *Basswitz* thither as his minister, to manage his interests in that kingdom, which the *Russian* ministers had likewise orders to support. He had indeed no longer any claim to the succession by hereditary right; that having been abolished on the death of *Charles XII.* and the crown declared elective in case the present queen should die without having issue of her own body: but he flattered himself that, in case the throne should become vacant, the *Swedes*, who had always cherished the blood of their kings, would give him the preference; as one good step towards it, he moved the states at this time to acknowledge him as next of kin to her majesty, and to allow him the title of *Royal Highness*. The secret committee to whom this affair was referred, made a report, "That having considered the matter with all possible attention, and seriously weighed the reasons for and against it, they had found it to be grounded on so many motives, of too delicate a nature to be publicly declared, that they could not dissuade the estates and the king from granting that title to the duke; and that in case it were approved by the assembly, it might nevertheless be referred to the king and the senate, to be treated of as a foreign matter."

The duke of Holstein requests the title of Royal Highness.

THIS report occasioned great debates in the assembly: some of the most impetuous were for having the business determined directly; but most of the nobility opposing this motion, it was immediately agreed to postpone all farther consideration of it till the next day. In the mean while the king and queen wrote each of them a letter to the states, signifying their great surprize at these proceedings, and declaring that they could not, for many weighty reasons, consent to the duke of *Holstein's* having the title of *Royal Highness*. The reading of these letters occasioned the debates to run still higher than before; and the assembly not being able to come to any final resolution, it was thought proper to invite the senate to a conference with the secret committee on this matter, and to give the assembly their joint opinion concerning it. The senate accordingly met on the day appointed, and after taking an oath of secrecy, began the conference, which lasted above

The king and queen of Sweden oppose it.

1ve hours, without intermission. A few days after, the

222

states, being re-assembled, were made acquainted with the result of this conference, which was, "That the senate having maturely considered this affair, and the reasons of the secret committee, could not enough commend their indefatigable zeal, nor in conscience dispense from conforming to their opinion; declaring, that the title of *Royal Highness* might be given to the duke of *Holstein*, without prejudice to the honour or prerogative of their majesties; and that it would contribute both to the splendor and security of the kingdom."

In consequence of this report, it was unanimously resolved to confer that title upon the duke, which was accordingly done. The duke of *Holstein's* success in this affair proved very agreeable to his imperial majesty, who intended to give one of his daughters to that prince; and as *Peter's* new title of emperor had by this time been recognized by all the powers of *Europe*, except *Denmark*, he thought it did not become him to dispense any longer with the refusal of that court, and therefore sent orders to his minister at *Copenhagen*, to renew his instances on that and some other articles.

In the beginning of *September*, an ambassador from *Schah Tahmas*, or *Tabamased*, son of the deposed *Schah Hussein*, arrived at *Petersburg*. This minister, sensible of his master's danger from the *Turks* and the rebel *Myrr-Moghmud*, solicited *Peter* very warmly for a quick and powerful succour. He was a man of spirit, perfectly well acquainted with the interests of both empires, and justly concluded that he should never be able to obtain the alliance he demanded, and the succours which his master wanted, but upon very advantageous conditions; he therefore concluded a treaty with *Peter*, by which the towns of *Derbent*, and *Baku*, with the provinces of *Ghilan*, *Mazanderan*, and *Asterban*, were ceded to *Russia* for ever. The grand signior was not at all pleased with this treaty; but looked upon the emperor's thus uniting with *Schah Tahmas*, as an oblique declaration of war against the

porte: but the *French* and *Russian* ministers at *Constantinople* giving *Peter* immediate notice of the disposition that appeared in the divan to declare against him; he formally communicated to the porte the treaty he had concluded with the young *Schah*, and invited the sultan to accede to it; declaring that he would religiously observe his treaties with the sublime porte; and that he had no other view in what he had done, than to assist an unfortunate prince, insulted and persecuted by a rebellious subject. This declaration had the desired effect; and the divan was at length brought to a convention between the two empires, in regard to the affairs of *Persia*, by which their several conquests were confirmed to them, and

But the states and senate grant it.

Peter concludes an advantageous treaty with the Persians.

At which the Turks are offended.

the *Turks* put in possession of the provinces of *Erivan*, *Tauris* and *Cashin*.

A. D.
1724.
*The em-
press Ca-
tharine
crowned.*

PETER, having thus established peace on every side of his extensive empire, resolved to accomplish a design he had long formed, of rewarding the virtues and merit of his beloved *Catharine* with the imperial crown. To this end he published a declaration, wherein he drew many examples from ancient history, of the custom of crowning the consorts of princes, and laid down his reasons for bestowing that honour upon the empress, whose wife counsels had been of infinite service both to the state and to him. All the foreign ministers and chief nobility were then desired to follow him to *Moscow*, where this august ceremony was performed on the eighteenth of *May*, in a most magnificent manner. The next day she received the compliments of the whole court; and the emperor on this occasion made several considerable promotions, and conferred the order of *St. Andrew* on many persons of distinction.

A. D.
1725.
*The Czar
taken ill.*

SOME short time before this ceremony, *Peter* was attacked with a severe fit of illness; and though he was now somewhat better, yet his health was far from being thoroughly established; nor indeed did he take the necessary precautions for that purpose, but delivered himself entirely up to the affairs of state. His activity seemed to increase as his strength decreased, and every day produced some new monument of his glory. The city of *Petersburg*, of which he was the founder, and in a great measure the architect, began to be, through his care, one of the handsomest and most considerable capitals of *Europe*; already containing upwards of fifty thousand houses, and several noble palaces. An observatory was building, by his order, on the model of that at *Paris*; numbers of useful books augmented daily a library of his forming; and he had several curious cabinets filled with the choicest productions of nature and art. *Russia* now possessed a sufficient number of men of genius and learning to compose an academy, the rules and institutes of which the emperor himself drew up: but he had not time to put the finishing hand to this fine establishment. His health decayed, and death, with hasty strides, approached this hero, who had indeed lived long, if we measure his days by what he did, and what he intended to do. Yet even in this state of weakness he was willing to set his people an example of piety, by assisting, with all his household, at the ceremony of blessing the waters (A) on the feast of the epiphany. He there caught a

(A) We have given an account of this ceremony in page 151.

He had several children by his first wife *Ottokeza Fedcrowna Lapuchin*, whom he repudiated; but none of them lived to years of maturity, except the unhappy czarowitz *Alexis Petrowitz*, whose fate we have already mentioned, and who left behind him a son, afterwards emperor. The empress *Catharine* was mother of two princes, *Peter* and *Paul*, who died before their father; and of three princeesses, who survived him; namely, *Anne Petrowna*, born the fifth of *February*, 1708, who was afterwards married to the duke of *Holstein Gottorp*; *Elizabeth Petrowna*, born the tenth of *March* 1713, who afterwards ascended the imperial throne; and *Natalia Petrowna*, born the twentieth of *August*, 1718, who died while the funeral solemnities were preparing for the emperor her father, and was interred at the same time with him.

As soon as the emperor's death was made known, the senate and synod assembled, and in obedience to the last orders of their dying sovereign, unanimously declared *Catharine Alexowna* emperess of all *Russia*. About eight o'clock in the morning they were introduced to the emperess by prince *Menzikoff*, when they presented her with the act of their submission in writing, and took the usual oaths of fidelity; she receiving them very graciously, and assuring them that she would be a mother to her country, as the emperor had been its father. The general grief which appeared among all ranks and degrees of people on this occasion, is not to be expressed; even the soldiers were dissolved in tears, and would not be comforted till they were informed that the emperess *Catharine* was proclaimed their sovereign, which they no sooner heard than they flocked in crowds to the palace to take

the

the accustomed oaths, crying out as they went, ' If our father is dead, our mother still lives !'

*She bestows
great funeral honours on the emperor.*

THE first care of her imperial majesty was to pay the last duties to her husband's ashes, with a pomp becoming the greatest monarch that *Russia*, or perhaps any other country had ever known; and though there is no court of *Europe*, where splendor and magnificence is carried to a greater height on these occasions than in that of *Russia*; yet it may with great truth be said, that she even surpassed herself in the funeral honours paid to her great *Peter*. She purchased the most precious kinds of marble, and employed some of the ablest sculptors of *Italy* to erect a mausoleum to this hero, which might, if possible, transmit the remembrance of his great actions to the most distant ages (A). Not satisfied with this,

(A) *Mottley* gives us the following, as the czar's epitaph :

Here lieth,
All that could die of a Man immortal,
PETER ALEXOWITZ:
It is almost superfluous to add,
GREAT EMPEROR OF RUSSIA:
A Title!
Which, instead of adding to his Glory,
Became glorious by his wearing it.
Let Antiquity be dumb,
Nor boast her ALEXANDER, or her CÆSAR.
How easy was Victory
To Leaders, who were followed by Heroes?
And whose Soldiers felt a noble Disdain
At being thought less vigilant than their Generals?
But He,
Who in this Place first knew Rest,
Found Subjects base and inactive,
Unwarlike, unlearned, untractable,
Neither covetous of Fame, nor fearless of Danger;
Creatures, with the Names of Men;
But with Qualities rather brutal than rational!
Yet, even these
He polish'd from their native Ruggedness;
And, breaking out like a new Sun,
To illuminate the Minds of a People,
Dispell'd their Night of hereditary Darkness;
And, by force of his invincible Influence,
Taught them to conquer
Even the Conquerors of *Germany*.
Other Princes have commanded victorious Armies;
This Commander created them.
Blush, O Art! at a Hero who owed thee nothing.
Exult, O Nature! for thine was this Prodigy.

She

she caused a medal to be struck, worthy of the antients. On one side was represented the bust of the late emperor, with these words; PETER THE GREAT, EMPEROR AND SOVEREIGN OF ALL RUSSIA, BORN MAY. XXX. MDCLXXII. On the reverse was the empress sitting, with the crown on her head, the globe and sceptre by her side on a table, and before her were a sphere, sea-charts, plans, mathematical instruments, arms, and a caduceus. At distances, in three different places, were represented an edifice on the sea coast, with a platform before it, a ship and galley at sea, and the late emperor in the clouds, supported by Eternity, looking on the empress, and shewing her with his right hand all the treasures he had left her, with these words, *Behold what I have left you.* In the exergue, *Deceased 28 January, 1725.* Several of these medals she ordered to be struck in gold, to the weight of fifty ducats, and distributed among the foreign ministers, and all the grandees of the empire, as a testimony of her respect and gratitude to the memory of her late husband, to whose generosity she took a pleasure in owning herself indebted for her present elevated station.

AFTER having satisfied all that her love and acknowledgment demanded, the empress turned her thoughts to the affairs of state. She entirely gained the affection of her army, by ordering immediate payment of what arrears were due to them; she likewise quieted the *Cossacks*, who having for many years been deprived of their privileges, on account of the perfidiousness of their former settman *Mazeppa*, complained very loudly, and threatened a revolt; but this prudent princess sent general *Wiesbach* to them, with such liberal promises of re-establishing them in their former prerogatives, and giving them chiefs and officers of their own nation, that they were easily brought to a just observance of their duty.

ON the first of June the duke of *Holstein* was married to the princess *Anne Petrowna*, eldest daughter of the late emperor by the present empress. The nuptials were celebrated with the greatest pomp and magnificence, the empress then first conferring the order of *St. Alexander Newski* * upon lieutenant-general *Golowin*, and seventeen other officers.

THE feasts and entertainments on this occasion did not however in the least divert her attention from the affairs of her government, which indeed required a more than ordinary vigilance and activity, since it was of a very uncommon nature, and what very few of the *Russians* had expected: for these reasons there was great room to apprehend some attempts

* See page 168.

against

State of
Russia at
the accef-
sion of the
emprefs
Catha-
rine.

against it, especially in a nation so much inclined to revolt, and who still resented the force that had been used in obliging them to renounce their antient customs, and adopt those that had been introduced and established by the late emperor. Besides, it was a great novelty to the *Russians* to see a woman upon the throne, in which no one of that sex had sat since the princess *Olga*, mother of the third grand duke; and this novelty was the more disagreeable, as there yet remained a prince, the son of the czarowitz *Alexis*, to whom the crown seemed of right to belong. This was the state of affairs at home at the time of the accession of the empress *Catharine*; and those of a foreign nature did not seem to wear a much more pleasing aspect. All the neighbouring states seemed to be inspired with fresh courage at the death of a monarch, whose very name imprinted terror. *Poland*, in particular, imagined that the time was come, when she should get rid of her continual apprehensions, and be able to make an advantage of her pretensions founded on the terms of her alliance with the late emperor: *Sweden* hoped to be able to recover her losses under favour of the first troubles that should happen; and *Denmark* flattered herself that she had nothing more to fear, for that the empress would scarce be in a condition to execute the designs which her late husband had formed in favour of the house of *Holstein*.

Her wife
precau-
tions.

To prevent all enterprizes that could be formed against her government at home, *Catharine* took the most prudent measures imaginable: she made no change in the ministry or the army; the faithful and equitable *Golowin* was continued in the post of grand-chancellor, prince *Menzikoff* in that of prime minister, and count *Apraxin* at the head of the marine: the generals and counsellors of state, *Repin*, *Gallitzin*, and *Dolgorucki*, likewise remained in their respective employments; nor was any alteration made in the system or conduct of the court towards foreign powers. Affairs were also managed in such a manner, with respect to the neighbouring potentates, as might destroy any opinion they should entertain of the government's being weaker now than under the late emperor. For this reason great care was taken to augment the troops, and to dispose them so as to be ready to act on the first notice. The improvement of the marine was also attended to with the same diligence as in the last reign, a fleet being manned, equipped, and ordered to sail, as if for an expedition, as had been practised by *Peter*, in order to train up his seamen.

DURING

DURING these domestic transactions, the Russian generals continued their conquests on the coasts of the Caspian Sea. The prince of Teflis not only submitted to the empress, but came to Petersburg with all his family, and embraced the Greek religion; and in the month of June, general Matuffskin, to whom the late emperor had left the command of his troops in Georgia, obtained two victories over the united forces of the neighbouring princes, one in the plain of Koschomodan, the other in that of Temnin, where he made himself master of all their artillery and baggage. But his most considerable advantage was over the Tartars of Dagestan, against whom he led fifteen thousand regular troops, and gained a complete victory; the first fruits of which were, the taking the town of Tarku, with twenty dependent villages.

TOWARDS the latter end of the year 1725, the empress undertook two very important affairs; the first was, in imitation of the late emperor, to make a disposition for settling the succession to the crown, lest she should be taken off before she had regulated a matter of that great concern; and the other, to enquire into the ecclesiastical revenues, and prescribe proper bounds to the avarice of the clergy. The first of these designs occasioned great murmuring and discontent, and even produced several pasquinades and other seditious papers; but the other was a matter of much more danger and difficulty, there not being a people under the sun more slavishly submissive to the will and direction of their clergy than the Russians: nor is this to be wondered at, if we consider how much they are deprived of the advantages of education, and accustomed, from their infancy, to the most servile subjection in every respect. Their priests, who are naturally cunning, though in general very ignorant, exercise all their skill in taking advantage of the blind obedience and superstition of the people, and thereby amass such prodigious revenues, as even Peter himself, with all his penetration and sagacity, had never been able rightly to discover. However, to avoid the consequences of this inquiry, which they had great reason to dread, they gave the empress a very considerable free gift.

Two other great designs of the late emperor, the augmentation of the marine, and the discovery of a passage by the north of Tartary, to Japan, China, and the Indies, yet remained to be executed. With respect to the former, the empress succeeded therein as far as her circumstances would permit, by increasing her fleet to fifty ships of the line, forty frigates, and a great number of galleys, galliots, and flat-

bottomed boats : the repeated, but ineffectual attempts for the latter have been already noticed ^a.

A. D. To give the reader a proper idea of the subsequent transactions of this reign, it will be necessary to take a short view of the situation of affairs in other parts of *Europe* at this period, which seemed to threaten an approaching war. The breaking up of a fruitless congress at *Cambray*, had been closely followed by three treaties between the courts of *Spain* and *Vienna*; one of peace, another of alliance, and a third of commerce. Some of the *European* powers, especially those whose trading interests were most extensive, thought themselves injured by the last of these treaties; because *Spain* thereby not only guarantied the establishment of an *East India* company, made about two years before in the *Austrian Netherlands*, but even granted several advantages to the subjects of the emperor sailing to the *Indies*, which had already been exclusively granted to several nations. The discontent of these commercial states naturally united their interests, and occasioned a treaty of alliance to be concluded at *Hanover* on the third of *September*, 1725, between the kings of *Great Britain*, *France*, and *Prussia*, wherein it was expressly stipulated, that the republic of the *United Provinces* should be invited to accede to it. The sole end of this treaty was to maintain these powers in the possession of their rights, upon which the treaty of *Vienna* seemed to encroach, though at the same time no particular right was therein specified.

Consequences of these treaties. THE treaties of *Hanover* and *Vienna* seemed likely to divide all *Europe* into two parties, through the endeavours used by the powers engaged in these alliances, to draw into their opposite interests all the potentates that were not originally concerned therein. In the first place, the allies of *Hanover* invited the states general of the *United Provinces* to accede to their alliance, as a party greatly interested in the preservation of the commercial rights, which, it was pretended, were very much injured by the grant made to the *Ostend* company, and by several articles of the treaty of *Vienna*. The kings of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Sardinia*, were afterwards invited to accede to it, as being the particular allies of *Great Britain* and *France*; so that the parties concerned in the treaty of *Vienna* had only *Poland*, *Russia*, and some princes of the empire and *Italy*, left to engage in their alliance. They therefore had recourse to two methods, inviting some to accede to it, and using all their endeavours to dissuade others from listening to the instances that were made on the part of *Great Britain* and *France*.

^a Page 104, and 105.

SWEDEN, who had made her peace with *Russia* at *Nyslät* on the thirtieth of *August*, 1721, had confirmed that peace by another treaty of alliance, concluded at *Stockholm* on the fourth of *March*, 1724, to which all such powers as should approve of it were to be invited to accede; and the emperor *Charles VI.* had accordingly been actually invited on both sides. This last treaty contained certain stipulations in favour of the duke of *Holstein's* pretensions to the restitution of the duchy of *Sleswick*, which had been guarantied to the king of *Denmark* by the king of *Great Britain*, upon his acquisition of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and whilst the congress of *Cambrai* yet subsisted. But the emperor, having a real interest to manage with the king of *Great Britain*, did not think proper at that time to accept of the invitation of *Russia* and *Sweden*; though, after the conclusion of the treaty of *Hanover*, the imperial ministers caused that invitation to be revived, and made use of it in order to draw those two courts indirectly into the treaty of *Vienna*. This negotiation was entered into by *M. Lanschinski*, on the part of the empress *Catharine*, and count *Tessin*, the *Swedish* minister; while the other powers, who had forgot the invitation of 1724, to which the imperial court then gave no attention, were greatly alarmed at the diligence used to bring about an affair of which they were not apprized. However, it was not long a secret; for the emperor's offer made to *Sweden* to accede to the treaty of 1724, at a time when the ministers of *England*, *France*, and *Prussia*, were inviting that crown to accede to the treaty of *ty between Hanover*, unriddled the whole. The court of *Sweden* could not well reject this accession, after having demanded it, tho' the situation of affairs was now altered. For this reason, count *Tessin* negotiated, in consequence of the former instructions given to his predecessor; and a convention was accordingly entered into between these three powers, in which was contained a secret article, relative to the duke of *Holstein*. This article was certainly the principal motive that induced the empress *Catherine* to enter into the designs of the court of *Vienna*, which, by this treaty, was obliged to support any steps that should be taken to obtain the restitution of the duchy of *Sleswick*.

THE court of *Sweden*, which had not the same views as that of *Russia*, did not so readily ratify this act of the emperor's accession, nor, even at last, without certain modifications and restrictions. But if the empress, persuaded by the duke of *Holstein*, took this step so easily, the *Russian* ministry afterwards checked her zeal by opposing the interests of *Russia* to those of *Holstein*. We have already observed, that

and invites them to accede to the treaty of Vienna. the emperor's accession to the treaty of *Stockholm* could only be considered as a step to induce the courts of *Russia* and *Sweden* to engage in other measures; and therefore the empress *Catharine* had no sooner ratified this accession, than the imperial ministers, in their turn, proposed to her to accede to the treaty of *Vienna*. This affair, however, was of too great importance to be proceeded in so hastily as the emperor's ministers required, as *Catharine* might thereby engage herself in a war, not only with *Great Britain* and *France*, but perhaps with *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and the *United Provinces*, without reaping the least advantage from it; but, on the contrary, running the risk of having her ports blocked up, and her commerce destroyed. These considerations protracted the negotiations to a great length, and obliged the court of *Vienna* to recal count *Rabutin* from *Prussia*, and send him to *Petersburg* to obviate the difficulties which had arisen. This minister was at first received very coolly; but knowing how to insinuate himself, and being powerfully seconded by the duke of *Holstein* and his ministers, the empress at length consented not only to accede to the treaty of *Vienna*, but to conclude an alliance with the emperor, which was mutually signed and exchanged on the sixth of *August*, 1726.

which the empress Catharine agrees to. She assembles a great armament. Soon after, the empress assembled a great naval force, in order to favour the designs of the duke of *Holstein* upon the duchy of *Sleswick*; but though the foundation of this enterprise was just, yet it was necessary to render it plausible. To this purpose the *Russian* ministry gave out, that the king of *Denmark* had actually proposed terms of accommodation to the duke. The intent of this report was not only to persuade the allies of that monarch that *Denmark* had entered into treaties without their knowledge, and by that means to create jealousies and suspicions between them; but also to provoke the *Danish* court to make complaints of which they might take advantage. In this last point they succeeded; several warm letters passing on this occasion between *Von Hagen* the *Danish* secretary of state, and *Bassewitz*, the duke of *Holstein's* prime minister; wherein the designs and motives of the courts of *Russia* and *Denmark* were treated in a stile very uncommon among princes.

WHILE the minds of men were thus disposed for a rupture by these writings, every thing was preparing in *Russia* for actual execution; the ships were assembled and equipped, and the troops designed for this expedition received orders to march into *Livonia*; tho' not without doubt of their success, by reason of a fleet then sitting out by the *English*, and justly suspected to be intended to awe the *Baltic*. Dr
est

mark was not the only power that apprehended the consequences of those warlike preparations in *Russia*: *Sweden* was also alarmed at them; and as the partizans of the duke of *Holstein* were very desirous of having deputies in the approaching assembly of the states, it was not doubted, but that though the *Russian* fleet seemed chiefly designed against *Denmark*, it would not really fail but with views of supporting the *Swedish* partizans in the interest of that prince. This suspicion received a farther confirmation, from some ill-timed menaces that were dropt by the *Russian* ministers; upon which Baron *Spaar*, the *Swedish* minister in *Great-Britain*, pressed this court to take the necessary measures for preserving the tranquillity of the north. The court of *Denmark* was not less solicitous to the same purpose; and perhaps the king of *Great Britain* was the more easily prevailed upon to come into the measures, by his having received information of several steps taken by the court of *Berlin*, which rendered it extremely doubtful whether that power would continue firm in the alliance of *Hanover*.

COUNT *Seckendorf*, a *Saxon* nobleman in the emperor's *Treaty of service*, and one whom the king of *Prussia* had long esteemed, being accidentally at *Potzdam*, imagined that he had discovered a dissatisfaction in that monarch with his allies. He immediately informed the emperor of what he had perceived, and at the same time hinted to his *Prussian* majesty, the benefit that would probably arise from a defensive alliance between him and the imperial court. What passed upon this subject, though only by way of conversation, met with more attention and regard than the count could have expected; and these casual overtures insensibly led him into farther explanations with the king, who, in his turn, opened himself on the subject of his pretensions to the succession of *Juliers* and *Bergue*; which, he alledged, was to return to his family after the death of the elector palatine. It was certainly a great master-stroke in politics, for the emperor to draw this prince from the *Hanoverian* alliance; or at least to raise some probable suspicions of such a change, which could not fail of greatly perplexing the allies of *Hanover*, and of hindering, or retarding, the accession of some powers who had been invited to enter into that alliance. The emperor, therefore, granted every thing that the king of *Prussia* demanded, and even some things that were not in his power to grant; and a treaty was concluded between them, by which it was agreed, that his *Prussian* majesty should guaranty the succession of the house of *Austria*, as it had been regulated by

the last pragmatic sanction; that the two contracting powers should mutually assist each other with a certain number of troops; that the emperor should pay a certain subsidy to the king of *Prussia*; and that his imperial majesty should use his utmost endeavours to secure to his *Prussian* majesty the eventual succession of *Juliers* and *Bergue*.

Another
treaty be-
tween
the empress
Catharine
and the
king of
Prussia.

THIS alliance proved extremely agreeable to the court of *Russia*, between which and that of *Prussia* it immediately gave rise to another negotiation. The differences between *Poland* and the court of *Berlin* seemed greatly to increase; and on the other hand, the *Poles* paid very little regard to the demands of the empress *Catharine*; but equally threatened both these powers, especially with respect to *Courland*. If the *Russians* were not immediately concerned in the *Poles* entering *Prussia*, yet they had a real interest in the preservation of *Courland*, which served as a rampart on that side to *Livonia*; and the king of *Prussia*, on the other hand, seemed to have every thing to fear from the impetuosity of a nation who were determined to treat him as a vassal. These mutual interests naturally produced a defensive alliance between the courts of *Petersburg* and *Berlin*, by which they reciprocally guaranteed their respective possessions, and stipulated the certain number of succours with which they were mutually to assist each other.

THESE alliances, joined to the great preparations that were making both by land and sea, alarmed the *Danes* to such a degree, that they renewed their solicitations to the court of *Great Britain* for succours more strongly than ever; and conceived greater hopes of succeeding therein, as they were pressed both by that court and *France* to accede to the treaty of *Hanover*. The king of *Denmark* was very desirous of being a contracting party in this alliance; but the article of the guaranty of rights and possessions was an obstacle, which, from his connections with other states, he could not surmount; on the other hand, his particular rights and pretensions could not be guaranteed by the other parties, without exposing themselves to difficult discussions with some other powers. The courts of *France* and *Great Britain*, therefore, to avoid all these inconveniences, entered into a particular treaty with the king of *Denmark*; in consequence of which an *English* squadron, consisting of twenty-three sail, commanded by Sir *Charles Wager*, soon after appeared in the *Baltic*, under pretence of maintaining the peace of the north, and covering the coasts of *Sweden* from any enterprises on the part of the *Russians*.

An Eng-
lish fleet
arrives in
the Baltic.

THIS

THIS in a great measure confirms what we observed before, that the *Russian* fleet was not so much intended against *Denmark*, as to support the duke of *Holstein's* partizans in the assembly of the states of *Sweden*; and the *English* admiral, in pursuance of his instructions, posted himself so advantageously as to prevent the *Russian* ships from going out of their ports. On this occasion several councils were held, to resolve in what manner to behave to the *English*: some were for taking the opportunity of the first fair wind to attack them; others were for setting them on fire; but the more prudent were of opinion, that as her imperial majesty had declared that she had no enterprise in view, but had equipped her fleet only to maintain the peace of the north, and to exercise her marine, they ought not by their conduct to falsify this declaration; but should convince all the *European* powers of their sincerity, and that those who had represented their designs in any other light, were grossly deceived themselves, and endeavoured to impose upon others. The empress therefore sent orders to the governors of *Reval*, and other places on the coast, to give the *English* admiral a good reception, and to furnish him with such provisions and refreshments as he should have occasion for: thus, by making a virtue of necessity, those forces, which were destined for great attempts, were obliged to remain quite inactive.

COUNT *Rabutin*, the emperor's minister at *Petersburg*, used his utmost vigilance to thwart any negotiation that might be set on foot with the *British* admiral; and at the same time the *Danish* minister presented a memorial, demanding a categorical reason for the preparations which the *Russians* had made. This demand seemed of a very extraordinary nature, and was objected to by the *Russians* as quite unseasonable, since no step had been taken, nor any declaration made, from whence there could be the least room to suspect them of intending to disturb the public tranquillity. They therefore answered this piece by another, wherein they formally asked the king of *Denmark's* reason for having sent twelve of his ships of war to join the *English* squadron; and whether so extraordinary a step ought not to be looked upon as an open rupture.

DURING these transactions at *Petersburg*, the negotiations in *Sweden* were carried on with great vigour; the counts *Golowin* and *Freytag* omitting nothing that might prevent the states from acceding to the treaty of *Hanover*, which the ministers of *Great Britain* and *France* strongly solicited. The empress *Catharine* had this affair so much at heart, that she

recalled prince *Dolgorucki*, one of her ablest politicians, from *Warsaw*, to send him to *Stuckheim*; and would also have sent count *Bassewitz* thither, to support the interests of the duke of *Holslein*: but the court of *Sweden* being well acquainted with the conduct and intrigues of this minister, intimated, that he would not be well received there. Two other ministers were sent by the duke, for form sake, to *Stuckheim*, where they did neither good nor harm.

*Sweden
accedes to
the treaty
of Ha-
nover.*

PRINCE *Dolgorucki*'s instructions were very full, and he had orders not to spare any thing that could prevent *Sweden*'s acceding to the treaty of *Hanover*. However, the British minister pushed this affair with such warmth, that the king of *Sweden*, though *Dolgorucki* offered him a subsidy of 600,000 rubles, declared himself in favour of the accession, and then left the farther decision of the affair to the assembly of the states, who soon after followed his example.

PRINCE *Dolgorucki*, finding he had miscarried in his negotiation, declared to count *Horn*, the *Swedish* minister, 'That her imperial majesty, his sovereign, seeing with regret, that all the advantageous proposals she had made to the crown of *Sweden* had been slighted and rejected, was obliged to change the good inclinations she had hitherto entertained towards that kingdom, and to pursue the designs of her late consort in so effectual a manner, that *Sweden* might have reason to repent of this step when it would be too late.'

WHILE these negotiations were carrying on at foreign courts, the empress was particularly attentive to preserve her influence among her neighbours; to which end new levies were raised on all sides, and she still continued to augment her marine, though the *English* had in a manner blocked up her ports. Ever studious to promote the welfare of her subjects, she adhered strictly to *Peter*'s noble plan of civilizing his people, and reforming the government. The genius of that great prince still directed the administration of affairs, and watched over the glory of the empire. *Catharine* took uncommon care of the late czarowitz's son, *Peter Alexowitz*, the only prince that remained of the blood of the czars. She declared him great duke of *Russia*, as a step previous to his being appointed her successor.

*Catharine
appoints her
successor.*

*Pretended
conspiracy.*

ABOUT the same time some *Muscovite* lords were accused of secretly fomenting a conspiracy, in order to raise the infant duke to the throne, to revenge his father, and restore the ancient form of government. This alarm was given by prince *Menzikoff*, who made use of his unbounded power at court,

court, to ruin those he suspected or disliked. Several of these pretended accomplices were arrested by his sole command, and banished to *Siberia*: but it was soon found that this conspiracy was but a phantom, to which the imprudent zeal, or rather the jealousy and avarice of the minister, had given a shadow of reality.

KING *Augustus* of *Poland*, who had powerful reasons to *Catharize* the court of *Russia* in the interests of *Saxony*, shewed here at this time a piece of gallantry towards her imperial majesty, quite agreeable to his polite disposition. He had lately instituted the order of the *White Eagle*, which had never been conferred upon any but officers of distinguished merit, who had done him some signal service: but to give the empress *Catharine* an extraordinary proof of his esteem, by offering her the greatest compliment in his power, he sent the ensigns of that order to his minister at *Petersburgh*, to present to her majesty, who received them with pleasure, and was, a few days after, invested with them in a most pompous and magnificent manner.

SHORTLY after this she presided at the first meeting of the academy of sciences at *Petersburgh*, which was opened on the feast of *St. Catharine*. The arts and sciences had now a palace in *Russia*, founded by the immortal *PETER*, in a great city, in the midst of a people curious and desirous to be instructed, and on a spot where, fifteen years before, nothing was to be seen but inaccessible bogs and marshes. Such is the power of good and generous sovereigns, to benefit their subjects, and establish the glory of their empire!

A glass of spirituous liquor given to the empress at an entertainment at this time is generally supposed to have shortened her days. What gives credit to this suspicion, is, that her chief physician declared her complaint, which settled upon her lungs, came from the hand of some secret enemy, and that no remedy could possibly remove it. She, however, continued to apply herself with great assiduity to public affairs, and particularly to the election of a successor to the duke of *Courland*, in which *Russia* was deeply interested.

Ferdinand, the then reigning duke of that country, was a Roman catholic, and had no children. This occasioned great uneasiness among his subjects; and the states of *Courland*, fearing the consequences of a re-union of that duchy to the kingdom of *Poland*, which had been talked of in the diets of *Warsaw* and *Grodno*, were determined to prevent any resolution that might be taken to the prejudice of their religion.

gion and liberty. They therefore, by virtue of the right which they claimed of electing their own dukes, proceeded to an eventual election, and their choice fell upon count *Maurice* of *Saxe*, natural son of king *Augustus*, in whose favour they were determined, as much on account of his merit, as to convince the republic of *Poland*, that they did not want to withdraw themselves from her protection, since it was not at all likely that the son of their king would act against the interests of his father. But the design of the *Poles* being to divide this duchy into palatinates, this election was not agreeable to them, and they treated the *Courlanders* with as much severity as if they had elected a foreign prince. Count *Maurice* was not only laid under the bann of the empire, but new measures were actually concerted for rejoining *Courland* to the kingdom of *Poland*.

The empress prepares against an alliance of the English, French, Danes, and Swedes.

It was likewise insinuated to the court of *Russia*, that the king of *Great Britain* intended to send another great fleet into the *Baltic*; that the court of *Denmark* had concluded a treaty of alliance with *France* and *England*, by which she engaged to raise a great body of troops, in consideration of a considerable subsidy; and that the states of *Sweden* had desired their king to equip a powerful squadron, and bend all his cares towards the re-establishment of his marine. All these dispositions seemed to forbode a war: for which reason the empress *Catharine* gave orders for assembling thirty-thousand men, who were to march on the first notice from the emperor. Part of these troops were sent to *Smolenskow*, and the rest to *Riga*: but it was to be feared they would not get into the empire, as the kings of *Poland* and *Prussia* did not seem inclinable to grant them a free passage. However, there happened not to be occasion for them; the preliminaries of a peace being soon after signed, in which it was agreed that the northern powers should be invited to the congress.

Her illness increases.

Catharine's disorder began now visibly to increase, and the first physician to the king of *Prussia*, whom she had sent for, declared that he had no favourable opinion of the consequences of her illness. Towards the middle of *April*, she grew so bad as to be obliged to keep her bed, and it was found that an abscess was actually formed in her lungs. The proper remedies were accordingly administered; and with such success, at first, that, about the 12th of *May*, she was thought to be so much out of danger, that preparations were made for celebrating the anniversary of her coronation on the 18th of that month: but this expected joy was soon turned into mourning: for, on the 16th, her majesty relapsed, and

and the next day, at about nine o'clock in the evening, she expired, after a reign of two years, three months, and seven days, and at the age of thirty-eight years, three months, and twenty days.

Death of the empress Catharine.

THE *Russians* justly lamented in the death of this empress, than whom few greater or better sovereigns have ever lived, the loss of a tender, careful, and compassionate mother, who reigned over her children. Her merit alone had raised her to the bed of one of the greatest monarchs in the world; and her sublime genius, her heroic qualities, her patriotic virtues, secured her, even in her life-time, a distinguished rank among the most illustrious of mankind.

Her character.

Catharine, upon her deathbed, declared *Peter Alexowitz II.* her successor, and settled the regency that was to govern during his minority.

Peter II. czar.

Thinking she could never sufficiently shew her gratitude to prince *Menzikoff*, the principal author of her fortune and elevation, she had appointed that favourite of *Peter the Great* generalissimo of all the forces of the empire, by land and by sea, and had raised him to such height of power, that he wanted only the title of sovereign, of which he had in fact the authority. To complete her favours to him, she prevailed on the regency to agree to a marriage between one of *Menzikoff's* daughters, and the young prince *Peter Alexowitz*. But this emperor, though but twelve years old at the time of his accession, was resolved to punish him for the injuries he had done his father: a design in which he was heartily seconded by the lords of his court, who ardently wished the ruin of a rival, before whom they had been obliged to truckle under the preceding reigns. *Menzikoff* himself unwarily lent them arms against him. Intoxicated with his grandeur, he no longer kept measures with any one, but carried his rapines and extortions, hitherto unpunished, to greater lengths than he had ever done before, and at last presumed to behave insolently even to the czar, who thereupon disgraced and banished him, and confiscated his immense estate.

Menzikoff disgraced and banished.

Peter II. then raised the princes *Dolgorucki* to the highest employments in the empire, and actually espoused the princess *Catharine*, daughter to prince *Alexis*, who had been his governor, and sister to the princes *Sergius* and *John*: but before the marriage was consummated, he was seized with the small-pox, of which he died on the 19th of January 1730.

1730. Death of Peter II.

UPON the death of the emperor *Peter II.* the regular succession to the crown of *Russia* was at a stand. According

to the will of the empress *Catharine*, her eldest daughter *Anne Petrovna*, duchess of *Holstein*, ought to have been called to the throne: but she died the year after her mother, and left behind her a son, who was then about ten years old.

The regular succession broke through; The prospect of so long a minority as must have ensued upon the accession of this prince, determined the senate and nobility to set aside *Catharine's* will, under pretence of its being vacated by a declaration of the late emperor, who, said they, had appointed, upon his death-bed, another successor; though, at first, they could not agree among themselves who they should declare this successor to be: by which it was very manifest, that, notwithstanding their assertions, the young emperor in reality made no such declaration.

It has been said, that some of the principal nobility had thoughts of changing the government into a republic; but that finding this would be impracticable, they framed a new scheme of rule, which was, to govern the empire themselves, allowing only the name and ensigns of sovereign authority to one of the imperial family. The next consideration was, who this person should be; and after some debate, they cast their eyes upon *Anne Iwanowna*, duchess of *Courland*; of the imperial line indeed, but out of all the rules of succession. She was the second daughter of the emperor *John*, elder brother to *Peter the Great*; but she had an elder sister, *Catharine Iwanowna*, who was married to the duke of *Mecklenburg*, to whom, if the succession was to devolve first on the daughters of the elder brother, the imperial crown should have come: but her husband was engaged in a kind of civil war with his nobility; and therefore it was given out, that for securing the peace and tranquility of his subjects, the young emperor *Peter II.* passing her by, had called her younger sister to the succession, which, soon after her death, she was invited to accept. Such steps, by rendering successions arbitrary, open a door to revolutions, and make the throne totter. There ~~was~~ a certain order of birth, as *M. de Montesquieu* observes, to strike the people, to stop cabals, and to stifle ambition.

Sketch of her reign.

THE princes *Dolgorucki* and their faction, who took upon them the management of this affair, assigned the new empress a council, framed a new constitution for the empire, and limited her authority as they thought proper; to which regulations she readily consented. But as soon as she was fixed upon the throne, she cancelled all these limitations, and banished the authors of them. She then made choice of grave and wise ministers, and gave the command of her ar-

my

mies to very able and experienced generals, which enabled her to govern with great reputation, and to maintain the credit of her empire, with regard to the rest of *Europe*, in as high a degree as any of her predecessors. She afforded the emperor of *Germany*, *Charles VI.* powerful succours against the house of *Bourbon*: she seated *Augustus III.* king of *Poland*, upon the throne of his father, notwithstanding all the arts, and in spite of the arms of *France*: she made successful war against the *Turks*, who wanted to recover *Asoph*, and in the course of that war totally ruined the *Crim Tartars*. In a word, she made her government as much revered as from the power of her extended dominions it ought to be; and concluded such alliances with foreign states, as were most proper for maintaining the system of government, which she laboured to establish.

SHE brought to her court her niece, the princess *Anne* of *Mecklenburg*, daughter of her eldest sister, and married her to *Antony Ulric* of *Brunswic Bevern*; resolving to call the issue of this marriage to the succession. The only error in her government was, her confiding almost wholly in strangers, and particularly *Germans*, with whom she filled her councils and armies, which raised a strong spirit of resentment in the *Russian* nobility, who could not brook being in a state of subjection to foreigners. This disposition began to shew itself with great vehemence towards the latter end of the life of the empress, who, in order to extinguish it, had recourse to extraordinary acts of severity, which were so far from having the desired effect, that they served only to increase the animosity, insomuch that the czarina became very apprehensive of the consequences, for defeating which she made the best provision in her power.

ON the 12th of *August* 1740, the princess of *Mecklenburg* was delivered of a son, whom the czarina, according to the *Russian* constitution established by *Peter the Great*, named her successor, and put under the guardianship of the prince his father and the grand duchess his mother; at the same time appointing a council for the young emperor, composed of such persons as she thought most capable of sustaining the weight of affairs, and of preserving things in the condition in which she intended to leave them. At the head of this council, with the title of regent, was her great favourite, *John Enefus Biron*, a native of *Courland*, of mean extraction, whom she had caused to be elected duke of *Courland* after the death of *Ferdinand*, the last prince of the house of *Kettler*, and who had the principal direction of affairs in her

1740.
The princess of
Mecklenburg delivered of a son; whom the czarina names her successor.

her reign. Baron *Osterman*, high chancellor of *Russia*, a man of great experience, and through whose hands whatever related to foreign affairs had passed many years, had the rank of prime minister. Count *Munich*, who had served against the *Turks* with very distinguished reputation, was at the head of the army, with the title of field-marshal: so that there seemed to be no reason to doubt but that the government might be carried on as well as in the former minority. Such were the hopes of the empress *Anne Iwanowna* when she died, in *October 1740*.

John III.
an infant,
acknow-
ledged
czar.

THE emperor was immediately acknowledged by the senate and people, in his cradle, he being little more than two months old; and the marquis *de la Cbetardie*, the French minister, made his imperial majesty a long speech upon the occasion, in which he assured him of the sincere friendship of *Lewis XV.* to *John III.* sovereign of all the *Russias*. But it soon appeared, that this government could not subsist in the form in which it stood in the late empress's will. The principal lords and prelates of *Russia* murmured at being under a foreign yoke, as they called it, which, had it been ever so light, would have seemed to them, shameful and insufferable. They assembled in the night preceding the 17th of *November*, in the palace of the grand duchess, the emperor's mother, and unanimously named her regent of the empire.

The duke
of Biron
banished,

The duke of *Biron* was arrested as an usurper and a tyrant, tried in form by the judges of the state, and condemned to die; but the new regent mitigated this sentence, and banished him and his family into *Siberia*.

1741.
The
Swedes
arm a-
gainst the
Russians;
but are
defeated.

THE *Swedes*, taking advantage of these troubles, armed against *Russia*. *Finland* was the theatre of the war: but the time of their victories and conquests was no more. General *Lascy*, at the head of the *Muscovite* troops, defeated the enemy near *Wilmanstra*, and made himself master of that place. Several officers, and a great number of soldiers, were taken prisoners, and treated with extraordinary humanity by the *Russians*, who shewed by this how much they had profited by the lessons of the *Great Peter*. The conquerors gained several other advantages over the *Swedes*; and the princes of *Brunswic* caused the states of *Couxtland* to proceed to the election of a new duke. Their choice fell upon her husband, *Ernestus Ferdinand* of *Brunswic*: but she did not remain long enough at the head of the government of *Russia* to make *Po'land* ratify this nomination.

THE testamentary dispositions of *Peter the Great* with respect to the succession to the throne of *Russia*, were no secret

to the lords or people of *Moscow*, among whom one of the *Revolution* daughters of that illustrious emperor, *Elizabeth Petrowna*, a in favour lady of distinguished merit, and now about thirty-eight years of the prince of age, had lived, during the last reign, in a manner, and un-cess-Eliza-der circumstances little suited to her birth, being a kind of beth. prisoner in the palace. The prudence of her behaviour, joined to the magnanimity with which she had supported her misfortunes, made such an impression on all who had beheld her, that she had long reigned in the hearts of her people, while others reigned upon the throne. At length, her right to the crown, her heroic qualities, her nobleness of soul, her transcendent virtues, and her title of daughter of *Peter the Great* and of the empress *Catharine*, names ever dear to *Russia*, made the whole nation, princes, nobility, senators, soldiers, and even the populace, wish her to be their sovereign, and testify such affection for her, that some who had served her father with fidelity, and now enjoyed the reward of their services, resolved to run any hazard in order to place her on the throne. The princess of *Brunswic* had received some informations that a plot was carrying on, but had not been able to learn any thing certain ; so that her suspicions led her only to have an interview on this occasion with the princess *Elizabeth*, a few hours before the revolution. The illustrious daughter of *Peter the Great*, perfectly mistress of herself, received the regent with such undisturbed tranquillity, as soon dispelled all her fears.

In the night between the 5th and 6th of *December*, a number of guards went to the apartment of the princess *Elizabeth Petrowna*, and offered to declare her empress. She immediately put herself at their head, marched to the barracks, and was instantly joined by the rest of the troops. Giving her orders then with that voice of authority which admits of no resistance, she commanded several regiments to disperse in different parts of the city, and seize the foreigners that were employed in the government. Then, returning to the palace with another regiment, animated by her presence, she secured the persons of the emperor and the regent. *Elizabeth* herself acquainted them with their fall, and at the same time treated them as became their birth. The people received with loud acclamations of joy this illustrious offspring of their beloved *Peter* and *Catharine*, of whose features, as well as virtues, *Elizabeth* was a living image. She was proclaimed in the morning of the 6th of *December*, at the head of the regiment of guards, and of the other troops of the garrison, Empress and Sovereign of all the *Russias*. John III. deposed.

On the 12th of the same month, the regent and the prince her son retired into *Germany*, in their way to which they were conducted as far as the frontiers of *Prussia*.

THE new empress appointed a commission to enquire into the conduct of those who had been concerned in the management of affairs under the late reign, and who had been instrumental in keeping her from the throne. The guilty were sentenced to die: but she immediately pardoned them; and at the same time nobly declared, that no person should be put to death during her reign, for any crime whatever; but that some other punishment should be inflicted, according to the nature of the offence, without the shedding of blood: a promise which she always religiously observed. She then rectified several abuses in the management of the affairs of the empire, and restored to their just ranks the great families of *Russia*, whom she entrusted with the principal employments in the state.

Elizabeth crowned empress of Russia. *Elizabeth Petrowna* was crowned at *Moscow*, with the same ceremonies as the empress *Catharine* her mother.

SHORTLY after, the duchess, mother of *John III.* who had been dethroned, attempting to bring about another revolution, was arrested at *Riga* in *Livonia*, where she has been confined ever since, with her husband and son.

1742. *The states of Sweden abuse her nephew for their king.* THE empress then sent for her nephew *Charles Peter Ulrich* duke of *Holstein-Gottorp*, son of her sister *Anne Petrowna* duchess of *Holstein*, and grand-son of queen *Ulrica*, the eldest sister of *Charles XII.* The throne of *Sweden* became vacant at that time, and the states made choice of this prince, the delight of two rival nations, in hopes that their electing him would put an end to a war by which the *Swedes* were great sufferers. But her imperial majesty had already declared him her successor in the throne of *Russia*, to which he was the presumptive heir under the original establishment of the emperor *Peter the Great*. He accordingly embraced the *Greek* religion, and, agreeable to the will of the empress, and the custom of the nation, received the surname of *Peter Petrowitz*, with the title of *Imperial Highness* and *Grand Duke*. (A).

But she appoints him her successor in the throne of *Russia*.

Sweden

(A) This is the present emperor, *PETER THE THIRD*, who ascended the throne upon the demise of the late empress, on the 5th of *January*, of this present year 1762. Tho' we do not bring our work so low down, it cannot be improper to mention here some of the many acts of clemency and magnanimity, which

Sweden was then in a most deplorable situation; distracted at home by intestine feuds, distressed abroad by a formidable and victorious enemy, destitute of a king, and preyed upon by all the evils of anarchy. Under these unhappy circumstances, when Sweden had every thing to fear from Russia, the empress, with uncommon generosity and moderation, offered peace to her defenceless enemies. The preliminaries were signed at Abo, on the 27th of June, by the plenipotentiaries of the two crowns. The principal conditions were, that the duke of Holstein-Eutin, bishop of Lubeck, and administrator of Holstein-Gottorp, should be chosen king of Sweden; that the Swedes should cede to Russia the province of Keymengard, with all the branches and the mouth of the Keymen, and the fortrefs of Nyssot, besides a slip of land on Abo.

which have already distinguished so very short a period of the history of this country. His present imperial majesty, immediately after his accession, signified to Mr. Keith, the British envoy, his firm intention of making his present power subservient to the salutary purposes of a general peace: and, in consequence thereof, ordered three declarations to be delivered, to the Imperial, French, and Swedish ministers, then resident at his court, importing, that his imperial majesty, out of compassion to mankind in general, and to his own people in particular, had resolved to procure peace to his empire, and to use his utmost endeavours to re-establish it all over Europe; to which end he generously proposed to sacrifice all the conquests made by the Russian arms during this war. These declarations were dated February 23, N. S.

With respect to his own people in particular, he very early ordered every state-prisoner,

count Bestucheff only excepted, to be recalled from a long and painful exile in Siberia. He next abolished the secret chancery, or inquisition of state; a most abominable and oppressive court.—On the 28th of January, N. S. he went for the first time to the senate, and there declared the Russian nobility and gentry free, and upon the footing of those of their rank in the other kingdoms of Europe. After this, his Imperial majesty made an irrevocable pragmatic sanction, by which the price of salt was lowered, and fixed for ever: a regulation by which his revenue will of course be considerably diminished; but nothing could more effectually contribute to the ease and relief of the poorer people.

This prince was born on the 10th of February 1728. In 1745, he married the princess Catharine of Anhalt-Zerbst, by whom he has one son, Paul Petrovitch, born in 1754, now heir apparent to the Russian empire.

On

the east and north, about two *Swedish* leagues in breadth. On the other hand, *Russia* engaged to restore what she possessed in *Finland*, *East Bothnia*, *Bjorneberg*, *Åbo*, the isles of *Oelund*, *Thavastus*, and *Nyland*, with their dependencies, and also that part of *Carrelia* which had been allotted to *Sweden* by the treaty of *Nystadt*, together with the province of *Savolaxia*. The treaty of peace was ratified on the 7th of *August*, and mutually executed by the two powers.

As neither the limits of this volume, nor any material, really authentic, that we can be masters of, though such may come to the knowledge of future historians, permit us even to attempt a detail of the occurrences of this reign, or indeed of any of the preceding since the death of the empress *Catharine*; we shall conclude this history with a short view of the general political interests of *Russia* with respect to foreign nations.

Summary
view of
the political
interests of
Russia.

“THESE, says the judicious author of *The present State of Europe*^b, are neither so many, nor so complicated, as might be expected, considering the extent and situation of the empire, which gives its monarchs a right to be considered as *Asiatic*, as well as *European* powers. The northern parts of the empire, from the frontiers of the *Swedish* dominions, to those of *China* and *Japan*, are guarded in such a manner, as to be secure not only from danger, but from apprehension; having on that side a sea, hitherto impenetrable, and through which a passage, if any could be found, must turn to the benefit, but can never prove of any disadvantage to the subjects of *Russia*; which is a point of great consequence, and a blessing scarce known to any other country. The frontiers of the empire towards *China* are also inaccessible, as consisting of deserts impenetrable by armies, but which yield a tolerable passage for caravans; so that the *Russians* may always depend on the friendship of the *Chinese*; and whenever they apply themselves seriously thereto, may make this friendship turn to their advantage. The *Tartars*, inhabiting the countries between *Persia* and *Russia*, are no longer formidable to this last empire; on the contrary, they all respect it, and many of them have voluntarily submitted, and become its vassals. The *Caspian* sea, and the dominions which the *Russians* have on that side, give them a fair opening into *Persia*, which they have already improved so as to gain to themselves a very advantageous trade; and this, by degrees, may perhaps be extended as far as the *East-Indies*.

^b Page 27.

“ It will always be the interest of *Russia* to cultivate a good understanding with the *Schah* : but in case of a rupture she would not have much to fear, since, the frontiers being open, she might soon make an end of the war, by letting loose upon them the *Tartars*, who are her tributaries. The *Turks*, and their associates the *Crim Tartars*, are more dangerous enemies : but, at present at least, the circumstances of the *Porte* will scarce allow her to break with the *Russians*, who, if such a thing should happen, can never want the power of defending themselves against them, or even of making them sensible of the folly of wantonly seeking a quarrel. The two great christian principalities dependant upon the *Ottoman* empire, have always a bias in favour of the *Russians* ; and therefore the *Turks* run a greater hazard by making war with this, than with any other nation.

“ THE interests of *Russia* in *Europe* are not hard to assign. As to *Sweden*, it is of great consequence to her to live upon good terms with that crown ; and, on the other hand, the superiority of *Russia*, when forced into a war, has been so apparent, that there is great reason to think the *Swedes* will continue quiet on that side for a long series of time. It is equally requisite for the court of *Peterburg* to be upon good terms with the *Poles* ; to which end every proper measure seems to have been taken.

“ THERE seems to be no great cause of intercourse between *Russia* and *Denmark*, farther than what results from attention to the ballance of power in the north, which will always incline a wise administration in this empire, to keep the scales as even as may be between this crown and that of *Sweden*.

“ THE interests of *Russia* with respect to the house of *Austria*, are its most material concern ; for while these imperial houses are united, not only by general alliances, but by a due and hearty regard for each others prosperity, neither has much to fear from the *Turks* : but if they are divided, and the *Ottomans* should recover their ancient power, these may be formidable to both. *Prussia* has been too long harassed by an unnatural alliance, against which she has bravely stood her ground, and of which she now, happily, sees the end approach. The maritime powers are the natural allies, and hitherto have been, and are like to be fast friends to *Russia*. As to the other potentates of *Europe*, their dominions are too remote for *Russia* to have any great intercourse with them : and with respect to the house of *Bourbon*,

as the court of *Petersburg* has never had any cause to like, so, in spite of all its power, and a late strange jumble of circumstances, now on the point of terminating, there is no probability of her ever having reason to fear it."

END of Vol. XXXV.





6

